Panasonic

MICROCOMPUTER MN101L

MN101LR05D/04D/03D/02D
LSI User's Manual

Pub.No. 21705-015E

Request for your special attention and precautions in using the technical information and semiconductors described in this book

(1) If any of the products or technical information described in this book is to be exported or provided to non-residents, the laws and regulations of the exporting country, especially, those with regard to security export control, must be observed.

(2) The technical information described in this book is intended only to show the main characteristics and application circuit examples of the products. No license is granted in and to any intellectual property right or other right owned by Panasonic Corporation or any other company. Therefore, no responsibility is assumed by our company as to the infringement upon any such right owned by any other company which may arise as a result of the use of technical information described in this book.

(3) The products described in this book are intended to be used for general applications (such as office equipment, communications equipment, measuring instruments and household appliances), or for specific applications as expressly stated in this book.
Consult our sales staff in advance for information on the following applications:
- Special applications (such as for airplanes, aerospace, automotive equipment, traffic signaling equipment, combustion equipment, life support systems and safety devices) in which exceptional quality and reliability are required, or if the failure or malfunction of the products may directly jeopardize life or harm the human body.

It is to be understood that our company shall not be held responsible for any damage incurred as a result of or in connection with your using the products described in this book for any special application, unless our company agrees to your using the products in this book for any special application.

(4) The products and product specifications described in this book are subject to change without notice for modification and/or improvement. At the final stage of your design, purchasing, or use of the products, therefore, ask for the most up-to-date Product Standards in advance to make sure that the latest specifications satisfy your requirements.

(5) When designing your equipment, comply with the range of absolute maximum rating and the guaranteed operating conditions (operating power supply voltage and operating environment etc.). Especially, please be careful not to exceed the range of absolute maximum rating on the transient state, such as power-on, power-off and mode-switching. Otherwise, we will not be liable for any defect which may arise later in your equipment.
Even when the products are used within the guaranteed values, take into the consideration of incidence of break down and failure mode, possible to occur to semiconductor products. Measures on the systems such as redundant design, arresting the spread of fire or preventing glitch are recommended in order to prevent physical injury, fire, social damages, for example, by using the products.

(6) Comply with the instructions for use in order to prevent breakdown and characteristics change due to external factors (ESD, EOS, thermal stress and mechanical stress) at the time of handling, mounting or at customer's process. When using products for which damp-proof packing is required, satisfy the conditions, such as shelf life and the elapsed time since first opening the packages.

(7) This book may be not reprinted or reproduced whether wholly or partially, without the prior written permission of our company.

20100202

If you have any inquiries or questions about this book or our semiconductor products, please contact our sales division.

About This Manual

■Objective

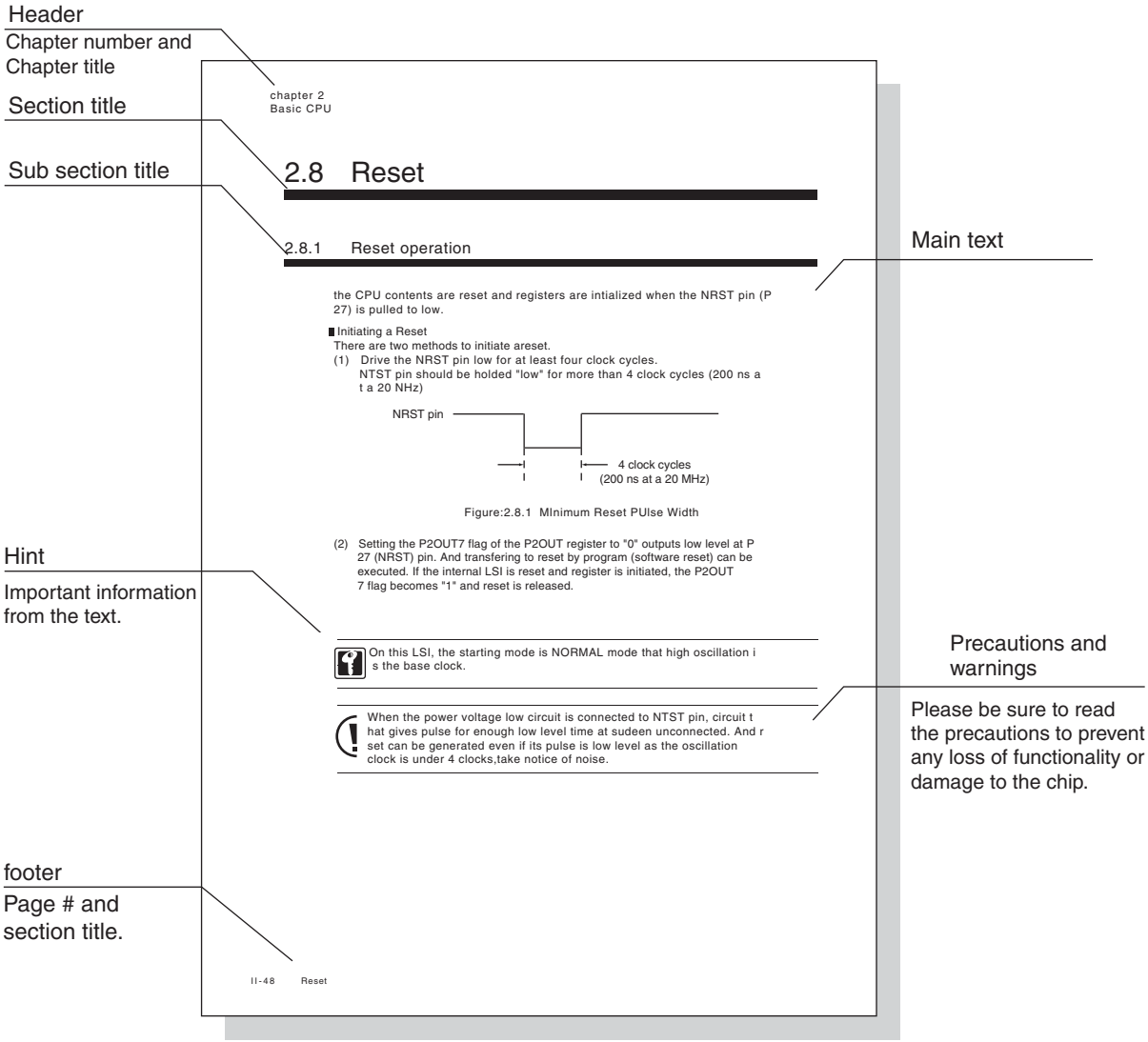
The primary objective of this LSI manual is to describe the features of this product including an overview, CPU basic functions, interrupt, port, timer, serial interface, and other peripheral hardware functions.

Each section consists of brief functional information, block diagrams and the details of control registers including operation methods and setting examples.

■Structure of This Manual

Each section of this manual consists of a title, summary, main text, hint, precautions and warnings, and references.

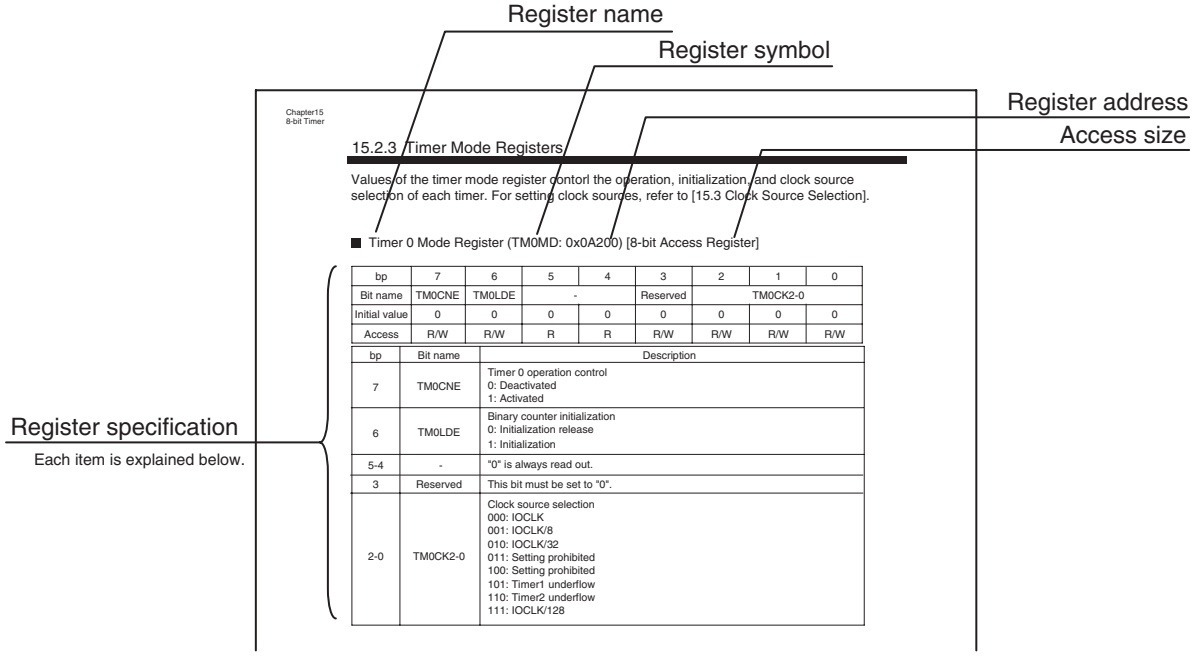
The layout and definition of each section are shown below.



This page serves as an example to the explanations above. It may be different on an actual page.

■About Register Table

How to read the register table in each chapter is shown below.



bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM0CNE	TM0LDE	-		Reserved	TM0CK2-0		
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TM0CNE	Timer 0 operation control 0: Deactivated 1: Activated
6	TM0LDE	Binary counter initialization 0: Initialization release 1: Initialization
5-4	-	"0" is always read out.
3	Reserved	This bit must be set to "0".
2-0	TM0CK2-0	Clock source selection 000: IOCLK 001: IOCLK/8 010: IOCLK/32 011: Setting prohibited 100: Setting prohibited 101: Timer1 underflow 110: Timer2 underflow 111: IOCLK/128

This register table serves as an example to the explanations above. It may be different on an actual table.

• bp
The bit position of each register is shown.

• Bit name
The bit symbol is shown.
There are following two kinds of statements in addition to the bit symbol.
Reserved : This is the reserved bit.
- : This bit is not mounted.

• Initial value
The value of the bit immediately after reset release is shown with binary number.
When the value immediately after reset release is unfixed value, this item is indicated as "X".

• Access
"R" : This bit is readable.
"W" : This bit is writable.

• Description
The outline of the bit function and setting values are shown.
Access the bit according to the description in this item.

■Finding Desired Information

This manual provides three methods for finding the desired information quickly and easily.

1.Refer to the index at the front of the manual to locate the beginning of each section.

2.Refer to the table of contents at the front of the manual to locate the desired titles.

3.The chapter number and chapter title are located at the top corner of each page, and the section titles are located at the bottom corner of each page.

■Related Manuals

Note that the following documents related to MN101L series are available.

- "MN101L Series Instruction Manual"
  <Describes the instruction set.>
- "MN101C/MN101E Series C Compiler User's Manual Usage Guide"
  <Describes the installation, commands and options of the C Compiler.>
- "MN101C/MN101E Series C Compiler User's Manual Language Description"
  <Describes the syntax of the C Compiler.>
- "MN101C/MN101E Series C Compiler User's Manual Library Reference"
  <Describes the standard library of the C Compiler.>
- "MN101C/MN101E Series Cross-assembler User's Manual"
  <Describes the assembler syntax and notation.>
- "PanaX EX Installation Manual"
  <Describes the steps to install the Integrated Development Environment (DebugFactory Builder), C compiler and the real-time OS. It also describes the procedure to setup the on-board environment.>
- "PanaX EX Commander User’s Manual"
  < Describes the usage and notes on designing target board.>

■Caution

The related documents listed above are subject to change without notice.
Use the latest version of each document for designing.

■Contact Information

Please contact our sales division.

Contents

Contents

0

Contents

Chapter 1 Overview

1

1.1 Hardware Features

MN101LR05D is described in this LSI user's manual.
For MN101LR04D, MN101LR03D and MN101LR02D, refer to [1.2 Comparison of Product Specification] and [1.3.1 Pin Configuration].

■ Features

In this document, the divided clock and the frequency of it are described as follows:
Divided clock: Clock name/n (n: division ratio)
Frequency : $f_{clock\ name}$

- CPU Core
  - AM13L core
  - LOAD-STORE architecture (3- or 4-stage Pipeline)
- Machine Cycle and Operating Voltage
  - High-Speed mode
    100 ns / 10 MHz (Max) (V_{DD30}: 1.8 V to 3.6 V)
    1.0 µs / 1 MHz (Max) (V_{DD30}: 1.3 V to 3.6 V)
  - Low-Speed Mode
    25 µs / 40 kHz (Max) (V_{DD30}: 1.1 V to 3.6 V)
- Operating Mode
  - NORMAL mode (High-Speed mode)
  - SLOW mode (Low-Speed mode)
  - HALT mode (High-Speed/Low-Speed mode)
  - STOP mode
- Embedded Memory
  - ROM (ReRAM) : 64 KB (Programmable area: 62 KB, Data area: 2 KB)
  - RAM : 4 KB
- ReRAM Specification
  - Program voltage (V_{DD30}) : 1.8 V to 3.6 V
  - Program cycles : 1 K (Program area), 100 K (Data area)
  - Data is rewritable in bytes without data erase.
- Clock Oscillator (4 circuits)
  - External Low-Speed Oscillation (SOSCCLK) : 32.768 kHz (crystal or ceramic)
  - External High-Speed Oscillation (HOSCCLK): up to 10 MHz (crystal or ceramic)
  - Internal Low-Speed Oscillation (SRCCLK) : 40 kHz ± 20 % (V_{DD30}: 1.1 V to 3.6 V)
  - Internal High-Speed Oscillation (HRCCLK) : 10/8 MHz ± 3 % (V_{DD30}: 1.8 V to 3.6 V)
    1 MHz ± 10 % (V_{DD30}: 1.3 V to 3.6 V)

  * MN101LR02D does not have external high-speed oscillation (HOSCCLK).
- Internal Operating Clock
  - System Clock (SYSCLK): 10 MHz (Max)

  SYSCLK is generated by dividing HCLK or SCLK, and the division ratio is 1, 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32.
  HCLK: HOSCCLK or HRCCLK
  SCLK: SOSCCLK or SRCCLK

  * MN101LR02D cannot be selected HOSCCLK.

- Interrupt Circuit
  - 31 internal interrupts (except for NMI)
  - 8 external interrupts

  * MN101LR02D:
  - 29 internal interrupts (except for NMI)
  - 3 external interrupts

- DMA (1 channel)
  - Data transfer size : 8 bits/16 bits
  - Maximum transfer counts: 1023
  - Activation trigger : external interrupts / internal interrupts / software (setting the DMA start bit)

- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
  - Function : 1st watchdog time-out generates NMI, and 2nd consecutive time-out generates a LSI reset.
  - Clock Source : WDTCLK (SOSCCLK or SRCCLK)

- Timer Counter: 13 units
  - General-purpose 8-bit timer (Timer 0/1/2/3/4/5) : 6 units
  - General-purpose 16-bit timer (Timer 7/8/9) : 3 units
  - 8-bit free-run (Timer 6) /Time-base timer : 1 unit each
  - RTC time base timer (RTC-TBT) : 1 unit
  - Real Time Clock (RTC) : 1 unit

  <Timer 0>
  - Function : Square wave output, additional pulse PWM output, event count, simple pulse width measurement
  - Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/4, HCLK/16, HCLK/32, HCLK/64, SCLK, SYSCLK/2, SYSCLK/4, and TM0IO input

  <Timer 1 >
  - Function : Square wave output, event count, 16-bit cascade connection (connected with Timer 0)
  - Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/4, HCLK/16, HCLK/64, HCLK/128, SCLK, SYSCLK/2, SYSCLK/8, and TM1IO input

  <Timer 2>
  - Function : Square wave output, additional pulse PWM output, event count, simple pulse width measurement
  - Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/4, HCLK/16, HCLK/32, HCLK/64, SCLK, SYSCLK/2, SYSCLK/4, and TM2IO input

  <Timer 3 >
  - Function : Square wave output, event count, 16-bit cascade connection (connected with Timer 2)
  - Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/4, HCLK/16, HCLK/64, HCLK/128, SCLK, SYSCLK/2, SYSCLK/8, and TM3IO input

  <Timer 4>
  - Function : Square wave output, additional pulse PWM output, event count, simple pulse width measurement
  - Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/4, HCLK/16, HCLK/32, HCLK/64, SCLK, SYSCLK/2, SYSCLK/4, and TM4IO input

  <Timer 5 >
  - Function : Square wave output, event count, 16-bit cascade connection (connected with Timer 4)
  - Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/4, HCLK/16, HCLK/64, HCLK/128, SCLK, SYSCLK/2, SYSCLK/8, and TM5IO input

  * MN101LR02D cannot be used square wave output, event count and TM5IO.

<Timer 6>
- Function : One-minute timer can be generated in combination with a time base timer.
- Clock Source : HCLK, HCLK/2^7, HCLK/2^{13}, SYSCLK, SCLK, SCLK/2^7, SCLK/2^{13}

<Time Base Timer>
- Function : An interrupt can be generated at a given set time.
- Clock Source : HCLK and SCLK
- Interrupt generation cycle: $2^N/f_{HCLK}$, $2^N/f_{SCLK}$ (N = 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15)

<Timer 7>
- Function : Square wave output, PWM output (duty/cycle are programmable), one-shot pulse output, IGBT output, event count, and input capture
- Clock Source : Generated clock by dividing HCLK, SYSCLK, SCLK, or TM7IO input by 1, 2, 4 or 16.

<Timer 8 >
- Function : Square wave output, PWM output (duty/cycle are programmable), event count, and input capture
- Clock Source : Generated clock by dividing HCLK, SYSCLK, SCLK, or TM8IO input by 1, 2, 4 or 16.

<Timer 9 >
- Function : Square wave output, PWM output (duty/cycle are programmable), event count, and input capture
- Clock Source : Generated clock by dividing HCLK, SYSCLK, SCLK, or TM9IO input by 1, 2, 4 or 16.

* MN101LR03D and MN101LR02D
cannot be used square wave output, PWM output, event count and TM9IO.

<RTC time base timer (RTC-TBT)>
- Function : Clock generation for the Real Time Clock (RTC)
Frequency correction
(Correction Range: ±488 ppm to ±31220 ppm, Accuracy: approx. 0.48 ppm to 30.52 ppm)
- Clock Source : SOSCCLK or SRCCLK

<Real Time Clock (RTC)>
- Function : Calendar calculation, adjustment of leap year
Periodic interrupt (0.5 s, 1 s, 1 min, and 1 hour)
Alarm0 interrupt (date/month/minute), Alarm1 interrupt (month/day/hour/minute)

• Buzzer Output/Inverted Buzzer Output
- Output frequency: $f_{HCLK}/2^M$ (M = 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14), $f_{SCLK}/2^N$ (N = 3, 4)

* MN101LR02D can be used inverted buzzer output only.

• Serial Interface: 4 units

<Serial Interface 0, 1> (Full duplex UART/Clock synchronous serial)
- Function:
Full duplex UART:
Parity check, Detection of overrun error/framing error, Selectable transfer bits of 7 or 8
Clock synchronous serial (SPI compatible):
2,3 or 4-wire communication, MSB/LSB first selectable, multiple bytes transmission is available.
- Clock Source: external clock, dedicated baud rate timer

<Serial Interface 2, 3> (Multi-master IIC/Clock synchronous serial)
- Function:
Multi-master IIC
Clock synchronous serial (SPI compatible):
2,3 or 4-wire communication, MSB/LSB first selectable, multiple bytes transmission is available.
- Clock Source: external clock, dedicated baud rate timer

* MN101LR03D
  Serial Interface 3: Clock synchronous serial cannot be used 3 and 4-wire communication, and is not compatible with SPI. (Chip select pin is not assigned.)
* MN101LR02D
  Serial Interface 1: Not implemented
  Serial Interface 3: Clock synchronous serial cannot be used 4-wire communication, and is not compatible with SPI. (Chip select pin is not assigned.)

- A/D Converter (ADC): 1 unit
  - Resolution : 12 bits
  - Analog signal input channel: 8 channels
    * MN101LR04D : 6 channels
    * MN101LR03D : 4 channels
    * MN101LR02D : 3 channels

- I/O ports: 69 pins
  - Selectable N-channel transistor drive strength: 55 pins
    * MN101LR04D: 53 pins (selectable N-channel transistor drive strength: 41 pins)
    * MN101LR03D: 37 pins (selectable N-channel transistor drive strength: 27 pins)
    * MN101LR02D: 22 pins (selectable N-channel transistor drive strength: 19 pins)

- Clock Output
  - HCLK, SCLK, SYSCLK or RTCCLK can be output.
- Automatic Reset Circuit
- Low-voltage Detection Circuit (LVI)
- LCD Driver
  - 43 segment outputs, 4 common outputs (39 segment outputs, 8 common outputs)
  - Display mode: Static, 1/2 to 1/8 duty
  - Bias : 1/2, 1/3 (Built-in boost/ External resistor divider)

  * MN101LR04D
    31 segment outputs
    4 common outputs
    Display mode: Static, 1/2 to 1/4 duty
  * MN101LR03D
    21 segment outputs
    4 common outputs
    Display mode: Static, 1/2 to 1/4 duty
  * MN101LR02D does not have LCD driver function.

- Package
  - MN101LR05D: TQFP080-P-1212 (12 mm square, 0.5 mm pitch, halogen free)
  - MN101LR04D: TQFP064-P-1010 (10 mm square, 0.5 mm pitch, halogen free)
  - MN101LR03D: TQFP048-P-0707 (7 mm square, 0.5 mm pitch, halogen free)
  - MN101LR02D: HQFN032-A-0505 (5 mm square, 0.5 mm pitch, halogen free)

  Panasonic "halogen free" semiconductor products refer to the products made of molding resin and interposer which conform to the following standards.
  - Bromine : 900 ppm (Maximum Concentration Value)
  - Chlorine : 900 ppm (Maximum Concentration Value)
  - Bromine + Chlorine: 1500 ppm (Maximum Concentration Value)

  The above-mentioned standards are based on the numerical value described in IEC61249-2-21.
  Antimony and its compounds are not added intentionally.

- Operating Ambient Temperature
  - Ta = -40 °C to 85 °C

1.2 Comparison of Product Specification

Table:1.2.1 Functions

Function	Specification	MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D	MN101LR02D
Port	I/O port	69 pins	53 pins	37 pins	22 pins
	N-channel transistor drive strength	55 pins	41 pins	27 pins	19 pins
Interrupt	Internal interrupt	31	31	31	29
	External interrupt	8 (7:IRQ0-6, 1:KEY0-7)	8 (7:IRQ0-6, 1:KEY1-7)	8 (7:IRQ0-6, 1:KEY1-5)	3 (2:IRQ4-5, 1:KEY1-7)
Timer 5	Timer I/O	TM5IO	TM5IO	TM5IO	- (*1)
Timer 9	Timer I/O	TM9IO	TM9IO	- (*1)	- (*1)
Serial interface 1		√	√	√	-
Serial interface 3	Serial communication pins	SBO3/SDA3 SBT3/SCL3 SBI3 SBCS3	SBO3/SDA3 SBT3/SCL3 SBI3 SBCS3	SBO3/SDA3 SBT3/SCL3 - -	SBO3/SDA3 SBT3/SCL3 SBI3 -
	Clock synchronous	2, 3 or 4-wire	2, 3 or 4-wire	2-wire	2 or 3-wire
	SPI compatible	√	√	- (*2)	- (*2)
Buzzer	Buzzer output /Inverted buzzer output	BUZ NBUZ	BUZ NBUZ	BUZ NBUZ	- NBUZ
ADC	Analog input	8 pins (AN0-7)	6 pins (AN2-7)	4 pins (AN2-5)	3 pins (AN3-5)
LCD driver	Segment output	43 pins (SEG0-42) /39 pins (SEG4-42)	31 pins (SEG0-30)	21 pins (SEG0-20)	-
	Common output	4 pins (COM0-3) /8 pins (COM0-7)	4 pins (COM0-3)	4 pins (COM0-3)	-
Oscillation		HOSCCLK SOSCCLK HRCCLK SRCCLK	HOSCCLK SOSCCLK HRCCLK SRCCLK	HOSCCLK SOSCCLK HRCCLK SRCCLK	- SOSCCLK HRCCLK SRCCLK
Package		80pinTQFP	64pinTQFP	48pinTQFP	32pinHQFN

*1 Timer function is available.
*2 Chip select pin is not assigned.

Table:1.2.2 Functions of I/O Port

I/O Port	MN101LR05D								MN101LR04D								MN101LR03D								MN101LR02D							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Port0	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	-	-	-	-
Port1	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	-	-	-
Port2	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Port3	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-
Port4	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	√
Port5	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-
Port6	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-
Port7	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Port8	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	√	√	√	√	√	√	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

√ : implemented I/O port

√ : implemented I/O port (selectable N-channel transistor drive strength)

- : not implemented

Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control

I/O Port	MN101LR05D								MN101LR04D								MN101LR03D							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Port2	-	SEG 36	SEG 37	SEG 38	SEG 39	SEG 40	SEG 41	SEG 42	-	SEG 28	-	-	-	-	SEG 29	SEG 30	-	SEG 20	-	-	-	-	-	-
Port3	SEG 28	SEG 29	SEG 30	SEG 31	SEG 32	SEG 33	SEG 34	SEG 35	SEG 20	SEG 21	SEG 22	SEG 23	SEG 24	SEG 25	SEG 26	SEG 27	SEG 12	SEG 13	SEG 14	SEG 15	SEG 16	SEG 17	SEG 18	SEG 19
Port4	SEG 20	SEG 21	SEG 22	SEG 23	SEG 24	SEG 25	SEG 26	SEG 27	SEG 12	SEG 13	SEG 14	SEG 15	SEG 16	SEG 17	SEG 18	SEG 19	-	-	-	SEG 7	SEG 8	SEG 9	SEG 10	SEG 11
Port5	SEG 12	SEG 13	SEG 14	SEG 15	SEG 16	SEG 17	SEG 18	SEG 19	SEG 8	SEG 9	SEG 10	-	-	-	-	SEG 11	SEG 4	SEG 5	SEG 6	-	-	-	-	-
Port6	SEG 4	SEG 5	SEG 6	SEG 7	SEG 8	SEG 9	SEG 10	SEG 11	SEG 0	SEG 1	SEG 2	SEG 3	SEG 4	SEG 5	SEG 6	SEG 7	-	-	-	-	SEG 0	SEG 1	SEG 2	SEG 3
Port7	COM 0	COM 1	COM 2	COM 3	COM 4/ SEG 0	COM 5/ SEG 1	COM 6/ SEG 2	COM 7/ SEG 3	-	-	-	-	COM 0	COM 1	COM 2	COM 3	-	-	-	-	COM 0	COM 1	COM 2	COM 3
Port8	-	-	VLC 2	VLC 3	C2	C1	-	-	-	-	VLC 2	VLC 3	C2	C1	-	-	-	-	VLC 2	VLC 3	C2	C1	-	-
-	VLC1								VLC1								VLC1							

-: not implemented

LCD control function is not implemented in MN101LR02D.

Set “0” to the registers and bits corresponding to the functions which are not implemented.

Table:1.2.4 Pin Functions

Pin No.				Power supply /Oscillations /Reset /Mode control	Port	External interrupt /KEY interrupt	Timer	Serial interface	Buzzer /Clock output	A/D
MN101 LR05D	MN101 LR04D	MN101 LR03D	MN101 LR03D							
1	1	1	32	VSS						
2	2	2	1	XI						
3	3	3	2	XO						
4	4	4	3	NATRON						
5	5	5	4	NRST	P27					
6	6	6		OSC1	P80	IRQ2A				
7	7	7		OSC2	P81	IRQ3A				
8					P00		TM9IOC			
9					P01		TM4IOB			
10	8				P02		TM2IOB/TM8IOC		BUZB	
11	9				P03		TM0IOB/TM7IOC		NBUZB	
12	10	8	5		P04		TM7IOA	SBO3A/SDA3A		
13	11	9	6		P05		TM0IOA/TM2IOA	SBT3A/SCL3A	CLKOUTA	
14	12		7		P06		TM8IOB	SBI3A		
15	13				P07		TM9IOA	SBCS3A		
16					P10	IRQ0A/KEY0A				AN0
17					P11	IRQ1A/KEY1A				AN1
18	14	10			P12	IRQ4C/KEY2A				AN2
19	15	11	8		P13	IRQ5C/KEY3A				AN3
20	16	12	9	VREFP						
21	17	13	10	DMOD						
22	18	14	11	OCD_CLK	P14	IRQ4A/KEY4A				AN4
23	19	15	12	OCD_DATA	P15	IRQ5A/KEY5A				AN5
24	20				P16	IRQ6A/KEY6A				AN6
25	21				P17	KEY7A				AN7
26	22				P20		TM1IOB/TM9IOB			
27	23				P21		TM5IOA			
28					P22			SBI2B		
29					P23			SBO2B/SDA2B		
30					P24			SBT2B/SCL2B		
31					P25			SBCS2B		
32	24	16			P26			SBI1A/RXD1A		
33	25	17			P30			SBO1A/TXD1A		
34	26	18			P31			SBT1A		
35	27	19			P32			SBCS1A		
36	28	20			P33				BUZA	
37	29	21	13		P34		TM4IOA/TM7IOB		NBUZA	
38	30	22	14		P35			SBI0B/RXD0B		
39	31	23	15		P36			SBO0B/TXD0B		
40	32	24	16		P37			SBT0B		
41	33	25	17		P40			SBCS0B		
42	34	26	18		P41			SBI2A		
43	35	27	19		P42			SBO2A/SDA2A		
44	36	28	20		P43			SBT2A/SCL2A		

Pin No.				Power supply /Oscillations /Reset /Mode control	Port	External interrupt /KEY interrupt	Timer	Serial interface	Buzzer /Clock output	A/D
MN101 LR05D	MN101 LR04D	MN101 LR03D	MN101 LR03D							
45	37	29	21		P44			SBCS2A		
46	38				P45			SBI1B/RXD1B		
47	39				P46			SBO1B/TXD1B		
48	40				P47			SBT1B		
49	41				P50			SBCS1B		
50					P51			SBI3B		
51					P52			SBO3B/SDA3B		
52					P53			SBT3B/SCL3B		
53					P54	KEY0B		SBCS3B		
54	42	30	22		P55	KEY1B	TM1IOA			
55	43	31	23		P56	KEY2B	TM3IOA			
56	44	32	24		P57	KEY3B	TM8IOA		CLKOUTB	
57	45	33			P60	IRQ0B				
58	46	34			P61	IRQ1B				
59	47	35			P62	IRQ2B				
60	48	36			P63	IRQ3B				
61	49		25		P64	KEY4B		SBI0A/RXD0A		
62	50		26		P65	KEY5B		SBO0A/TXD0A		
63	51		27		P66	KEY6B		SBT0A		
64	52		28		P67	KEY7B		SBCS0A		
65	53	37			P70	IRQ6B				
66	54	38			P71	IRQ5B				
67	55	39			P72	IRQ4B	TM3IOB			
68	56	40			P73		TM5IOB			
69					P74					
70					P75					
71					P76					
72					P77					
73	57	41		C1	P82					
74	58	42		C2	P83					
75	59	43		VLC3	P84					
76	60	44		VLC2	P85					
77	61	45		VLC1						
78	62	46	29	VDD30						
79	63	47	30	VDD18						
80	64	48	31	VDD11						

* Refer to Table:1.2.3 for LCD control pins.

1.3 Pin Description

1.3.1 Pin Configuration

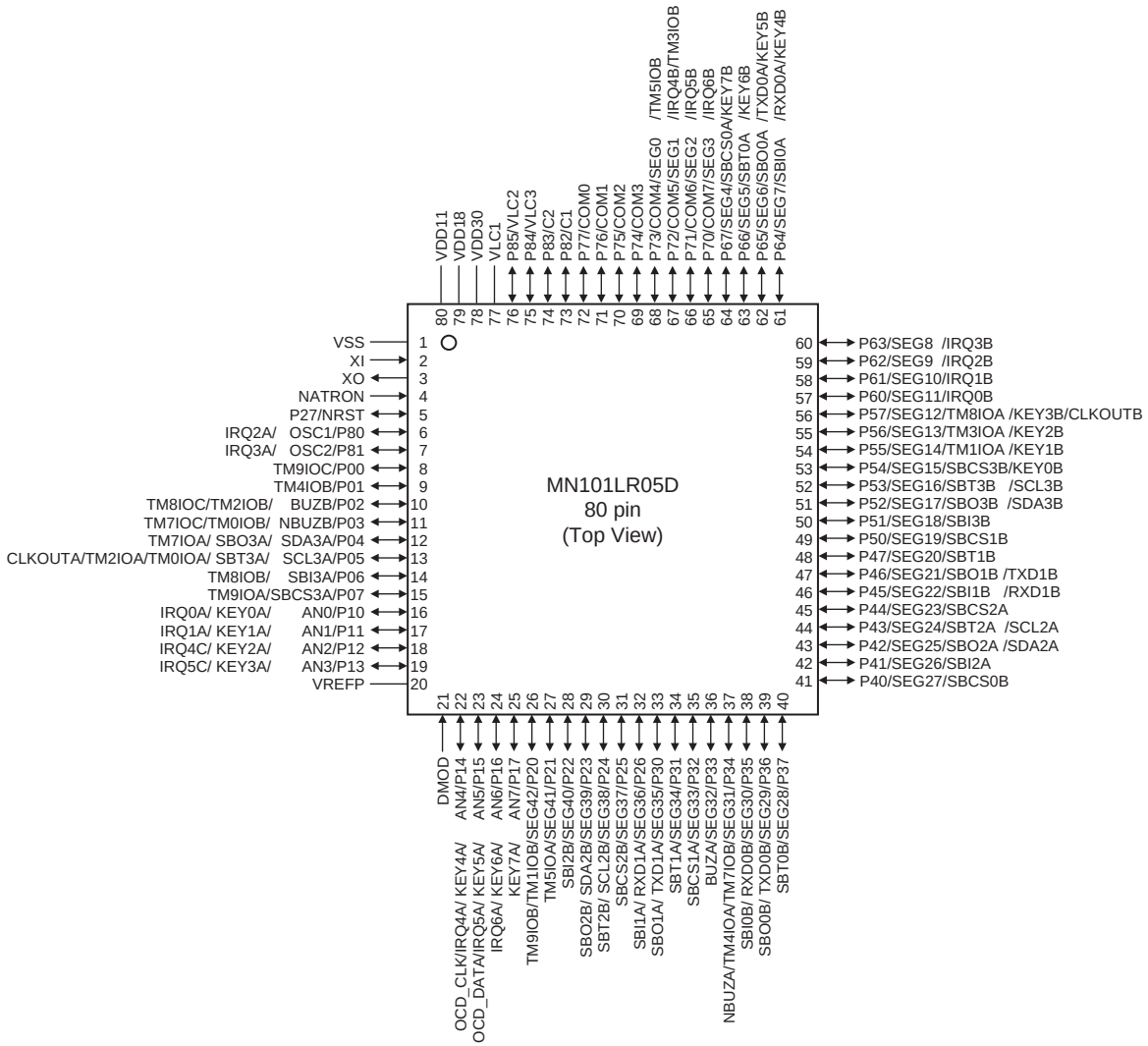


Figure:1.3.1 MN101LR05D Pin Configuration

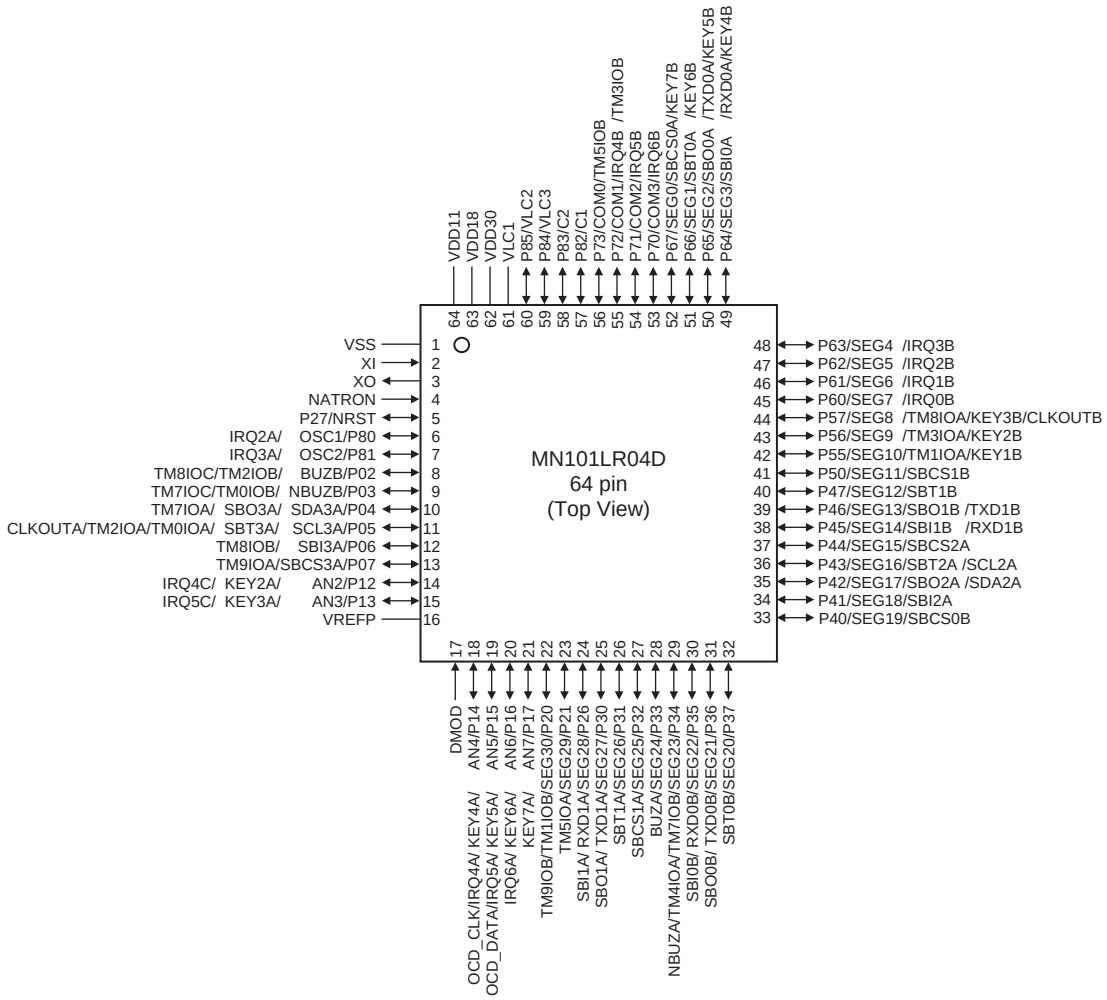


Figure:1.3.2 MN101LR04D Pin Configuration

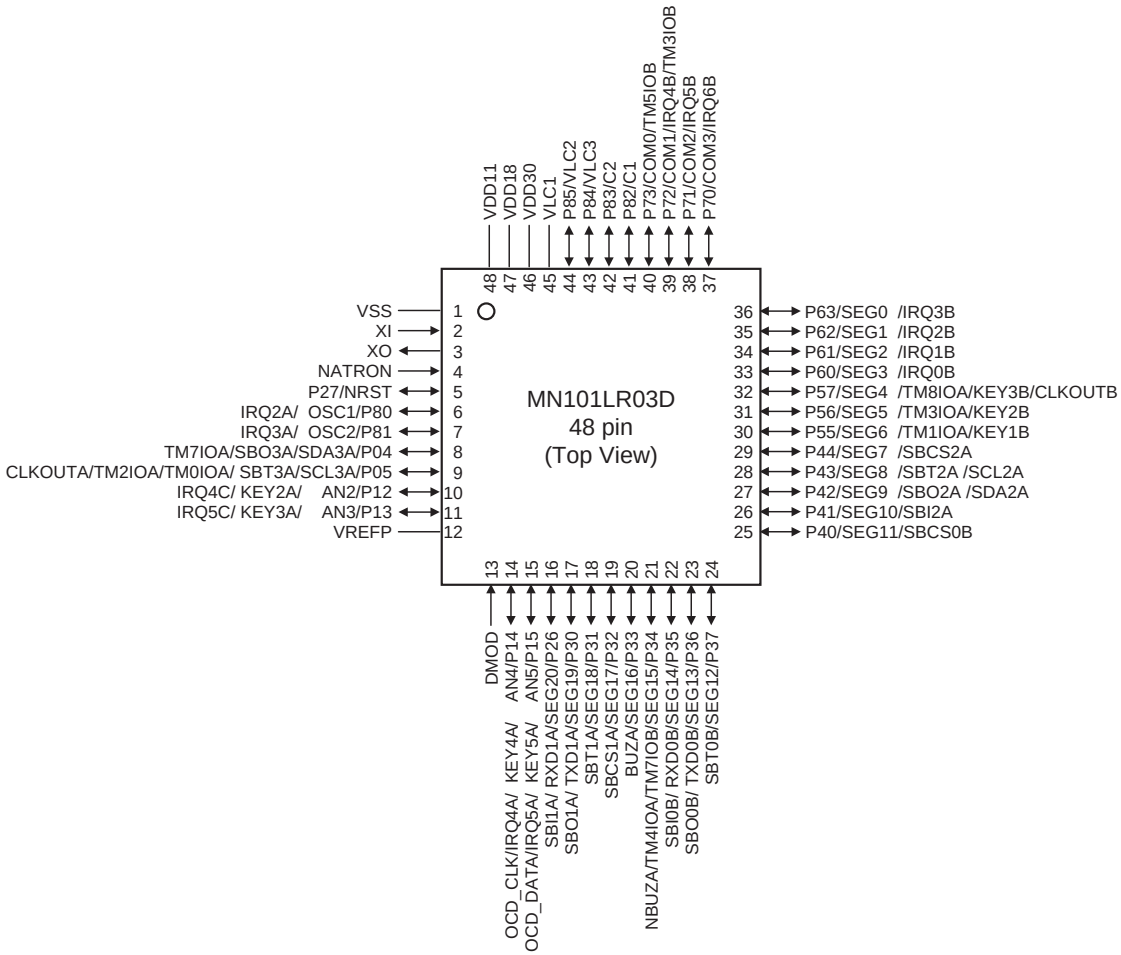


Figure:1.3.3 MN101LR03D Pin Configuration

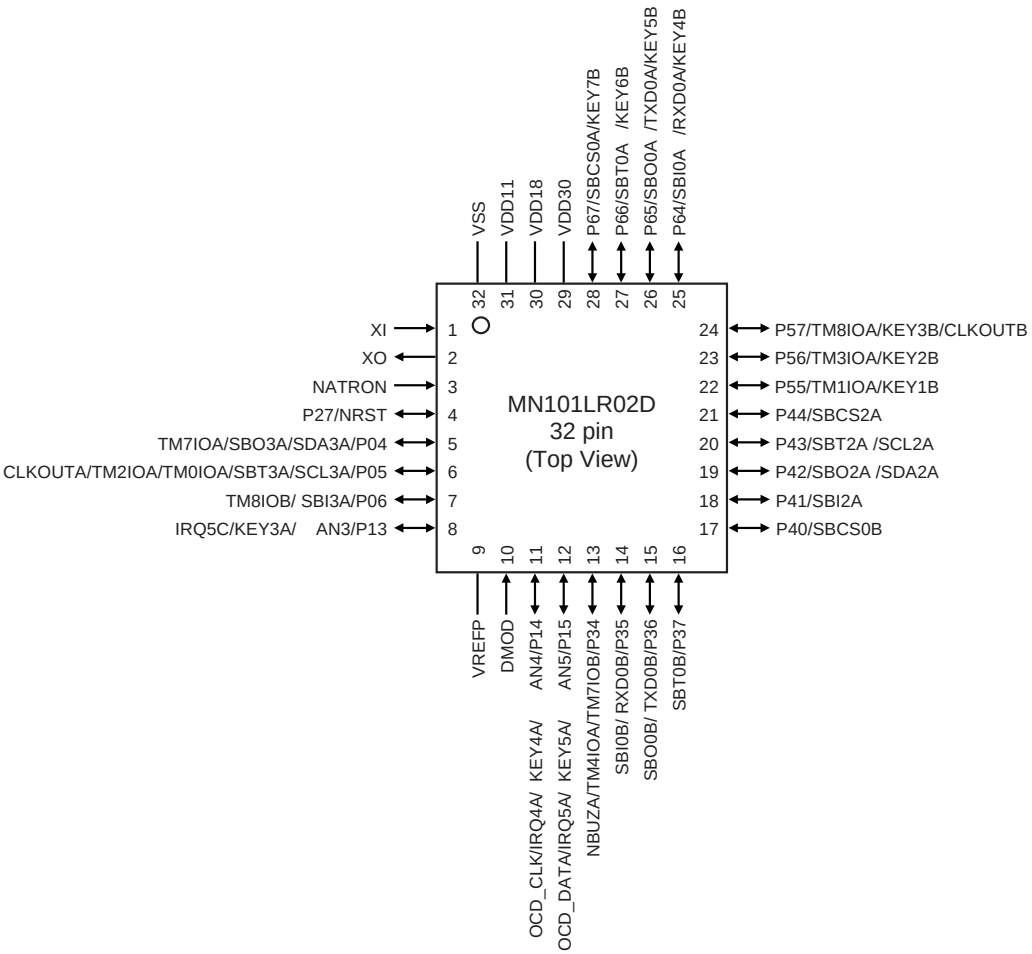


Figure:1.3.4 MN101LR02D Pin Configuration

1.3.2 Pin Description

Table:1.3.1 Power Supply/Oscillation/Reset/Mode Pin

Pin name	Input/ Output	Description
VDD30 VSS	-	Power supply pin Connect the capacitor of 1 μF or more between VDD30 and VSS. Apply 0 V to VSS.
VDD18	-	Internal power output pin Connect the capacitor of 1 μF between VDD18 and VSS to stable V_{DD18}. Connect the bypass capacitor of 0.1 μF between VDD18 and VSS.
VDD11	-	Internal power output pin (1.1 V) Connect the capacitor of 1 μF or more between VDD11 and VSS.
VLC1 VLC2 VLC3	-	LCD power supply pin Supply the power under the following conditions. (VDD30 ≤ VLC1 ≤ 3.6 V and 0 V ≤ VLC3 ≤ VLC2 ≤ VLC1) Capacitors described in Chapter 17.3.4 must be connected in each pin. When LCD function is not used, connect VLC1 to VDD30.
C1 C2	-	LCD voltage boost capacitor pin When using the internal LCD booster circuit, connect the capacitor of 0.22 μF between C1 and C2.
VREFP	-	ADC Reference power supply pin When ADC is not used, connect VREFP to VDD30. The voltage level of VREFP must be over 0.8 V_{DD30} at any time including LSI power on.
OSC1 OSC2	Input Output	External high-speed oscillation pin When the external high-speed oscillation is needed, connect the oscillator to the pins. The external clock can be input through OSC1, and leave OSC2 open.
XI XO	Input Output	External low-speed oscillation pin When the external low-speed oscillation is needed, connect the oscillator to the pins.
NRST	Input Output	Reset pin (N-channel open drain pin) When NRST is set to "Low", LSI is initialized. LSI reset condition is described in [2.5 Reset].
DMOD	Input	Mode setting pin Always set DMOD to "Low" level, except for connecting the external LSI debugger or serial programmer.
NATRON	Input	Auto reset control pin To use the auto reset function, set NATRON to "Low" level. If not, set NATRON to "High" level.

The voltage level of VREFP must be over 0.8 V_{DD30} at any time including LSI power on.

Table:1.3.2 General-purpose Port Function Pin

Pin name	Function	Input/ Output	Output drive strength selectable	Description
P00	TM9IOC	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 0 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P01	TM4IOB		Yes	
P02	TM2IOB/TM8IOC/BUZB		Yes	
P03	TM0IOB/TM7IOC/NBUZB		Yes	
P04	SBO3A/SDA3A/TM7IOA		Yes	
P05	SBT3A/SCL3A/TM0IOA/TM2IOA/CLKOUTA		Yes	
P06	SBI3A/TM8IOB		Yes	
P07	SBCS3A/TM9IOA		Yes	
P10	AN0/IRQ0A/KEY0A	Input/ Output	No	Port 1 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected.
P11	AN1/IRQ1A/KEY1A		No	
P12	AN2/IRQ4C/KEY2A		No	
P13	AN3/IRQ5C/KEY3A		No	
P14	AN4/IRQ4A/KEY4A/OCD_CLK		No	
P15	AN5/IRQ5A/KEY5A/OCD_DATA		No	
P16	AN6/IRQ6A/KEY6A		No	
P17	AN7/KEY7A		No	
P20	SEG42/TM1IOB/TM9IOB	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 2 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P21	SEG41/TM5IOA		Yes	
P22	SEG40/SBI2B		Yes	
P23	SEG39/SBO2B/SDA2B		Yes	
P24	SEG38/SBT2B/SCL2B		Yes	
P25	SEG37/SBCS2B		Yes	
P26	SEG36/SBI1A/RXD1A		Yes	
P27	NRST	Input/ Output	No	Port 2 -LSI is reset by setting P2OUT.P2OUT7 to "0".
P30	SEG35/SBO1A/TXD1A	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 3 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P31	SEG34/SBT1A		Yes	
P32	SEG33/SBCS1A		Yes	
P33	SEG32/BUZA		Yes	
P34	SEG31/TM4IOA/TM7IOB/NBUZA		Yes	
P35	SEG30/SBI0B/RXD0B		Yes	
P36	SEG29/SBO0B/TXD0B		Yes	
P37	SEG28/SBT0B		Yes	

Pin name	Function	Input/ Output	Output drive strength selectable	Description
P40	SEG27/SBCS0B	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 4 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P41	SEG26/SBI2A		Yes	
P42	SEG25/SBO2A/SDA2A		Yes	
P43	SEG24/SBT2A/SCL2A		Yes	
P44	SEG23/SBCS2A		Yes	
P45	SEG22/SBI1B/RXD1B		Yes	
P46	SEG21/SBO1B/TXD1B		Yes	
P47	SEG20/SBT1B		Yes	
P50	SEG19/SBCS1B	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 5 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P51	SEG18/SBI3B		Yes	
P52	SEG17/SBO3B/SDA3B		Yes	
P53	SEG16/SBT3B/SCL3B		Yes	
P54	SEG15/KEY0B/SBCS3B		Yes	
P55	SEG14/KEY1B/TM1IOA		Yes	
P56	SEG13/KEY2B/TM3IOA		Yes	
P57	SEG12/KEY3B/TM8IOA/CLKOUTB		Yes	
P60	SEG11/IRQ0B	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 6 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P61	SEG10/IRQ1B		Yes	
P62	SEG9/IRQ2B		Yes	
P63	SEG8/IRQ3B		Yes	
P64	SEG7/KEY4B/SBI0A/RXD0A		Yes	
P65	SEG6/KEY5B/SBO0A/TXD0A		Yes	
P66	SEG5/KEY6B/SBT0A		Yes	
P67	SEG4/KEY7B/SBCS0A		Yes	
P70	COM7/SEG3/IRQ6B	Input/ Output	Yes	Port 7 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected. -The drive strength of output Nch transistor can be changed.
P71	COM6/SEG2/IRQ5B		Yes	
P72	COM5/SEG1/IRQ4B/TM3IOB		Yes	
P73	COM4/SEG0/TM5IOB		Yes	
P74	COM3		Yes	
P75	COM2		Yes	
P76	COM1		Yes	
P77	COM0		Yes	
P80	OSC1/IRQ2A	Input/ Output	No	Port 8 -At each port, the I/O direction and the pull-up resistor connection is controlled individually. -At LSI reset, each pin is set to input mode and the pull-up resistor is not connected.
P81	OSC2/IRQ3A		No	
P82	C1		No	
P83	C2		No	
P84	VLC3		No	
P85	VLC2		No	

Table:1.3.3 Special Function Pin

Pin name	Input/ Output	Description
SBI0A(RXD0A) SBI0B(RXD0B) SBI1A(RXD1A) SBI1B(RXD1B) SBI2A SBI2B SBI3A SBI3B	Input	Serial data input pins -Pull-up resistor can be added by setting PnPLUP. -Select the input mode by setting PnDIR. -Select the serial data input by setting SCnMD1.SCnSBIS. (n = 0,1,2,3)
SBO0A(TXD0A) SBO0B(TXD0B) SBO1A(TXD1A) SBO1B(TXD1B) SBO2A(SDA2A) SBO2B(SDA2B) SBO3A(SDA3A) SBO3B(SDA3B) SBO3C(SDA3C)	Input/ Output	Serial data I/O pins -Pull-up resistor can be added by setting PnPLUP. -Select the output mode by setting PnDIR. -Select the serial data output by setting SCnMD1.SCnSBOS. (n = 0,1,2,3) -Select the push-pull or Nch-open drain by setting PnODC.
SBT0A SBT0B SBT1A SBT1B SBT2A(SCL2A) SBT2B(SCL2B) SBT3A(SCL3A) SBT3B(SCL3B) SBT3C(SCL3C)	Input/ Output	Serial clock I/O pins -Pull-up resistor can be added by setting PnPLUP. -Select the input or output mode by setting PnDIR. -Select the serial clock I/O by setting SCnMD1.SCnSBTS. (n = 0,1,2,3) -Select the push-pull or Nch-open drain by setting PnODC.
SBCS0A/SBCS0B SBCS1A/SBCS1B SBCS2A/SBCS2B SBCS3A/SBCS3B	Input/ Output	Serial chip select I/O pins -Pull-up resistor can be added by setting PnPLUP. -Select the input or output mode by setting PnDIR. -Select the serial chip select I/O by setting SCnMD3.SCnSBTS. (n = 0,1) or SCnMD2.SCnSBCSEN(n = 2,3)
TM0IOA/TM0IOB TM1IOA/TM1IOB TM2IOA/TM2IOB TM3IOA/TM3IOB TM4IOA/TM4IOB TM5IOA/TM5IOB TM7IOA/TM7IOB TM8IOA/TM8IOB TM9IOA/TM9IOB	Input/ Output	Timer I/O pins -When capturing the external event signal, select the input mode by setting PnDIR. -To output the timer output signal, select the output mode by setting PnDIR, and the output port with TMIOENn/TMIOSELn (n = 0,1).
AN0/AN1/AN2/AN3/ AN4/AN5/AN6/AN7	Input	Analog input pins for ADC -Select the analog input pin with ANEN0.
IRQ0A/IRQ0B IRQ1A/IRQ1B IRQ2A/IRQ2B IRQ3A/IRQ3B IRQ4A/IRQ4B/IRQ4C IRQ5A/IRQ5B/IRQ5C IRQ6A/IRQ6B	Input	External interrupt input pins -Select the external interrupt pin with IRQIEN, IRQISEL0 and IRQISEL1.
KEY0A/KEY0B KEY1A/KEY1B KEY2A/KEY2B KEY3A/KEY3B KEY4A/KEY4B KEY5A/KEY5B KEY6A/KEY6B KEY7A/KEY7B	Input	Key interrupt input pins -Select the key interrupt pin with KEYIEN and KEYSEL.
COMn (n = 0 to 7)	Output	LCD common output pins -Select the common output pin with LCCTRn.

Pin name	Input/ Output	Description
SEGn (n = 0 to 42)	Output	LCD segment output pins -Select the segment output pin with LCCTRn.
BUZA/BUZB	Output	Buzzer output pin -Select the buzzer output pin with BUZCNT.
NBUZA/NBUZB	Output	Inverted Buzzer output pin -Select the inverted buzzer output pin with BUZCNT.
CLKOUTA/CLKOUTB	Output	Clock output pins -Select the clkout pin with CLKOUT.
OCD_CLK OCD_DATA	Input/ Output	On-board debugger I/O pins These pins are used for on-board debugging.

1.4 Electrical Characteristics

1.4.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

A. Absolute Maximum Ratings *2 *3 V_{SS} = 0 V

Parameter			Symbol	Rating	Unit
A1	Supply voltage		V_{DD30}	-0.3 to +4.6	V
A2	Input pin voltage		V_I	-0.3 to V_{DD30} + 0.3 (up to 4.6)	V
A3	Output pin voltage		V_O	-0.3 to V_{DD30} + 0.3 (up to 4.6)	
A4	Input/Output pin voltage		V_{IO1}	-0.3 to V_{DD30} + 0.3 (up to 4.6)	
A5	Peak output current	Except P1/8 *4	I_{OL1} (peak)	30	mA
A6		P1/8	I_{OL2} (peak)	10	
A7		All pins	I_{OH} (peak)	-10	
A8	Average output current *1	Except P1/8 *4	I_{OL1} (avg)	20	
A9		P1/8	I_{OL2} (avg)	5	
A10		All pins	I_{OH} (avg)	-5	
A11	Total output current for all pins *1		I_{TOL}	60	
A12			I_{TOH}	-60	
A13	Power dissipation		P_T	230 (Ta = +85 °C)	mW
A14	Operating ambient temperature		T_{opr}	-40 to +85	°C
A15	Storage temperature		T_{stg}	-55 to +125	

*1 The values are applied to any period of 100 ms.

*2 To stabilize the internal power supply voltage, connect bypass capacitors as follows to at least one or more points close to the LSI: Capacitors of 1μF or more between VDD30 and VSS, Capacitors of 0.1 μF and 1μF or more between VOUT18 and VSS.

*3 The absolute maximum ratings are the limit values beyond which the IC may be damaged.
Operation is not guaranteed under these conditions.

*4 The value is applied when selecting the large current output by setting PnNLC register.

1.4.2 Operating Condition

B. Operating Condition

V_{SS} = 0 V
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Supply voltage *5							
B1	Supply voltage	V_{DD1}	$f_{SYSCLK} \leq$ 10.0 MHz	1.8	--	3.6	V
B2		V_{DD2}	$f_{SYSCLK} \leq$ 1.0 MHz *6	1.3	--	3.6	
B3		V_{DD3}	$f_{SYSCLK} \leq$ 40 kHz *7 *9	1.1	--	3.6	
B4	RAM retention supply voltage	V_{DD4}	At STOP mode *9	1.1	--	3.6	
Operating speed *8							
B5	Instruction execution time $1/f_{SYSCLK}$	t_{c1}	V_{DD30} = 1.8 V to 3.6 V	0.1	--	--	µs
B6		t_{c2}	V_{DD30} = 1.3 V to 3.6 V	1.0	--	--	
B7		t_{c3}	V_{DD30} = 1.1 V to 3.6 V *9	25.0	--	--	

*5 f_{SYSCLK}: Frequency for the system clock

*6 When f_{SYSCLK} is generated by using the internal high-speed oscillation.

*7 When f_{SYSCLK} is generated by using the external low-speed oscillation or the internal low-speed oscillation.

*8 tc1,2: When f_{SYSCLK} is generated by using the internal high-speed oscillation or the external high-speed oscillation.
(However, for tc2, only by using the internal high-speed oscillation)
tc3: When f_{SYSCLK} is generated by using the internal low-speed oscillation.

*9 When using auto reset function, the lowest voltage is the auto reset detection voltage.

$V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL}$ to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
V_{RSTL} = 1.1 V at auto reset function
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Crystal oscillation 1 Figure:1.4.1 (MN101LR02D is not applicable.)							
B8	Frequency	$F_{HOSCCLK}$	V_{DD30} = 1.8 V to 3.6 V	1.0	--	10.0	MHz
Crystal oscillation 2 Figure:1.4.2							
B9	Frequency	$F_{SOSCCLK}$	$V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL}$ to 3.6 V	--	32.768	--	kHz
Internal high-speed RC oscillation *10							
B10	Frequency	$F_{HRCCLK10}$	V_{DD30} = 1.8 V to 3.6 V FCNT = "00"	--	10	--	MHz
B11		$F_{HRCCLK8}$	V_{DD30} = 1.8 V to 3.6 V FCNT = "01"	--	8	--	MHz
B12		$F_{HRCCLK1}$	V_{DD30} = 1.3 V to 3.6 V FCNT = "10"	--	1	--	MHz

V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL} to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
V_{RSTL} = 1.1 V at auto reset function
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
B13	Temperature/Voltage dependence	E_{F1}	f_{HRCCLK} = 8/10 MHz Ta = 0 °C to +50 °C	-1.5	--	1.5	%
B14		E_{F2}	f_{HRCCLK} = 8/10 MHz Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C	-3.0	--	3.0	
B15	Temperature/Voltage dependence	E_{F5}	f_{HRCCLK} = 1 MHz Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C	-10.0	--	10.0	%
Internal low-speed RC oscillation							
B16	Frequency	F_{SRCCLK}	V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL} to 3.6 V	--	40	--	kHz
B17	Temperature/Voltage dependence	E_{F6}	Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C	-20.0	--	20.0	%

*10 Output frequency of the internal high-speed RC oscillation can be selected by setting the FCNT bit of HCLKCNT register.

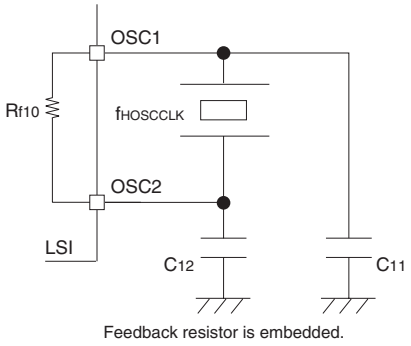


Figure:1.4.1 High-speed oscillation

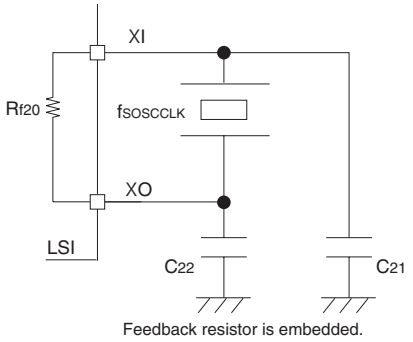


Figure:1.4.2 Low-speed oscillation

Connect the external capacitance to match the oscillator used.
When using the crystal or ceramic oscillator, consult your oscillator manufacturer to decide the external capacitance value since the oscillation frequency changes depending on the capacitor value.

The external low-speed oscillation of other than 32.768 kHz can't be used.

V_{DD30} = 1.8 V to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
V_{RSTL} = 1.1 V at auto reset function
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
External clock input 1 OSC1 (OSC2 is open.) (MN101LR02D is not applicable.)							
B18	Clock frequency	$f_{HOSCCLK}$		1.0	--	10.0	MHz
B19	High period time *11	t_{wh1}	Figure:1.4.3	45	--	--	ns
B20	Low period time *11	t_{wl1}		45	--	--	
B21	Rise time	t_{wr1}	Figure:1.4.3	--	--	5.0	
B22	Fall time	t_{wf1}		--	--	5.0	

*11 Set the clock duty ratio to the value from 45 % to 55 %.

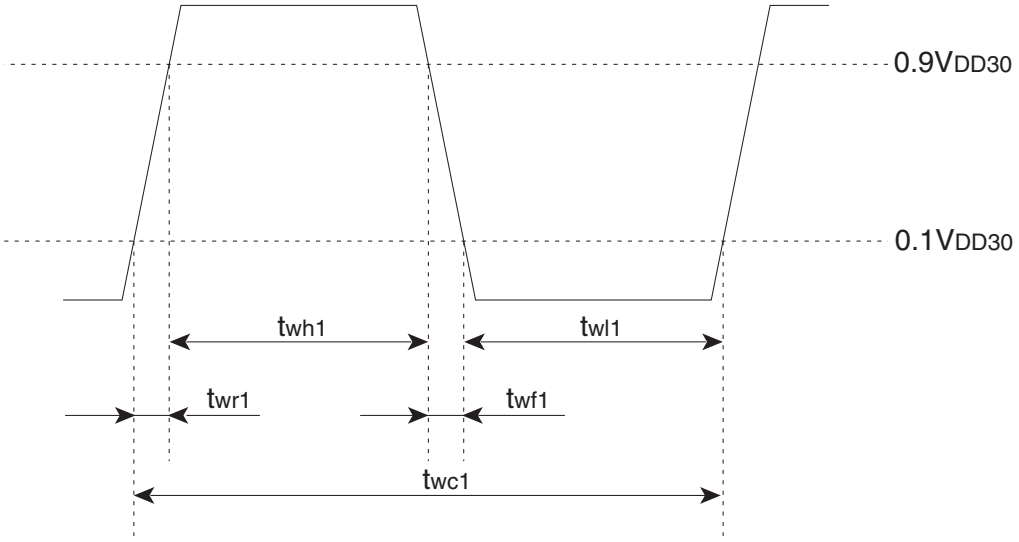


Figure:1.4.3 OSC1 timing diagram

1.4.3 DC Characteristics

C. DC Characteristics

V_{SS} = 0 V
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Supply current *12							
C1	Operating supply current	I_{DD1}	$f_{HOSCCLK}$ = 10 MHz, V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.8 V [f_{SYSCLK} = $f_{HOSCCLK}$]	--	2.1	3.1	mA
C2		I_{DD2}	f_{HRCCLK} = 10 MHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.8 V [f_{SYSCLK} = f_{HRCCLK}]	--	2.1	3.0	
C3		I_{DD3}	f_{HRCCLK} = 8 MHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.8 V [f_{SYSCLK} = f_{HRCCLK}]	--	1.72	2.5	
C4		I_{DD4}	f_{HRCCLK} = 8 MHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.8 V [f_{SYSCLK} = f_{HRCCLK}/2]	--	0.94	1.5	
C5		I_{DD5}	$f_{HOSCCLK}$ = 4 MHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.8 V [f_{SYSCLK} = $f_{HOSCCLK}$]	--	0.84	1.3	
C6		I_{DD6}	f_{HRCCLK} = 1 MHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.3 V [f_{SYSCLK} = f_{HRCCLK}]	--	0.22	0.36	
C7		I_{DD7}	$f_{SOSCCLK}$ = 32.768 kHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V [f_{SYSCLK} = $f_{SOSCCLK}$]	--	5.6	9.5	µA
C8		I_{DD8}	f_{SRCCLK} = 40 kHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V [f_{SYSCLK} = f_{SRCCLK}/2]	--	4.2	11.6	

C. DC Characteristics

V_{SS} = 0 V
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
C9	Supply current in HALT	I_{DD9}	HALT0 mode f_{HRCCLK} = 8 MHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V	--	0.24	0.33	mA
C10		I_{DD10}	HALT2 mode $f_{SOSCCLK}$ = 32.768 kHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V Ta = 25 °C (HOSCCLK/HRCCLK/SRCCLK are stopped)	--	0.2	0.4	µA
C11		I_{DD11}	HALT3 mode $f_{SOSCCLK}$ = 32.768 kHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V Ta = 25 °C, HALTMOD = 1 (HOSCCLK/HRCCLK/SRCCLK are stopped)	--	0.5	0.7	
C12		I_{DD12}	HALT3 mode $f_{SOSCCLK}$ = 32.768 kHz V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V Ta = 85 °C, HALTMOD = 1 (HOSCCLK/HRCCLK/SRCCLK are stopped)	--	--	2.9	
C13	Supply current in STOP	I_{DD13}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V Ta = 25 °C (HOSCCLK/HRCCLK/ SOSCCLK/SRCCLK are stopped)	--	0.06	0.24	
C14		I_{DD14}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{DD18} = 1.1 V Ta = 85 °C (HOSCCLK/HRCCLK/ SOSCCLK/SRCCLK are stopped)	--	--	2.6	

*12 The supply current is measured with Ta = 25 °C, no-load, and all the analog part in the power-down state. (The pull-up/down resistors are not connected.) Each supply current is measured with the following conditions.

$I_{DD1, 5}$ (Operating supply current): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, V_{DD18} (the Logic supply voltage) to 1.8 V, the oscillation mode to NORMAL (the external oscillation), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level and input the 10/4 MHz square wave, which has the amplitude from V_{DD30} to V_{SS}, from OSC1 pin.

$I_{DD2, 3, 4}$ (Operating supply current): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, V_{DD18} (the Logic supply voltage) to 1.8 V, the oscillation mode to NORMAL (the internal high-oscillation; 10/8 MHz), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level.

I_{DD6} (Operating supply current): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, V_{DD18} (the Logic supply voltage) to 1.3 V, the oscillation mode to NORMAL (the internal high-oscillation; 1 MHz), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level.

I_{DD7} (Operating supply current): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, V_{DD18} (the Logic supply voltage) to 1.1 V, the oscillation mode to SLOW (the external oscillation), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level and input the 32.768 kHz square wave, which has the amplitude from V_{DD30} to V_{SS}, from XI pin.

I_{DD8} (Operating supply current): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, V_{DD18} (the Logic supply voltage) to 1.1 V, the oscillation mode to SLOW (the internal low-oscillation; 40 kHz), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level.

I_{DD9} (Supply current in HALT): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, the oscillation mode to HALT0 (the internal high-oscillation), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level.

I_{DD10} (Supply current in HALT): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, the oscillation mode to HALT2 (the external low-oscillation), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level and input the 32.768 kHz square wave, which has the amplitude from V_{DD30} to V_{SS}, from XI pin.

$I_{DD11,12}$ (Supply current in HALT): After setting all input and output pins to the input mode, the oscillation mode to HALT3 (the external low-oscillation), fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level and input the 32.768 kHz square wave, which has the amplitude from V_{DD30} to V_{SS}, from XI pin.

$I_{DD13,14}$ (Supply current in STOP): After setting V_{DD18} (the Logic supply voltage) to 1.1 V and the oscillation mode to STOP, fix the input pins to V_{DD30} level and make OSC1 and XI pins open.

C1, C5: MN101LR02D is not applicable.

V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL} to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
V_{RSTL} = 1.1 V at auto reset function
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Input pin 1 NATRON							
C15	High-level input voltage	V_{IH1}		$0.8V_{DD30}$	--	V_{DD30}	V
C16	Low-level input voltage	V_{IL1}		0	--	$0.2V_{DD30}$	
C17	Input leakage current	I_{LK1}	V_I = 0 V to V_{DD30}	--	--	± 1	μA
Input pin 2 DMOD							
C18	High-level input voltage	V_{IH2}		$0.8V_{DD30}$	--	V_{DD30}	V
C19	Low-level input voltage	V_{IL2}		0	--	$0.2V_{DD30}$	
C20	Pull-down resistance	I_{RL2}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_I = V_{DD30}	30	100	300	kΩ
Input/Output pin 3 P10 to P17, P80 to P85 (Schmitt input)							
C21	High-level input voltage	V_{IH3}		$0.8V_{DD30}$	--	V_{DD30}	V
C22	Low-level input voltage	V_{IL3}		0	--	$0.2V_{DD30}$	
C23	Input leakage current	I_{LK3}	V_I = 0 V to V_{DD30}	--	--	± 1	μA
C24	Pull-down resistance	I_{RH3}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_I = V_{SS} with pull-up resistor	30	100	300	kΩ
C25	High-level output voltage	V_{OH3}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, I_{OH} = -2.0 mA	2.4	--	--	V
C26	Low-level output voltage	V_{OL3}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, I_{OL} = 2.0 mA	--	--	0.4	
Input/Output pin 4 P00 to P07, P20 to P26, P30 to P37, P40 to P47, P50 to P57, P60 to P67, P70 to P77 (Schmitt input)							
C27	High-level input voltage	V_{IH4}		$0.8V_{DD30}$	--	V_{DD30}	V
C28	Low-level input voltage	V_{IL4}		0	--	$0.2V_{DD30}$	
C29	Input leakage current	I_{LK4}	V_I = 0 V to V_{DD30}	--	--	±1	μA
C30	Pull-down resistance	I_{RH4}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_I = V_{SS} with pull-up resistor	30	100	300	kΩ
C31	High-level output voltage	V_{OH4}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, I_{OH} = -2.0 mA	2.4	--	--	V
C32	Low-level output voltage 1	V_{OL41}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, I_{OL} = 2.0 mA at Large output current OFF	--	--	0.4	
C33	Low-level output voltage 2	V_{OL42}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, I_{OL} = 8.0 mA at Large output current ON	--	--	0.4	
Input pin 5 P27(NRST)							
C34	High-level input voltage	V_{IH5}		$0.8V_{DD30}$	--	V_{DD30}	V
C35	Low-level input voltage	V_{IL5}		0	--	$0.15V_{DD30}$	
C36	Pull-down resistance	I_{RH5}	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_I = V_{SS} with pull-up resistor	30	100	300	kΩ

V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL} to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
V_{RSTL} = 1.1 V at auto reset function
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Display output pin 1 COM0 to COM7 (at V_{LC1}, V_{SS} output) (MN101LR02D is not applicable.)							
C37	Potential difference of output waveform	V_{OCM}	V_{DD30} = V_{LC1} = 3.0 V I_{COM} = 10 μA	--	--	0.6	V
Display output pin 2 SEG0 to SEG42 (at V_{LC1}, V_{SS} output) (MN101LR02D is not applicable.)							
C38	Voltage difference of output waveform	V_{OSG}	V_{DD30} = V_{LC1} = 3.0 V I_{SEG} = 2 μA	--	--	0.6	V
LCD boost output pin 1 VLC1, VLC2, VLC3 (VLC3: Triple output compared to the reference voltage output) (MN101LR02D is not applicable.)							
C39	Output voltage	V_{LC1}	V_{DD30}=V_{RSTL} to 3.0 V V_{LC3} = 1.0 V, Ta = 25 °C LCD display OFF, SEG/COM with no load, LCD boost clock = 125 kHz	2.7	3.0	3.3	V
C40		V_{LC2}		1.8	2.0	2.2	
C41		V_{LC3}		0.9	1.0	1.1	

1.4.4 A/D Converter Characteristics

D. A/D Converter characteristics *13

V_{DD30} = 3.0 V V_{SS} = 0 V
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
D1	Resolution	RSL		--	--	12	Bits
D2	Nonlinearity error	INL	V_{DD30} = 3.0 V, V_{SS} = 0 V V_{REFP} = 3.0 V T_{AD} = 750 ns	--	--	±4	LSB
D3	Differential non-linearity error	DNL		--	--	±3	
D4	Zero voltage transition	E_{ZS}		--	10	30	mV
D5	full-scale voltage transition	E_{FS}		2970	2990	--	
D6	AD conversion time	t_{CV}	f_{SYSCLK} = 8 MHz, T_{AD} = 750 ns	15.38	--	--	µs
D7	Sampling time	t_S	T_{AD} = 750 ns	1.5	--	--	
D8	Reference voltage	V_{REFP}	$V_{REFP} \leq V_{DD30}$	1.8	--	V_{DD30}	V
D9	Analog input voltage	V_{AIN}		V_{SS}	--	V_{REFP}	
D10	Analog input leakage current	I_{AINL}	At channel off V_{ADIN} = 0 V to V_{DD30}	--	--	±1	µA

*13 T_{AD} denotes the clock cycle for A/D conversion.
The value from D2 to D5 are guaranteed under the condition of V_{DD30} = V_{REFP} = 3.0 V and V_{SS} = 0 V.

1.4.5 Reset/Power supply Detection Characteristics

E. Reset/Power supply Detection Characteristics

V_{DD30} = V_{RSTL} to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
V_{RSTL} = 1.1 V at auto reset function
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
Reset							
E1	Operating supply current	V_{DD3}	With auto reset	V_{RSTL}	--	3.6	V
E2	Auto reset voltage detection level	V_{RSTH}	V_{DD30} = "Low" --> "High"	1.10	1.23	1.35	
E3		V_{RSTL}	V_{DD30} = "High" --> "Low"	1.10	1.18	1.30	
E4	Slope of voltage startup	SL_{VDD30}		--	--	1.0	V/ms
Power supply Detection							
E5	Detection error	E_{LVI}		-2.0	--	2.0	%
E6	Detection voltage	V_{LVI}		1.05	1.15	1.25	V
				1.10	1.20	1.30	
				1.15	1.25	1.35	
				1.20	1.30	1.40	
				1.25	1.35	1.45	
				1.30	1.40	1.50	
				1.40	1.50	1.60	
				1.50	1.60	1.70	
				1.60	1.70	1.80	
				1.70	1.80	1.90	
				1.80	1.90	2.00	
				1.90	2.00	2.10	
				2.00	2.10	2.20	
				2.10	2.20	2.30	
				2.20	2.30	2.40	
				2.30	2.40	2.50	
				2.40	2.50	2.60	
				2.50	2.60	2.70	
				2.60	2.70	2.80	
				2.70	2.80	2.90	
				2.80	2.90	3.00	

1.4.6 ReRAM Program Condition

F. ReRAM Program Condition

V_{DD30} = 1.8 V to 3.6 V, V_{SS} = 0 V
Ta = -40 °C to +85 °C

Parameter		Symbol	Condition	Limits			Unit
				MIN	TYP	MAX	
F1	Supply voltage for programming	V_{DDEW}		1.8	--	3.6	V
F2	Guaranteed number of rewriting *14	NUM_{W1}	Program area	1000	--	--	time
		NUM_{W2}	Data area	100000	--	--	
F3	Data hold time	T_{HOLD}		10	--	--	year

*14 One cycle from elimination to writing is counted as the number of rewriting.
Even if the same block is rewritten only once, rewrite of each of blocks is individually counted as a rewrite count.

1.5 Package Dimension

- Package code: TQFP080-P-1212 Unit: mm

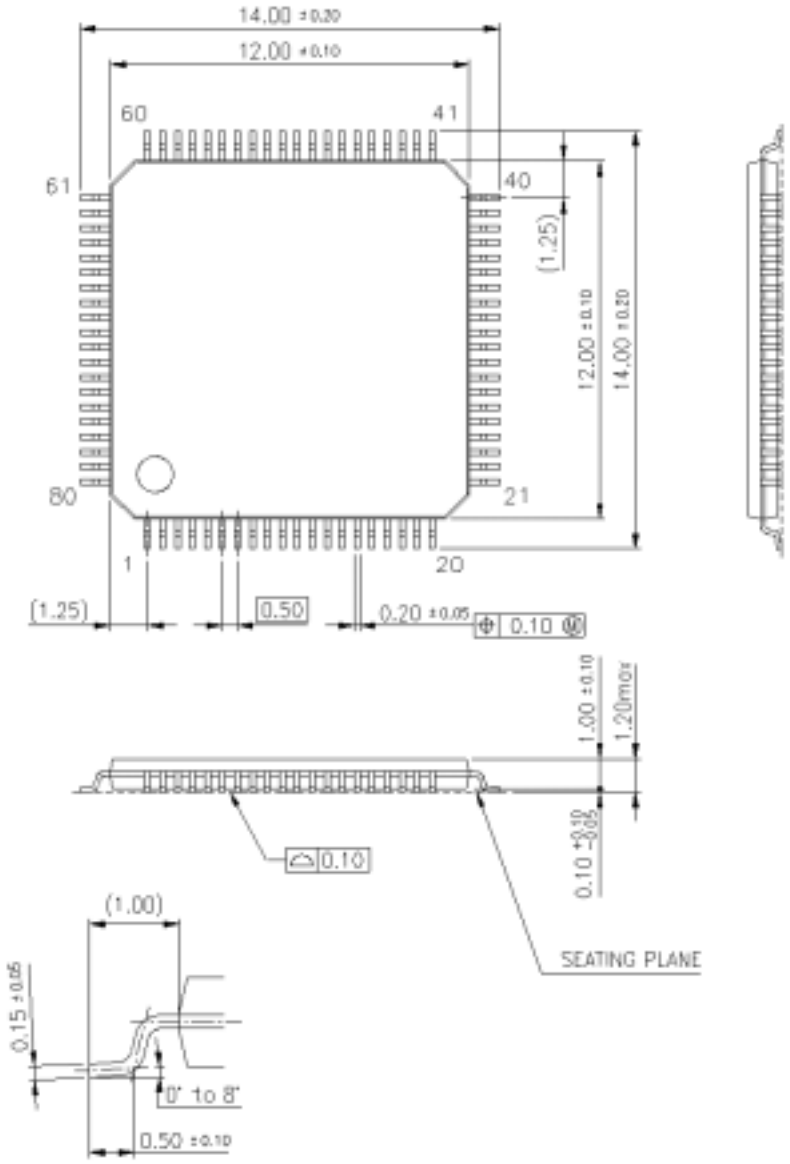


Figure:1.5.1 80-pin TQFP Package Dimension

■ Package code: TQFP064-P-1010 Unit: mm

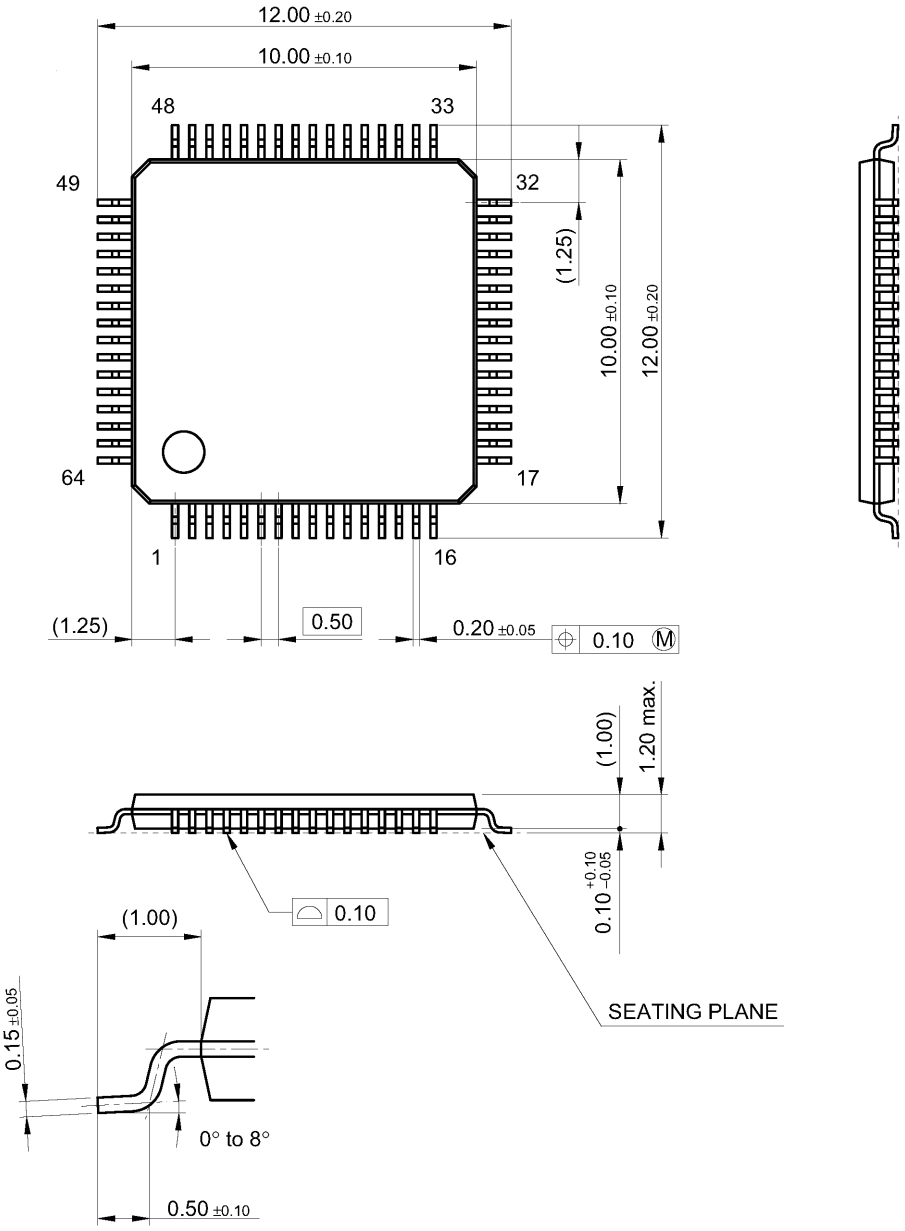


Figure:1.5.2 64-pin TQFP Package Dimension

■ Package code: TQFP048-P-0707 Unit: mm

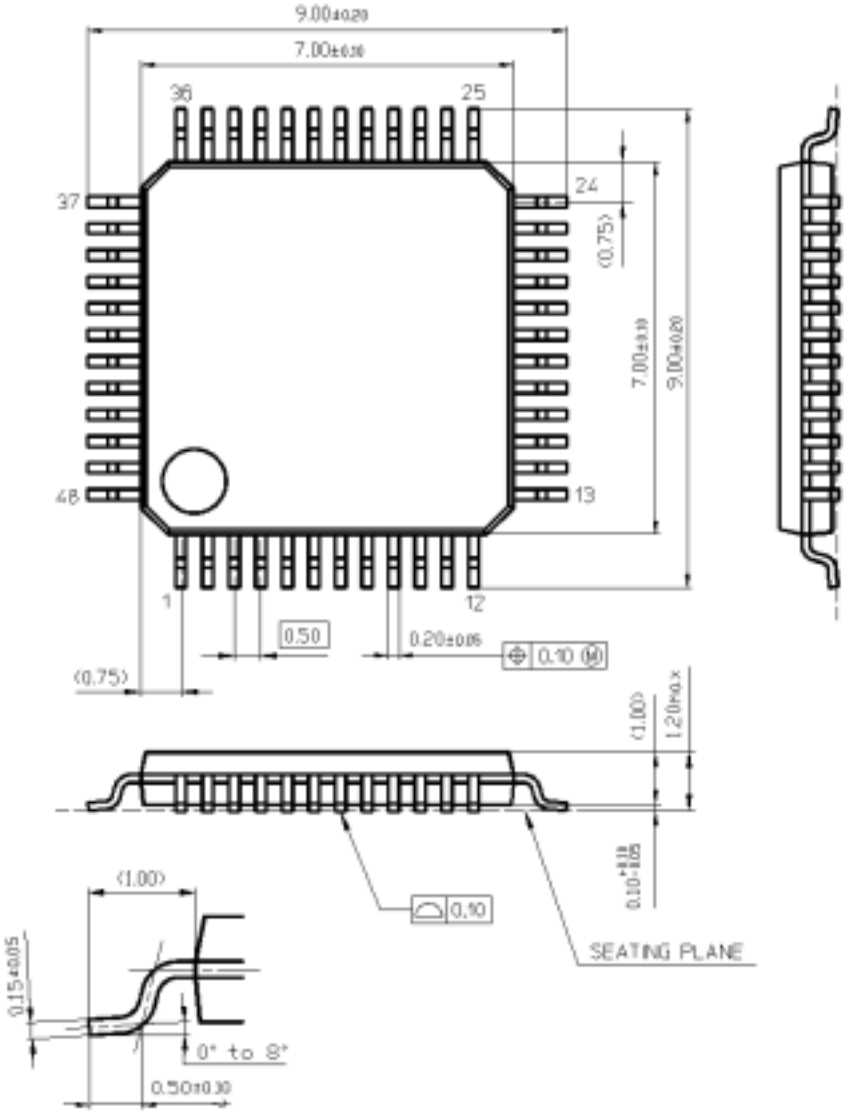


Figure:1.5.3 48-pin TQFP Package Dimension

■ Package code: HQFN032-A-0505 Unit: mm

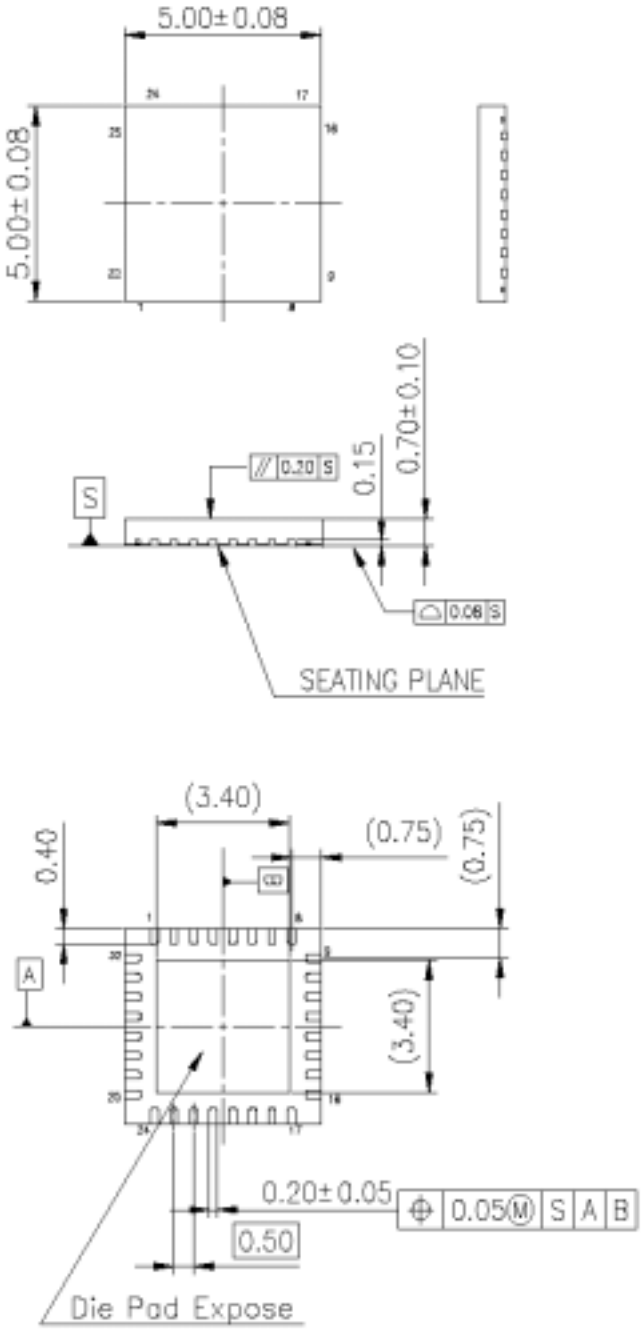


Figure:1.5.4 32-pin HQFN Package Dimension

This package dimension is subject to change. Before using this product, obtain product specifications from our sales offices.

1.6 Cautions for Circuit Setup

1.6.1 Usage Notes

■ Connection of VDD30 and VSS

VDD30 and VSS pins should be connected directly to the power supply and ground respectively.
Do not mount the LSI on the printed circuit board in the wrong direction in order not to destroy it because of the meltdown of wiring due to large current etc..

■ Cautions for Operation

1. If the LSI is used close to high-field emissions (under the cathode ray tube, etc.), shield the package surface to ensure normal performance.
2. Operation temperature should be well considered. If the temperature is over the guaranteed value, unexpected operation could be occurred.
3. Operation voltage should be also well considered.
    - If the operation voltage is over the operating range, reliability (lifetime due to the aged deterioration) can not be guaranteed.
    - If the operating voltage is below the operating range, unexpected operation could be occurred.

1.6.2 Unused Pins

■ Unused Pin (only for output)

Unconnect the unused output pin.

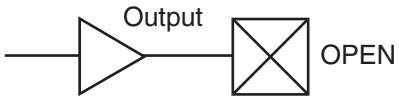


Figure:1.6.1 Unused Pin (only for output)

■ Unused Pin (only for input)

Pull-up (or down) the unused input pins with the resistor, the value of which is typically between 10 kΩ and 100 kΩ.

When the input voltage level is unstable, Pch transistor and Nch transistor of input inverter are on, and through current goes to the input circuit. That increases current consumption and becomes noise sources to the internal power supply.

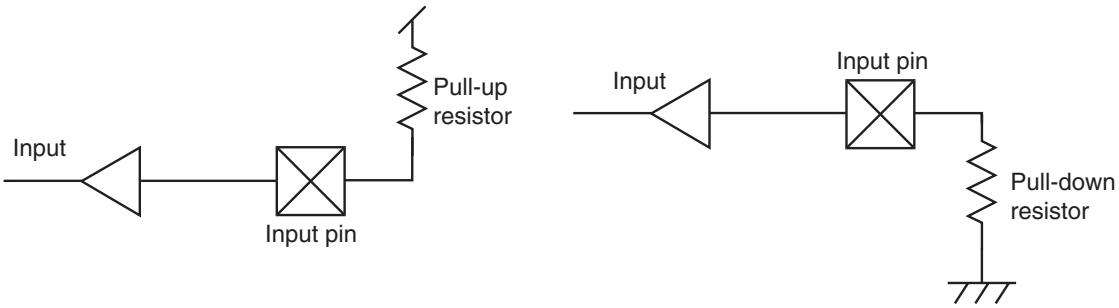


Figure:1.6.2 Unused Pin (only for input)

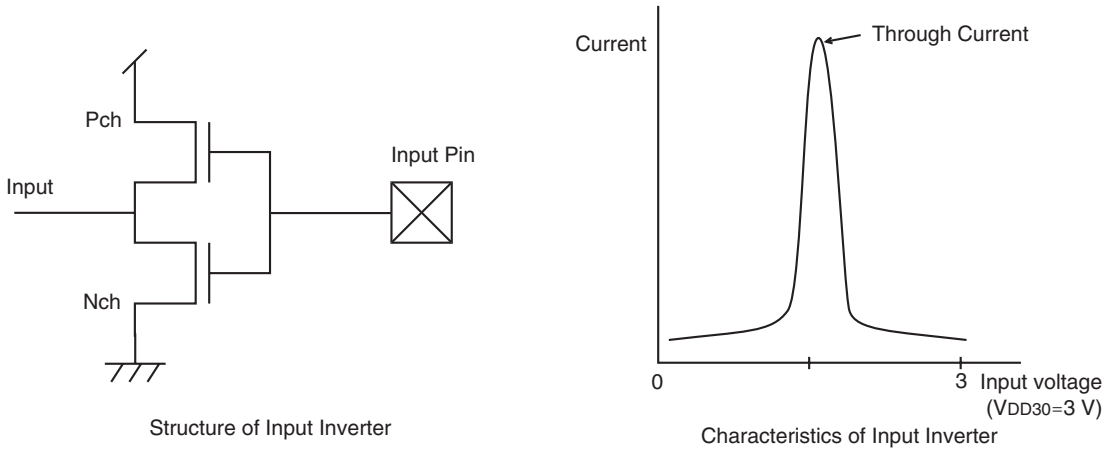


Figure:1.6.3 Structure and Characteristics of Input Inverter

■ Input and Output pin

When the direction of unused I/O pin is set to input, pull-up or down the pin with the resistor, the value of which is typically between 10 kΩ and 100 kΩ.
When the unused I/O pin is configured as output, it should be left unconnected.

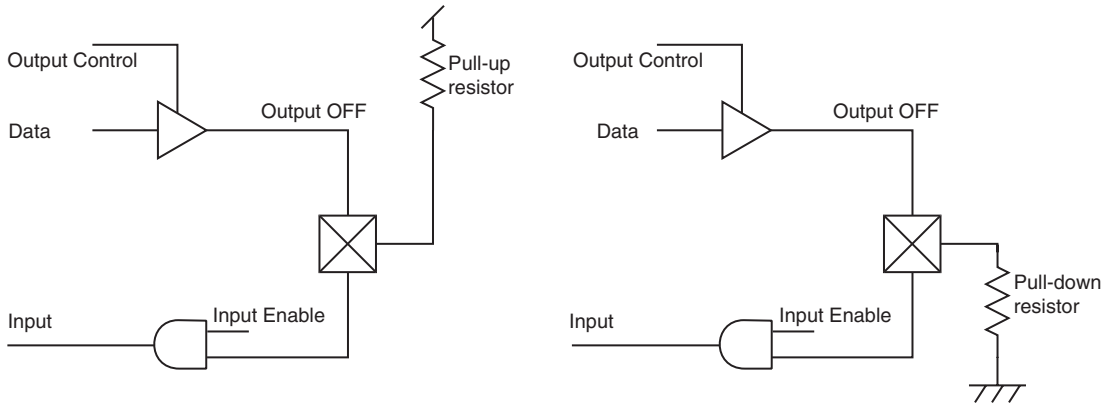


Figure:1.6.4 Unused I/O Pins

■ Recommended Condition of Each Pin *3

Pin name	Input/Output	Recommended condition of unused pins	
P00 to P07 P10 to P17 P20 to P26 P30 to P37 P40 to P47 P50 to P57 P60 to P67 P70 to P77 P80 to P85	Input/output	Input	Pull-up (or down) the pins with the resistor, the value of which is typically between 10 kΩ and 100 kΩ. *1 *2
		Output	Unconnect the pins.
XI	Input		Unconnect the pins.
XO	Output		Unconnect the pins.
P27	Input/output		When connecting capacitors between P27 and V_{SS}, the discharge diodes between P27 and V_{DD30} should be connected.
VREFP	-		Set $V_{REFP} = V_{DD30}$.
NATRON	Input		Pull-up the pin to V_{DD30} (when auto reset function is disabled) or pull-down the pin to V_{SS} (when auto reset function is enabled) with the resistor, the value of which is typically between 10 kΩ and 100 kΩ.
DMOD	Input		Pull-down the pin to V_{SS} with the resistor, the value of which is typically between 1.5 kΩ and 100 kΩ. (Recommendation: between 10 kΩ and 100 kΩ)

*1 When unused pins are not connected, the microcomputer does not have the problem. However, it is easily influenced by the serge or noise. Evaluate enough for determining the appropriate configuration.

*2 When pins are unused, set them to the general-purpose port function.

*3 Evaluate enough in consideration of the influence by exogenous noise and decide the condition of each pin.

1.6.3 Power Supply

■ Relation between Power Supply and Input Pin Voltage

Input pin voltage should be supplied only after power supply is on. Failure to the sequence can cause the destruction of the LSI because of the large current.

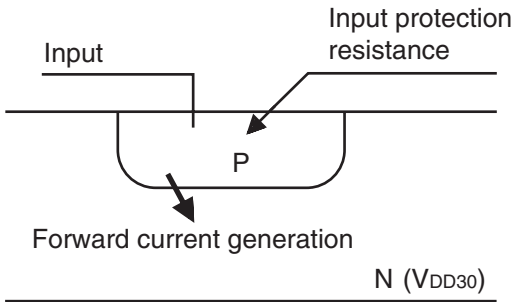


Figure:1.6.5 V_{DD30} and Input Pin Voltage

■ Relation between Power Supply and Reset Input Voltage with Auto-reset disable

After the LSI turns on, input the sufficient reset pin voltage to be recognized as the reset signal.

For more information, refer to the [2.5.1 Reset function]

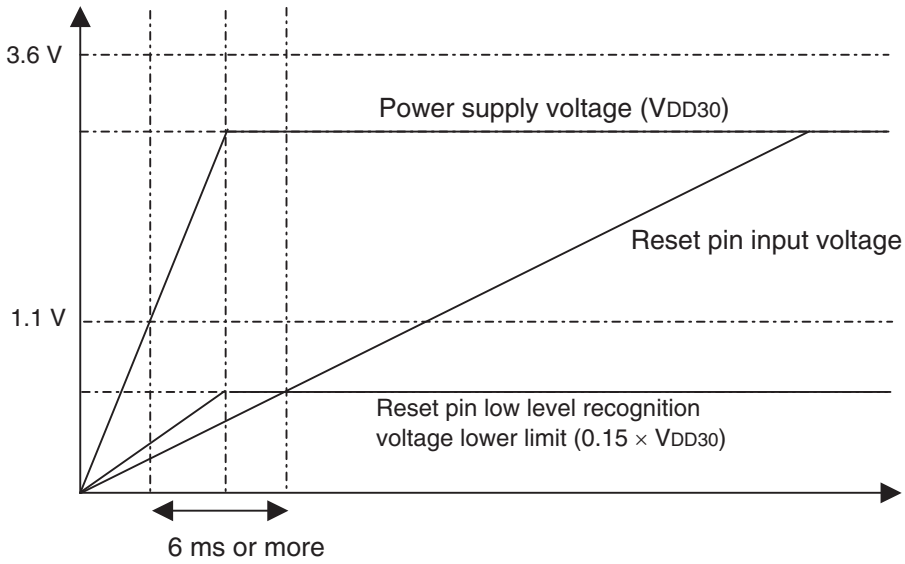


Figure:1.6.6 Power Supply and Reset Input Voltage

1.6.4 Power Supply Circuit

■ Cautions for Power Circuit Design

The MOS logic such a microcomputer is high-speed and high-density. So, the power circuit should be designed, taking into consideration of AC line noise, ripple caused by LED driver.

An example of a circuit with V_{DD30} (emitter follower type) is shown below.

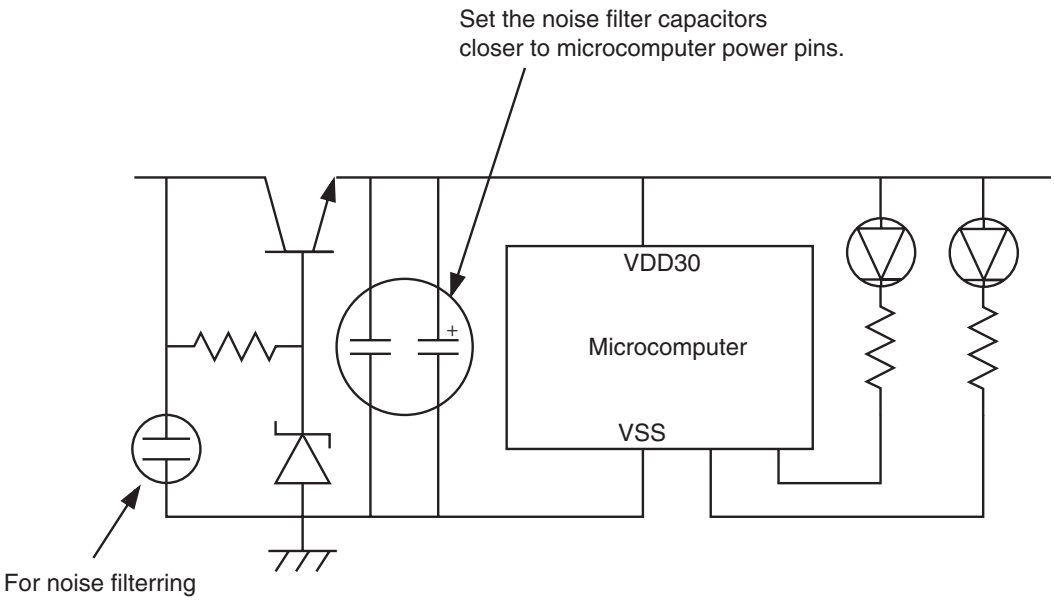


Figure:1.6.7 Power Circuit Example (emitter follower type)

Chapter 2 CPU

2

2.1 Overview

The AM13L core (CPU), upward compatible with MN101C/E core, has the enhanced calculation units, shortens the interrupt latency and has the 16-bit bus architecture to access instruction/data memory and peripheral circuits.

The CPU executes most of instructions in one clock cycle, and achieves high performance comparable to a 16-bit microcomputers.

Table:2.1.1 Basic Specifications of CPU

Structure	Load / Store architecture	
	Registers	Data: 8-bit × 4 Address: 16-bit × 2
	Others	SP: 16 bits PC: 21 bits PSW: 8 bits
Instructions	Number of instructions	39
	Addressing modes	9
	Instruction length	Basic portion: 1-byte (Min.) Extended portion: 0.5-byte × n ($0 \leq n \leq 10$)
Basic performance	Internal operating frequency (Max.)	10 MHz
	Instruction execution	Min. 1 cycle
	Register to register operation	Min. 1 cycle
	Load / Store	Min. 1 cycle
	Condition branch	non-branching 1 cycle / branching 3 cycles
Pipeline	3-stage (instruction fetch, decode, execution), 4-stage (memory access)	
Address space	128 KB (Data area: 64 KB × 2 banks)	
	One shared memory for Instruction and data	
Interrupt	Vector interrupt, 3 interrupt levels	
Low-power consumption mode	STOP mode, HALT mode	

2.1.1 CPU Control Registers

The LSI allocates the peripheral circuit registers in memory space ("0x03000" to "0x03FFF").
CPU control registers are also allocated in the space.

Table:2.1.2 CPU Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Pages
CPUM	0x03F00	R/W	CPU mode control register	IV-4
MEMCTR	0x03F01	R/W	Memory control register	II-16
CKCTR	0x03F04	R/W	Clock control register	IV-6
AUCTR	0x03F07	W	Extended calculation control register	II-18
SBNKR	0x03F0A	R/W	Bank register for source address	II-12
DBNKR	0x03F0B	R/W	Bank register for destination address	II-12
NMICR	0x03FE1	R/W	Non-maskable interrupt control register	III-22
xxxICR	0x03FE2 to 0x03FFE	R/W	Maskable interrupt control register	III-22 to III-24

2.1.2 Data Registers (D0, D1, D2, D3)

Data registers D0 to D3 are 8-bit general-purpose registers.
The four data registers can be paired to form the 16-bit data registers DW0 (D0, D1) and DW1 (D2, D3).
The initial value of Dn is "0x00".

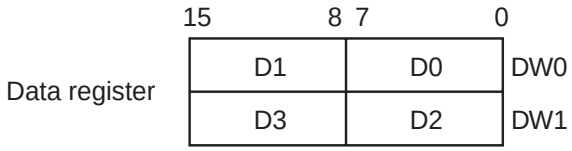


Figure:2.1.1 Data Registers

2.1.3 Address Registers (A0, A1)

These registers are used as address pointers specifying data locations. The initial value of An is "0x0000".

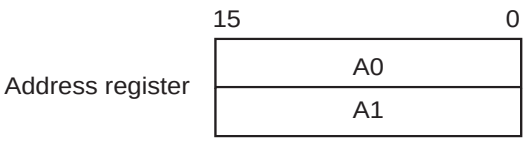


Figure:2.1.2 Address Registers

2.1.4 Stack Pointer (SP)

This register shows the top address of the stack. The initial value of SP is "0x0100".

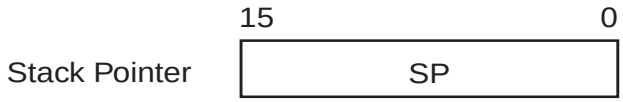


Figure:2.1.3 Stack Pointer

2.1.5 Program Counter (PC)

This register gives the address of the currently executed instruction, and the LSB shows the half-byte(4-bit) information. The value of vector table at the address of "0x04000" is stored in PC just after the LSI reset.

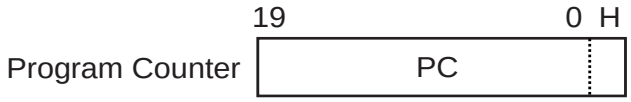


Figure:2.1.4 Program Counter

2.1.6 Processor Status Word (PSW)

PSW is pushed onto the stack at interrupt occurrence and popped at returning from the interrupt service routine automatically.

■ Processor Status Word (PSW)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	BKD	MIE	IM1-0		VF	NF	CF	ZF
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	BKD	Bank function control 0: Bank addressing is enabled. 1: Bank addressing is disabled.
6	MIE	Maskable interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
5-4	IM1-0	Interrupt mask level Controls accept level of maskable interrupt.
3	VF	Overflow detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
2	NF	Negative detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
1	CF	Carry detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
0	ZF	Zero detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

■ Zero Detection (ZF)

ZF is set to "1", when all bits are "0" in the operation result. Otherwise, zero bit is set to "0".

■ Carry Detection (CF)

CF is set to "1", when a carry from or a borrow to the MSB occurs. Carry bit is set to "0", when no carry or borrow occurs.

■ Negative Detection (NF)

NF is set to "1" when MSB is "1" and set to "0" when MSB is "0". Negative bit is used to handle a signed value.

■ Overflow Detection (VF)

VF is set to "1", when the operation results overflow as a signed value. Otherwise, overflow bit is set to "0". Overflow bit is used to handle a signed value.

■ Interrupt Mask Level (IM1 to IM0)

Interrupt mask level (IM1, IM0) controls the accept level of maskable interrupt.

■ Maskable Interrupt Enable (MIE)

When MIE is set to '1', the maskable interrupt which is not masked with IM1, IM0 is accepted and the value of MEMCTR.MIESET is load into MIE. When MIE is set to '0', all maskable interrupts are not accepted.

Table:2.1.3 Interrupt Mask Level and Interrupt Acceptance

MIE	Interrupt mask level		Priority	Acceptable interrupt level
	IM1	IM0		
0	Don't care			Non-maskable interrupt (NMI)
1	0	0	Highest	NMI
	0	1	Higher	NMI, level 0
	1	0	Lower	NMI, level 0 to 1
	1	1	Lowest	NMI, level 0 to 2

■ Bank Function Control (BKD)

When BKD is set to '1', bank function is not valid and data access area is limited within the address of 0x00000 to 0x0FFFF. At the interrupt occurrence, BKD bit is set to "1" and the bank function is invalid.
When returning from the above interrupt procedure, the set value of BKD is returned to the one which is set before the interrupt occurrence.

To enable the bank function in an interrupt service routine, set the BKD to "0" before accessing to data.

Before setting the interrupt control register (xxxICR), set PSW.MIE to "0".
If xxxICR is written when PSW.MIE is '1', there's no guarantee of proper operation.

2.1.7 Address Space

Figure:2.1.5 shows the address space in CPU.
The CPU has 12 KB of RAM area (Max.) and 112 KB of ROM area (Max.).
This LSI has 4 KB of RAM and 64 KB of ROM.

The instruction access can be used as linear address space except Special function register space. The data access needs bank specification in every 64 KB. (The initial value is first 64 KB space (0x00000 to 0x0FFFF)).

The data area consists of an area of 256 bytes (beginning at "0x00000") that supports efficient accesses with RAM short addressing and an special function area of 256 bytes (beginning at "0x03F00") that supports efficient accesses with I/O short addressing.

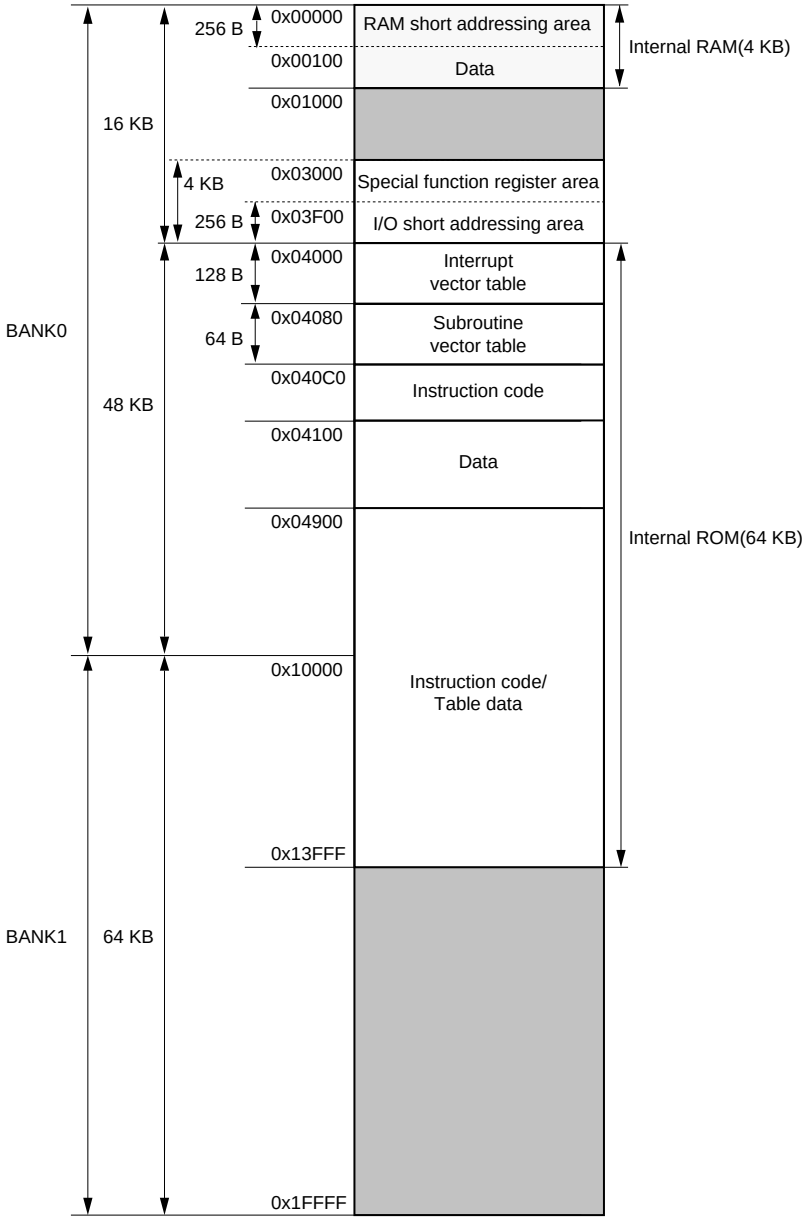


Figure:2.1.5 Address Space

The value of internal RAM is uncertain when power is applied to it. It needs to be initialized before using.

There's no guarantee of proper operation when an access is executed to the non-implemented space where a memory (ROM / RAM), a special function register, or others are not arranged.

Don’t allocate the instruction code to a special function register area. And this area cannot use as stack area.

2.1.8 Addressing Modes

The AM13L microcomputer core supports the 9 addressing modes. Each instruction uses a combination of the following addressing.

1. Register direct
2. Immediate
3. Register indirect
4. Register relative indirect
5. Stack relative indirect
6. Absolute
7. RAM short
8. I/O short
9. Handy

These addressing modes are well-suited for C language compilers.

For operation instruction, register direct and immediate can be used. All of the addressing modes can be used for data transfer instructions. In modes that allow half-byte addressing, the relative value can be specified in half-byte (4-bit) increments, so that instruction length can be shorter. Handy addressing reuses the last memory address accessed. There are 3 instructions that can use this mode: "MOV Dn, (HA)", "MOVW DWn, (HA)", "MOVW An, (HA)". Combining handy addressing with absolute addressing reduces code size. For transfer data between memory, 8 addressing modes; register indirect, register relative indirect, stack relative indirect, absolute, RAM short, I/O short, handy can be used. Refer to [MN101L Series Instruction Manual].

Addressing Modes		Effective address	Description	Higher 4-bit of data access address when bank addressing is enabled.
Register direct	Dn / DWn An / SP PSW	———	Directly specifies the register. Only internal registers can be specified.	
Immediate	imm4 / imm8 imm16	———	Directly specifies the operand or mask value appended to the instruction code.	
Register indirect	(An)	15 0 An	Specifies the address using an address register.	The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
Register relative indirect	(d8, An)	15 0 An + d8	Specifies the address using an address register with 8-bit displacement.	The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
	(d16, An)	15 0 An + d16	Specifies the address using an address register with 16-bit displacement.	The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
	(d4, PC) (branch instruction only)	19 0 H PC + d4 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 4-bit displacement and H bit.	
	(d7, PC) (branch instruction only)	19 0 H PC + d7 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 7-bit displacement and H bit.	
	(d11, PC) (branch instruction only)	19 0 H PC + d11 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 11-bit displacement and H bit.	
	(d12, PC) (branch instruction only)	19 0 H PC + d12 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 12-bit displacement and H bit.	
	(d16, PC) (branch instruction only)	19 0 H PC + d16 *1	Specifies the address using the program counter with 16-bit displacement and H bit.	
Stack relative indirect	(d4, SP)	15 0 SP + d4	Specifies the address using stack pointer with 4-bit displacement.	"0x0"
	(d8, SP)	15 0 SP + d8	Specifies the address using stack pointer with 8-bit displacement.	"0x0"
	(d16, SP)	15 0 SP + d16	Specifies the address using stack pointer with 16-bit displacement.	"0x0"
Absolute	(abs8)	7 0 abs8	Specifies the address using operand value appended to the instruction code. Optimum operand length can be used to specify the address.	The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
	(abs12)	11 0 abs12		The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
	(abs16)	15 0 abs16		The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
	(abs18) (branch instruction only)	17 0 H abs18 *1		
	(abs20) (branch instruction only)	19 0 H abs20 *1		
RAM short	(abs8)	7 0 abs8	Specifies an 8-bit offset from the address "0x00000".	The value of SBNKR or DBNKR
I/O short	(io8)	19 0 IOTOP + io8	Specifies an 8-bit offset from the top address of the special function register area ("0x03F00").	"0x0"
Handy	(HA)	———	Reuses the memory address accessed and is only available with the MOV and MOVW instructions. Combined use with absolute addressing reduces code size.	The value of SBNKR or DBNKR

*1 H : half-byte bit

Figure:2.1.6 Addressing Mode

2.1.9 Bank Function

Bank function allows the data access in the area over the address of 0x10000.

Bank function can be used by setting the proper bank area to the bank register for source address (SBNKR) and the bank register for destination address (DBNKR). At reset, the two registers shows indicate bank 0. Bank function is valid after setting PSW.BKD to "0".

Table:2.1.4 Address Range

Bank area	Address Range
bank 0	0x00000 to 0x0FFFF
bank 1	0x10000 to 0x1FFFF

When SBNKR or DBNKR are changed at interrupt processing, save them onto the stack area and restore them by software.

While bank function is valid, regardless of bank setting, please use the absolute addressing mode (It is allocated for I/O short instruction.) for data access from 0x03F00 to 0x03FFF. For access to the memory space 0x13F00 to 0x13FFF, please use the addressing mode expect absolute (register indirect or register relative indirect).
Refer to [Chapter 2 2.1.8 Addressing Modes]

Stack area must be set in the bank 0.

Our linker supports the function that prevents data from straddling over bank boundaries. See [MN101C / MN101E Series Cross-assembler User's Manual] for details.

■ Bank Register for Source Address (SBNKR: 0x03F0A)

The SBNKR is used to specify bank area for loading instruction. Once this register is specified, bank control is valid for all addressing modes except I/O short instruction and stack relative indirect instruction.

Refer to [2.1.8 Addressing Modes]

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	SBA0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-1	Reserved	Must be set to 0.
0	SBA0	Assignment of bank for source data access address 0: bank 0 1: bank 1

■ Bank Register for Destination Address (DBNKR: 0x03F0B)

The DBNKR is used to specify bank area for storing instruction. Once this register is specified, bank control is valid for all addressing modes except I/O short instruction, stack relative indirect instruction and bit manipulation instruction.

Refer to [2.1.8 Addressing Modes]

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	DBA0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-1	Reserved	Must be set to 0.
0	DBA0	Assignment of bank for destination data access address 0: bank 0 1: bank 1

Bit manipulation instruction depends on the value of the SBNKR register, both of for reading and writing.

2.1.10 Special Function Register

This LSI locates the special function registers (I/O spaces) at the addresses 0x03C00 to 0x03FFF in memory space. The special function registers of this LSI are located as shown below.
The addresses 0x03000 to 0x03BFF are reserved.

Table:2.1.5 MN101LR05D Register Map

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0x03C0X | 0x03D7X	Reserved															
0x03D8X	FBEWER		WADDR_L	WADDR_M	WADDR_H	WBC	P_WDATA_L	P_WDATA_M	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved		CLKMD	Reserved	Reserved	
0x03D9X | 0x03DFX	Reserved															
0x03E0X	DMCTR0L	DMCTR0H	DMCTR1L	DMCTR1H	DMSRCL	DMSRCM	DMSRCH		DMDSTL	DMDSTM	DMDSTH		DMCNTL	DMCNTH		
0x03E1X	PRICKCNT0	PRICKCNT1	PRICKCNT2		Reserved	Reserved	Reserved									
0x03E2X																
0x03E3X	SC0MD0	SC0MD1	SC0MD2	SC0MD3	SC0STR	RXBUF0	TXBUF0									
0x03E4X	SC1MD0	SC1MD1	SC1MD2	SC1MD3	SC1STR	RXBUF1	TXBUF1									
0x03E5X	SC2MD0	SC2MD1	SC2MD2	SC2MD3	SC2AD	Reserved	SC2STR	SC2IICSTR	RXBUF2	TXBUF2						
0x03E6X	SC3MD0	SC3MD1	SC3MD2	SC3MD3	SC3AD	Reserved	SC3STR	SC3IICSTR	RXBUF3	TXBUF3						
0x03E7X	BRTM_S_MD	BRTM_S_EN	BRTM_S_CKSEL		BRTM_S01_CK	BRTM_S23_CK	Reserved	Reserved	BRTM_S0_OC	BRTM_S1_OC	BRTM_S2_OC	BRTM_S3_OC	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0x03E8X	LCDMD0	LCDMD1	LCDMD2	LCDMD3			LCCTR0	LCCTR1	LCCTR2	LCCTR3	LCCTR4	LCCTR5			LCDSEL	
0x03E9X	LCDATA0	LCDATA1	LCDATA2	LCDATA3	LCDATA4	LCDATA5	LCDATA6	LCDATA7	LCDATA8	LCDATA9	LCDATA10	LCDATA11	LCDATA12	LCDATA13	LCDATA14	LCDATA15
0x03EAX	LCDATA16	LCDATA17	LCDATA18	LCDATA19	LCDATA20	LCDATA21	LCDATA22	LCDATA23	LCDATA24	LCDATA25	LCDATA26	LCDATA27	LCDATA28	LCDATA29	LCDATA30	LCDATA31
0x03EBX	LCDATA32	LCDATA33	LCDATA34	LCDATA35	LCDATA36	LCDATA37	LCDATA38	LCDATA39	LCDATA40	LCDATA41	LCDATA42					
0x03ECX	P0NLC	P2NLC	P3NLC	P4NLC	P5NLC	P6NLC	P7NLC								LCDMD4	Reserved
0x03EDX	RTCCTR	RTCSTR	RTCCIRQ	RTCAL0IRQ	AL0IRQMI	AL0IRQH	AL0IRQW	RTCAL1IRQ	AL1IRQMI	AL1IRQH	AL1IRQD	AL1IRQMO				
0x03EEX	RTCSD	RTCMID	RTCHD	RTCWD	RTCDD	RTCMOD	RTCYD				TBTCNT0	TBTCNT1	TBTR		TBTADJL	TBTADJH
0x03EFX	Reserved															
0x03F0X	CPUM	MEMCTR	WDCTR	DLYCTR	CKCTR	HCLKCNT	SCLKCNT	AUCTR	Reserved		SBNKR	DBNKR	Reserved			Reserved
0x03F1X	P0OUT	P1OUT	P2OUT	P3OUT	P4OUT	P5OUT	P6OUT	P7OUT	P8OUT	Reserved			SC01SEL	SC23SEL	Reserved	Reserved
0x03F2X	P0IN	P1IN	P2IN	P3IN	P4IN	P5IN	P6IN	P7IN	P8IN	Reserved			TMIOEN0	TMIOSEL0	TMIOEN1	TMIOSEL1
0x03F3X	P0DIR	P1DIR	P2DIR	P3DIR	P4DIR	P5DIR	P6DIR	P7DIR	P8DIR	Reserved					CLKOUT	IRQISEL1
0x03F4X	P0PLUP	P1PLUP	P2PLUP	P3PLUP	P4PLUP	P5PLUP	P6PLUP	P7PLUP	P8PLUP				IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	KEYIEN	KEYSEL
0x03F5X	P0ODC	P1ODC	P2ODC	P3ODC	P4ODC	P5ODC	P6ODC						ANEN0	ANEN1		BUZCNT
0x03F6X	ANCTR0	ANCTR1	ANCTR2		ANBUF0	ANBUF1	LVICTR0	LVICTR1	LVICTR2				PWCTR0	PWCTR1	Reserved	
0x03F7X	TM0BC	TM1BC	TM0OC	TM1OC	TM0MD	TM1MD	CK0MD	CK1MD	TM6BC	TM6OC	TM6MD	TBCLR	TM6BEN			BUZCTR
0x03F8X	TM2BC	TM3BC	TM2OC	TM3OC	TM2MD	TM3MD	CK2MD	CK3MD								
0x03F9X	TM4BC	TM5BC	TM4OC	TM5OC	TM4MD	TM5MD	CK4MD	CK5MD							TM7MD4	TM8MD4
0x03FAX	TM7BCL	TM7BCH	TM7OC1L	TM7OC1H	TM7PR1L	TM7PR1H	TM7ICL	TM7ICH	TM7MD1	TM7MD2	TM7OC2L	TM7OC2H	TM7PR2L	TM7PR2H	TM7DPR1	TM7DPR2
0x03FBX	TM8BCL	TM8BCH	TM8OC1L	TM8OC1H	TM8PR1L	TM8PR1H	TM8ICL	TM8ICH	TM8MD1	TM8MD2	TM8OC2L	TM8OC2H	TM8PR2L	TM8PR2H	TM7MD3	TM8MD3
0x03FCX	TM9BCL	TM9BCH	TM9OC1L	TM9OC1H	TM9PR1L	TM9PR1H	TM9ICL	TM9ICH	TM9MD1	TM9MD2	TM9OC2L	TM9OC2H	TM9PR2L	TM9PR2H	TM9MD3	
0x03FDX	NFCTR01	NFCTR23	NFCTR45	NFCTR67	EDGDT								PERI0EN	PERI0DT	PERI1EN	PERI1DT
0x03FEX		NMICR	IRQ0ICR	IRQ1ICR	IRQ2ICR	IRQ3ICR	IRQ4ICR	IRQ5ICR	IRQ6ICR	IRQ7ICR	TM0ICR	TM1ICR	TM2ICR	TM3ICR	TM4ICR	TM7ICR
0x03FFX	TM7OC2ICR	TM8ICR	TM8OC2ICR	TM9ICR	TM9OC2ICR	SC0RICR	SC0TICR	SC1RICR	SC1TICR	SC2TICR	SC2SICR	SC3TICR	SC3SICR	PERI0ICR	PERI1ICR	Reserved

Do not access (read/write) to the "Reserved" address. If accessing them, proper operation is not guaranteed.

2.2 Bus Interface

2.2.1 Bus Controller

The CPU provides separate buses to the internal memory and internal peripheral circuits to reduce bus line loads and thus realize faster operation.

There are three buses: ROM bus, RAM bus, and peripheral extension bus (C-BUS). They connect to the internal ROM, internal RAM, internal peripheral circuits respectively. The bus control block controls the parallel operation of instruction read and data access. Figure:2.2.1 shows functional block diagram of the bus controller.

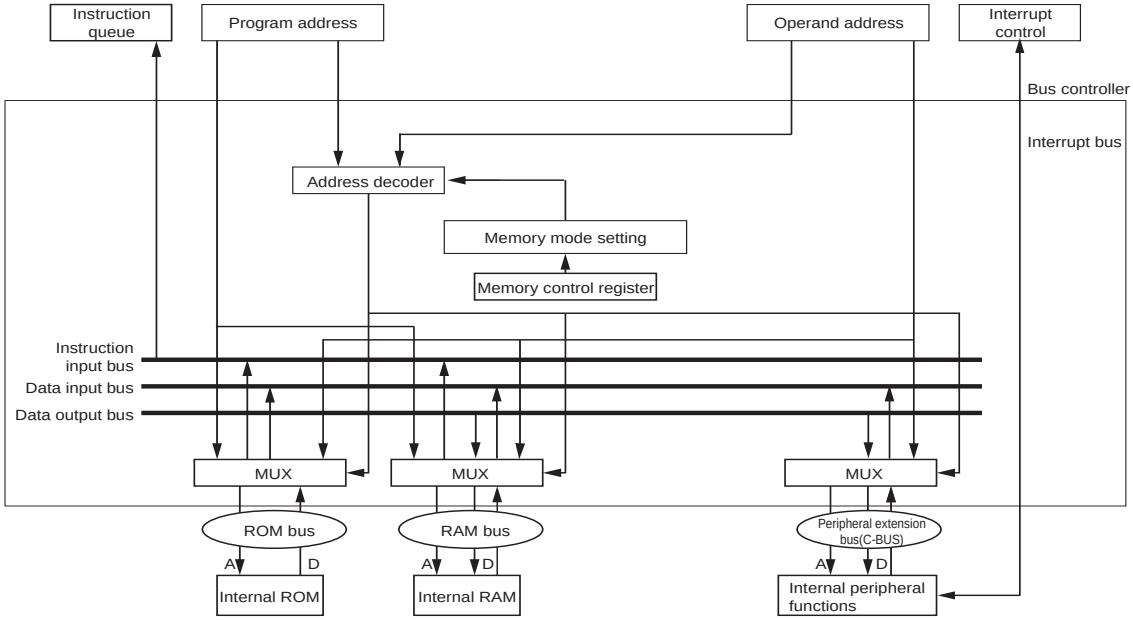


Figure:2.2.1 Functional Block Diagram of the Bus Controller

2.2.2 Access Cycle

Table:2.2.1 shows the wait cycle and the access cycle of ROM bus, RAM bus, peripheral extension bus (C-BUS).

Table:2.2.1 Bus access cycle

Type of bus	Access address	Wait cycle	Access cycle
ROM bus	0x04000 to 0x040FF 0x04900 to 0x13FFF	0	1
	0x04100 to 0x048FF	1	2
RAM bus	0x00000 to 0x00FFF	0	1
Peripheral extension bus (C-BUS)	0x03000 to 0x03BFF	2	3
	0x03C00 to 0x03FFF	0	1

2.2.3 Control Registers

The memory control register (MEMCTR) controls bus interface function.

- Memory Control Register (MEMCTR: 0x03F01)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	IVBM	Reserved	-	IRWE	-	MIESET
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5	IVBM	Base address specification for interrupt vector table 0: Interrupt vector base = 0x04000 1: Interrupt vector base = 0x00100
4	Reserved	Must be set to 0.
3	-	Always read as 0.
2	IRWE	Software write set up for interrupt request bit 0: Even if data is written to each interrupt control register (xxxICR), the state of the interrupt request bit (xxxIR) will not change. 1: Software write enable
1	-	Always read as 0.
0	MIESET	Setting to allow multiple interrupts bit 0: After accepted an interrupt, MIE bit in PSW is set to "0". 1: After accepted an interrupt, MIE bit in PSW is set to "1".

Always set the MEMCTR.IRWE to "0" except in writing xICR.IR by software.
The interrupt request may be cleared when operating the xICR by software while the MEMCTR.IRWE is "1". For example, when the bit operation to xICR is executed (the xICR is read, modified, and overwritten by CPU), the interrupt request, which occurs during the above read-to-write cycle is cleared because the IR is overwritten with "0" by software. To avoid this, set the MEMCTR.IRWE to "0", which prevent the interrupt missing by software.

Setting the MEMCTR.MIESET to "1" disables all maskable interrupts after the PSW.MIE is set to "0". If MEMCTR.MIESET is set to "1" when PSW.MIE is "1", the operation can not be guaranteed.

2.3 Extended Calculation Function

2.3.1 Overview

The LSI contains the following calculator functions.

Table:2.3.1 List of Extended Calculation Functions

Calculation	Instruction	Operation	Execution cycle	PSW bit change			
				VF	NF	CF	ZF
16-bit × 16-bit multiplication (unsigned)	MOV 1, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction MULWU	DW0 * DW1 → {DW1, DW0}	4	0	●	0	●
16-bit × 16-bit multiplication (signed)	MOV 2, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction MULW	DW0 * DW1 → {DW1, DW0}	4	0	●	0	●
32-bit / 16-bit division (unsigned)	MOV 4, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction DIVWU	{DW1, DW0} / A0 → DW0 ··· DW1	21	●	●	0	●
BCD addition (without carry)	MOV 16, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction BCDADD	D0 (BCD) + D1 (BCD) → D0 (BCD)	4	0	0	●	●
BCD addition (with carry)	MOV 32, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction BCDADDC	D0 (BCD) + D1 (BCD) + PSW.CF → D0 (BCD)	4	0	0	●	●
BCD subtraction (without carry)	MOV 64, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction BCDSUB	D0 (BCD) - D1 (BCD) → D0 (BCD)	4	0	0	●	●
BCD subtraction (with carry)	MOV 128, (0x3F07) Extended calculation macro instruction BCDSUBC	D0 (BCD) - D1 (BCD) - PSW.CF → D0 (BCD)	4	0	0	●	●

●: bit changes.

2.3.2 Extended Calculation Control Register

Extended calculation can be executed by setting the extended calculation control bit.

■ Extended Calculation Control Register (AUCTR: 0x03F07)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	AUBCDSUBC	AUBCDSUB	AUBCDADDC	AUBCDADD	Reserved	AUDIVU	AUMUL	AUMULU
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	AUBCDSUBC	BCD subtraction with carry 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
6	AUBCDSUB	BCD subtraction without carry 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
5	AUBCDADDC	BCD addition with carry 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
4	AUBCDADD	BCD addition without carry 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3	Reserved	Must be set to 0.
2	AUDIVU	Unsigned division execution 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
1	AUMUL	Signed multiplication execution 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
0	AUMULU	Unsigned multiplication execution 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

Each bit is set to "0" by hardware, when calculation is finished.

Do not set several bits simultaneously.

Do not read AUCTR.
(Do not access AUCTR by the bit manipulation instructions.)

By writing the following C language, you can avoid generation of data load instructions and bit manipulation instructions.

```
#define  AUBCDSUB (c, a, b) asm(D0 = b, D1 = a) {\
                                    "\tmov  0x40, (0x03F07)"; \
                                    } (c = D0)
AUBCDSUB (result, in1, in2);
```

2.4 Extended Calculation Instruction

2.4.1 About Extended Calculation Instruction

■ About this Table

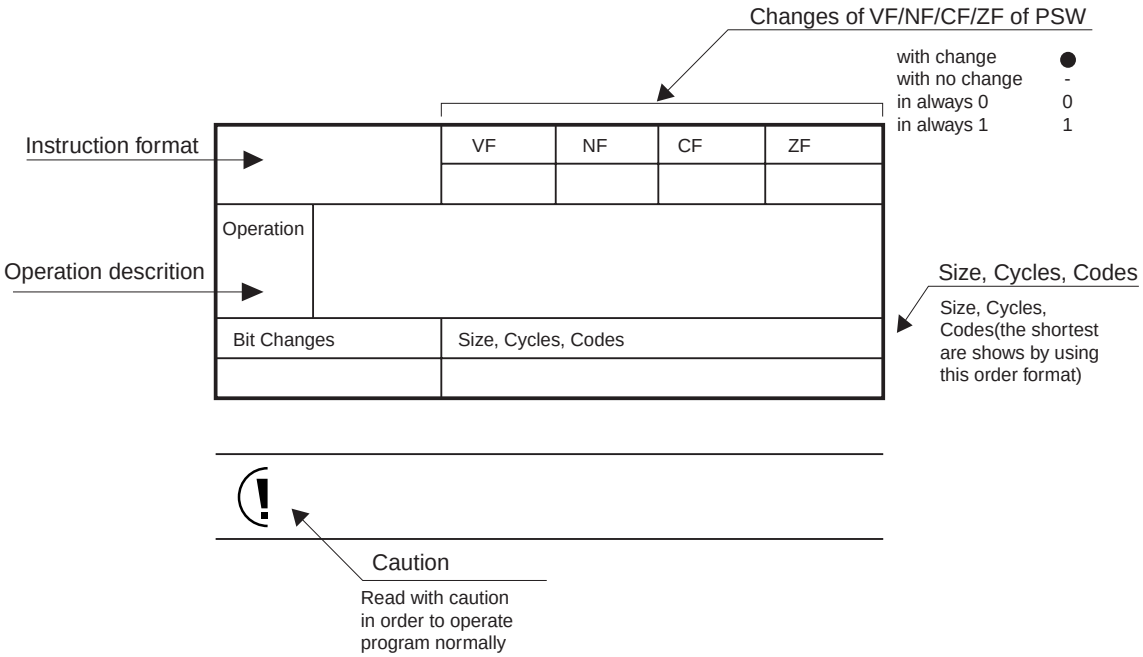


Figure:2.4.1 About this Table

■ Signs

+	: Addition
-	: Subtraction
*	: Multiplication
/	: Division
→	: Substitution
...	: Remainder
{DW1, DW0}	: 32 bit data (high 16 bits in DW1 register and low 16 bits in DW0 register are stored)

2.4.2 MULWU 16-bit x 16-bit multiplication (unsigned)

MULWU (MOV 0x01, (0x03F07))		VF	NF	CF	ZF
		0	●	0	●
Operation	DW0 * DW1 → {DW1, DW0} Multiplies the unsigned 16-bit value of DW0 register by the unsigned 16-bit value of DW1 register, and store the upper 16-bit of the result (32-bit) in the DW1 register and the lower 16-bit of the result in the DW0 register.				
Bit Changes		Size, Cycles, Codes			
VF: 0 NF: Set if the MSB of the result is "1", otherwise set to "0". CF: 0 ZF: Set if the result is "0", otherwise set to "0".		6 nibbles 4 cycles 0000 0010 0111 0000 0001 0000			

■ Execution of 16-bit × 16-bit multiplication (unsigned)

1. Store the multiplier to DW0 register and the multiplicand to DW1 register.
2. Execute MOV 0x01, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction MULWU).
3. The value of the unsigned 16-bit of DW0 register is multiplied by the unsigned 16-bit of DW1 register. Then the upper 16-bit of the result (32-bit) is stored in DW1 register and the lower 16-bit is stored in DW0 register.

This extended calculation instruction is generated by the compiler for MN101L series by appointing an option (-mmuldivw).

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

2.4.3 MULW 16-bit x 16-bit multiplication (signed)

MULW (MOV 0x02, (0x03F07))		VF	NF	CF	ZF
		0	●	0	●
Operation	DW0 * DW1 → {DW1, DW0} Multiplies the signed 16-bit value of DW0 register by the signed 16-bit value of DW1 register, and store the upper 16-bit of the result (32-bit) in the DW1 register and the lower 16-bit of the result in the DW0 register.				
Bit Changes		Size, Cycles, Codes			
VF: 0 NF: Set if the MSB of the result is "1", otherwise set to "0". CF: 0 ZF: Set if the result is "0", otherwise set to "0".		6 nibbles 4 cycles 0000 0010 0111 0000 0010 0000			

■ Execution of 16-bit × 16-bit multiplication (signed)

1. Store the multiplier to DW0 register and the multiplicand to DW1 register.
2. Execute MOV 0x02, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction MULW).
3. The value of the signed 16-bit of DW0 register is multiplied by the signed 16-bit of DW1 register. Then the upper 16-bit of the results (32-bit) is stored in DW1 register and the lower 16-bit register is stored in DW0 register.

This extended calculation instruction is generated by the compiler for MN101L series by appointing an option (-mmuldivw).

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

2.4.4 DIVWU 32-bit / 16-bit division (unsigned)

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">DIVWU (MOV 0x04, (0x03F07))</td><td>VF</td><td>NF</td><td>CF</td><td>ZF</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2"></td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>0</td><td>●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Operation</td><td colspan="5">{DW1, DW0} / A0 → DW0...DW1

Divides the unsigned 32-bit value which is stored in the DW1 register (upper 16-bit) and DW0 register (lower 16-bit) by the unsigned 16-bit value of A0 register, and stores the quotient 16-bit of the result in DW0 register and the remainder 16-bit of the result in DW1 register.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Bit Changes</td><td colspan="3">Size, Cycles, Codes</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">If VF is "0"
VF: 0 (if the quotient is an unsigned 16-bit value)
NF: Set if the MSB of the quotient is "1", otherwise set to "0".
CF: 0
ZF: Set if the MSB of the quotient is "0", otherwise set to "0".</td><td>If VF is "1"
VF: 1 (if the quotient is not an unsigned 16-bit value)
NF: Undefined
CF: 0
ZF: Undefined</td><td colspan="3">6 nibbles
21 cycles

0000 0010 0111 0000 0100 0000</td></tr>
</table>

■ Execution of 32-bit / 16-bit division (unsigned)

1. Store the upper 16-bit of the dividend to DW1 register, the lower 16-bit of the dividend to DW0 register, and the divisor to A0 register.
2. Execute MOV 0x04, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction DIVWU).
3. The value of the unsigned 32-bit which is stored in the DW1 register (upper 16-bit) and DW0 register (lower 16-bit) is divided by the value of the unsigned 16-bit of A0 register. Then the quotient 16-bit of the result is stored in DW0 register and the remainder 16-bit of the result is stored in DW1 register.

This extended calculation instruction is generated by the compiler for MN101L series by appointing an option (-mmuldivw).

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

2.4.5 BCDADD BCD addition (without carry)

BCDADD (MOV 0x10, (0x03F07))		VF	NF	CF	ZF
		0	0	●	●
Operation	D0 (BCD) + D1 (BCD) → D0 (BCD) Adds the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.				
Bit Changes		Size, Cycles, Codes			
VF: 0 NF: 0 CF: Set if the result is bigger than "99", otherwise set to "0". ZF: Set if the result is "0", otherwise set to "0".		6 nibbles 4 cycles 0000 0010 0111 0000 0000 0001			

■ Execution of BCD addition (without carry)

1. Store the 8-bit value of the two-digit BCD to add to the D0 register and D1 register.
2. Execute MOV 0x10, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction BCDADD).
3. Adds the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

In this instruction, do not enter the value that can not be represented in BCD. If you enter it, the result is not guaranteed.

2.4.6 BCDADDC BCD addition (with carry)

BCDADDC (MOV 0x20, (0x03F07))		VF	NF	CF	ZF
		0	0	●	●
Operation	D0 (BCD) + D1 (BCD) + PSW.CF → D0 (BCD) Adds the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD and PSW.CF, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.				
Bit Changes		Size, Cycles, Codes			
VF: 0 NF: 0 CF: Set if the result is bigger than "99", otherwise set to "0". ZF: Set if the result is "0", otherwise set to "0".		6 nibbles 4 cycles 0000 0010 0111 0000 0000 0010			

■ Execution of BCD addition (without carry)

1. Store the 8-bit value of the two-digit BCD to add to the D0 register and D1 register. Store the carry in the PSW.
2. Execute MOV 0x20, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction BCDADDC).
3. Adds the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD and PSW.CF, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

In this instruction, do not enter the value that can not be represented in BCD. If you enter it, the result is not guaranteed.

2.4.7 BCDSUB BCD subtraction (without carry)

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">BCDSUB (MOV 0x40, (0x03F07))</td><td>VF</td><td>NF</td><td>CF</td><td>ZF</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>●</td><td>●</td></tr>
<tr><td>Operation</td><td colspan="5">D0 (BCD) - D1 (BCD) → D0 (BCD)

Subtracts the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Bit Changes</td><td colspan="3">Size, Cycles, Codes</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">VF: 0
NF: 0
CF: Set if the result is smaller than "0", otherwise set to "0".
ZF: Set if the result is "0", otherwise set to "0".</td><td colspan="3">6 nibbles
4 cycles

0000 0010 0111 0000 0000 0100</td></tr>
</table>

■ Execution of BCD subtraction (without carry)

1. Store the 8-bit value of the two-digit BCD as a subtrahend to the D0 register. Store the 8-bit value of the two-digit BCD as a minuend to the D1 register.
2. Execute MOV 0x40, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction BCDSUB).
3. Subtracts the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

In this instruction, do not enter the value that can not be represented in BCD. If you enter it, the result is not guaranteed.

2.4.8 BCDSUBC BCD subtraction (with carry)

BCDSUBC (MOV 0x80, (0x03F07))		VF	NF	CF	ZF
		0	0	●	●
Operation	D0 (BCD) - D1 (BCD) - PSW.CF → D0 (BCD) Subtracts the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD and subtracts the PSW.CF further, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.				
Bit Changes		Size, Cycles, Codes			
VF: 0 NF: 0 CF: Set if the result is smaller than "0", otherwise set to "0". ZF: Set if the result is "0", otherwise set to "0".		6 nibbles 4 cycles 0000 0010 0111 0000 0000 1000			

■ Execution of BCD subtraction (with carry)

1. Store the 8-bit value of the two-digit BCD as a subtrahend to the D0 register. Store the 8-bit value of the two-digit BCD as a minuend to the D1 register. Store the carry to the PSW.
2. Execute MOV 0x80, (0x03F07) (Extended calculation macro instruction BCDSUBC).
3. Subtracts the D0 register (8-bit) and the D1 register (8-bit) as the value of each two-digit BCD and subtracts the PSW.CF further, and stores the result (8-bit) after the BCD correction to the D0 register.

When this extended calculation instruction is executed, the handy address (HA) is updated in "0x03F07"

In this instruction, do not enter the value that can not be represented in BCD. If you enter it, the result is not guaranteed.

2.5 Reset

2.5.1 Reset function

This LSI has the following four types of reset factors.

- Power-on reset (when the NATRON pin is tied to "Low".)
- Power-down reset (when the NATRON pin is tied to "Low".)
- Low level signal input to NRST pin.
- Two consecutive WDT overflow.

The LSI starts up in SLOW mode.

2.5.2 Reset sequence

1. When NRST pin comes to high level from low level, the internal binary counter starts counting.
   The time range after the counter started counting before the overflow of it occurs is called the "oscillation stabilization wait time". During reset, internal registers and special function registers are initialized.
2. After the oscillation stabilization wait time, the internal reset is released and the CPU starts executing the program, the address of which is shown in the interrupt vector table at 0x04000.

The internal RAM is not initialized at reset.
It needs to be initialized before used.

2.5.3 Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time

The oscillation stabilization wait time is different in the following situations.

1. When the LSI starts up from reset, the wait time is equal to the initial value of the DLYCTR.
2. When transiting from SLOW mode to NORMAL mode, or recovering from HALT2/STOP0 mode, the wait time can be varied with the DLYCTR.The value of the DLYCTR must be determined for stabilizing the HCLK oscillation. In this situation, the frequency of OSCSTBCLK is equal to half the of HCLK.
   After the oscillation stabilization, the CPU enters the NORMAL mode.
3. When recovering from STOP1 mode, the wait time can be varied with the DLYCTR.
   The value of the DLYCTR must be determined for stabilizing the SCLK oscillation.
   In this situation, the frequency of OSCSTBCLK is equal to half the of SCLK.
   After the oscillation stabilization, the CPU enters the SLOW mode.

OSCSTBCLK is described in the Fig.4.1.1..

■ Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time Control Register (DLYCTR: 0x03F03)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	DLY3-0			
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-0	DLY3-0	Oscillation stabilization wait cycle selection 0000: $2^{14} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0001: $2^{13} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0010: $2^{12} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0011: $2^{11} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0100: $2^{10} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0101: $2^{9} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0110: $2^{8} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 0111: $2^{7} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 1000: $2^{6} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 1001: $2^{5} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 1010: $2^{4} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 1011: $2^{3} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 1100: $2^{2} \times (1/f_{OSCSTBCLK})$ 1101: Prohibited 1110: Prohibited 1111: Prohibited

The stabilization wait cycle of external oscillation should be determined in consultation with the oscillator manufacturer.

Set the stabilization wait cycle of internal oscillation to match the following conditions.
- Internal high-speed oscillation: 15 μs or more
- Internal low-speed oscillation: 100 μs or more

Chapter 3 Interrupts

3

3.1 Overview

The LSI provides vectored interrupt services, consisting of LSI-reset, Non-Maskable Interrupts (NMI), and Maskable Interrupts. The transition time from the interrupt occurrence to interrupt handler is 6 SYSCLK cycles at a minimum, and the same amount of time is needed at a minimum when returning from the interrupt handler.

Each interrupt has a interrupt control register (hereinafter described as "xICR", and "x" is replaced with other words. For example, in the case of Timer-0 interrupt control register, "x" is replaces with "TM0". All interrupt control registers are described in [3.2 Control Registers].), which includes the interrupt request bit (IR), the interrupt enable bit (IE) and the interrupt level bits (LV1-0).

IR is set to "1" by the corresponding interrupt trigger, and cleared to "0" when the interrupt is accepted.
IR can also be set and cleared by software.

IE controls the interrupt occurrence, and can be set and cleared only by software.
IE is valid when PSW.MIE is "1". NMICR (the interrupt control register of NMI) doesn’t have IE.

LV1-0 control the priority level of an interrupt. There is three levels of interrupt priority, and the lower vector number has priority when several interrupts with the same interrupt priority level occur. A maskable interrupt is accepted when LV1-0 is less than PSW.IM1-0. NMI is handled in priority to maskable interrupts.

3.1.1 Block Diagram

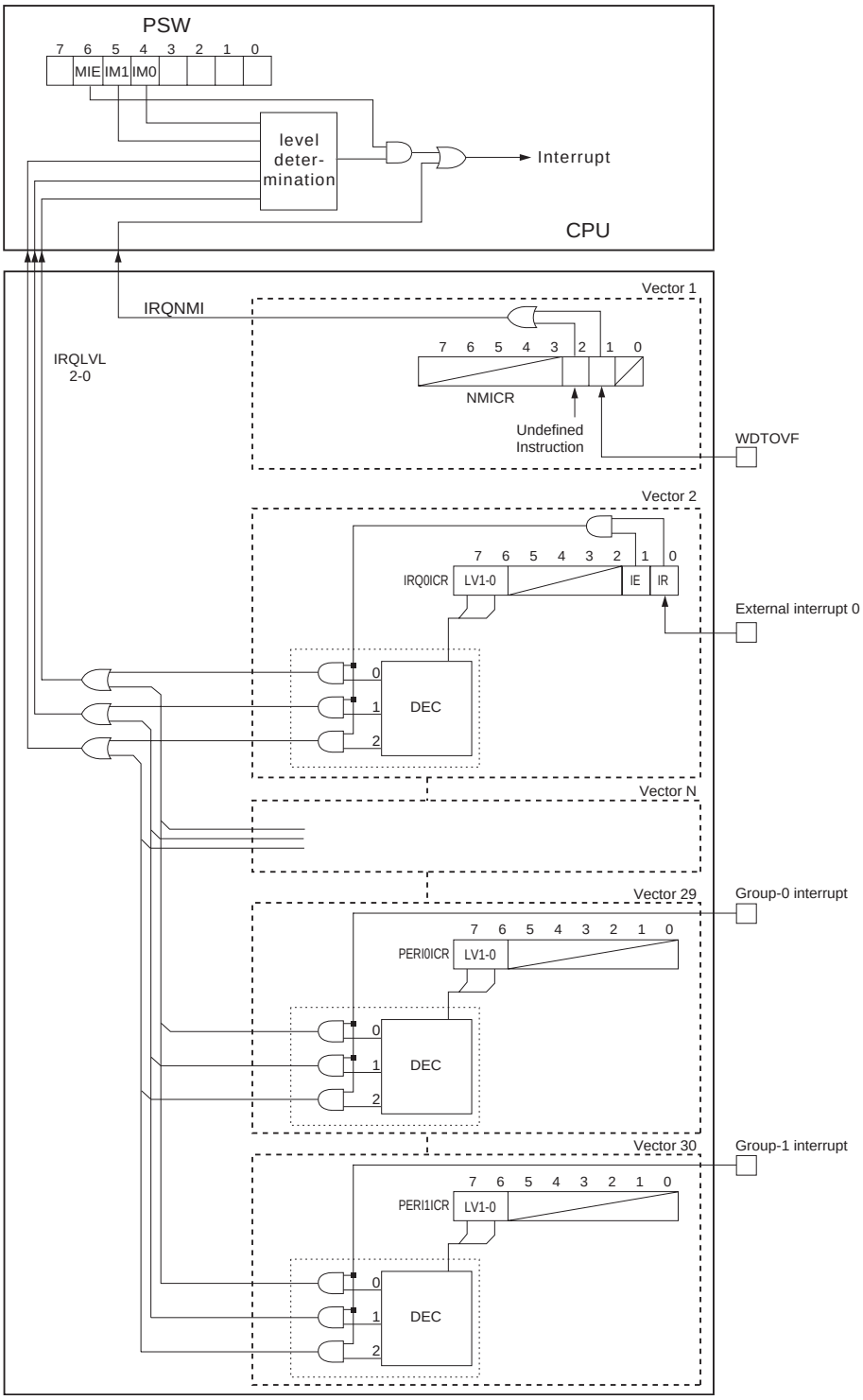


Figure:3.1.1 Interrupt Block Diagram

3.1.2 Operation

■ Interrupt Processing Sequence

Figure:3.1.2 shows the flow of a interrupt processing. When an interrupt occurs and is accepted, the Program Counter (PC), Processor Status Word (PSW) and Handy Address (HA) are saved onto the stack by hardware, and CPU jumps to the address specified by the corresponding interrupt vector. At the end of interrupt handler, execute the "RTI" instruction to go back to the main program which had been executed before the interrupt was accepted.

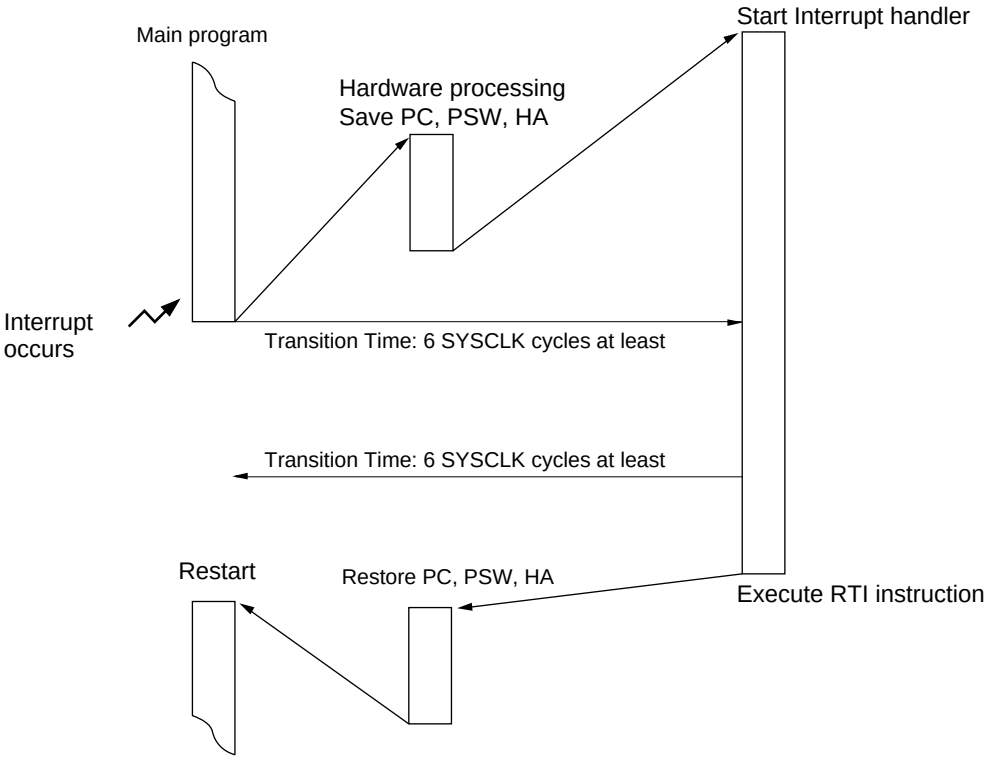


Figure:3.1.2 Interrupt Processing Sequence

xICR.IR of maskable interrupt is cleared to "0" by hardware when the corresponding interrupt is accepted, but NMICR.IRQNPG, NMICR.IRQNWDG, PERI0DT.PERI0DT6-0 and PERI1DT.PERI1DT 4-0 are not cleared to "0" by hardware and must be cleared by software.

■ Interrupt Vector Table

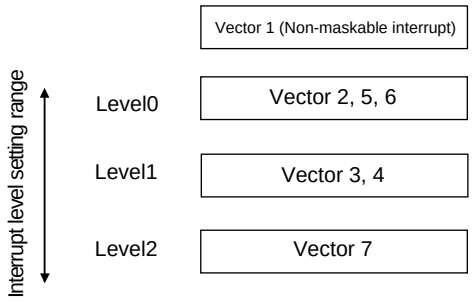
Table:3.1.1 shows the interrupt vector address and the interrupt control registers.

Table:3.1.1 Interrupt Vector Table

Vector number	Vector address		Interrupt factor	Interrupt control register	
	IVBM = 0	IVBM = 1		Name	Address
0	0x04000		LSI Reset	-	-
1	0x04004	0x00104	Non-maskable interrupt	NMICR	0x03FE1
2	0x04008	0x00108	External interrupt 0	IRQ0ICR	0x03FE2
3	0x0400C	0x0010C	External interrupt 1	IRQ1ICR	0x03FE3
4	0x04010	0x00110	External interrupt 2	IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4
5	0x04014	0x00114	External interrupt 3	IRQ3ICR	0x03FE5
6	0x04018	0x00118	External interrupt 4	IRQ4ICR	0x03FE6
7	0x0401C	0x0011C	External interrupt 5	IRQ5ICR	0x03FE7
8	0x04020	0x00120	External interrupt 6	IRQ6ICR	0x03FE8
9	0x04024	0x00124	External interrupt 7 (KEY interrupt)	IRQ7ICR	0x03FE9
10	0x04028	0x00128	Timer 0 interrupt	TM0ICR	0x03FEA
11	0x0402C	0x0012C	Timer 1 interrupt	TM1ICR	0x03FEB
12	0x04030	0x00130	Timer 2 interrupt	TM2ICR	0x03FEC
13	0x04034	0x00134	Timer 3 interrupt	TM3ICR	0x03FED
14	0x04038	0x00138	Timer 4 interrupt	TM4ICR	0x03FEE
15	0x0403C	0x0013C	Timer 7 interrupt	TM7ICR	0x03FEF
16	0x04040	0x00140	Timer 7 compare 2 match interrupt	TM7OC2ICR	0x03FF0
17	0x04044	0x00144	Timer 8 interrupt	TM8ICR	0x03FF1
18	0x04048	0x00148	Timer 8 compare 2 match interrupt	TM8OC2ICR	0x03FF2
19	0x0404C	0x0014C	Timer 9 interrupt	TM9ICR	0x03FF3
20	0x04050	0x00150	Timer 9 compare 2 match interrupt	TM9OC2ICR	0x03FF4
21	0x04054	0x00154	Serial interface 0 reception interrupt	SC0RICR	0x03FF5
22	0x04058	0x00158	Serial interface 0 transmission interrupt	SC0TICR	0x03FF6
23	0x0405C	0x0015C	Serial interface 1 reception interrupt	SC1RICR	0x03FF7
24	0x04060	0x00160	Serial interface 1 transmission interrupt	SC1TICR	0x03FF8
25	0x04064	0x00164	Serial interface 2 transmission complete interrupt	SC2TICR	0x03FF9
26	0x04068	0x00168	Serial interface 2 stop condition interrupt	SC2SICR	0x03FFA
27	0x0406C	0x0016C	Serial interface 3 transmission complete interrupt	SC3TICR	0x03FFB
28	0x04070	0x00170	Serial interface 3 stop condition interrupt	SC3SICR	0x03FFC
29	0x04074	0x00174	Group-0 interrupt (which consists of the following interrupts.) - Timer 5 interrupt - Timer 6 interrupt - TBT interrupt - RTC-TBT interrupt - RTC interrupt - RTC-Alarm0 interrupt - RTC-Alarm1 interrupt	PERI0ICR	0x03FFD
30	0x04078	0x00178	Group-1 interrupt (which consists of the following interrupts.) - A/D interrupt - LVD interrupt - DMA interrupt - DMA-Addreq interrupt - DMA-Error interrupt	PERI1ICR	0x03FFE

■ Interrupt Level and Priority

The LSI provides three levels of interrupt priority, and the lower vector number has priority when several interrupts with the same interrupt priority level occur. (For example, when the vector 3 and the vector 4 are set to the priority of level 1 and those interrupt trigger occur simultaneously, the interrupt of the vector 3 is accepted.) Maskable interrupts are accepted when LV1-0 is less than PSW.IM1-0. NMI is handled in priority to maskable interrupts.



Priority	Interrupt Vector No.
1	Vector 1
2	Vector 2
3	Vector 5
4	Vector 6
5	Vector 3
6	Vector 4
7	Vector 7

Figure:3.1.3 Interrupt Priority Example

Table:3.1.2 Relation between PSW.IM1-0 and acceptable interrupts

Mask Level	PSW.IM1-0		Priority	Acceptable Interrupt
	IM1	IM0		
Level 0	0	0	Highest	NMI
Level 1	0	1	:	NMI, Maskable Interrupt of Level 0
Level 2	1	0	:	NMI, Maskable Interrupt of Level 0 to 1
Level 3	1	1	Lowest	NMI, Maskable Interrupt of Level 0 to 2

■ Determination of Maskable Interrupt Acceptance

The procedures of the interrupt acceptance is described below.

1. IR is set to "1".
2. When IE is "1", the interrupt request is sent to CPU.
3. When LV1-0 is less than PSW.IM1-0 and PSW.MIE is "1", the above interrupt request is accepted.
4. IR is cleared to "0" by hardware. (IE is not cleared by hardware.)

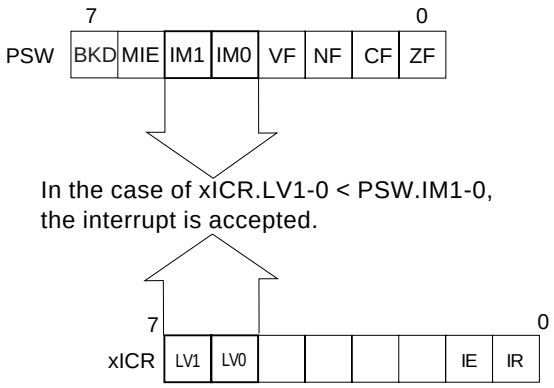


Figure:3.1.4 Determination of Interrupt Acceptance

After IR is set to “1” by an interrupt trigger at step 1, if the same interrupt trigger occurs during the time of above 2 - 4 steps, the latter interrupt trigger is ignored.

■ Explanation of PSW.MIE and PSW.IM1-0

PSW.MIE is set to "0" when:

- MEMCTR.MIESET is "0", and NMI or a maskable interrupt is accepted.
- PSW.MIE is set to "0" by software.
- BE instruction is executed (BKD and MIE are set to "0".)
- the LSI is reset.

PSW.MIE is set to "1" when:

- MEMCTR.MIESET is "1", and NMI or a maskable interrupt is accepted.
- PSW.MIE is set to "1" by software.
- BD instruction is executed (BKD and MIE is set to "1".).

PSW.IM1-0 change when:

- PSW.IM1-0 is set by software.
- the LSI is reset.
- an maskable interrupt is accepted, and the value of PSW.IM1-0 changes to the value of xICR.IL1-0. When RTI instruction executes, PSW.IM1-0 go back to the value of it before the interrupt acceptance.
- NMI is accepted, and PSW.IM1-0 change to "00".

When an interrupt is accepted, PSW.MIE changes as follows.
-When MEMCTR.MIESET is "1", PSW.MIE is set to "1".
-When MEMCTR.MIESET is "0", PSW.MIE is set to "0".

NMI has priority over maskable ones.

Refer to [Chapter 20 20.2 Instruction set] for BE and BD instructions.

■ Interrupt Acceptance Operation (hardware processing)

When an interrupt is accepted, the LSI executes the following sequence by hardware.

1. Stack Pointer (SP) is updated.

   SP-6 → SP

2. PSW.BKD is set to "1". (The bank function is disabled.)
3. MEMCTR.MIESET is copied to PSW.MIE.

   MEMCTR.MIESET → PSW.MIE

4. LV1-0 of the accepted interrupt is copied to PSW.IM1-0.

   LV1-0 → PSW.IM1-0

5. PSW and PC -i.e., the return address- are saved to the stack.

   PSW → Address (SP)

   PC bit 7 to 0 → Address (SP + 1)

6. The remaining PC is saved to the stack.

   PC bits 15 to 8 → Address (SP + 2)

   PC bits 19 to 16, and H → Address (SP + 3)

7. HA is saved to the stack.

   Lower half of HA → Address (SP + 4)

   Upper half of HA → Address (SP + 5)

8. The hardware branches program to the address in the vector table.

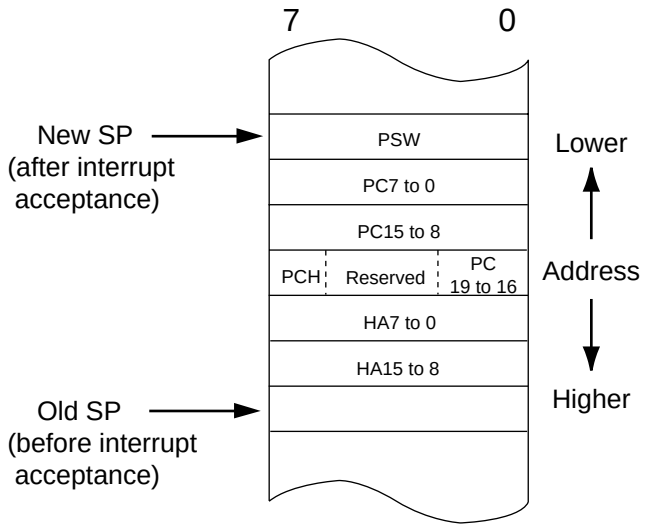


Figure:3.1.5 Stack Operation during Interrupt Acceptance

■ Interrupt Return Operation (RTI instruction)

RTI instruction makes the LSI go back to the program which had been executed before the interrupt occurred. Before RTI execution, if the data of D0/D1/D2/D3 and A0/A1 registers was saved in the interrupt handler with PUSH instruction, they are needed to be backed to each registers with POP instruction.

The following is the processing sequence invoked by RTI instruction.

1. PSW are restored from the stack. (SP)
2. PC -i.e., the return address- are restored from the stack. (SP + 1 to SP + 3)
3. HA are restored from the stack. (SP + 4, SP+ 5)
4. SP is updated. SP +6 → SP
5. Jump to the program address of PC.

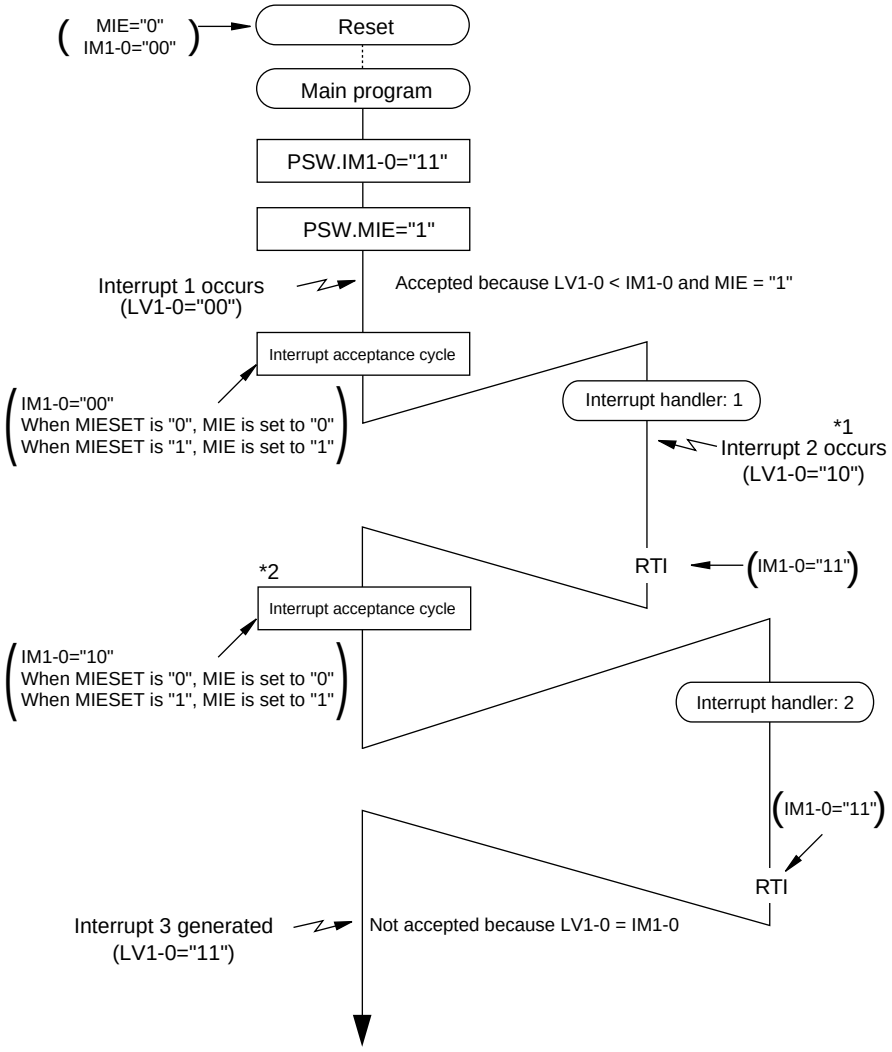
Registers such as data registers (D0/D1/D2/D3), or address registers (A0/A1) are not saved by hardware, so save them onto the stack with PUSH instruction, if necessary.

The reserved bits (bp6 to bp4) in the address where the PC [bit19 to bit16, bitH]) are saved to the stack, are reserved. Do not change them by software.

■ Maskable Interrupt Processing

The following figure shows the processing sequence when the lower priority level interrupt occurs while processing the higher priority level interrupt.

(Interrupt 1: LV1-0 = "00", Interrupt 2: LV1-0 = "10", Interrupt 3: LV1-0 = "11")



Parentheses () indicates hardware processing.

*1 : Interrupt 2 is not accepted because LV1-0 ("10") > PSW.IM1-0 ("00").

*2 : After the RTI execution of Interrupt 1, Interrupt 2 is accepted because LV1-0 ("10") < PSW.IM1-0 ("11").

Figure:3.1.6 Processing Sequence for Maskable Interrupts

- Multiple maskable interrupt control

When MEMCTR.MIESET is "0" and an interrupt is accepted, PSW.MIE is set to "0" and the multiple maskable interrupt is not occurred.

To enable the multiple interrupts occurrence, set MEMCTR.MIESET to "1" by software before accepting interrupts, or set PSW.MIE to "1" by software in the interrupt handler.

Do not write-access to xICR of maskable interrupts when PSW.MIE is "1".

When the multiple interrupt acceptance is enabled, be careful not to happen stack overflow.

The following figure shows the processing sequence when the higher priority level interrupt occurs while processing the lower priority level interrupt.

(Interrupt 1: LV1-0 = "10", Interrupt 2: LV1-0 = "00")

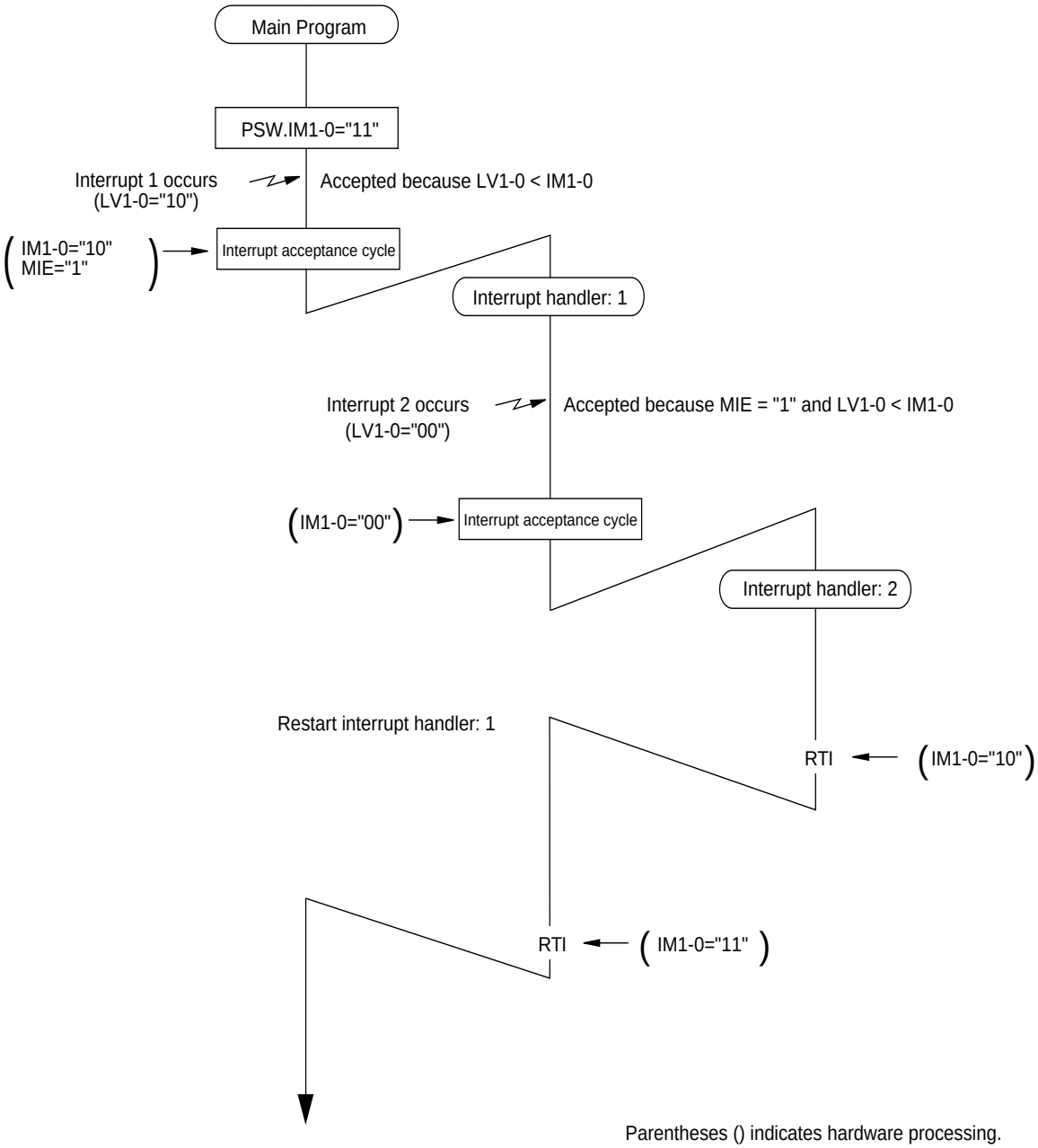
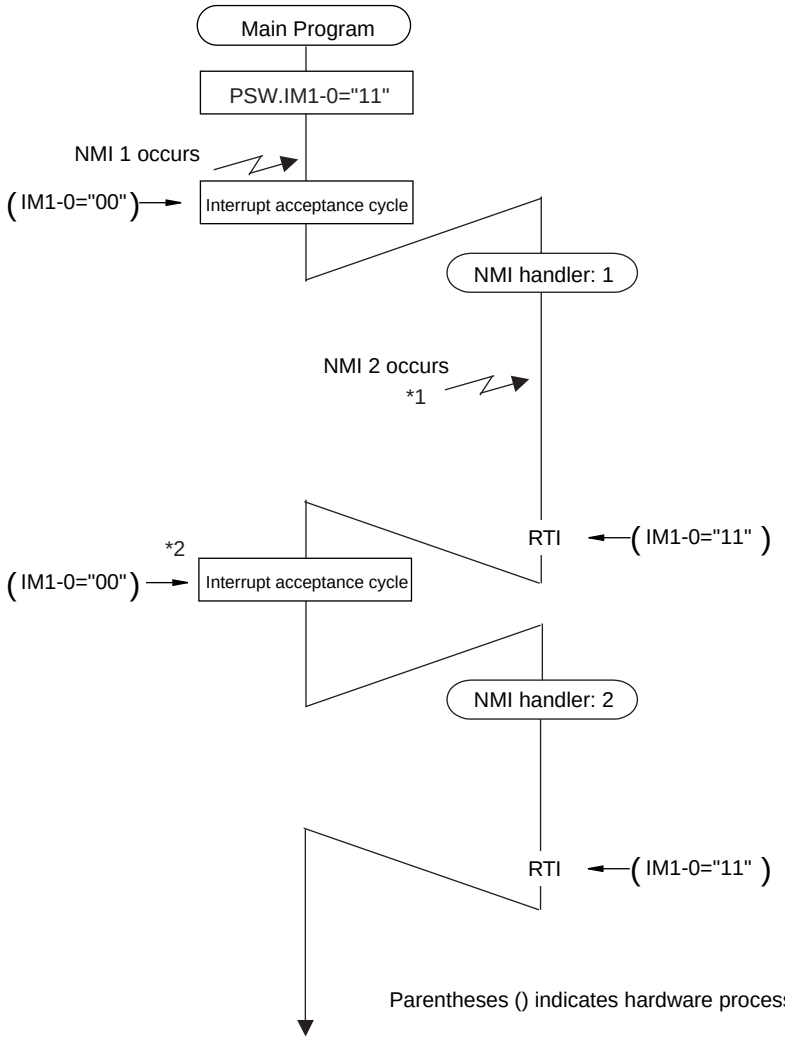


Figure:3.1.7 Processing Sequence for Multiple Interrupts

■ NMI Processing

Figure:3.1.8 shows the processing sequence of NMI.



*1 : The multiple interrupts are not accepted during NMI handler.
After RTI instruction, NMI 2 is accepted.
If the undefined instruction occurs, the following processing is not guaranteed.

*2 : If the request of NMI 1 is not cleared, NMI 1 is accepted again after RTI instruction.

Figure:3.1.8 Processing Sequence for Non-Maskable Interrupt

3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup

■ Setting xICR.IR by software

xICR.IR is set to "1" when the interrupt trigger occurs, and cleared to "0" by hardware when the interrupt is accepted. To operate IR by software, MEMCTR.IRWE needs to be set to "1".

■ Interrupt Control Register Setup Procedure

Setup procedures of xICR of maskable interrupt is described below:

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Disable all maskable interrupts PSW.MIE = 0	(1) Clear PSW.MIE to disable all maskable interrupts, which is needed, especially before xICR is changed.
(2) Select the interrupt factor	(2) Select the interrupt factor such as interrupt edge selection, or timer interrupt cycle change.
(3) Permission settings of multiple interrupt MEMCTR.MIESET	(3) Set the permission of multiple interrupt. Multiple interrupt is allowed when MIESET is set to "1".
(4) Enable the write interrupt request bit MEMCTR.IRWE = 1	(4) Set MEMCTR.IRWE to enable IR to be rewritten, which is needed only when IR is changed by software.
(5) Rewrite the interrupt request bit xICR.IR	(5) Rewrite xICR.IR. (Clear the bit with this method because it may already be set.)
(6) Disable the write interrupt request bit MEMCTR.IRWE = 0	(6) Disable IR setting by software.
(7) Set the interrupt level xICR.LV1-0 PSW.IM1-0	(7) Set the interrupt level of xICR and PSW.IM1-0.
(8) Enable the interrupt xICR.IE = 1	(8) Set xICR.IE to enable the interrupt.
(9) Enable all maskable interrupts PSW.MIE = 1	(9) Enable all maskable interrupts.

xICR.IR is set when the corresponding interrupt occurs or the edge switching of the interrupt is done, regardless of the value of xICR.IE. Clear IR to "0" following the setup procedures (4) to (6).

Before operating xICR, set PSW.MIE to "0". There's no guarantee of proper operation when writing to xICR while PSW.MIE is "1".

Always set MEMCTR.IRWE to "0" except when writing xICR.IR by software.
The interrupt request may be cleared when operating xICR by software while the MEMCTR.IRWE is "1". For example, when the bit operation to xICR is executed (xICR is read, modified, and overwritten by CPU), the interrupt request, which occurs during the above read-to-write cycle is cleared because IR is overwritten with "0" by software. To avoid this, set MEMCTR.IRWE to "0", which prevent the interrupt missing by software.

Before setting MEMCTR.MIESET, set PSW.MIE to "0". There's no guarantee of proper operation when writing to MEMCTR.MIESET while PSW.MIE is "1".

3.1.4 Group Interrupt Control Register Setup

■ Setup PERInDT (n = 0, 1) by Software

The each bit of the PERInDT is set to "1" by the hardware and software, and cleared to "0" only by software.

When the interrupt occurs, the corresponding bits is set to "1", and the maskable interrupt occurs depending on the setting of the each bit of PERInEN.

Above bits can be set to "1" by software, and it generates the maskable interrupt.

Unlike xICR.IR, each bit of PERInDT is not cleared by hardware, and needs to be cleared by software.
The each bit of PERInDT is changed as the following table.

Value before write	Write data	Value after write	Value change
0	0	0	Not changed
0	1	1	Bit is set
1	0	1	Not changed
1	1	0	Bit is cleared

When clearing all bits of the PERInDT, read the value of PERInDT first, and then write the same value to PERInDT.

Each bit of PERInDT is not cleared by hardware, and needs to be cleared by software.

Don’t change the bit of PERInICR, while the corresponding bit of the PERInEN and the PER-InDT is "1". When changing PERInICR, the interrupt may be accepted unintentionally.

When the two events, one is that an interrupt trigger causes PERInDT.DTm to be set to "1" and the other is that PERInDT.DTm is set or cleared by software, occur at the same time, the value of software is set in PERInDT.Dm.

■ Group interrupt control register Setup Procedure

Setup procedures of the group interrupt control register set by the software are as follow:

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Disable all maskable interrupts PSW bp6: MIE = 0	(1) Clear PSW.MIE to disable all maskable interrupts, which is needed, especially when xICRis changed.
(2) Clear PERInDT (PERI0DT, PRI1DT)	(2) Clear PERInDT by reading the value of PERInDT, and setting the register to it. When operating the interrupts that occurred before this setting, please don't clear the applicable bits.
(3) Set PERInEN (PERI0EN, PERI1EN)	(3) Enable the interrupt occurrence.
(4) Set the interrupt level PERInICR (PERI0ICR, PERI1ICR)	(4) Set the interrupt level by PERInICR.PERInLV1-0.
(5) Enable all maskable interrupts PSW bp6: MIE = 1	(5) Enable all maskable interrupts
(6) [Accept interrupt]	(6) Read the value of PERInDT, and distinguish the interrupt factor by software.
(7) Clear the interrupt request bits of PERInDT (PERI0DT, PERI1DT)	(7) Clear the interrupt request bit by setting the applicable bits to "1"

When an interrupt occurs, the corresponding bit of PERInDT is set to "1" regardless of the setting of PERInEN. Please clear it by referring to setup procedure.

■ Sample program of Group interrupt service routine

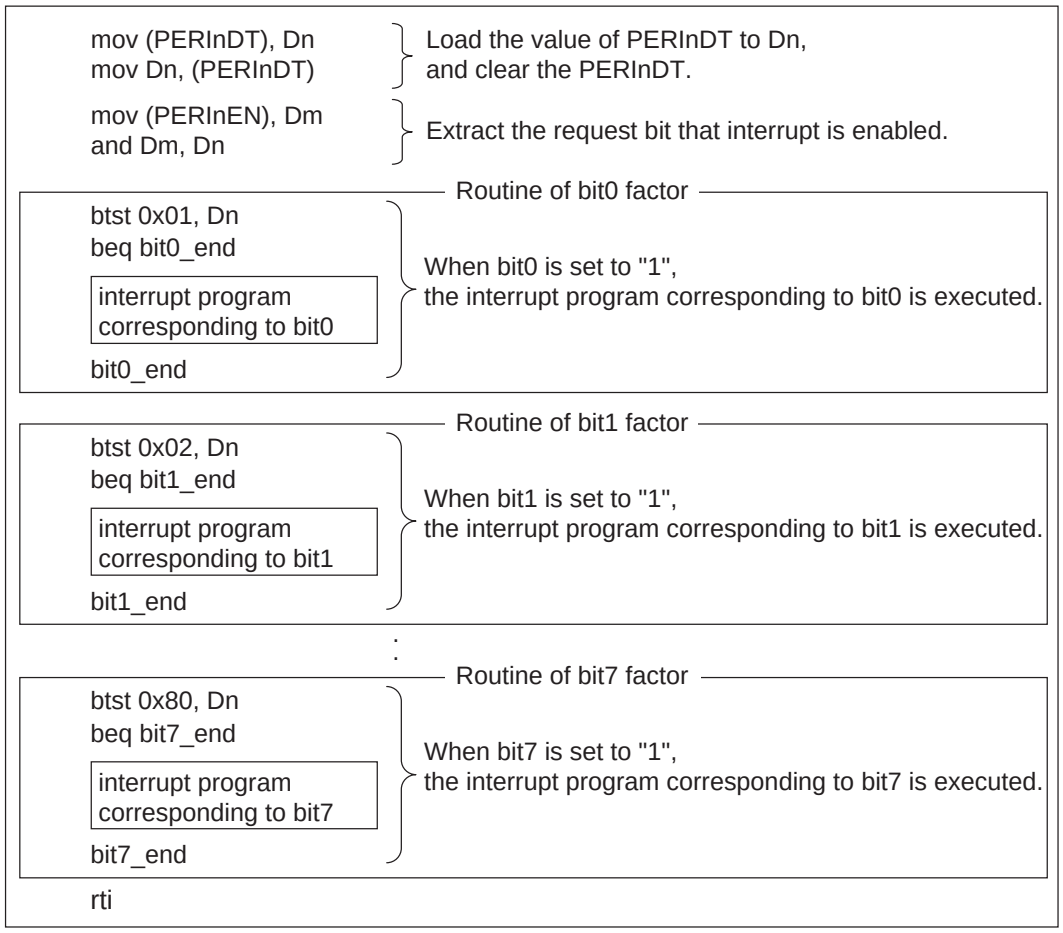


Figure:3.1.9 Sample program of Group-0/Group-1 interrupt service routine

3.2 Control Registers

Interrupt Control Registers is listed in Table:3.2.1.

Table:3.2.1 Interrupt Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
NMICR	0x03FE1	R/W	Non-maskable interrupt control register	III-22
IRQ0ICR	0x03FE2	R/W	External interrupt 0 control register	III-23
IRQ1ICR	0x03FE3	R/W	External interrupt 1 control register	III-23
IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4	R/W	External interrupt 2 control register	III-23
IRQ3ICR	0x03FE5	R/W	External interrupt 3 control register	III-23
IRQ4ICR	0x03FE6	R/W	External interrupt 4 control register	III-23
IRQ5ICR	0x03FE7	R/W	External interrupt 5 control register	III-23
IRQ6ICR	0x03FE8	R/W	External interrupt 6 control register	III-23
IRQ7ICR	0x03FE9	R/W	External interrupt 7 control register (KEY interrupt)	III-23
TM0ICR	0x03FEA	R/W	Timer 0 interrupt control register	III-29
TM1ICR	0x03FEB	R/W	Timer 1 interrupt control register	III-29
TM2ICR	0x03FEC	R/W	Timer 2 interrupt control register	III-29
TM3ICR	0x03FED	R/W	Timer 3 interrupt control register	III-29
TM4ICR	0x03FEE	R/W	Timer 4 interrupt control register	III-29
TM7ICR	0x03FEF	R/W	Timer 7 interrupt control register	III-29
TM7OC2ICR	0x03FF0	R/W	Timer 7 compare 2 match interrupt control register	III-29
TM8ICR	0x03FF1	R/W	Timer 8 interrupt control register	III-29
TM8OC2ICR	0x03FF2	R/W	Timer 8 compare 2 match interrupt control register	III-29
TM9ICR	0x03FF3	R/W	Timer 9 interrupt control register	III-29
TM9OC2ICR	0x03FF4	R/W	Timer 9 compare 2 match interrupt control register	III-29
SC0RICR	0x03FF5	R/W	Serial interface 0 reception interrupt control register	III-29
SC0TICR	0x03FF6	R/W	Serial interface 0 transmission interrupt control register	III-29
SC1RICR	0x03FF7	R/W	Serial interface 1 reception interrupt control register	III-29
SC1TICR	0x03FF8	R/W	Serial interface 1 transmission interrupt control register	III-29
SC2TICR	0x03FF9	R/W	Serial interface 2 transmission complete interrupt control register	III-29
SC2SICR	0x03FFA	R/W	Serial interface 2 stop condition interrupt control register	III-29
SC3TICR	0x03FFB	R/W	Serial interface 3 transmission complete interrupt control register	III-29
SC3SICR	0x03FFC	R/W	Serial interface 3 stop condition interrupt control register	III-29
PERI0ICR	0x03FFD	R/W	Group-0 interrupt level control register	III-24
PERI0EN	0x03FDC	R/W	Group-0 interrupt enable register	III-25
PERI0DT	0x03FDD	R/W	Group-0 interrupt factor register	III-26
PERI1ICR	0x03FFE	R/W	Group-1 interrupt level control register	III-24
PERI1EN	0x03FDE	R/W	Group-1 interrupt enable register	III-27
PERI1DT	0x03FDF	R/W	Group-1 interrupt factor register	III-28

Write access to xICR must be done when PSW.MIE is "0".
There's no guarantee of proper operation if xICR is written with when PSW.MIE is "1".

When an xICR.LV1-0 is set to "11", the interrupt (IRQ) does not occur.

3.2.1 Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI) Control Register

■ Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI) Control Register (NMICR: 0x03FE1)

When the undefined instruction is detected, IRQNPG is set to "1" and NMI occurs.
When the WDT overflows, IRQNWDG is set to "1" and NMI occurs.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	IRQNPG	IRQNWDG	Reserved
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-3	-	Always read as "0".
2	IRQNPG	Detection of Undefined instruction execution 0: Not detected 1: Detected
1	IRQNWDG	WDT overflow detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
0	Reserved	Must be set to "0".

IRQNPG is not cleared by hardware. Before RTI instruction is executed in the NMI interrupt handler, they must be cleared.

IRQNWDG is not cleared by hardware. Before RTI instruction is executed in the NMI interrupt handler, they must be cleared.

3.2.2 External Interrupt Control Register

■ External Interrupt 0 to 6 Control Register (IRQnICR (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6))

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LV1	LV0	REDG	-	Reserved	-	IE	IR
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	LV1-0	Interrupt level - Set interrupt level from 0 to 3.
5	REDG	Interrupt trigger edge 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge
4	-	Always read as "0".
3	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
2	-	Always read as "0".
1	IE	Interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	IR	Interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

■ External Interrupt 7 Control Register (IRQ7ICR)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LV1	LV0	-	-	Reserved	-	IE	IR
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	LV1-0	Interrupt level - Set interrupt level from 0 to 3.
5-4	-	Always read as "0".
3	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
2	-	Always read as "0".
1	IE	Interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	IR	Interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

3.2.3 Peripheral Group Interrupt Control Register

■ Group-0/Group-1 Interrupt Level Control Register (PERI0ICR, PERI1ICR)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LV1	LV0	-	-	Reserved	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R	R	R/W	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	LV1-0	Interrupt level bit Set interrupt level from 0 to 3.
5-4	-	Always read as "0".
3	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
2-0	-	Always read as "0".

■ Group-0 Interrupt Enable Register (PERI0EN)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	EN6	EN5	EN4	EN3	EN2	EN1	EN0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	EN6	RTC-Alarm1 interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	EN5	RTC-Alarm0 interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	EN4	RTC interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	EN3	RTC-TBT interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	EN2	TBT interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	EN1	Timer6 interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	EN0	Timer5 interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable

■ Group-0 Interrupt Factor Register (PERI0DT)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	DT6	DT5	DT4	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	DT6	RTC-Alarm1 interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
5	DT5	RTC-Alarm0 interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
4	DT4	RTC interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
3	DT3	RTC-TBT interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
2	DT2	TBT interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
1	DT1	Timer6 interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
0	DT0	Timer5 interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

■ Group-1 Interrupt Enable Register (PERI1EN)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	EN4	EN3	EN2	EN1	EN0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as "0".
4	EN4	DMA-Error interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	EN3	DMA-AddReq interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	EN2	DMA interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	EN1	A/D interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	EN0	LVD interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable

■ Group-1 Interrupt Factor Register (PERI1DT)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	DT4	DT3	DT2	DT1	DT0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as "0".
4	DT4	DMA-Error interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
3	DT3	DMA-AddReq interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
2	DT2	DMA interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
1	DT1	A/D interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
0	DT0	LVD interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

3.2.4 Other Interrupt Control Register

- Other Interrupt Control Register
  (TMnICR (n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 8, 9), TMnOC2ICR (n = 7, 8, 9), SCnRICR (n = 0, 1), SCnSICR (n = 2, 3), SCnTICR (n = 0, 1, 2, 3))

Register specification of above other interrupt control registers is described below.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LV1	LV0	-	-	Reserved	-	IE	IR
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R	R	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	LV1-0	Interrupt level - Set interrupt level from 0 to 3.
5-4	-	Always read as "0".
3	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
2	-	Always read as "0".
1	IE	Interrupt enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	IR	Interrupt request detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

3.2.5 Block diagram of Peripheral function group interrupt

■ Block diagram of Group-0/Group-1 interrupt interface

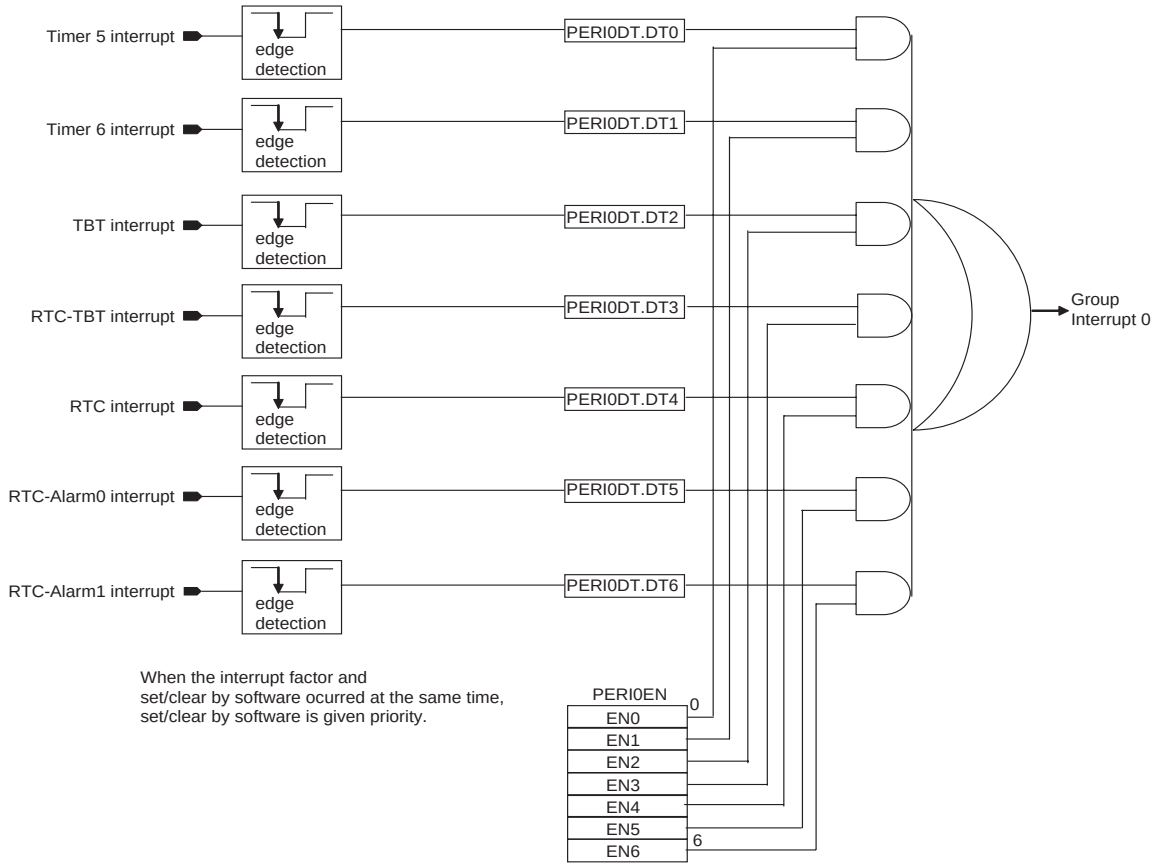


Figure:3.2.1 Block diagram of Group-0 interrupt

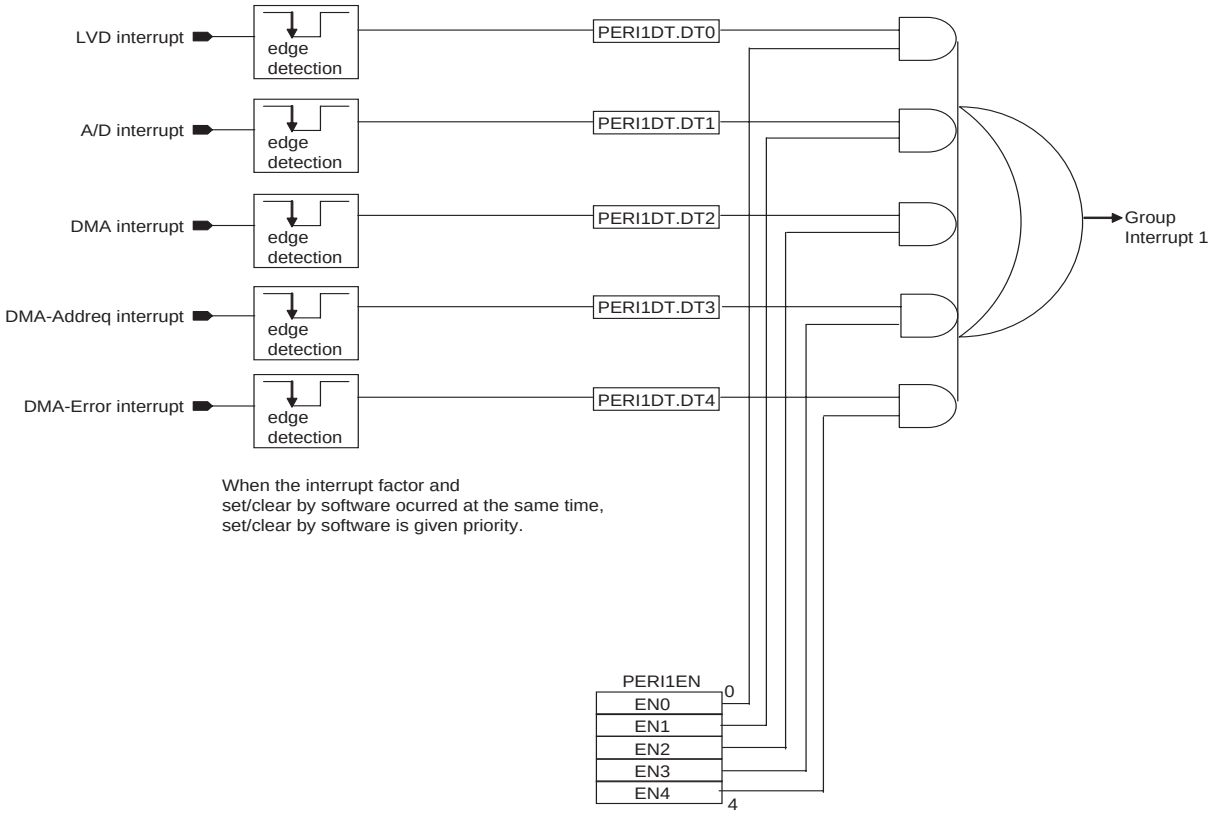


Figure:3.2.2 Block diagram of Group-1 interrupt

3.3 External Interrupts

The LSI has 8 external interrupts shown in Table 3.3.1.

Table:3.3.1 External Interrupt Functions

External Interrupt	Pin name		Rising or Falling edge triggered interrupt	Both edge triggered interrupt	Noise filter	Key interrupt
IRQ0	P10	IRQ0A	√	√	√	-
	P60	IRQ0B				
IRQ1	P11	IRQ1A	√	√	√	-
	P61	IRQ1B				
IRQ2	P80	IRQ2A	√	√	√	-
	P62	IRQ2B				
IRQ3	P81	IRQ3A	√	√	√	-
	P63	IRQ3B				
IRQ4	P14	IRQ4A	√	√	√	-
	P72	IRQ4B				
	P12	IRQ4C				
IRQ5	P15	IRQ5A	√	√	√	-
	P71	IRQ5B				
	P13	IRQ5C				
IRQ6	P16	IRQ6A	√	√	√	-
	P70	IRQ6B				
IRQ7	P10	KEY0A	-	-	√	√
	P11	KEY1A				
	P12	KEY2A				
	P13	KEY3A				
	P14	KEY4A				
	P15	KEY5A				
	P16	KEY6A				
	P17	KEY7A				
	P54	KEY0B				
	P55	KEY1B				
	P56	KEY2B				
	P57	KEY3B				
	P64	KEY4B				
	P65	KEY5B				
	P66	KEY6B				
	P67	KEY7B				

3.3.1 External Interrupt Control Registers

Table:3.3.2 shows the external interrupt control registers.

Table:3.3.2 External Interrupt Control Register

External interrupt	Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	0x03FE2	R/W	External interrupt 0 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR01	0x03ED0	R/W	Noise filter 01 control register	III-39
IRQ1	IRQ1ICR	0x03FE3	R/W	External interrupt 1 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR01	0x03ED0	R/W	Noise filter 01 control register	III-39
IRQ2	IRQ2ICR	0x03FE4	R/W	External interrupt 2 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR23	0x03ED1	R/W	Noise filter 23 control register	III-39
IRQ3	IRQ3ICR	0x03FE5	R/W	External interrupt 3 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR23	0x03ED1	R/W	Noise filter 23 control register	III-39
IRQ4	IRQ4ICR	0x03FE6	R/W	External interrupt 4 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	IRQISEL1	0x03F3F	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 1	III-37
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR45	0x03ED2	R/W	Noise filter 45 control register	III-39
IRQ5	IRQ5ICR	0x03FE7	R/W	External interrupt 5 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	IRQISEL1	0x03F3F	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 1	III-37
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR45	0x03ED2	R/W	Noise filter 45 control register	III-39

External interrupt	Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
IRQ6	IRQ6ICR	0x03FE8	R/W	External interrupt 6 control register	III-23
	IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
	IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
	EDGDT	0x03FD4	R/W	Both edges interrupt control register	III-38
	NFCTR67	0x03ED3	R/W	Noise filter 67 control register	III-39
IRQ7	IRQ7ICR	0x03FE9	R/W	External interrupt 7 control register	III-23
	KEYSEL	0x03F4F	R/W	KEY interrupt input pin selection register	III-43
	KEYIEN	0x03F4E	R/W	KEY interrupt input control register	III-44
	NFCTR67	0x03FD3	R/W	Noise filter 67 control register	III-39

■ External Interrupt Input Control Register (IRQIEN)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	IRQI6EN	IRQI5EN	IRQI4EN	IRQI3EN	IRQI2EN	IRQI1EN	IRQI0EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	IRQI6EN	IRQ6 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (IRQ6A/IRQ6B)
5	IRQI5EN	IRQ5 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (IRQ5A/IRQ5B/IRQ5C)
4	IRQI4EN	IRQ4 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (IRQ4A/IRQ4B/IRQ4C)
3	IRQI3EN	IRQ3 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (IRQ3A/IRQ3B)
2	IRQI2EN	IRQ2 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (IRQ2A/IRQ2B)
1	IRQI1EN	IRQ1 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (RQ1A/IRQ1B)
0	IRQI0EN	IRQ0 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (IRQ0A/IRQ0B)

■ External Interrupt Input pin Selection Register 0 (IRQISEL0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	IRQ6SEL	IRQ5SEL	IRQ4SEL	IRQ3SEL	IRQ2SEL	IRQ1SEL	IRQ0SEL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	IRQ6SEL	IRQ6 pin selection 0: IRQ6A (P16) 1: IRQ6B (P70)
5	IRQ5SEL	IRQ5 pin selection 0: IRQ5A (P15) 1: IRQ5B (P71)
4	IRQ4SEL	IRQ4 pin selection 0: IRQ4A (P14) 1: IRQ4B (P72)
3	IRQ3SEL	IRQ3 pin selection 0: IRQ3A (P81) 1: IRQ3B (P63)
2	IRQ2SEL	IRQ2 pin selection 0: IRQ2A (P80) 1: IRQ2B (P62)
1	IRQ1SEL	IRQ1 pin selection 0: IRQ1A (P11) 1: IRQ1B (P61)
0	IRQ0SEL	IRQ0 pin selection 0: IRQ0A (P10) 1: IRQ0B (P60)

■ External Interrupt Input pin Selection Register 1 (IRQISEL1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	IRQ5C SEL	IRQ4C SEL	-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as "0".
5	IRQ5CSEL	IRQ5 pin selection 0: IRQ5A/IRQ5B (P15/P71) 1: IRQ5C (P13)
4	IRQ4CSEL	IRQ4 pin selection 0: IRQ4A/IRQ4B (P14/P72) 1: IRQ4C (P12)
3-0	-	Always read as "0".

■ Both Edges Interrupt Control Register (EDGDT)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	EDGSEL6	EDGSEL5	EDGSEL4	EDGSEL3	EDGSEL2	EDGSEL1	EDGSEL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	EDGSEL6	IRQ6 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)
5	EDGSEL5	IRQ5 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)
4	EDGSEL4	IRQ4 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)
3	EDGSEL3	IRQ3 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)
2	EDGSEL2	IRQ2 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)
1	EDGSEL1	IRQ1 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)
0	EDGSEL0	IRQ0 trigger selection 0: Rising edge or falling edge 1: Both edges (Rising and falling edges)

When EDGSELn is “0”, rising edge or falling edge is selected with IRQnICR.REDGn.

■ Noise Filter 01 Control Register (NFCTR01)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	NF1SCK2	NF1SCK1	NF1SCK0	NF1EN	NF0SCK2	NF0SCK1	NF0SCK0	NF0EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	NF1SCK2 NF1SCK1 NF1SCK0	IRQ1 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
4	NF1EN	IRQ1 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-1	NF0SCK2 NF0SCK1 NF0SCK0	IRQ0 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
0	NF0EN	IRQ0 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

■ Noise Filter 23 Control Register (NFCTR23)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	NF3SCK2	NF3SCK1	NF3SCK0	NF3EN	NF2SCK2	NF2SCK1	NF2SCK0	NF2EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	NF3SCK2 NF3SCK1 NF3SCK0	IRQ3 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
4	NF3EN	IRQ3 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-1	NF2SCK2 NF2SCK1 NF2SCK0	IRQ2 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
0	NF2EN	IRQ2 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

■ Noise Filter 45 Control Register (NFCTR45)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	NF5SCK2	NF5SCK1	NF5SCK0	NF5EN	NF4SCK2	NF4SCK1	NF4SCK0	NF4EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	NF5SCK2 NF5SCK1 NF5SCK0	IRQ5 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
4	NF5EN	IRQ5 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-1	NF4SCK2 NF4SCK1 NF4SCK0	IRQ4 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
0	NF4EN	IRQ4 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

■ Noise Filter 67 Control Register (NRCTR67)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	NF7SCK2	NF7SCK1	NF7SCK0	NF7EN	NF6SCK2	NF6SCK1	NF6SCK0	NF6EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	NF7SCK2 NF7SCK1 NF7SCK0	IRQ7 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
4	NF7EN	IRQ7 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-1	NF6SCK2 NF6SCK1 NF6SCK0	IRQ6 noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
0	NF6EN	IRQ6 noise filter operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

■ KEY Interrupt Input pin Selection Register (KEYSEL)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	KEYSEL7	KEYSEL6	KEYSEL5	KEYSEL4	KEYSEL3	KEYSEL2	KEYSEL1	KEYSEL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	KEYSEL7	KEY7 pin selection 0: KEY7A(P17) 1: KEY7B(P67)
6	KEYSEL6	KEY6 pin selection 0: KEY6A(P16) 1: KEY6B(P66)
5	KEYSEL5	KEY5 pin selection 0: KEY5A(P15) 1: KEY5B(P65)
4	KEYSEL4	KEY4 pin selection 0: KEY4A(P14) 1: KEY4B(P64)
3	KEYSEL3	KEY3 pin selection 0: KEY3A(P13) 1: KEY3B(P57)
2	KEYSEL2	KEY2 pin selection 0: KEY2A(P12) 1: KEY2B(P56)
1	KEYSEL1	KEY1 pin selection 0: KEY1A(P11) 1: KEY1B(P55)
0	KEYSEL0	KEY0 pin selection 0: KEY0A(P10) 1: KEY0B(P54)

■ KEY Interrupt Input Control Register (KEYIEN)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	KEY7EN	KEY6EN	KEY5EN	KEY4EN	KEY3EN	KEY2EN	KEY1EN	KEY0EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	KEY7EN	KEY7 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY7A/KEY7B)
6	KEY6EN	KEY6 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY6A/KEY6B)
5	KEY5EN	KEY5 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY5A/KEY5B)
4	KEY4EN	KEY4 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY4A/KEY4B)
3	KEY3EN	KEY3 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY3A/KEY3B)
2	KEY2EN	KEY2 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY2A/KEY2B)
1	KEY1EN	KEY1 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY1A/KEY1B)
0	KEY0EN	KEY0 input enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable (KEY0A/KEY0B)

3.3.2 Rising (Falling) edge triggered interrupt

Rising or falling edge interrupt can be selected with IRQ0ICR, IRQ1ICR, IRQ2ICR, IRQ3ICR, IRQ4ICR, IRQ5ICR and IRQ6ICR.

■ Setting example of rising edge triggered interrupt

The following example shows how to enable the rising edge triggered IRQ4 at P72.

Step	Settings	Register	Description
1	Set P72 as IRQ4 pin	IRQIEN IRQISEL0 IRQISEL1	Set IRQIEN.IRQ4EN to "1". Set IRQISEL0.IRQ4SEL to "1". Set IRQISEL1.IRQ4CSEL to "0".
2	Select the rising edge triggered IRQ4	IRQ4ICR	Set IRQ4ICR.REDG to "1".
3	Set the Interrupt level of IRQ4	IRQ4ICR	Set IRQ4ICR.LV1-0 as you like. * IRQ4ICR.IR should be set to "0".
4	Enable IRQ4	IRQ4ICR	Set IRQ4ICR.IE to "1".

Interrupt edge (rising edge, falling edge or both edges (rising edge and falling edge)) of IRQn must be changed when IRQnICR.IE is "0". After the interrupt edge is changed, IRQnICR.IR must be cleared before setting IRQnICR.IE is "1".

3.3.3 Both edges triggered Interrupt

Both edges (rising edge and falling edge) interrupt can be specified with the EDGDT.

■ Setting example of both edges interrupt

The following example shows how to select the both edges triggered IRQ0 at P10.

Step	Settings	Register	Description
1	Set P10 as IRQ0 pin	IRQIEN IRQISEL0	Set IRQIEN.IRQ0EN to "1". Set IRQISEL0.IRQ0SEL to "0". * Set P10 as the IRQ0 pin.
2	Select the both edges triggered IRQ0	EDGDT	Set EDGDT.EDGDT0 to "1".
3	Set the Interrupt level of IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	Set IRQ0ICR.LV1-0 as you like. * IRQ0ICR.IR should be set to "0".
4	Enable IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	Set the IRQ0ICR.IE to "1".

Interrupt edge (rising edge, falling edge or both edges (rising edge and falling edge)) of IRQn must be changed when IRQnICR.IE is "0". After the interrupt edge is changed, IRQnICR.IR must be cleared before setting IRQnICR.IE is "1".

3.3.4 Key Interrupt

Key interrupt (KEYIRQn) pin can be selected with the KEYIEN and KEYSEL. KEYIRQn is generated when one of the KEYIRQ pins goes from "High" to "Low".

■ Setting example of KEYIRQ

The following example shows how to use P10, P11, P12 and P13 as KEYIRQ pins and generate IRQ7.

Step	Settings	Register	Description
1	Set the input direction of P10, P11, P12 and P13	P1DIR	Set P1DIR.P1DIR3-0 to "0000".
2	Add the pull-up resistors	P1PLUP	Set P1PLUP.P1PLU3-0 to "1111".
3	Set P10, P11, P12 and P13 as KEYIRQ pins.	KEYSEL KEYIEN	Set KEYSEL.KEYSEL3-0 to "0000". Set KEYIEN.KEYEN3-0 to "1111".
4	Set the Interrupt level of IRQ7	IRQ7ICR	Set IRQ7ICR.LV1-0 as you like. * IRQ7ICR.IR should be set to "0".
5	Enable IRQ7	IRQ7ICR	Set IRQ7ICR.IE to "1".

3.3.5 Noise Filter Function

Noise Filter (NF) controlled with NFCTR01, NFCTR23, NFCTR45 and NFCTR67 is available to eliminate input noise at the external interrupt pins (IRQn). NF samples the input signal at IRQn, and when the input signal is sampled three times and the level of it is not changed, the signal can pass through NF.

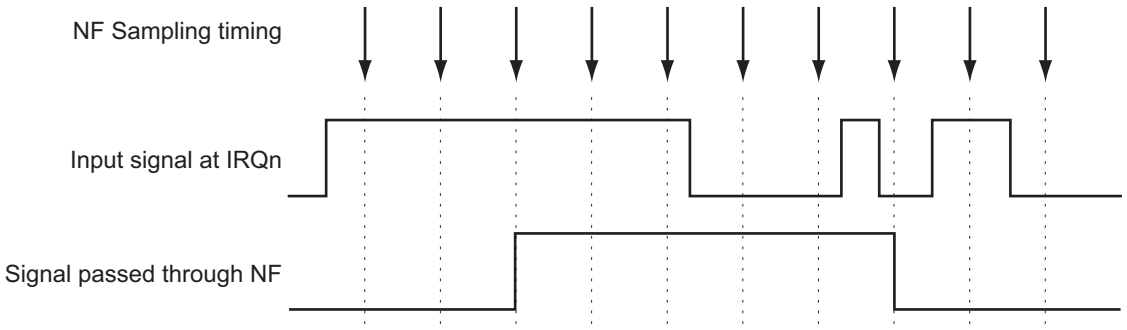


Figure:3.3.1 Eliminating input noise at IRQn with NF

NF cannot be used in STOP or HALT mode. When an IRQn is used as the trigger to return from the STOP or HALT mode, NF of the IRQn must not be used.

■ Setting example of NF

The following example shows how to select the positive edge triggered IRQ0 at P10 and enable NF of IRQ0.

Step	Settings	Register	Description
1	Set P10 as IRQ0 pin	IRQIEN IRQISEL0	Set IRQIEN.IRQ0EN to "1". Set IRQISEL0.IRQ0SEL to "0". * Set P10 as the IRQ0 pin.
2	Select the positive edge triggered IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	Set IRQ0ICR.REDG0 to "1".
3	Activate NF of IRQ0	NFCTR01	Set NFCTR01.NF0EN to "1".
4	Set the Interrupt level of IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	Set IRQ0ICR.LV1-0 as you like. * IRQ0ICR.IR should be set to "0".
5	Enable IRQ0	IRQ0ICR	Set IRQ0ICR.IE to "1".

NF setting must be finished before enabling the interrupt.

Chapter 4 Clock/ Mode/ Voltage Control

4

4.1 Clock Control

The LSI has 4 types of clock oscillation circuits.

Table:4.1.1 Clock Oscillation Circuits

Internal high-speed oscillation circuit	Max. 10 MHz clock (HRCCLK) can be generated.
External high-speed oscillation circuit	High-speed clock is generated by connecting crystal or ceramic oscillator to OSC1/OSC2 pins.
Internal low-speed oscillation circuit	40 kHz clock (SRCCLK) can be generated.
External low-speed oscillation circuit	Low-speed clock is generated by connecting crystal oscillator to XI/XO pins.

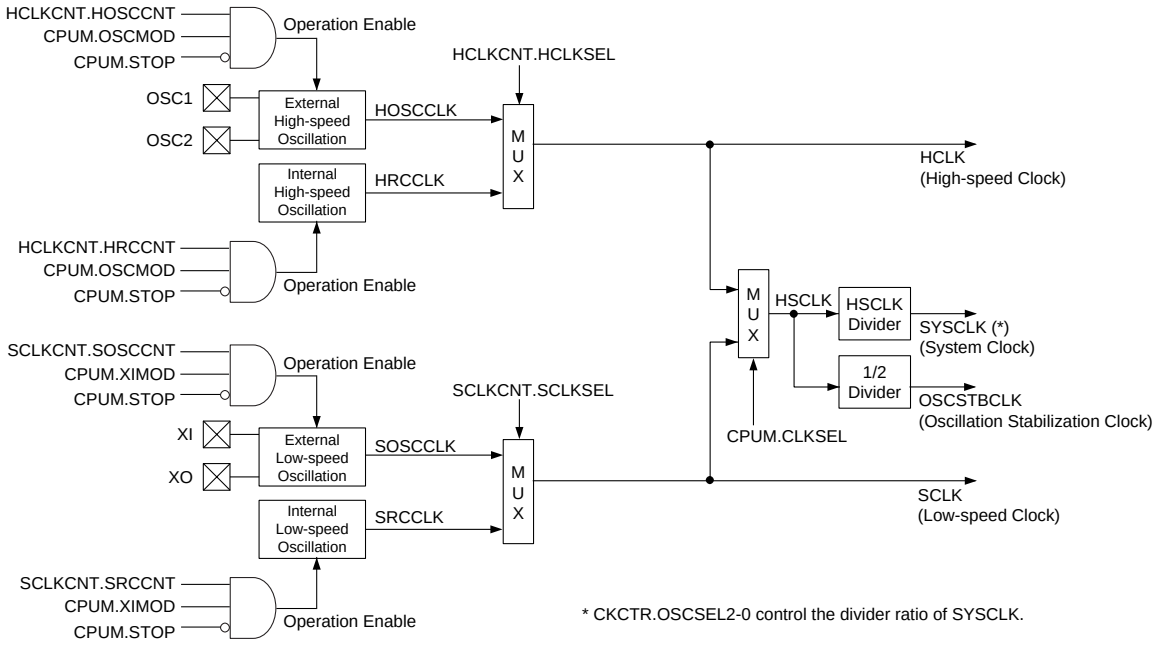


Figure:4.1.1 Block Diagram of Clock Control

After reset, the LSI operates in SLOW mode where SYSCLK is equal to SRCCLK.

To lower the LSI power consumption, the clock supply to the peripheral circuits can be controlled with the PRICKCNT0/1/2 registers.
For example, if Timer 0 is not used, the clock supply to Timer 0 is stopped by setting the PRICKCNT0.PRICKCNT00 to "0".

4.1.1 Control Registers

Table:4.1.2 shows control registers of clock control functions.

Table:4.1.2 Clock Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
CPUM	0x03F00	R/W	CPU mode control register	IV-4
CKCTR	0x03F04	R/W	System clock control register	IV-6
HCLKCNT	0x03F05	R/W	High-speed oscillation clock control register	IV-7
SCLKCNT	0x03F06	R/W	Low-speed oscillation clock control register	IV-8
PRICKCNT0	0x03E10	R/W	Clock supply control register 0	IV-9
PRICKCNT1	0x03E11	R/W	Clock supply control register 1	IV-10
PRICKCNT2	0x03E12	R/W	Clock supply control register 2	IV-11

R/W: Readable/Writable

■ CPU Mode Control Register (CPUM: 0x03F00)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	STOP	HALT	HALTMOD	XIMOD	OSCMOD	CLKSEL
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as "00".
5	STOP	STOP mode request 0: not STOP mode 1: STOP mode
4	HALT	HALT mode request 0: not HALT mode 1: HALT mode
3	HALTMOD	HALT1/HALT3 mode control 0: Go to HALT1 mode 1: Go to HALT3 mode
2	XIMOD	Low-speed oscillation control 0: Low-speed oscillation disabled 1: Low-speed oscillation enabled
1	OSCMOD	High-speed oscillation control 0: High-speed oscillation disabled 1: High-speed oscillation enabled
0	CLKSEL	Select clock control 0: Low-speed clock (SCLK) 1: High-speed clock (HCLK)

Set the CPUM in one of states described in Table 4.1.2.
(Any other value which is not described in the Table 4.1.2. must not be set to the CPUM.)

The LSI has the following function to prevent malfunction.
- HALT = 0, CLKSEL = 1 and OSCMOD = 0 is not be valid.
- CLKSEL = 0 and XIMOD = 0 is not valid.
- STOP = 1 and HALT = 1 is not valid.
- OCDMOD = 0 and XIMOD = 0 is not valid.

Set the PSW.MIE to "0" before changing the data of CPU or CKCTR.
Insert 3 NOP instructions right after the instruction for changing CPUM or CKCTR.

The instruction for changing the data of CPUM or CKCTR must not be executed in the internal RAM.

Table:4.1.3 Operating Mode Control and Clock Oscillation Status

Operation mode	CPUM						Clock and CPU Status			
	STOP	HALT	HALTMOD	XIMOD	OSCMOD	CLKSEL	HCLK	SCLK	System clock	CPU
NORMAL	0	0	-	0/1	1	1	Active	Stop / Active	HCLK	Active
IDLE	0	0	-	1	1	0	Active	Active	SCLK	Active
SLOW	0	0	-	1	0	0	Stop	Active	SCLK	Active
HALT0	0	1	-	0/1	1	1	Active	Stop / Active	HCLK	Stop
HALT1	0	1	0	1	0/1	0	Stop	Active	SCLK	Stop
HALT2	0	1	-	1	0	1	Stop	Active	Stop	Stop
HALT3	0	1	1	1	0	0	Stop	Active	Stop	Stop
STOP0	1	0	-	0/1	1	1	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop
STOP1	1	0	-	1	0	0	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop

For the setting procedure of mode transition, refer to [4.2 Mode Control Function].

■ System Clock Control Register (CKCTR: 0x03F04)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	OSCSEL2-0		
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-3	-	Always read as "00000"
2-0	OSCSEL2-0	The frequency of SYSCLK 000: f_{HSCLK} 001: f_{HSCLK}/2 010: f_{HSCLK}/4 011: f_{HSCLK}/8 100: f_{HSCLK}/16 101: f_{HSCLK}/32 110: Setting is prohibited. 111: Setting is prohibited.

Set the PSW.MIE to "0" before changing the data of CPU or CKCTR.
Insert 3 NOP instructions right after the instruction for changing CPUM or CKCTR.

The instruction for changing the data of CPUM or CKCTR must not be executed in the internal RAM.

■ High-speed Oscillation Clock Control Register (HCLKCNT: 0x03F05)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	HCLKSEL	FCNT1-0		-	Reserved	Reserved	HOSCCNT	HRCCNT
Initial value	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	HCLKSEL	High-speed oscillation clock select 0: Internal high-speed oscillation 1: External high-speed oscillation Select internal high-speed oscillation (set the bit from 1 to 0) when HRC-CNT = 1.
6-5	FCNT1-0	Internal High-speed oscillation frequency select 00: 1 MHz 01: Setting is prohibited. 10: 8 MHz 11: 10 MHz
4	-	Always read as "0"
3-2	Reserved	Always set to "111".
1	HOSCCNT	External high-speed oscillation circuit control 0: Disabled (General-purpose port selected) 1: Enabled (OSC1/OSC2 selected)
0	HRCCNT	Internal high-speed oscillation circuit control 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

The HCLKSEL must be set while the CPU is in NORMAL or IDLE mode, and both the HOSC-CNT and the HRCCNT are "1". At this time, HOSCCLK and HRCCLK must be stable.

■ Low-speed Oscillation Clock Control Register (SCLKCNT: 0x03F06)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCLKSEL	-	-	-	-	Reserved	SOSCCNT	SRCCNT
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
Access	R/W	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCLKSEL	Low-speed oscillation clock select 0: Internal low-speed oscillation 1: External low-speed oscillation
6-3	-	Always read as "0000".
2	Reserved	Always set to "1".
1	SOSCCNT	External low-speed oscillation circuit control 0: disabled 1: enabled
0	SRCCNT	Internal low-speed oscillation circuit control 0: disabled 1: enabled

---

The SCLKSEL must be set while both the SOSCCNT and the SRCCNT are "1".
At this time, HOSCCLK and HRCCLK must be stable.

When changing the SCLKSEL in Normal mode, the following wait time must be ensured before disable the clock oscillation to be stopped.

Wait time: (two cycles of the external low-speed oscillation) +
(two cycles of the internal low-speed oscillation)

When changing the SCLKSEL in Slow mode, the above wait time is not needed.

■ Clock Supply Control Register 0 (PRICKCNT0: 0x03E10)

Clock supply control register 0 controls clock supply to peripheral functions.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	PRICKCNT 07	PRICKCNT 06	PRICKCNT 05	PRICKCNT 04	PRICKCNT 03	PRICKCNT 02	PRICKCNT 01	PRICKCNT 00
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	PRICKCNT07	Clock control for RTC function 0: disabled 1: enabled
6	PRICKCNT06	Clock control for Timer 6 and General time base timer 0: disabled 1: enabled
5	PRICKCNT05	Clock control for Timer 5 0: disabled 1: enabled
4	PRICKCNT04	Clock control for Timer 4 0: disabled 1: enabled
3	PRICKCNT03	Clock control for Timer 3 0: disabled 1: enabled
2	PRICKCNT02	Clock control for Timer 2 0: disabled 1: enabled
1	PRICKCNT01	Clock control for Timer 1 0: disabled 1: enabled
0	PRICKCNT00	Clock control for Timer 0 0: disabled 1: enabled

■ Clock Supply Control Register 1 (PRICKCNT1: 0x03E11)

Clock supply control register 1 controls clock supply to peripheral functions.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	PRICKCNT 17	PRICKCNT 16	PRICKCNT 15	PRICKCNT 14	PRICKCNT 13	PRICKCNT 12	PRICKCNT 11	PRICKCNT 10
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	PRICKCNT17	Clock control for DMA function 0: disabled 1: enabled
6	PRICKCNT16	Clock control for Serial 3 function 0: disabled 1: enabled
5	PRICKCNT15	Clock control for Serial 2 function 0: disabled 1: enabled
4	PRICKCNT14	Clock control for Serial 1 function 0: disabled 1: enabled
3	PRICKCNT13	Clock control for Serial 0 function 0: disabled 1: enabled
2	PRICKCNT12	Clock control for Timer 9 0: disabled 1: enabled
1	PRICKCNT11	Clock control for Timer 8 0: disabled 1: enabled
0	PRICKCNT10	Clock control for Timer 7 0: disabled 1: enabled

■ Clock Supply Control Register 2 (PRICKCNT2: 0x03E12)

Clock supply control register 2 controls clock supply to peripheral functions.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	PRICKCNT 25	PRICKCNT 24	PRICKCNT 23	PRICKCNT 22	PRICKCNT 21	PRICKCNT 20
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as "0".
5	PRICKCNT25	Clock control for RTC time base timer function 0: disabled 1: enabled
4	PRICKCNT24	Clock control for Noise filter function (Noise is removed by sampling.) 0: disabled 1: enabled
3	PRICKCNT23	Clock control for LVI function 0: disabled 1: enabled
2	PRICKCNT22	Clock control for 12-bit A/D function 0: disabled 1: enabled
1	PRICKCNT21	Clock control for Buzzer function 0: disabled 1: enabled
0	PRICKCNT20	Clock control for LCD function 0: disabled 1: enabled

4.1.2 Change of the External Low-speed Oscillation Capability

The external low-speed oscillation starts with high-current driving capability at LSI power-on. After the oscillation stabilization, the LSI changes the oscillation to low-current driving capability for the low power consumption.

If the current driving capability of oscillation is not enough, it can be changed by the rewriting enable register (FBEWER: 0x03D80) and the clock mode control register (CLKMD: 0x03D8C).

To change the current driving capability, set the registers in operation with the internal low-speed oscillation.

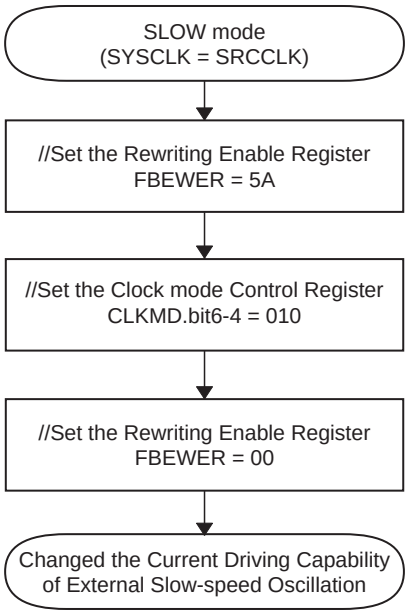


Figure:4.1.2 Change of the External Low-speed Oscillation Capability

4.2 Mode Control Function

This LSI operates in one of the following 5 modes (NORMAL/SLOW/HALT/STOP/IDLE). The CPUM controls the mode transition. LSI reset or interrupts make the LSI recover from STANDBY mode (HALT/STOP).

Figure:4.2.1 shows the transition between each operation mode.
For detail of transition between operation mode, VDD18 voltage and clock, refer to [4.4 Mode/Voltage/Clock Transition]

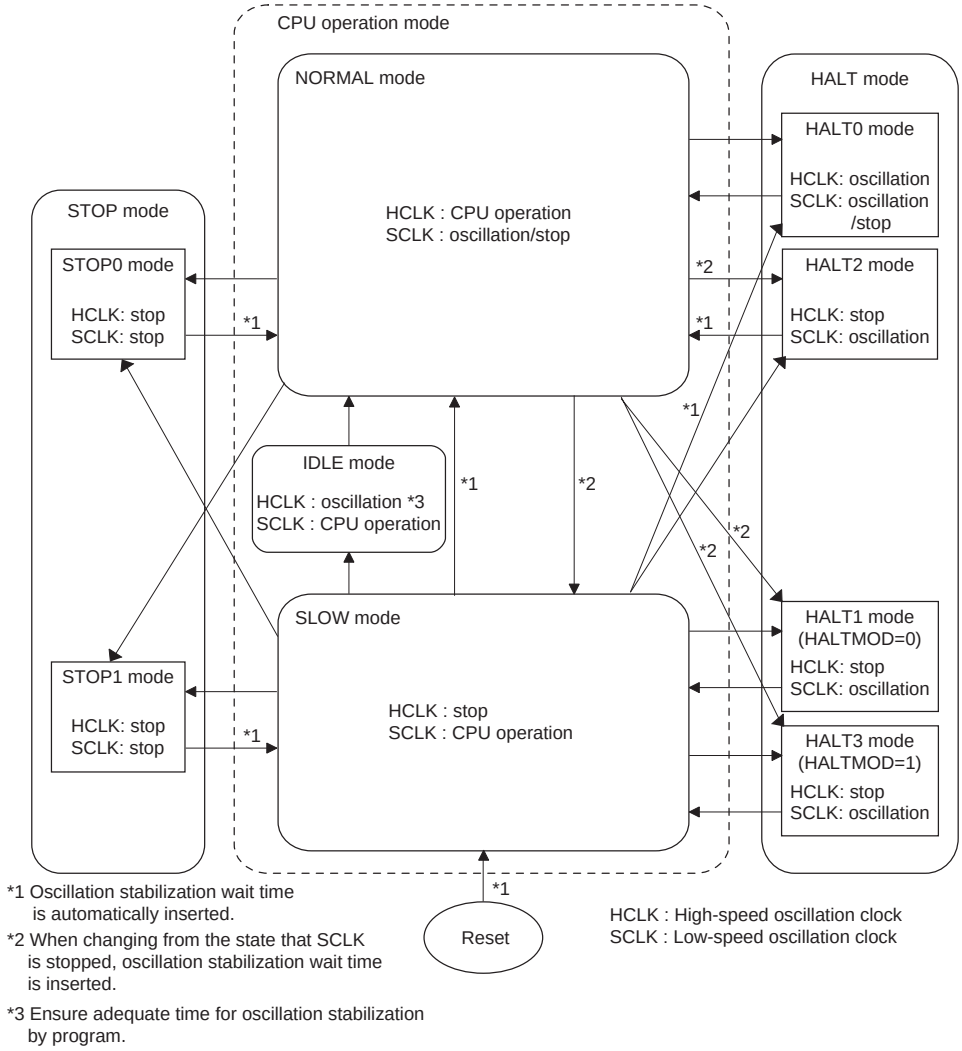


Figure:4.2.1 Transition between Operation Modes

Do not perform the transition that is not listed in Figure:4.2.1.

To make clock switching between HCLK and SCLK stable and synchronized, the frequency of HCLK must be 2.5 times or more than that of SCLK.

Although HCLK oscillates in IDLE mode, do not operate the peripheral circuits with HCLK. Peripheral circuits must be enabled with HCLK after the CPU goes to NORMAL mode.

4.2.1 NORMAL Mode

■ Transition from SLOW to NORMAL

When the transition from SLOW to NORMAL, the oscillation stabilization wait for HCLK is ensured by hardware. Figure:4.2.2 shows the transition procedure to NORMAL. The transition to NORMAL through IDLE can be allowed, when HCLK must be stable in IDLE as shown in Figure:4.2.3.

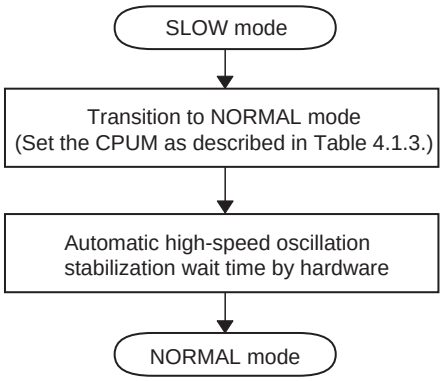


Figure:4.2.2 Transition Flow from SLOW to NORMAL

Until entering NORMAL mode since the CPUM is set to transmit to NORMAL mode, SYSCLK is generated from SCLK.

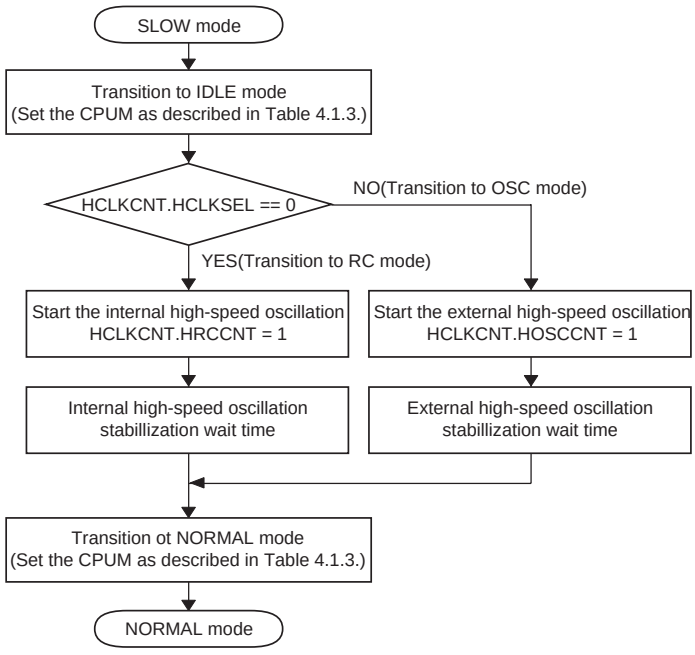


Figure:4.2.3 Transition Flow from SLOW to NORMAL through IDLE

■ Clock Change from HRCCLK to HOSCCLK

Figure:4.2.4 shows the clock change procedure from HRCCLK to HOSCCLK.

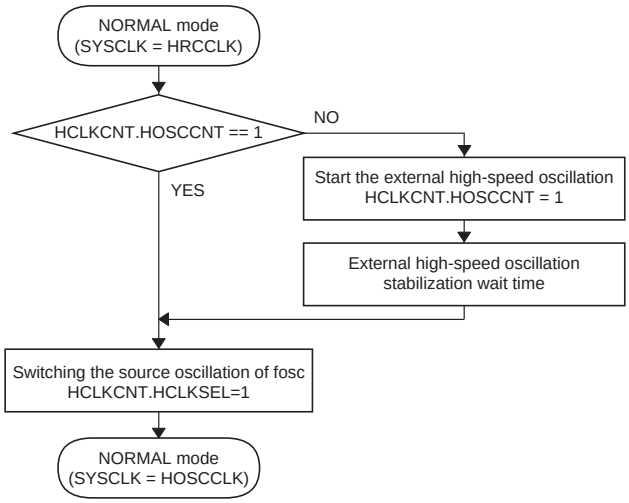


Figure:4.2.4 Clock Change Flow from HRCCLK to HOSCCLK

Before changing the operating clock from HRCCLK to HOSCCLK, set the HCLKCNT.HOSCCNT to "1" and the wait time to stabilize the frequency of HOSCLK must be ensured.
After HOSCCNT is stable, set the HCLKCNT.HCLKSEL to "1".
The oscillation stabilization wait time should be determined in consultation with the manufacturer of oscillator.

■ Clock Change from HOSCCLK to HRCCLK

Figure:4.2.5 shows the clock change procedure from HOSCCLK to HRCCLK.

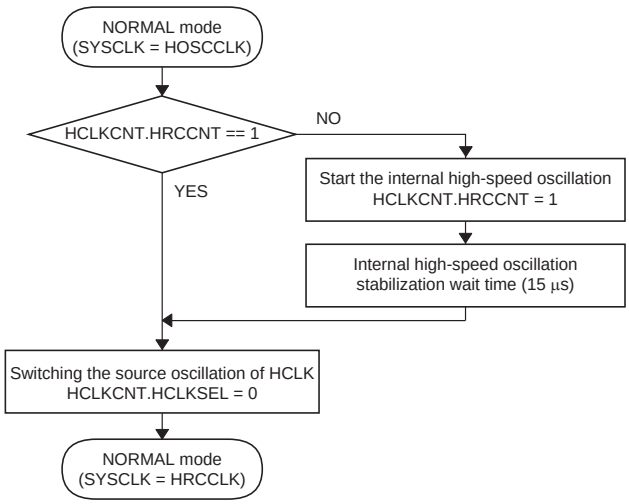


Figure:4.2.5 Clock Change Flow from HOSCCLK to HRCCLK

4.2.2 SLOW Mode

■ Transition from NORMAL to SLOW

Figure:4.2.6 shows the mode transition procedure from NORMAL to SLOW.
(The low-speed clock oscillation is enabled in the low-speed oscillation clock control register (SCLKCNT). Figure:4.1.1 shows the Operation Enable signal for external slow-speed oscillation circuit or internal slow-speed oscillation circuit.)

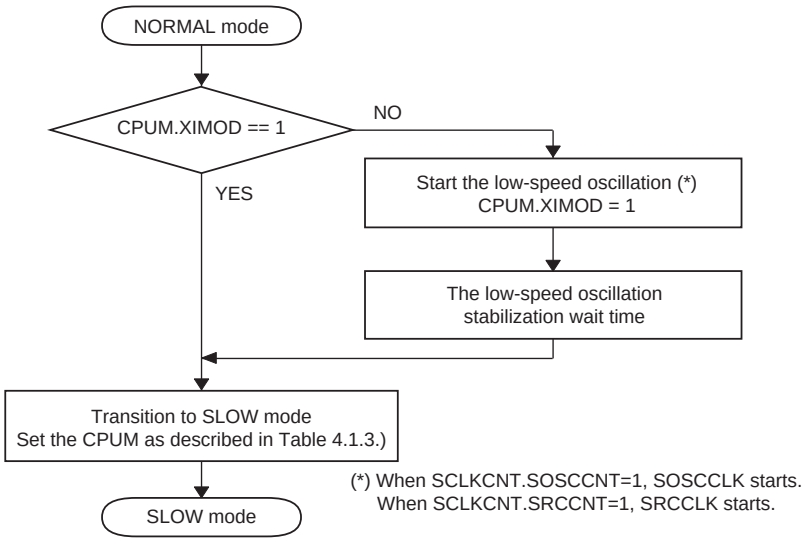


Figure:4.2.6 Transition Flow from NORMAL Mode to SLOW Mode

The oscillation stabilization wait time should be determined in consultation with the manufacturer of oscillator.

■ Clock Change from SRCCLK to SOSCCLK

Figure:4.2.7 shows the clock change procedure from SRCCLK to SOSCCLK.

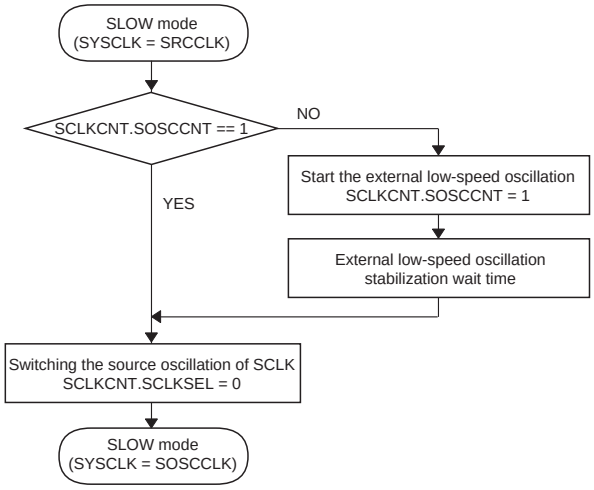


Figure:4.2.7 Clock Change Flow from SRCCLK to SOSCCLK

To change the operating clock from the internal low-speed oscillation to the external low-speed oscillation, set the SCLKSEL bit of SCLKCNT register to "1" after setting the SOSCCNT bit of SCLKCNT register to "1" and the enough oscillation stabilization wait time has elapsed.
The oscillation stabilization wait time should be determined in consultation with the manufacturer of oscillator.

■ Clock Change from SOSCCLK to SRCCLK

Figure:4.2.8 shows the clock change procedure from SOSCCLK to SRCCLK.

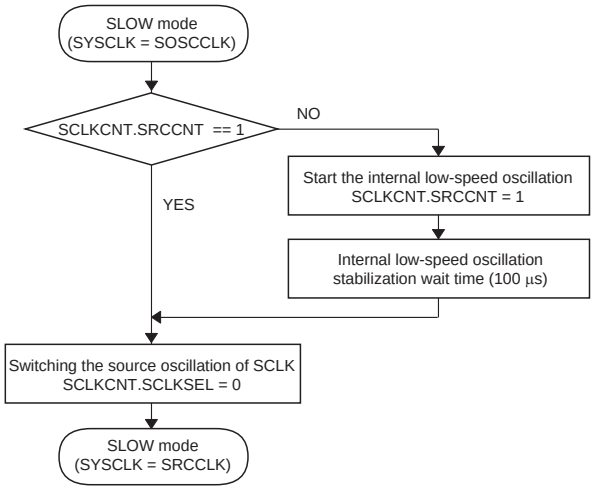


Figure:4.2.8 Clock Change Flow from SOSCCLK to SRCCLK

4.2.3 STANDBY Mode

The transition from CPU operating mode (NORMAL/SLOW) to STANDBY mode (HALT/STOP) is executed by the program. CPU wakes up from STANBY mode by the interrupt. Figure:4.2.9 shows the flow diagram of transition to/from STANDBY mode.

Before the transition to STANDBY mode, the following settings are required:

1. Set the PSW.MIE and xICR.IE to "0" to disable all maskable interrupts.
2. Select the interrupt source to wake up CPU from STANBY mode and set only the corresponding xICR.IE to "1". Set the PSW.MIE to "1".
3. Set STANBY mode in the CPUM.

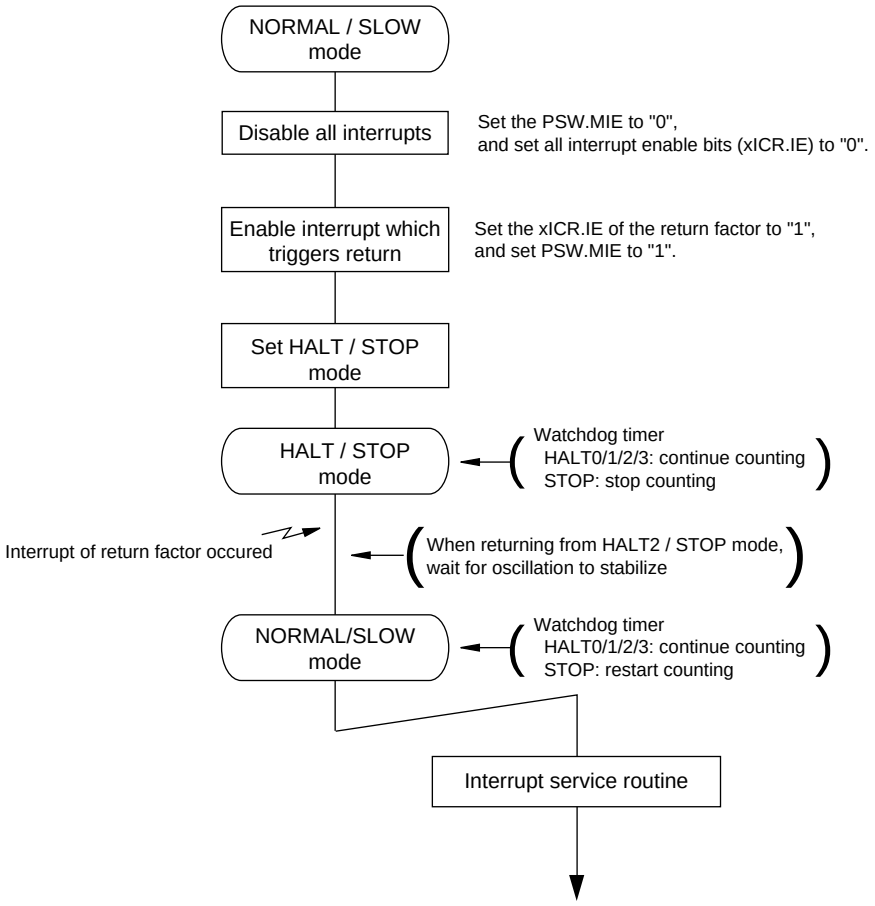


Figure:4.2.9 Transition to/from STANDBY Mode

■ Transition to HALT Mode

The system can change from any mode of NORMAL and SLOW to HALT0/HALT1/HALT2/HALT3 mode.

In HALT0/HALT1 mode, CPU is stopped operating while the oscillators remain active. In HALT2/HALT3 mode, only the low-speed oscillator remains active and the clock is supplied only to Real time clock.

CPU wakes up from HALT mode by interrupt or reset. When resetting, the normal reset operation is executed. When an interrupt occurs, the mode is returned to the same status as before changing to HALT mode.

The transition procedure from CPU operating mode to HALT mode is shown below.

- Transition procedure from NORMAL mode to HALT0 mode

  Set CPUM.HALT to "1".

- Transition procedure from NORMAL mode to HALT2 mode

  Set CPUM.HALT to "1" and CPUM.OSCMOD to "0" at the same time while the low-speed oscillation is stable.

- Transition procedure from SLOW mode to HALT1/HALT3 mode

  Set CPUM.HALT to "1". If CPUM.HALTMOD is "0"and "1", the mode changes to HALT1 and HALT3, respectively.

- Transition procedure from NORMAL mode to HALT1/HALT3 mode

  Set CPUM.HALT to "1", CPUM.OSCMOD to "0", and CPUM.CLKSEL to "0" at the same time while the low-speed oscillation is stable. If CPUM.HALTMOD is "0", and "1", the mode changes to HALT1 and HALT3, respectively.

- The transition procedure from SLOW mode to HALT0 mode

  Set CPUM.HALT to "1", CPUM.OSCMOD to "1", and CPUM.CLKSEL to "1" at the same time.

- The transition procedure from SLOW mode to HALT2 mode

  Set CPUM.HALT to "1", CPUM.OSCMOD to "0", and CPUM.CLKSEL to "1" at the same time.

Figure:4.2.10 and Figure:4.2.11 show the transition procedure from CPU operating mode to HALT mode.

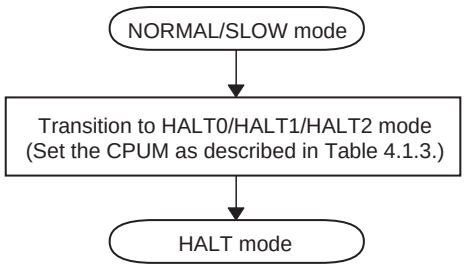


Figure:4.2.10 Transition from CPU Operating Mode to HALT0/HALT1/HALT2 Mode

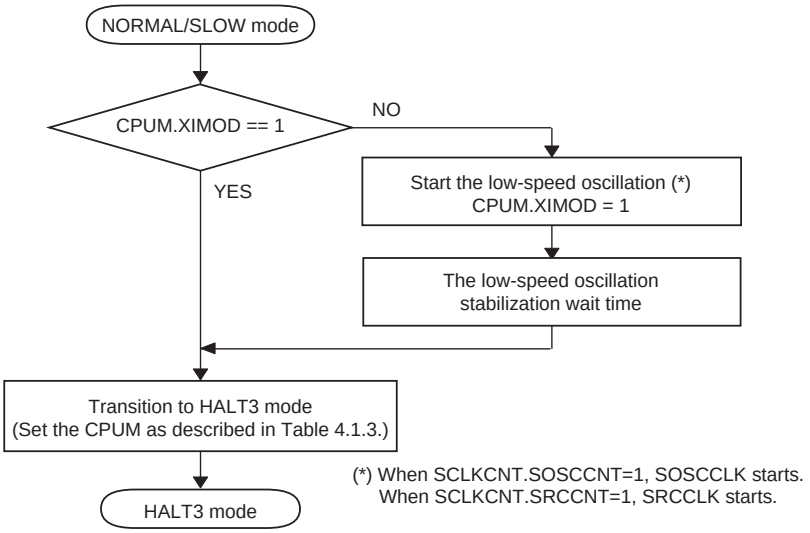


Figure:4.2.11 Transition Flow from CPU Operating Mode to HALT3 Mode

---

If the value of xICR.LV1-0 for an interrupt to be used as a return factor is equal or larger than the value of PSW.IM1-0 before transition to STANDBY mode, it is impossible to return to CPU operating mode by a maskable interrupt.

■ Transition to STOP Mode

The system changes from any mode of NORMAL and SLOW to STOP0/STOP1 mode. In any case, both oscillation and CPU are stopped. A reset or an interrupt is a source for wake up from STOP mode.
Figure:4.2.12 shows the transition procedure from CPU operating mode to STOP mode.

In STOP mode, the value of the WDT counter is cleared. After waking up from STOP mode, oscillation stabilization wait time is inserted and the timer starts counting.

- Transition procedure from NORMAL mode to STOP0 mode

  Set CPUM.STOP to "1".

- Transition procedure from SLOW mode to STOP1 mode

  Set CPUM.STOP to "1".

- Transition procedure from NORMAL mode to STOP1 mode

  Set CPUM.STOP to "1", CPUM.OSCMOD to "0", and CPUM.CLKSEL to "0" at the same time while the low-speed oscillation is stable.

- Transition procedure from SLOW mode to STOP0 mode

  Set CPUM.STOP to "1", CPUM.OSCMOD to "1", and CPUM.CLKSEL to "1" at the same time.

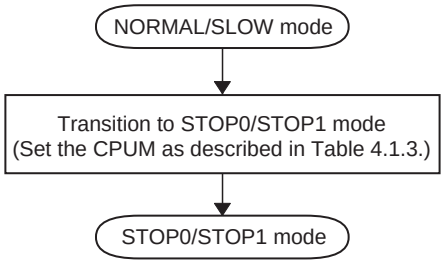


Figure:4.2.12 Transition Flow from CPU Operating Mode to STOP Mode

---

If the value of xICR.LV1-0 for an interrupt to be used as a return factor is equal or larger than the value of PSW.IM1-0 before transition to STANDBY mode, it is impossible to return to CPU operating mode by a maskable interrupt.

4.2.4 Note for Transition to STANDBY Mode

While PSW.MIE is set to "1", if it can’t be guaranteed that an interrupt for wakeup re-occurs after the transition to STANBY mode since a maskable interrupt for wakeup has occurred before the transition to STANBY mode by setting the CPUM register, CPU can not wake up from STANDBY mode.
Figure:4.2.13 shows the example that CPU can not wake up from STANDBY mode.

Therefore, it is necessary to prevent CPU from accepting a maskable interrupt for wakeup before the transition to STANDBY mode.

To disable a maskable interrupt, set PSW.MIE to "0" before a maskable interrupt for wakeup occurs.
In addition, while CPUM.STOP or CPUM.HALT is set to "1", CPU returns to CPU operating mode by a maskable interrupt for wakeup regardless of the value of PSW.MIE.
(The value of xICR.LV1-0 for an interrupt as a return factor needs to be smaller than the value of PSW.MIE.)
In this way, even if a maskable interrupt for wakeup occurs before the transition to STANDBY mode, CPU can return to CPU operating mode by a maskable interrupt for wakeup since the interrupt is detected after the transition to STANDBY mode.

However, the interrupt processing is not executed because CPU just returns to CPU operating mode in this function. To execute the interrupt processing, it is necessary to set PSW.MIE to "1" after returning to CPU operating mode.
Figure:4.2.14 shows the operation in STANDBY mode and the acceptance sequence of interrupt while an interrupt is disabled.

When not executing the interrupt processing, it is necessary to set xICR.IR to "0" by software.
Figure:4.2.15 shows the operation in STANDBY mode and the non-acceptance sequence of interrupt while an interrupt is disabled.

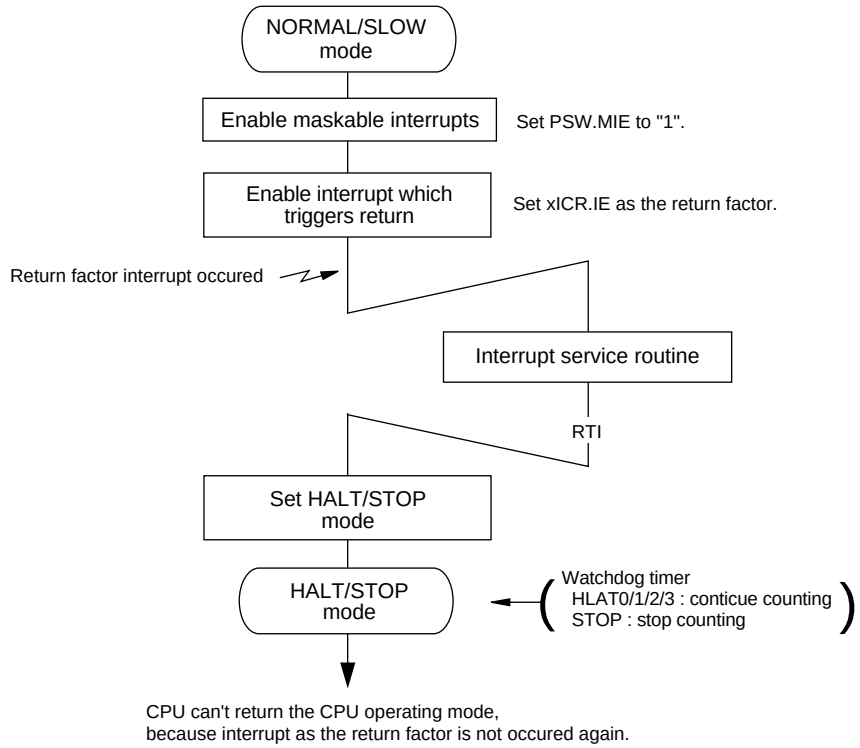


Figure:4.2.13 Example of Not Returning to CPU Operating Mode

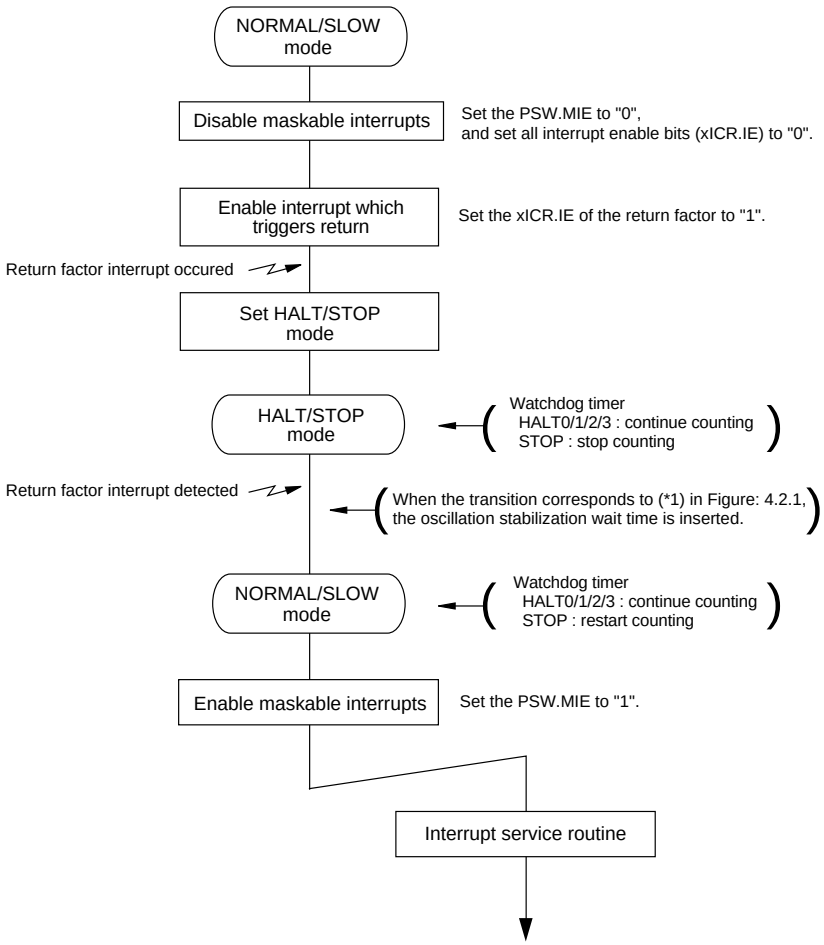


Figure:4.2.14 Operation in STANDBY Mode and Interrupt Acceptance Sequence with Interrupt Disabled

Set the PSW.MIE to "0" before the transition to STANDBY mode.

Insert 3 NOP instructions right after the instruction for the transition to STANDBY mode (setting to CPUM.HALT or CPUM.STOP).

The instruction for the transition to STANDBY mode must not be executed in the internal RAM.

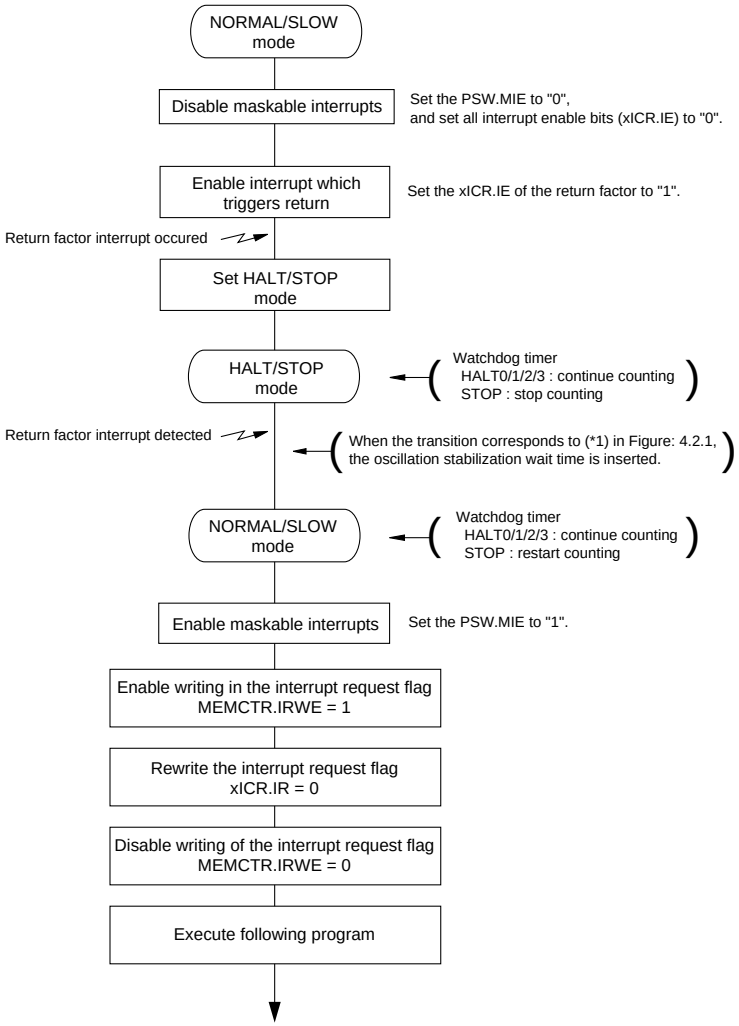


Figure:4.2.15 Operation in STANDBY Mode and Interrupt Non-acceptance Sequence with Interrupt Disabled

Set the PSW.MIE to "0" before the transition to STANDBY mode.

Insert 3 NOP instructions right after the instruction for the transition to STANDBY mode (setting to CPUM.HALT or CPUM.STOP).

The instruction for the transition to STANDBY mode must not be executed in the internal RAM.

4.3 Voltage Control

4.3.1 Overview

The LSI has 3 kinds of power supply voltage; 1.1 V, 1.3 V, and 1.8 V. Depending on the operating supply voltage, operating frequency, and target value of power consumption, power supply voltage is selected and supplied to CPU, the peripheral function, RAM, and ReRAM.

The relation of the output voltage, VDD18 to operating power supply voltage, operating frequency, and operating mode is shown in the table below.

Table:4.3.1 Relation of Output Voltage, VDD18 to Operating Power Supply Voltage, Frequency and Mode

√: Enable, -: Setting is prohibited.

VDD30 Operating power supply range [V]	Maximum operating frequency	VDD18 Output voltage [V]	Operating mode			
			NORMAL	SLOW	HALT0/2 STOP0	HALT1/3 STOP1
1.1 to 3.6	40 kHz	1.1	-	√ *2	-	√ *2
1.3 to 3.6	1 MHz	1.3	√ *1	√ *2	√ *1	√ *2
1.8 to 3.6	10 MHz	1.8	√	√ *2	√	√ *2

*1 f_{SYSCLK} (or f_{HCLK}) ≤ 1 MHz
*2 16 kHz ≤ f_{SYSCLK} ≤ 40 kHz, 32 kHz ≤ f_{SCLK} ≤ 40 kHz

4.3.2 Register List

Table:4.3.2 shows a list of power supply control registers.

Table:4.3.2 Power Supply Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
PWCTR0	0x03F6C	R/W	Power supply control register 0	IV-27
PWCTR1	0x03F6D	R/W	Power supply control register 1	IV-28

R/W: Readable/Writable

4.3.3 Power Supply Control Register

■ Power Supply Control Register 0 (PWCTR0: 0x03F6C)

The power supply control register 0 controls the switching V_{DD18} output of the power supply generation circuit.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	VDDLV1	VDDLV0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-2	Reserved	Always set to "000000". If the value other than 0 is set, this register value is not updated.
1-0	VDDLV1-0	Select output voltage, VDD18 00: 1.1 V 01: 1.3 V 10: 1.8 V 11: Setting is prohibited.

Insert 3 NOP instructions right after the instruction to change VDD18 (write instruction to the PWCTR0.VDDLV1-0).

When using the instruction to change VDD18, disable the DMA transfer function.

PWCTR0 register can be update only in SLOW mode.

The voltage of VDD18 can be changed to match the following conditions.
- “1.1 V to 1.8 V” or “1.8 V to 1.1 V”
- “1.1 V to 1.3 V” or “1.3 V to 1.1 V”

The voltage of VDD18 must not be changed in the following conditions.
- “1.3 V to 1.8 V” or “1.8 V to 1.3 V”

■ Power Supply Control Register 1 (PWCTR1: 0x03F6D)

The power supply control register 1 controls CPU outage when changing the output voltage, VDD18 and Deep STANDBY mode.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	Reserved	Reserved	-	DEEP-MOD	Reserved	PWUPTM2	PWUPTM1	PWUPTM0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	Reserved	Always set to "0".
6	Reserved	When transition of VDD18, set to "1" after the microcomputer starts up.
5	-	Always read as "0".
4	DEEPMOD	VDD18 setting when the transition from NORMAL mode to HALT2/STOP0 mode 0: Voltage transition disabled 1: Change to 1.1 V (Voltage returns to the same level as it was before the transition at return. CPU starts up again after the time set in PWUPTM2-0.)
3	Reserved	When transition of VDD18, set to "0" after the microcomputer starts up.
2-0	PWUPTM2-0	Set outage of CPU and clock when updating VDD18 (*) 000: $8/f_{SCLK}$ (244 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 001: $8/f_{SCLK}$ (244 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 010: $16/f_{SCLK}$ (488 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 011: $32/f_{SCLK}$ (977 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 100: $64/f_{SCLK}$ (1953 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 101: $128/f_{SCLK}$ (3906 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 110: $256/f_{SCLK}$ (7813 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz) 111: $512/f_{SCLK}$(15625 μs at f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz)

Set the PWCTR1.PWUPTM2-0 to match the following conditions before the transition from 1.1 V to 1.8 V or to 1.3 V.
- From 1.1 V to 1.8 V: 500 μs or more
- From 1.1 V to 1.3 V: 4 ms or more

* Only the clock supplied to CPU is halted.
The clock supplied to peripheral function is not halted. Stop the clock for each function.

4.3.4 Operation

■ Voltage Transition of VDD18 by Program

Figure:4.3.1 shows the example of voltage transition of VDD18 by program.

When SLOW mode, the PWCTR0.VDDLV1-0 are set to change the output voltage, VDD18 and achieve low-power consumption or high-speed operation depending on the operating frequency.
Voltage transition cannot be set in NORMAL mode. It is also impossible to change the voltage from 1.3 V to 1.8 V and from 1.8 V to 1.3 V. After updating the PWCTR0.VDDLV1-0, CPU clock is halted for the time set in the PWCTR1.PWUPTM2-0 while the voltage is boosted during i) and iii) shown in the Figure:4.3.1. Although CPU clock is not halted while the voltage is stepped down during ii) and iv) shown in the Figure:4.3.1, it does not affect the operation.

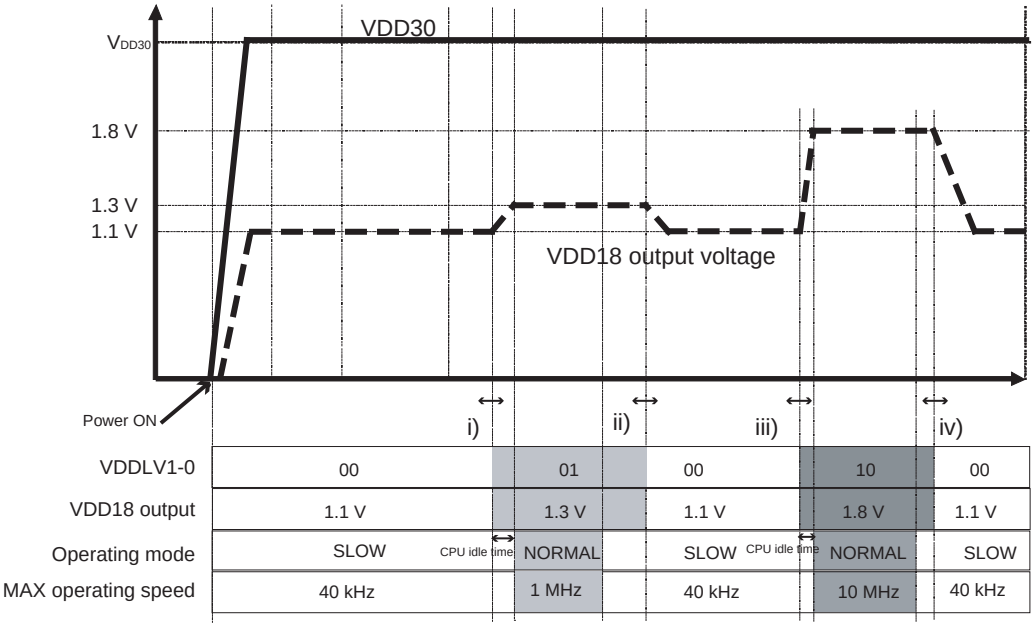


Figure:4.3.1 Voltage Transition of VDD18 by Program

The setting example to change VDD18 from 1.1 V to 1.8 V at iii) in Figure:4.3.1 is shown below.
CPU outage in voltage transition: $32/f_{SCLK}$ (f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz, 977 μs)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Set CPU outage in voltage transition	PWCTR1	Set PWUPTM2-0 to "011".
2	Set output voltage, VDD18	PWCTR0	Set VDDLV1-0 to "10".
3	NOP instruction	-	Insert 3 NOP instructions.
4	Transition to NORMAL mode	CPUM	Set to "00000111".

Be sure to execute the setting in SLOW mode.

■ Voltage Transition of VDD18 by Mode Transition

Figure:4.3.2 shows the example of voltage transition of VDD18 by mode transition. For the mode transition method, refer to [4.2 Mode Control Function].

When the Deep STANDBY mode control, that change the voltage from 1.3 V or 1.8 V to 1.1 V, is enabled during the mode transition from NORMAL to HALT2/STOP0, the STANBY mode with low-power consumption can be set by just updating the CPUM register.
The Deep STANDBY mode is enabled by setting the PWCTR1.DEEPMOD to "1".

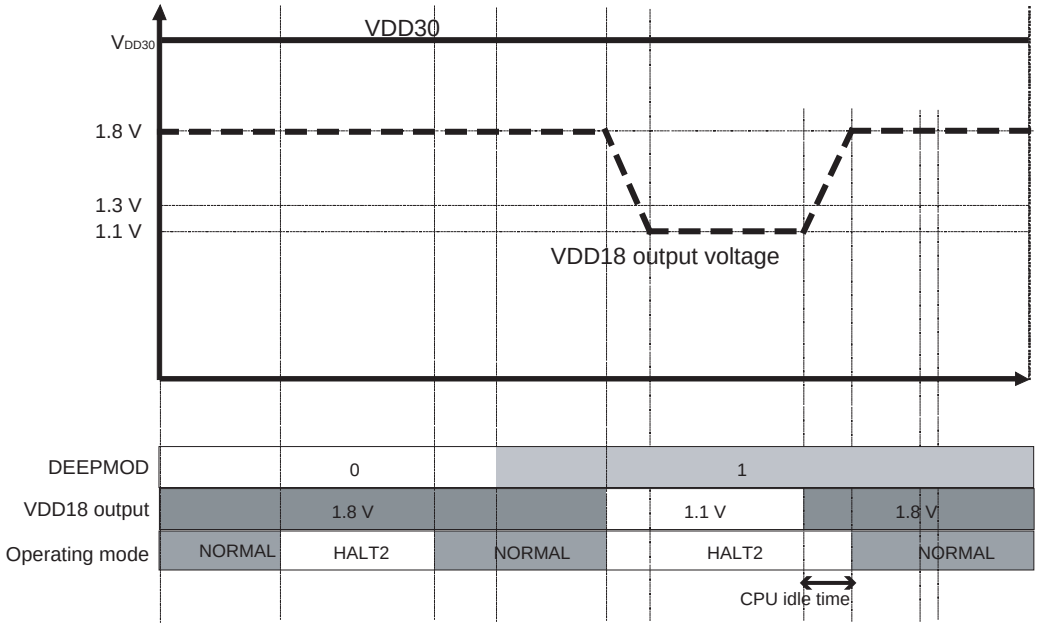


Figure:4.3.2 Voltage Transition of VDD18 by Mode Transition

The setting example of the transition to Deep STANDBY mode in Figure:4.3.2 is shown below.

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Set Deep STANDBY mode	PWCTR1	Set DEEPMOD to "1".
2	Set output voltage, VDD18	PWCTR0	Set VDDLV1-0 to "10".
3	Set the oscillation stabilization wait and interrupt	DLYCTR XXXICR	For the oscillation stabilization wait and interrupt, refer to [2.5.3 Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time] and [3.3 External Interrupts], respectively.
4	Transition to HALT2 mode	CPUM	Set to "00010101".
5	NOP instruction	-	Insert 3 NOP instructions.

4.4 Mode/Voltage/Clock Transition

The following Table:4.4.1 shows the state transition by changing the operation mode, VDD18 voltage and clock.

The mode name in Table:4.4.1 is described in accordance with a rule below.

[Operation mode]_[VDD18 voltage]_[SYSCLK]_[Oscillating clock except SYSCLK]_[Special mode]

[SYSCLK] is described in NORMAL, SLOW, IDLE, HALT0 or HALT1 mode.
[Oscillating clock except SYSCLK] or [Special mode] that corresponded to each condition is described.

For example,
NORMAL_18_HCLK_SCLK
NORMAL mode, VDD18 = 1.8 V, SYSCLK = HCLK (HOSC/HRC), SCLK (SOSC/SRC) = Oscillating
HALT2_11_SCLK_DEEP
HALT2 mode, VDD18 = 1.1 V, SYSCLK = Stop, SCLK (SOSC/SRC) = Oscillating, Deep STANDBY

The blanks in Table:4.4.1 mean the mode which setting is prohibited or cannot change.

Table:4.4.1 Mode/Voltage/Clock Transition

Source mode \ Destination mode	NORMAL_18_HCLK_SCLK	NORMAL_18_HCLK	NORMAL_13_HRC_SCLK	NORMAL_13_HRC	SLOW_18_SCLK	SLOW_13_SCLK	SLOW_11_SCLK	HALT0_18_HCLK_SCLK	HALT0_18_HCLK	HALT0_13_HRC_SCLK	HALT0_13_HRC	HALT1_18_SCLK	HALT1_13_SCLK	HALT1_11_SCLK	HALT2_18_SCLK	HALT2_13_SCLK	HALT2_11_SCLK_DEEP	HALT3_18_SCLK	HALT3_13_SCLK	HALT3_11_SCLK	STOP0_18	STOP0_13	STOP0_11_DEEP	STOP1_18	STOP1_13	STOP1_11	IDLE_18_SCLK_HCLK	IDEL_13_SCLK_HRC
RESET							M *1																					
NORMAL_18_HCLK_SCLK		M			M			M	M			M			M		M V	M			M		M V	M				
NORMAL_18_HCLK	M				M *2			M	M			M *2			M *2			M *2			M			M				
NORMAL_13_HRC_SCLK				M		M				M	M		M			M	M V		M			M	M V		M			
NORMAL_13_HRC			M			M *2				M	M		M *2			M *2			M *2			M			M			
SLOW_18_SCLK	M *3	M *3					V	M *3	M *3			M			M			M			M			M			M *4	
SLOW_13_SCLK			M *3	M *3			V			M *3	M *3		M			M			M			M			M			M *4
SLOW_11_SCLK					V	V								M						M						M		
HALT0_18_HCLK_SCLK	M																											
HALT0_18_HCLK		M																										
HALT0_13_HRC_SCLK			M																									
HALT0_13_HRC				M																								
HALT1_18_SCLK					M																							
HALT1_13_SCLK						M																						
HALT1_11_SCLK							M																					
HALT2_18_SCLK	M *3																											
HALT2_13_SCLK			M *3																									
HALT2_11_SCLK_DEEP	M V *5		M V *6																									
HALT3_18_SCLK					M																							
HALT3_13_SCLK						M																						
HALT3_11_SCLK							M																					
STOP0_18	M *3	M *3																										
STOP0_13			M *3	M *3																								
STOP0_11_DEEP	M V *5		M V *6																									
STOP1_18					M *2																							
STOP1_13						M *2																						
STOP1_11							M *2																					
IDLE_18_SCLK_HCLK	M	M																										
IDEL_13_SCLK_HRC			M	M																								

M Operation mode change

V VDD18 voltage change

Oscillation stabilization wait process

*1 Reset+Power supply voltage activation (6 ms) + SRC oscillation stabilization (2^{11} / (f_{SRC}/2))

*2 SCLK oscillation stabilization (DLYCTR.DLY3-0)

*3 HCLK oscillation stabilization (DLYCTR.DLY3-0)

*4 Ensure adequate time for HCLK oscillation stabilization by program

*5 VDD18 voltage change time (PWCTR1.PWUPTM2-0: 500 μs or more) + HCLK oscillation stabilization (DLYCTR.DLY3-0)

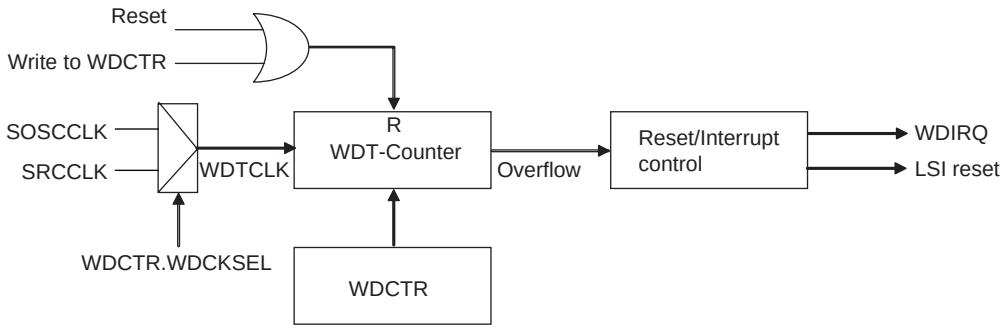
*6 VDD18 voltage change time (PWCTR1.PWUPTM2-0: 4 ms or more) + HCLK oscillation stabilization (DLYCTR.DLY3-0)

Chapter 5 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

5

5.1 Overview

The watchdog timer (WDT) generates NMI (WDIRQ) when the dedicated counter (WDT-Counter) is not cleared during the error detect period and overflows. When two consecutive WDIRQs occur without clearing WDT-Counter, the LSI is reset by hardware. The clock source of WDT-Counter is selected from SOSCCLK or SRC-CLK.



The following table shows the relationship between CPU mode and the WDT operation when WDT is active. WDT-Counter is initialized when the LSI is reset or is in STOP mode.

Table:5.1.1 Relationship between CPU mode and WDT operation

CPU mode	WDT-Counter operation
NORMAL/IDLE/SLOW/HALT	Continue to count * Count operation doesn't stop even during the mode transition.
STOP	Stop counting (The value of WDT-Counter is cleared.) * WDIRQ is not generated in STOP mode.

When the WDIRQ is generated, the LSI can be in unexpected state. Therefore appropriate measures to make the LSI operate normally should be taken.

5.2 WDT Control Register

5.2.1 WDT Control Register

■ WDT Control Register (WDCTR: 0x03F02)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	WDCKSEL	-	-	-	WDTS2-0			WDEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	WDCKSEL	Select watchdog time clock source 0: SRCCLK 1: SOSCCLK
6-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-1	WDTS2-0	Watchdog error detect period setup 000: $2^7 \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 001: $2^8 \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 010: $2^9 \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 011: $2^{11} \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 100: $2^{12} \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 101: $2^{14} \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 110: $2^{16} \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$ 111: $2^{18} \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$
0	WDEN	WDT enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable

The WDCKSEL must be changed when the WDEN is "0". WDT starts operation by setting the WDEN to "1", and the WDEN is not cleared except when the LSI is reset.

5.3 Operation

5.3.1 WDT Operation

WDT-Counter needs to be cleared periodically to avoid WDT overflow.
WDT-Counter is cleared by writing something on the WDCTR.

WDT generates WDIRQ when WDT-Counter is not cleared during the error detect period and overflows.
WDT-counter should be cleared with BSET instruction (for example, BSET (WDCTR)0) to avoid changing the error detection time etc. unintentionally.

5.3.2 Setup Example

The following procedure shows the example of WDT operation. SRCCLK is selected as WDCLK, and the error time period is $2^{18} \times (1/f_{WDTCLK})$.

■ Setup Example

Step	Setup Procedure	Register	Description
1	Set the error detection period	WDCTR	Set the WDCKSEL to "0". Set the WDTS2-0 to "111".
2	Activate WDT	WDCTR	Set the WDEN to "1".

■ Setup Example

Step	Setup Procedure	Register	Description
1	Clear WDT-Counter	WDCTR	Clear WDT-counter before it overflows.

■ Setup Example

Step	Setup Procedure	Register	Description
1	Handling interrupt	NMICR*	WDIRQ is generated when WDT-Counter overflows. Check that NMICR.IRQNWDG is set to "1", and take appropriate measures to make the LSI operate normally again.

* Refer to [Chapter 3 Interrupts] about NMICR.

Chapter 6 Power Supply Voltage Detection

6

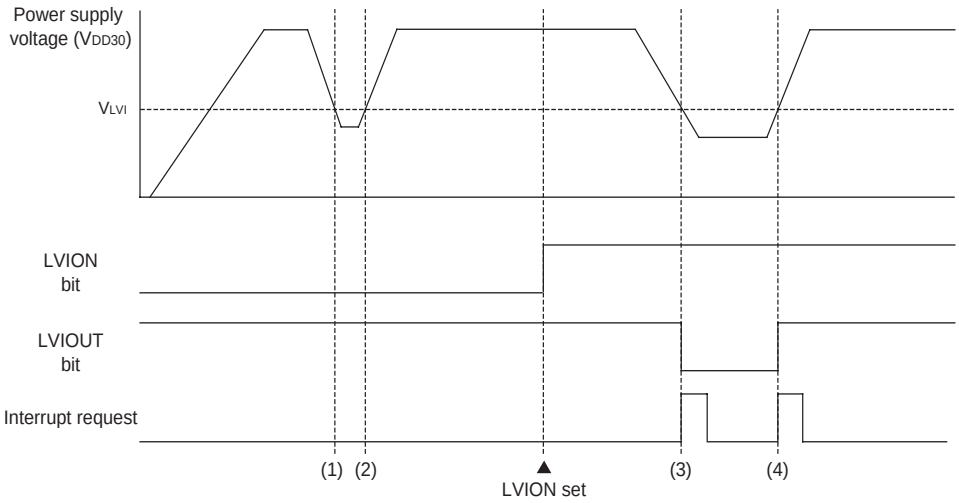
6.1 Overview

6.1.1 Power Supply Voltage Detection Overview

This LSI has the power supply voltage detector (PSVD) to detect power supply voltage and generate interrupt.

PSVD compares the power supply voltage (V_{DD30}) and the detection voltage (V_{LVI}), and generates the interrupt (LVIIRQ) when the level of V_{DD30} crosses that of V_{LVI}. V_{LVI} can be changed between from 1.1 V to 2.9 V with the LVICTR0 register.

PSVD operates regardless of the value of the CPU control register.



- Power supply voltage detection function is OFF (LVION=0)
  (1) Though power supply voltage (at falling) falls below the detection voltage (V_{LVI}), the interrupt request is not generated and the LVIOUT bit is not cleared.
  (2) Though power supply voltage (at rising) exceeds the detection voltage (V_{LVI}), the interrupt request is not generated and the LVIOUT bit is not cleared.

- Power supply voltage detection function is ON (LVION=1)
  (3) As power supply voltage (at falling) falls below the detection detection voltage (V_{LVI}), the interrupt request is generated and the LVIOUT bit is cleared.
  (4) As power supply voltage (at rising) exceeds the detection voltage (V_{LVI}), the interrupt request is generated and the LVIOUT bit is set.

Figure:6.1.1 Power Supply Detection Waveform

6.2 Control Register

6.2.1 Registers

Table:6.2.1 shows the PSVD related registers.

Table:6.2.1 Power Supply Voltage Detection Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
LVICTR0	0x03F66	R/W	PSVD control register 0	VI-4
LVICTR1	0x03F67	R/W	PSVD control register 1	VI-5
LVICTR2	0x03F68	R/W	PSVD control register 2	VI-6

6.2.2 Power Supply Voltage Detection Control Registers

■ PSVD Control Register 0 (LVICTR0: 0x03F66)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	Reserved	-	-	LV4-0				
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bite name	Description
7	Reserved	Must be set to 0.
6-5	-	Always read as 0.
4-0	LV4-0	The level of V_{LVI} 00000: 1.10 V 00001: 1.15 V 00010: 1.20 V 00011: 1.25 V 00100: 1.30 V 00101: 1.35 V 00110: 1.40 V 00111: 1.50 V 01000: 1.60 V 01001: 1.70 V 01010: 1.80 V 01011: 1.90 V 01100: 2.00 V 01101: 2.10 V 01110: 2.20 V 01111: 2.30 V 10000: 2.40 V 10001: 2.50 V 10010: 2.60 V 10011: 2.70 V 10100: 2.80 V 10101: 2.90 V 10110-11111: Prohibited

LV4-0 bits must be set when the LVICTR1.LVION is "0".

■ PSVD Control Register 1 (LVICTR1: 0x03F67)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	LVIOUT	LVION
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bite name	Description
7-2	-	Always read as 0.
1	LVIOUT	V_{DD30} monitor bit 0: $V_{DD30} \leq V_{LVI}$ 1: $V_{DD30} \geq V_{LVI}$
0	LVION	PSVD enable control 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

The LVIOUT is not sticky bit and it could change after the LVIIRQ is generated.

To set the PERI1EN.PERI1EN0, more than 1.5 ms is required since the LVION is set to “1”.
To read the LVICTR1.LVIOU, more than 1.5 ms is required since the LVION is set to “1”.

■ PSVD Control Register 2 (LVICTR2: 0x03F68)

The LVICTR2 controls whether to add the noise filter on the output of PSVD and the sampling frequency of it.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	LVINFSCK2-0			LVINFEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bite name	Description
7-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-1	LVINFSCK2-0	Noise sampling frequency 000: f_{HCLK} 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^5$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^6$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^7$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^8$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^9$ 110: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 111: f_{SCLK}
0	LVINFEN	Noise filter enable control 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

6.3 Setting Example

6.3.1 PSVD Setting Example

■ Mode Transition Operation with PSVD

The following procedure shows that CPU transits from STOP to NORMAL mode when VDD30 exceeds 2.0 V.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Disable all maskable interrupts. PSW bp6: MIE = 0	(1) Clear the MIE bit of PSW to disable all maskable interrupts. To change the interrupt control registers, this step must be performed.
(2) Set the detection voltage LVICTR0 (0x03F66) bp4 to 0: LV4 to LV0 = 01100	(2) Set the LV4 to 0 bits of LVICTR0 to "01100" to set the level of power supply voltage detection to 2.0 V.
(3) Enable power supply detection function LVICTR1 (0x03F67) bp0: LVION = 1	(3) Set the LVION bit of LVICTR1 to "1" to enable the power supply voltage detection function.
(4) Wait for power supply voltage detection function activation wait 1.5 ms	(4) Wait for the power supply voltage function activation time (1.5 ms) or more.
(5) Clear the interrupt request bit PERI1DT (0x03FDF)	(5) Clear the interrupt request bits by reading PERI1DT and writing the read value to PERI1DT. Refer to [3.1.4 Group Interrupt Control Register Setup].
(6) Set the interrupt level PERI1ICR (0x03FFE) bp7 to 6: PERI1LV1 to 0 PSW bp5 to 4: IM1 to IM0	(6) Set the interrupt level by the PERI1LV1 to 0 bits of PERI1ICR. If the interrupt mask level of PSW needs to change, set the IM1 to IM0 bits of PSW.
(7) Enable interrupt PERI1EN (0x03FDE) bp0: PERI1EN0 = 1	(7) Set the PERI1EN0 bit of PERI1EN to enable interrupt.
(8) Enable all maskable interrupts PSW bp6: MIE = 1	(8) Set the MIE bit of PSW to enable maskable interrupts.
(9) Check power supply voltage LVICTR1 (0x03F76) bp1: LVIOUT = 0?	(9) Monitor the LVIOUT bit of LVICTR1 periodically.

Setup Procedure	Description
(10) When the LVIOUT bit is "0", operating mode transits to STOP mode CPUM (0x03F00) bp3: STOP = 1	(10) When the monitored LVIOUT bit is "0", the operating mode transits to STOP mode.
(11) Return from STOP mode by interrupt	(11) When the power supply voltage exceeds 2.0 V, an interrupt is generated to return from STOP mode.

An interrupt may be generated between the step (9) and step (10).
In that case, after returning from the interrupt, CPU enters STOP mode although V_{DD30} is higher than V_{LVI}. It prevents returning from STOP mode at rising of the power supply voltage.
To avoid such operation, refer to the addresses saved to stack in interrupt processing. If it is considered that the operation as above occurred, rewrite the value of stack address or saved data to prevent the standby transition program execution.

Chapter 7 I/O Port

7

7.1 Overview

7.1.1 I/O Port Overview

I/O port is controlled with the following registers.

- Output Register (PnOUT)
- Input Register (PnIN)
- Direction Control Register (PnDIR)
- Pull-up Control Register (PnPLU)
- Special Function Control Register (PnODC, PnNLC etc.)

Table:7.1.1 shows the status of each port at LSI reset.
Table:7.2.1 shows the list of port control registers.

Table:7.1.1 I/O port status at reset (single chip mode)

Port	I/O mode	Pull-up resistor	I/O port/ Special function
Port 0	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 1	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 2	Input mode	P27: Pull-up resistor Others: No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 3	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 4	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 5	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 6	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 7	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port
Port 8	Input mode	No pull-up resistor	I/O port

7.2 Control Registers

Table:7.2.1 I/O Port Control Registers List

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P0OUT	0x03F10	R/W	Port 0 output register	VII-5
P0IN	0x03F20	R	Port 0 input register	VII-8
P0DIR	0x03F30	R/W	Port 0 direction control register	VII-12
P0PLUP	0x03F40	R/W	Port 0 pull-up resistor control register	VII-15
P0ODC	0x03F50	R/W	Port 0 N-ch open-drain control register	VII-18
P0NLC	0x03EC0	R/W	Port 0 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-22
P1OUT	0x03F11	R/W	Port 1 output register	VII-5
P1IN	0x03F21	R	Port 1 input register	VII-8
P1DIR	0x03F31	R/W	Port 1 direction control register	VII-12
P1PLUP	0x03F41	R/W	Port 1 pull-up resistor control register	VII-15
P1ODC	0x03F51	R/W	Port 1 N-ch open-drain control register	VII-18
P2OUT	0x03F12	R/W	Port 2 output register	VII-5
P2IN	0x03F22	R	Port 2 input register	VII-9
P2DIR	0x03F32	R/W	Port 2 direction control register	VII-12
P2PLUP	0x03F42	R/W	Port 2 pull-up resistor control register	VII-15
P2NLC	0x03EC1	R/W	Port 2 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-22
P3OUT	0x03F13	R/W	Port 3 output register	VII-6
P3IN	0x03F23	R	Port 3 input register	VII-9
P3DIR	0x03F33	R/W	Port 3 direction control register	VII-13
P3PLUP	0x03F43	R/W	Port 3 pull-up resistor control register	VII-16
P3ODC	0x03F53	R/W	Port 3 N-ch open-drain control register	VII-19
P3NLC	0x03EC2	R/W	Port 3 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-22
P4OUT	0x03F14	R/W	Port 4 output register	VII-6
P4IN	0x03F24	R	Port 4 input register	VII-9
P4DIR	0x03F34	R/W	Port 4 direction control register	VII-13
P4PLUP	0x03F44	R/W	Port 4 pull-up resistor control register	VII-16
P4ODC	0x03F54	R/W	Port 4 N-ch open-drain control register	VII-20
P4NLC	0x03EC3	R/W	Port 4 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-23
P5OUT	0x03F15	R/W	Port 5 output register	VII-6
P5IN	0x03F25	R	Port 5 input register	VII-10
P5DIR	0x03F35	R/W	Port 5 direction control register	VII-13
P5PLUP	0x03F45	R/W	Port 5 pull-up resistor control register	VII-16
P5ODC	0x03F55	R/W	Port 5 N-ch open-drain control register	VII-20
P5NLC	0x03EC4	R/W	Port 5 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-23
P6OUT	0x03F16	R/W	Port 6 output register	VII-7
P6IN	0x03F26	R	Port 6 input register	VII-10
P6DIR	0x03F36	R/W	Port 6 direction control register	VII-14

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
P6PLUP	0x03F46	R/W	Port 6 pull-up resistor control register	VII-17
P6ODC	0x03F56	R/W	Port 6 N-ch open-drain control register	VII-21
P6NLC	0x03EC5	R/W	Port 6 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-24
P7OUT	0x03F17	R/W	Port 7 output register	VII-7
P7IN	0x03F27	R	Port 7 input register	VII-10
P7DIR	0x03F37	R/W	Port 7 direction control register	VII-14
P7PLUP	0x03F47	R/W	Port 7 pull-up resistor control register	VII-17
P7NLC	0x03EC6	R/W	Port 7 N-ch current capacity selection register	VII-24
P8OUT	0x03F18	R/W	Port 8 output register	VII-7
P8IN	0x03F28	R	Port 8 input register	VII-11
P8DIR	0x03F38	R/W	Port 8 direction control register	VII-14
P8PLUP	0x03F48	R/W	Port 8 pull-up resistor control register	VII-17
SC01SEL	0x03F1C	R/W	SCIF01 I/O pin control register	XIII-9
SC23SEL	0x03F1D	R/W	SCIF23 I/O pin control register	XIII-9
TMIOEN0	0x03F2C	R/W	8-bit timer output control register	VII-25
TMIOSEL0	0x03F2D	R/W	8-bit timer input/output pin selection register	VII-26
TMIOEN1	0x03F2E	R/W	16-bit timer output control register	VII-27
TMIOSEL1	0x03F2F	R/W	16-bit timer input/output pin selection register	VII-28
CLKOUT	0x03F3E	R/W	Clock output control register	VII-29
IRQIEN	0x03F4C	R/W	External interrupt input control register	III-35
IRQISEL0	0x03F4D	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 0	III-36
IRQISEL1	0x03F3F	R/W	External interrupt input pin selection register 1	III-37
KEYIEN	0x03F4E	R/W	KEY interrupt input control register	III-44
KEYSEL	0x03F4F	R/W	KEY interrupt input pin selection register	III-43
ANEN0	0x03F5C	R/W	Analog input control register 0 (Port 1)	VII-30
ANEN1	0x03F5D	R/W	Analog input control register 1 (Port 8)	VII-31
BUZCNT	0x03F5F	R/W	Buzzer output control register	VII-32
LCCTR0	0x03E86	R/W	LCD output control register 0	XVII-9
LCCTR1	0x03E87	R/W	LCD output control register 1	XVII-10
LCCTR2	0x03E88	R/W	LCD output control register 2	XVII-11
LCCTR3	0x03E89	R/W	LCD output control register 3	XVII-12
LCCTR4	0x03E8A	R/W	LCD output control register 4	XVII-13
LCCTR5	0x03E8B	R/W	LCD output control register 5	XVII-14
LCDSEL	0x03E8E	R/W	LCD COM/SEG selection register	XVII-15

R/W: Readable/Writable

7.2.1 Port n Output Registers

PnOUT is the register to set output data in when I/O is used as a general purpose port.

■ Port 0 Output Register (P0OUT: 0x03F10)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P0OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P0OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 1 Output Register (P1OUT: 0x03F11)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P1OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P1OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 2 Output Register (P2OUT: 0x03F12)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P2OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P2OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 3 Output Register (P3OUT: 0x03F13)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P3OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P3OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 4 Output Register (P4OUT: 0x03F14)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P4OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P4OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 5 Output Register (P5OUT: 0x03F15)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P5OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P5OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 6 Output Register (P6OUT: 0x03F16)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P6OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P6OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 7 Output Register (P7OUT: 0x03F17)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P7OUT7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P7OUT7-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 8 Output Register (P8OUT: 0x03F18)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	P8OUT5-0					
At reset	0	0	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5-0	P8OUT5-0	Output data 0: Output "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Output "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

7.2.2 Port n Input Registers

PnIN is the register to read the input data from when I/O is used as a general purpose port.

■ Port 0 Input Register (P0IN: 0x03F20)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P0IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P0IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 1 Input Register (P1IN: 0x03F21)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P1IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P1IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 2 Input Register (P2IN: 0x03F22)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P2IN7	P2IN6-0						
At reset	1	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P2IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 3 Input Register (P3IN: 0x03F23)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P3IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P3IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 4 Input Register (P4IN: 0x03F24)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P4IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P4IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 5 Input Register (P5IN: 0x03F25)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P5IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P5IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 6 Input Register (P6IN: 0x03F26)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P6IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P6IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 7 Input Register (P7IN: 0x03F27)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P7IN7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P7IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

■ Port 8 Input Register (P8IN: 0x03F28)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	P8IN5-0					
At reset	0	0	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5-0	P8IN7-0	Input data 0: Input "Low" (V_{SS}-level) 1: Input "High" (V_{DD30}-level)

7.2.3 Port n Direction Control Registers

PnDIR is the register to control I/O direction of I/O when it is used as a general purpose port.

- Port 0 Direction Control Register (P0DIR: 0x03F30)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P0DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P0DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

- Port 1 Direction Control Register (P1DIR: 0x03F31)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P1DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P1DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

- Port 2 Direction Control Register (P2DIR: 0x03F32)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	P2DIR6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6-0	P2DIR6-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

■ Port 3 Direction Control Register (P3DIR: 0x03F33)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P3DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P3DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

■ Port 4 Direction Control Register (P4DIR: 0x03F34)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P4DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P4DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

■ Port 5 Direction Control Register (P5DIR: 0x03F35)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P5DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P5DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

■ Port 6 Direction Control Register (P6DIR: 0x03F36)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P6DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P6DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

■ Port 7 Direction Control Register (P7DIR: 0x03F37)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P7DIR7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P7DIR7-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

■ Port 8 Direction Control Register (P8DIR: 0x03F38)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	P8DIR5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5-0	P8DIR5-0	I/O mode selection 0: Intput mode 1: Output mode

7.2.4 Port n Pull-up Resistor Control Registers

PnPLU is the register to control the pull-up resistor addition to I/O.

■ Port 0 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P0PLUP: 0x03F40)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P0PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P0PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 1 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P1PLUP: 0x03F41)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P1PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P1PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 2 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P2PLUP: 0x03F42)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	P2PLU6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6-0	P2PLU6-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 3 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P3PLUP: 0x03F43)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P3PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P3PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 4 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P4PLUP: 0x03F44)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P4PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P4PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 5 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P5PLUP: 0x03F45)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P5PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P5PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 6 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P6PLUP: 0x03F46)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P6PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P6PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 7 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P7PLUP: 0x03F47)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P7PLU7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P7PLU7-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

■ Port 8 Pull-up Resistor Control Register (P8PLUP: 0x03F48)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	P8PLU5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5-0	P8PLU5-0	Pull-up resistor selection 0: Not added 1: Added

7.2.5 Port n N-ch Open-drain Control Registers

PnODC is the register to control N-ch open-drain control of I/O.

■ Port 0 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P0ODC: 0x03F50)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P0ODC7	-	P0ODC5-4		-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	P0ODC7	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
6	-	Always read as 0.
5-4	P0ODC5-4	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
3-0	-	Always read as 0.

■ Port 1 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P1ODC: 0x03F51)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	P1ODC5	-	-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5	P0ODC5	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
4-0	-	Always read as 0.

■ Port 2 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P2ODC: 0x03F52)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	P2ODC5-3			-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5-3	P2ODC5-3	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
2-0	-	Always read as 0.

■ Port 3 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P3ODC: 0x03F53)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P3ODC7-6		-	-	-	P3ODC2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	P3ODC7-6	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
5-3	-	Always read as 0.
2-0	P3ODC2-0	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output

■ Port 4 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P4ODC: 0x03F54)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P4ODC7-6		-	P4ODC4-2			-	P4ODC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	P4ODC7-6	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
5	-	Always read as 0.
4-2	P4ODC4-2	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
1	-	Always read as 0.
0	P4ODC0	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output

■ Port 5 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P5ODC: 0x03F55)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	P5ODC4-2			-	P5ODC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as 0.
4-2	P5ODC4-2	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
1	-	Always read as 0.
0	P5ODC0	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output

■ Port 6 N-ch Open-drain Control Register (P6ODC: 0x03F56)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P6ODC7-5			-	-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	P6ODC7-5	N-ch open-drain output selection 0: Push-pull output 1: N-ch open-drain output
4-0	-	Always read as 0.

7.2.6 Port n N-ch Drive Strength Selection Registers

PnNLC is the register to select the drive strength of Nch output transistor of I/O.

■ Port 0 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P0NLC: 0x03EC0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P0NLC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P0NLC7-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

■ Port 2 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P2NLC: 0x03EC1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	P2NLC6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6-0	P2NLC6-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

■ Port 3 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P3NLC: 0x03EC2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P3NLC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P3NLC7-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

■ Port 4 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P4NLC: 0x03EC3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P4NLC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P4NLC7-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

■ Port 5 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P5NLC: 0x03EC4)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P5NLC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P5NLC7-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

■ Port 6 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P6NLC: 0x03EC5)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P6NLC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P6NLC7-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

■ Port 7 N-ch Current Capacity Selection Register (P7NLC: 0x03EC6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	P7NLC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	P7NLC7-0	N-ch current capacity selection 0: normal current capacity (2mA) 1: Large current capacity (8mA)

7.2.7 8-bit Timer output control Register

8-bit Timer output control register selects the pin function (General IO (GIO) or 8-bit Timer output).

■ 8-bit Timer output control Register (TMIOEN0: 0x03F2C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	TM5OEN	TM4OEN	TM3OEN	TM2OEN	TM1OEN	TM0OEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5	TM5OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 5 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 5 output (TM5IOA/TM5IOB)
4	TM4OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 4 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 4 output (TM4IOA/TM4IOB)
3	TM3OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 3 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 3 output (TM3IOA/TM3IOB)
2	TM2OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 2 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 2 output (TM2IOA/TM2IOB)
1	TM1OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 1 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 1 output (TM1IOA/TM1IOB)
0	TM0OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 0 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 0 output (TM0IOA/TM0IOB)

7.2.8 8-bit Timer input/output pins selection Register

8-bit Timer input/output pins selection register selects the pin of Timer8 (TMnIOA or TMnIOB).

- 8-bit Timer input/output pins selection Register (TMIOSEL0: 0x03F2D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	TM5 IOSEL	TM4 IOSEL	TM3 IOSEL	TM2 IOSEL	TM1 IOSEL	TM0 IOSEL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5	TM5IOSEL	Select the pin of Timer 5 (TM5IOA or TM5IOB). 0: TM5IOA (P21) 1: TM5IOB (P73)
4	TM4IOSEL	Select the pin of Timer 4 (TM4IOA or TM4IOB). 0: TM4IOA (P34) 1: TM4IOB (P01)
3	TM3IOSEL	Select the pin of Timer 3 (TM3IOA or TM3IOB). 0: TM3IOA (P56) 1: TM3IOB (P72)
2	TM2IOSEL	Select the pin of Timer 2 (TM2IOA or TM2IOB). 0: TM2IOA (P05) 1: TM2IOB (P02)
1	TM1IOSEL	Select the pin of Timer 1 (TM1IOA or TM1IOB). 0: TM1IOA (P55) 1: TM1IOB (P20)
0	TM0IOSEL	Select the pin of Timer 0 (TM0IOA or TM0IOB). 0: TM0IOA (P05) 1: TM0IOB (P03)

7.2.9 16-bit Timer output control Register

16-bit Timer output control register selects the pin function (General IO (GIO) or 16-bit Timer output).

■ 16-bit Timer output control Register (TMIOEN1: 0x03F2E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	TM9OEN	TM8OEN	TM7OEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-3	-	Always read as 0.
2	TM9OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 9 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 9 output (TM9IOA/TM9IOB/TM9IOC)
1	TM8OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 8 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 8 output (TM8IOA/TM8IOB/TM8IOC)
0	TM7OEN	Select the pin function (GIO or Timer 7 output) 0: GIO 1: Timer 7 output (TM7IOA/TM7IOB/TM7IOC)

7.2.10 16-bit Timer input/output pin selection Register

16-bit Timer input/output pin selection register selects the output pin of 16-bit Timer (TMnIOA to TMnIOC).

■ 16-bit Timer input/output pin selection Register (TMIOSEL1: 0x03F2F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	TM9IOSEL1-0		TM8IOSEL1-0		TM7IOSEL1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5-4	TM9IOSEL 1-0	Select the pin of Timer 9 (from TM9IOA to TM9IOC) 00: TM9IOA (P07) 01: TM9IOB (P20) 10: TM9IOC (P00) 11: Prohibited
3-2	TM8IOSEL 1-0	Select the pin of Timer 8 (from TM8IOA to TM8IOC) 00: TM8IOA (P57) 01: TM8IOB (P06) 10: TM8IOC (P02) 11: Prohibited
1-0	TM7IOSEL 1-0	Select the pin of Timer 7 (from TM7IOA to TM7IOC) 00: TM7IOA (P04) 01: TM7IOB (P34) 10: TM7IOC (P03) 11: Prohibited

7.2.11 Clock output / Clock output pin control Register

Clock output / Clock output pin control register selects output clock and changes between General IO (GIO) and clock output.

- Clock output / Clock output pin control Register (CLKOUT: 0x03F3E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	CLKOCNT1-0		CLKO SEL	CLKOEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-2	CLKOCNT 1-0	Select output clock 00: SCLK 01: HCLK 10: SYSCLK 11: Time base timer output clock for RTC
1	CLKOSEL	Select the output pin of clock output function 0: CLKOUTA (P05) 1: CLKOUTB (P57)
0	CLKOEN	Select the pin function (GIO or clock output) 0: GIO 1: Clock output (CLKOUTA/CLKOUTB)

7.2.12 Analog input Control Register 0 (Port1)

Analog input control register selects the pin function (General IO (GIO) or A/D input).

- Analog Input Control Register 0 (Port 1) (ANEN0: 0x03F5C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	ANEN07-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	ANEN07-0	Select the pin function (GIO or A/D input) 0: GIO 1: A/D input

7.2.13 Analog input Control Register 1 (Port8)

Analog input control register 1 selects the pin function (General IO (GIO) or Analog input).

■ Analog Input Control Register 1 (ANEN1: 0x03F5D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	ANEN15	ANEN14	ANEN13	ANEN12	ANEN11	ANEN10
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as 0.
5	ANEN15	Select the pin function (GIO or Analog input) 0: GIO (P85) 1: VLC2
4	ANEN14	Select the pin function (GIO or Analog input) 0: GIO (P84) 1: VLC3
3	ANEN13	Select the pin function (GIO or Analog input) 0: GIO (P83) 1: C2
2	ANEN12	Select the pin function (GIO or Analog input) 0: GIO (P82) 1: C1
1	ANEN11	Select the pin function (GIO or Analog input) 0: GIO (P81) 1: OSC2
0	ANEN10	Select the pin function (GIO or Analog input) 0: GIO (P80) 1: OSC1

7.2.14 Buzzer output / Buzzer output pin control Register

Buzzer output / Buzzer output pin control register selects the pin function (General IO (GIO) or Buzzer output) and selects the output pin of BUZ/NBUZ (BUZA or BUZB / NBUZA or NBUZB)

- Buzzer output / Buzzer output pin control Register (BUZCNT: 0x03F5F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	NBUZEN	BUZEN	NBUZSEL	BUZSEL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	Always read as 0.
3	NBUZEN	Select the pin function (GIO or NBUZ output). 0: GIO 1: NBUZ output (NBUZA / NBUZB)
2	BUZEN	Select the pin function (GIO or BUZ output). 0: GIO 1: BUZ output (BUZA / BUZB)
1	NBUZSEL	Select the output pin of NBUZ output function. 0: NBUZA (P34) 1: NBUZB (P03)
0	BUZSEL	Select the output pin of BUZ output function. 0: BUZA (P33) 1: BUZB (P02)

7.3 I/O Port Functions

Each I/O can be used as a general purpose port, which is controlled with PnOUT, PnIN, PnDIR, PnPLU, PnODC and PnNLC registers. Each port also has a special function, the detail of which is described after [7.4 Port 0].

The assignment and selection of LCD control pins (SEGn and COMn) differ in each product. For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].
MN101LR05D is described in this section.

7.4 Port 0

The following table shows the special functions of Port 0.

Table:7.4.1 Port 0

Pin	Special function				
P00	TM9IOC	-	-	-	-
P01	TM4IOB	-	-	-	-
P02	TM2IOB	TM8IOC	BUZB	-	-
P03	TM0IOB	TM7IOC	NBUZB	-	-
P04	SBO3A	SDA3A	TM7IOA	-	-
P05	SBT3A	SCL3A	TM0IOA	TM2IOA	CLKOUTA
P06	SBI3A	TM8IOB	-	-	-
P07	SBCS3A	TM9IOA	-	-	-

7.4.1 Setup of Port 0

Table:7.4.2 P00 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	TMIOEN1	TM9MD1	TMIOSEL1	
Bit name	TM9OEN	TM9CK1-0	TM9IOSEL1-0	
	1	Other than 10	10	TM9IO (output)
	0	10	10	TM9IO (input)
		Other than 10	-	P00

Table:7.4.3 P01 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	TMIOEN0	TM4MD	TMIOSEL0	
Bit name	TM4OEN	TM4CK1-0	TM4IOSEL	
	1	Other than 11	1	TM4IO (output)
	0	11	1	TM4IO (input)
		Other than 11	-	P01

Table:7.4.4 P02 Function Selection

Setup									Function
Register	TMIOEN0	TM2MD	TMIOSEL0	TMIOEN1	TM8MD1	TMIOSEL1	BUZCNT		
Bit name	TM2OEN	TM2CK1-0	TM2IOSEL	TM8OEN	TM8CK1-0	TM8IOSEL 1-0	BUZEN	BUZSEL	
	1	Other than 11	1	0	Other than 10	-	0	-	TM2IO (output)
	0	11	1	0	Other than 10	-	0	-	TM2IO (input)
		Other than 11	-	1	Other than 10	10	0	-	TM8IO (output)
				0	10	10	0	-	TM8IO (input)
					Other than 10	-	1	1	BUZB
							0	-	P02

Table:7.4.5 P03 Function Selection

Setup									Function
Register	TMIOEN0	TM0MD	TMIOSEL0	TMIOEN1	TM7MD1	TMIOSEL1	BUZCNT		
Bit name	TM0OEN	TM0CK1-0	TM0IOSEL	TM7OEN	TM7CK1-0	TM7IOSEL 1-0	NBUZEN	NBUZSEL	
	1	Other than 11	1	0	Other than 10	-	0	-	TM0IO (output)
	0	11	1	0	Other than 10	-	0	-	TM0IO (input)
		Other than 11	-	1	Other than 10	10	0	-	TM7IO (output)
				0	10	10	0	-	TM7IO (input)
					Other than 10	-	1	1	NBUZB
							0	-	P03

Table:7.4.6 P04 Function Selection

Setup								Function
Register	SC3MD1			SC23SEL	TMIOEN1	TM7MD1	TMIOSEL1	
Bit name	SC3SBOS	SC3SBIS	SC3IOM	SC3SEL1	TM7OEN	TM7CK1-0	TM7IOSEL 1-0	
	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	0	0	Other than 10	-	SBO3A/ SDA3A
	0	1	1	0	0	Other than 10	-	
		0	0	-	1	Other than 10	00	TM7IO (output)
					0	10	00	TM7IO (input)
						Other than 10	-	P04

*1 When serial data is output, set the P0DIR.P0DIR4 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.4.7 P05 Function Selection

Setup									Function
Register	SC3MD1	SC23SEL	TM0MD	TMIOEN0	TM2MD	TMIOEN0	TMIOSEL0	CLKOUT	
Bit name	SC3SBTS	SC3SEL2	TM0CK1-0	TM0OEN	TM2CK1-0	TM2OEN	TM0IOSE/ TM2IOSEL	CLKOEN/ CLKOSEL	
	1 (*1)	0	Other than 11	0	Other than 11	0	-/-	0/-	SBT3A/SCL3A
	0	-	Other than 11	1	Other than 11	0	0/-	0/-	TM0IO (output)
			11	0	Other than 11	0	0/-	0/-	TM0IO (input)
			Other than 11		Other than 11	1	-/0	0/-	TM2IO (output)
					11	0	-/0	0/-	TM2IO (input)
					Other than 11		-/-	1/0	CLKOUTA
								0/-	P05

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication or communicates on IIC bus, set the P0DIR.P0DIR5 to "1".

Table:7.4.8 P06 Function Selection

Setup							Function
Register	SC3MD1		SC23SEL	TMIOEN1	TM8MD1	TMIOSEL1	
Bit name	SC3SBIS	SC3IOM	SC3SEL0	TM8OEN	TM8CK1-0	TM8IOSEL 1-0	
	1	0	0	0	Other than 10	-	SBI3A
	0	0	-	1	Other than 10	01	TM8IO (output)
				0	10	01	TM8IO (input)
					Other than 10	-	P06

Table:7.4.9 P07 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	SC3MD2	SC23SEL	TMIOEN1	TM9MD1	TMIOSEL1	
Bit name	SC3SBCS EN	SC3SEL3	TM9OEN	TM9CK1-0	TM9IOSEL 1-0	
	1 (*1)	0	0	Other than 10	-	SBCS3A
	0	-	1	Other than 10	00	TM9IO (output)
			0	10	00	TM9IO (input)
				Other than 10	-	P07

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P0DIR.P0DIR7 to "1".

7.5 Port 1

The following table shows the special functions of Port 1.

Table:7.5.1 Port 1

Pin	Special function		
P10	AN0	IRQ0A	KEY0A
P11	AN1	IRQ1A	KEY1A
P12	AN2	IRQ4C	KEY2A
P13	AN3	IRQ5C	KEY3A
P14	AN4	IRQ4A	KEY4A
P15	AN5	IRQ5A	KEY5A
P16	AN6	IRQ6A	KEY6A
P17	AN7	KEY7A	-

7.5.1 Setup of Port 1

Table:7.5.2 P10 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN00	IRQI0EN	IRQ0SEL	KEYI0EN	KEY0SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	AN0
	0	1	0	0	-	IRQ0A
		0	-	1	0	KEY0A
				0	-	P10

Table:7.5.3 P11 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN01	IRQI1EN	IRQ1SEL	KEYI1EN	KEY1SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	AN1
	0	1	0	0	-	IRQ1A
		0	-	1	0	KEY1A
				0	-	P11

Table:7.5.4 P12 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN02	IRQI4EN	IRQ4CSEL	KEYI2EN	KEY2SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	AN2
	0	1	1	0	-	IRQ4C
		0	-	1	0	KEY2A
				0	-	P12

Table:7.5.5 P13 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN03	IRQI5EN	IRQ5CSEL	KEYI3EN	KEY3SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	AN3
	0	1	1	0	-	IRQ5C
		0	-	1	0	KEY3A
				0	-	P13

Table:7.5.6 P14 Function Selection

Setup							Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	IRQISEL1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN04	IRQI4EN	IRQ4SEL	IRQ4CSEL	KEYI4EN	KEY4SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	AN4
	0	1	0	0	0	-	IRQ4A
		0	-	-	1	0	KEY4A
					0	-	P14

Table:7.5.7 P15 Function Selection

Setup							Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	IRQISEL1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN05	IRQI5EN	IRQ5SEL	IRQ5CSEL	KEYI5EN	KEY5SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	AN5
	0	1	0	0	0	-	IRQ5A
		0	-	-	1	0	KEY5A
					0	-	P15

Table:7.5.8 P16 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	ANEN0	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN06	IRQI6EN	IRQ6SEL	KEYI6EN	KEY6SEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	AN6
	0	1	0	0	-	IRQ6A
		0	-	1	0	KEY6A
				0	-	P16

Table:7.5.9 P17 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	ANEN0	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	
Bit name	ANEN07	KEYI7EN	KEY7SEL	
	1	-	-	AN7
	0	1	0	KEY7A
		0	-	P17

7.6 Port 2

The following table shows the special functions of Port 2.

Table:7.6.1 Port 2

pin	Special function		
P20	SEG42 (*)	TM1IOB	TM9IOB
P21	SEG41 (*)	TM5IOA	-
P22	SEG40 (*)	SBI2B	-
P23	SEG39 (*)	SBO2B	SDA2B
P24	SEG38 (*)	SBT2B	SCL2B
P25	SEG37 (*)	SBCS2B	-
P26	SEG36 (*)	SBI1A	RXD1A
P27	NRST (*)	-	-

* The assignment and selection of SEGn differ in each product.
For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].

7.6.1 Setup of Port 2

Table:7.6.2 P20 Function Selection

<table>
<tr><td colspan="8">Setup</td><td>Function</td></tr>
<tr><td>Register</td><td>LCCTR5</td><td>TMIOEN0</td><td>TM1MD</td><td>TMIOSEL0</td><td>TMIOEN1</td><td>TM9MD1</td><td>TMIOSEL1</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit name</td><td>SEGSL42</td><td>TM1OEN</td><td>TM1CK1-0</td><td>TM1IOSEL</td><td>TM9OEN</td><td>TM9CK1-0</td><td>TM9IOSEL 1-0</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6"></td><td>1</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>-</td><td>SEG42</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">0</td><td>1</td><td>Other than 11</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Other than 10</td><td>-</td><td>TM1IO (output)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">0</td><td>11</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Other than 10</td><td>-</td><td>TM1IO (input)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Other than 11</td><td rowspan="3">-</td><td>1</td><td>Other than 10</td><td>01</td><td>TM9IO (output)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">0</td><td>10</td><td>01</td><td>TM9IO (input)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other than 10</td><td>-</td><td>P20</td></tr>
</table>

Table:7.6.3 P21 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR5	TMIOEN0	TM5MD	TMIOSEL5	
Bit name	SEGSL41	TM5OEN	TM5CK1-0	TM5IOSEL	
	1	-	-	-	SEG41
	0	1	Other than 11	0	TM5IO (output)
		0	11	0	TM5IO (input)
			Other than 11	-	P21

Table:7.6.4 P22 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR5	SC2MD1		SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL40	SC2SBIS	SC2IOM	SC2SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	SEG40
	0	1	0	1	SBI2B
		0	0	-	P22

Table:7.6.5 P23 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR5	SC2MD1			SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL39	SC2SBOS	SC2SBIS	SC2IOM	SC2SEL1	
	1	-	-	-	-	SEG39
	0	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	1	SBO2B/ SDA2B
		0	1	1	1	
		0	0	0	-	P23

*1 When serial data is output, set the P2DIR.P2DIR3 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.6.6 P24 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR5	SC2MD1	SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL38	SC2SBTS	SC2SEL2	
	1	-	-	SEG38
	0	1 (*1)	1	SBT2B/ SCL2B
		0	-	P24

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication or communicates on IIC bus, set the P2DIR.P2DIR4 to "1".

Table:7.6.7 P25 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR5	SC2MD2	SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL37	SC2SBCSEN	SC2SEL3	
	1	-	-	SEG37
	0	1	1	SBCS2B
		0	-	P25

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P2DIR.P2DIR5 to "1".

Table:7.6.8 P26 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR5	SC1MD1		SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL36	SC1SBIS	SC1IOM	SC1SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	SEG36
	0	1	0	0	SBI1A/RXD1A
		0	0	-	P26

7.7 Port 3

The following table shows the special functions of Port 3.

Table:7.7.1 Port 3

pin	Special function			
P30	SEG35 (*)	SBO1A	TXD1A	-
P31	SEG34 (*)	SBT1A	-	-
P32	SEG33 (*)	SBCS1A	-	-
P33	SEG32 (*)	BUZA	-	-
P34	SEG31 (*)	TM4IOA	TM7IOB	NBUZA
P35	SEG30 (*)	SBI0B	RXD0B	-
P36	SEG29 (*)	SBO0B	TXD0B	-
P37	SEG28 (*)	SBT0B	-	-

* The assignment and selection of SEGn differ in each product.
For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].

7.7.1 Setup of Port 3

Table:7.7.2 P30 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR4	SC1MD1			SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL35	SC1SBOS	SC1SBIS	SC1IOM	SC1SEL1	
	1	-	-		-	SEG35
	0	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	0	SBO1A/ TXD1A
		0	1	1	0	
			0	0	-	P30

*1 When serial data is output, set the P3DIR.P3DIR0 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.7.3 P31 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR4	SC1MD1	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL34	SC1SBTS	SC1SEL2	
	1	-	-	SEG34
	0	1 (*1)	0	SBT1A
		0	-	P31

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication or communicates on IIC bus, set the P3DIR.P3DIR1 to "1".

Table:7.7.4 P32 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR4	SC1MD3	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL33	SC1SBCSEN	SC1SEL3	
	1	-	-	SEG33
	0	1 (*1)	0	SBCS1A
		0	-	P32

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P3DIR.P3DIR2 to "1".

Table:7.7.5 P33 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR4	BUZCNT		
Bit name	SEGSL32	BUZEN	BUZSEL	
	1	-		SEG32
	0	1	0	BUZA
		0	-	P33

Table:7.7.6 P34 Function Selection

Setup										Function
Register	LCCTR4	TMIOEN0	TM4MD	TMIOSEL0	TMIOEN1	TM7MD1	TMIOSEL1	BUZCNT		
Bit name	SEGSL31	TM4OEN	TM4CK 1-0	TM4IOSEL	TM7OEN	TM7CK 1-0	TM7IOSEL 1-0	NBUZEN	NBUZSEL	
	1		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	SEG31
	0	1	Other than 11	0	0	Other than 10	-	0	-	TM4IO (output)
		0	11	0	0	Other than 10	-	0	-	TM4IO (input)
		0	Other than 11	-	1	Other than 10	01	0	-	TM7IO (output)
					0	10	01	0	-	TM7IO (input)
						Other than 10	-	1	0	NBUZA
								0	-	P34

Table:7.7.7 P35 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR4	SC0MD1		SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL30	SC0SBIS	SC0IOM	SC0SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	SEG30
	0	1	0	1	SBI0B/RXD0B
		0	0	-	P35

Table:7.7.8 P36 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR4	SC0MD1			SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL29	SC0SBOS	SC0SBIS	SC0IOM	SC0SEL1	
	1	-	-		-	SEG29
	0	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	1	SBO0B/ TXD0B
		0	1	1	1	
			0	0	-	P36

*1 When serial data is output, set the P3DIR.P3DIR6 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.7.9 P37 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR4	SC0MD1	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL28	SC0SBTS	SC0SEL2	
	1	-	-	SEG28
	0	1 (*1)	1	SBT0B
		0	-	P37

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication, set the P3DIR.P3DIR7 to "1".

7.8 Port 4

The following table shows the special functions of Port 4.

Table:7.8.1 Port 4

pin	Special function		
P40	SEG27 (*)	SBCS0B	-
P41	SEG26 (*)	SBI2A	-
P42	SEG25 (*)	SBO2A	SDA2A
P43	SEG24 (*)	SBT2A	SCL2A
P44	SEG23 (*)	SBCS2A	-
P45	SEG22 (*)	SBI1B	RXD1B
P46	SEG21 (*)	SBO1B	TXD1B
P47	SEG20 (*)	SBT1B	-

* The assignment and selection of SEGn differ in each product.
For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].

7.8.1 Setup of Port 4

Table:7.8.2 P40 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC0MD3	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL27	SC0SBCSEN	SC0SEL3	
	1	-	-	SEG27
	0	1 (*1)	1	SBCS0B
		0	-	P40

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P4DIR.P4DIR0 to "1".

Table:7.8.3 P41 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC2MD1		SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL26	SC2SBIS	SC2IOM	SC2SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	SEG26
	0	1	0	0	SBI2A
		0	0	-	P41

Table:7.8.4 P42 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC2MD1			SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL25	SC2SBOS	SC2SBIS	SC2IOM	SC2SEL1	
	1	-	-	-	-	SEG25
	0	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	0	SBO2A/ SDA2A
		0	1	1	0	
			0	0	-	P42

*1 When serial data is output, set the P4DIR.P4DIR2 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.8.5 P43 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC2MD1	SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL24	SC2SBTS	SC2SEL2	
	1	-	-	SEG24
	0	1 (*1)	0	SBT2A/SCL2A
		0	-	P43

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication or communicates on IIC bus, set the P4DIR.P4DIR3 to "1".

Table:7.8.6 P44 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC2MD2	SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL23	SC2SBCSEN	SC2SEL3	
	1	-	-	SEG23
	0	1 (*1)	0	SBCS2A
		0	-	P44

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P4DIR.P4DIR4 to "1".

Table:7.8.7 P45 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC1MD1		SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL22	SC1SBIS	SC1IOM	SC1SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	SEG22
	0	1	0	1	SBI1B/RXD1B
		0	0	-	P45

Table:7.8.8 P46 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC1MD1			SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL21	SC1SBOS	SC1SBIS	SC1IOM	SC1SEL1	
	1	-	-		-	SEG21
	0	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	1	SBO1B/ TXD1B
		0	1	1	1	
			0	0	-	P46

*1 When serial data is output, set the P4DIR.P4DIR6 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.8.9 P47 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR3	SC1MD1	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL20	SC1SBTS	SC1SEL2	
	1	-	-	SEG20
	0	1 (*1)	1	SBT1B
		0	-	P47

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication, set the P4DIR.P4DIR7 to "1".

7.9 Port 5

The following table shows the special functions of Port 5.

Table:7.9.1 Port 5

pin	Special function			
P50	SEG19 (*)	SBCS1B	-	-
P51	SEG18 (*)	SBI3B	-	-
P52	SEG17 (*)	SBO3B	SDA3B	-
P53	SEG16 (*)	SBT3B	SCL3B	-
P54	SEG15 (*)	KEY0B	SBCS3B	-
P55	SEG14 (*)	KEY1B	TM1IOA	-
P56	SEG13 (*)	KEY2B	TM3IOA	-
P57	SEG12 (*)	KEY3B	TM8IOA	CLKOUTB

* The assignment and selection of SEGn differ in each product.
For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].

7.9.1 Setup of Port 5

Table:7.9.2 P50 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR2	SC1MD3	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL19	SC1SBCSEN	SC1SEL3	
	1	-	-	SEG19
	0	1 (*1)	1	SBCS1B
		0	-	P50

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P5DIR.P5DIR0 to "1".

Table:7.9.3 P51 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR2	SC3MD1		SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL18	SC3SBIS	SC3IOM	SC3SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	SEG18
	0	1	0	1	SBI3B
		0	0	-	P51

Table:7.9.4 P52 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR2	SC3MD1			SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL17	SC3SBOS	SC3SBIS	SC3IOM	SC3SEL1	
	1	-	-	-	-	SEG17
	0	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	1	SBO3B/ SDA3B
		0	1	1	1	
			0	0	-	P52

*1 When serial data is output, set the P5DIR.P5DIR2 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.9.5 P53 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR2	SC3MD1	SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL16	SC3SBTS	SC3SEL2	
	1	-	-	SEG16
	0	1 (*1)	1	SBT3B/SCL3B
		0	-	P53

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication, set the P5DIR.P5DIR3 to "1".

Table:7.9.6 P54 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR2	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	SC3MD2	SC23SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL15	KEYI0EN	KEY0SEL	SC3SBCS EN	SC3SEL3	
	1	-	-	-	-	SEG15
	0	1	1	0	-	KEY0B
		0	-	1 (*1)	1	SBCS3B
				0	-	P54

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P5DIR.P5DIR4 to "1".

Table:7.9.7 P55 Function Selection

Setup							Function
Register	LCCTR2	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	TMIOEN0	TM1MD	TMIOSEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL14	KEYI1EN	KEY1SEL	TM1OEN	TM1CK1-0	TM1IOSEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	SEG14
	0	1	1	0	Other than 11	-	KEY1B
		0	-	1	Other than 11	0	TM1IO (output)
				0	11	0	TM1IO (input)
					Other than 11	-	P55

Table:7.9.8 P56 Function Selection

Setup							Function
Register	LCCTR2	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	TMIOEN0	TM3MD	TMIOSEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL13	KEYI2EN	KEY2SEL	TM3OEN	TM3CK1-0	TM3IOSEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	SEG13
	0	1	1	0	Other than 11	-	KEY2B
		0	-	1	Other than 11	0	TM3IO (output)
				0	11	0	TM3IO (input)
					Other than 11	-	P56

Table:7.9.9 P57 Function Selection

Setup								Function
Register	LCCTR2	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	TMIOEN1	TM8MD1	TMIOSEL1	CLKOUT	
Bit name	SEGSL12	KEYI3EN	KEY3SEL	TM8OEN	TM8CK1-0	TM8IOSEL 1-0	CLKOEN/ CLKOSEL	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	0/-	SEG12
	0	1	1	0	Other than 10	-	0/-	KEY3B
		0	-	1	Other than 10	00	0/-	TM8IO (output)
				0	10	00	0/-	TM8IO (input)
					Other than 10	-	1/1	CLKOUTB
							0/-	P57

7.10 Port 6

The following table shows the special functions of Port 6.

Table:7.10.1 Port 6

pin	Special function			
P60	SEG11 (*)	IRQ0B	-	-
P61	SEG10 (*)	IRQ1B	-	-
P62	SEG9 (*)	IRQ2B	-	-
P63	SEG8 (*)	IRQ3B	-	-
P64	SEG7 (*)	KEY4B	SBI0A	RXD0A
P65	SEG6 (*)	KEY5B	SBO0A	TXD0A
P66	SEG5 (*)	KEY6B	SBT0A	-
P67	SEG4 (*)	KEY7B	SBCS0A	-

* The assignment and selection of SEGn differ in each product.
For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].

7.10.1 Setup of Port 6

Table:7.10.2 P60 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR1	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL11	IRQI0EN	IRQ0SEL	
	1	-	-	SEG11
	0	1	1	IRQ0B
		0	-	P60

Table:7.10.3 P61 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR1	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL10	IRQI1EN	IRQ1SEL	
	1	-	-	SEG10
	0	1	1	IRQ1B
		0	-	P61

Table:7.10.4 P62 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR1	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL9	IRQI2EN	IRQ2SEL	
	1	-	-	SEG9
	0	1	1	IRQ2B
		0	-	P62

Table:7.10.5 P63 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	LCCTR1	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL8	IRQI3EN	IRQ3SEL	
	1	-	-	SEG8
	0	1	1	IRQ3B
		0	-	P63

Table:7.10.6 P64 Function Selection

Setup							Function
Register	LCCTR1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	SC0MD1		SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL7	KEYI4EN	KEY4SEL	SC0SBIS	SC0IOM	SC0SEL0	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	SEG7
	0	1	1	0	0	-	KEY4B
		0	-	1	0	0	SBI0A/RXD0A
				0	0	-	P64

Table:7.10.7 P65 Function Selection

Setup								Function
Register	LCCTR1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	SC0MD1			SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL6	KEYI5EN	KEY5SEL	SC0SBOS	SC0SBIS	SC0IOM	SC0SEL1	
	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	SEG6
	0	1	1	0	0	0	-	KEY5B
		0	-	1 (*1)	- (*2)	- (*2)	0	SBO0A/TXD0A
				0	1	1	0	
					0	0	-	P65

*1 When serial data is output, set the P6DIR.P6DIR5 to "1".
*2 When serial data is input and output, set the bit to "1".

Table:7.10.8 P66 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	SC0MD1	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL5	KEYI6EN	KEY6SEL	SC0SBTS	SC0SEL2	
	1	-	-	-	-	SEG5
	0	1	1	0	-	KEY6B
		0	-	1 (*1)	0	SBT0A
				0	-	P64

*1 When the LSI is the master of Clock-synchronous communication, set the P6DIR.P6DIR6 to "1".

Table:7.10.9 P67 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR1	KEYIEN	KEYSEL	SC0MD3	SC01SEL	
Bit name	SEGSL4	KEYI7EN	KEY7SEL	SC0SBCSEN	SC0SEL3	
	1	-	-	-	-	SEG4
	0	1	1	0	-	KEY7B
		0	-	1 (*1)	0	SBCS0A
				0	-	P67

*1 When the LSI outputs the chip select signal, set the P6DIR.P6DIR7 to "1".

7.11 Port 7

The following table shows the special functions of Port 7.

Table:7.11.1 Port 7

pin	Special function			
P70	COM7 (*)	SEG3 (*)	IRQ6B	-
P71	COM6 (*)	SEG2 (*)	IRQ5B	-
P72	COM5 (*)	SEG1 (*)	IRQ4B	TM3IOB
P73	COM4 (*)	SEG0 (*)	TM5IOB	-
P74	COM3 (*)	-	-	-
P75	COM2 (*)	-	-	-
P76	COM1 (*)	-	-	-
P77	COM0 (*)	-	-	-

* The assignment and selection of LCD control pins differ in each product.
For details, refer to [Table:1.2.3 Functions of LCD Control] and [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers].

7.11.1 Setup of Port 7

Table:7.11.2 P70 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR0	LCDSEL	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL3	COMSL7	IRQI6EN	IRQ6SEL	
	1	1	-	-	COM7
	1	0	-	-	SEG3
	0	-	1	1	IRQ6B
			0	-	P70

Table:7.11.3 P71 Function Selection

Setup					Function
Register	LCCTR0	LCDSEL	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL2	COMSL6	IRQI5EN	IRQ5SEL	
	1	1	-	-	COM6
	1	0	-	-	SEG2
	0	-	1	1	IRQ5B
			0	-	P71

Table:7.11.4 P72 Function Selection

Setup								Function
Register	LCCTR0	LCDSEL	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	TMIOEN0	TM3MD	TMIOSEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL1	COMSL5	IRQI4EN	IRQ4SEL	TM3OEN	TM3CK1-0	TM3IOSEL	
	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	COM5
	1	0	-	-	-	-	-	SEG1
	0	-	1	1	0	Other than 11	-	IRQ4B
			0	-	1	Other than 11	1	TM3IO (output)
					0	11	1	TM3IO (input)
						Other than 11	-	P72

Table:7.11.5 P73 Function Selection

Setup						Function
Register	LCCTR0	LCDSEL	TMIOEN0	TM5MD	TMIOSEL0	
Bit name	SEGSL0	COMSL4	TM5OEN	TM5CK1-0	TM5IOSEL	
	1	1	-	-	-	COM4
	1	0	-	-	-	SEG0
	0	-	1	Other than 11	1	TM5IO (output)
			0	11	1	TM5IO (input)
				Other than 11	-	P73

Table:7.11.6 P74 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	LCCTR0	
Bit name	COMSL3	
	1	COM3
	0	P74

Table:7.11.7 P75 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	LCCTR0	
Bit name	COMSL2	
	1	COM2
	0	P75

Table:7.11.8 P76 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	LCCTR0	
Bit name	COMSL1	
	1	COM1
	0	P76

Table:7.11.9 P77 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	LCCTR0	
Bit name	COMSL0	
	1	COM0
	0	P77

7.12 Port 8

The following table shows the special functions of Port 8.

Table:7.12.1 Port 8

pin	Special function	
P80	OSC1	IRQ2A
P81	OSC2	IRQ3A
P82	C1	-
P83	C2	-
P84	VLC3	-
P85	VLC2	-

7.12.1 Setup of Port 8

Function setup of Port 8 is shown below.

Table:7.12.2 P80 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	ANEN1	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	ANEN10	IRQI2EN	IRQ2SEL	
	1	-	-	OSC1
	0	1	0	IRQ2A
		0	-	P80

Table:7.12.3 P81 Function Selection

Setup				Function
Register	ANEN1	IRQIEN	IRQISEL0	
Bit name	ANEN11	IRQI3EN	IRQ3SEL	
	1	-	-	OSC2
	0	1	0	IRQ3A
		0	-	P81

Table:7.12.4 P82 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	ANEN1	
Bit name	ANEN12	
	1	C1
	0	P82

Table:7.12.5 P83 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	ANEN1	
Bit name	ANEN13	
	1	C2
	0	P83

Table:7.12.6 P84 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	ANEN1	
Bit name	ANEN14	
	1	VLC3
	0	P84

Table:7.12.7 P85 Function Selection

Setup		Function
Register	ANEN1	
Bit name	ANEN15	
	1	VLC2
	0	P85

Chapter 8 8-bit Timer

8

8.1 Overview

This LSI has six 8-bit timers (Timer 0 to Timer 5).
I/O pins used for each 8-bit Timer has three pin groups, Group-A and Group-B. (ex. Timer 0 has TM0IOA and TM0IOB.)
In this chapter, the suffix of "A" and "B" is omitted to describe functions of 8-bit Timer.

8.1.1 Functions

Table:8.1.1 shows functions that can be used for each timer.

Table:8.1.1 8-bit Timer Functions

	Timer 0 (8-bit)	Timer 1 (8-bit)	Timer 2 (8-bit)	Timer 3 (8-bit)	Timer 4 (8-bit)	Timer 5 (8-bit)
Interrupt source	TM0IRQ	TM1IRQ	TM2IRQ	TM3IRQ	TM4IRQ	PERI0IRQ0
Event count	TM0IOA(P05) TM0IOB(P03)	TM1IOA(P55) TM1IOB(P20)	TM2IOA(P05) TM2IOB(P02)	TM3IOA(P56) TM3IOB(P72)	TM4IOA(P34) TM4IOB(P01)	TM5IOA(P21) TM5IOB(P73)
Timer pulse output						
PWM output		-		-		-
PWM output with additional pulses		-		-		-
Pulse width measurement	External Interrupt 0 (IRQ0A/P10) (IRQ0B/P60)	-	External Interrupt 2 (IRQ2A/P80) (IRQ2B/P62)	-	External Interrupt 4 (IRQ4A/P14) (IRQ4B/P72) (IRQ4C/P12)	-
Cascade connection	√ (16-bit counter)		√ (16-bit counter)		√ (16-bit counter)	
Clock source	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/32 HCLK/64 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SCLK TM0IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/64 HCLK/128 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/8 SCLK TM1IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/32 HCLK/64 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SCLK TM2IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/64 HCLK/128 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/8 SCLK TM3IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/32 HCLK/64 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SCLK TM4IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/64 HCLK/128 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/8 SCLK TM5IO input
HCLK: Machine clock (for high-speed operation) SCLK: Machine clock (for low-speed operation) SYSCLK: System clock [4.1 Clock Control]						

8.1.2 8-bit Timer Block Diagram

8-bit Timer block diagram is shown in Figure:8.1.1

Timer 0, Timer 2 and Timer 4 are described "Timer n", Timer 1, Timer 3 and Timer 5 are described "Timer m".

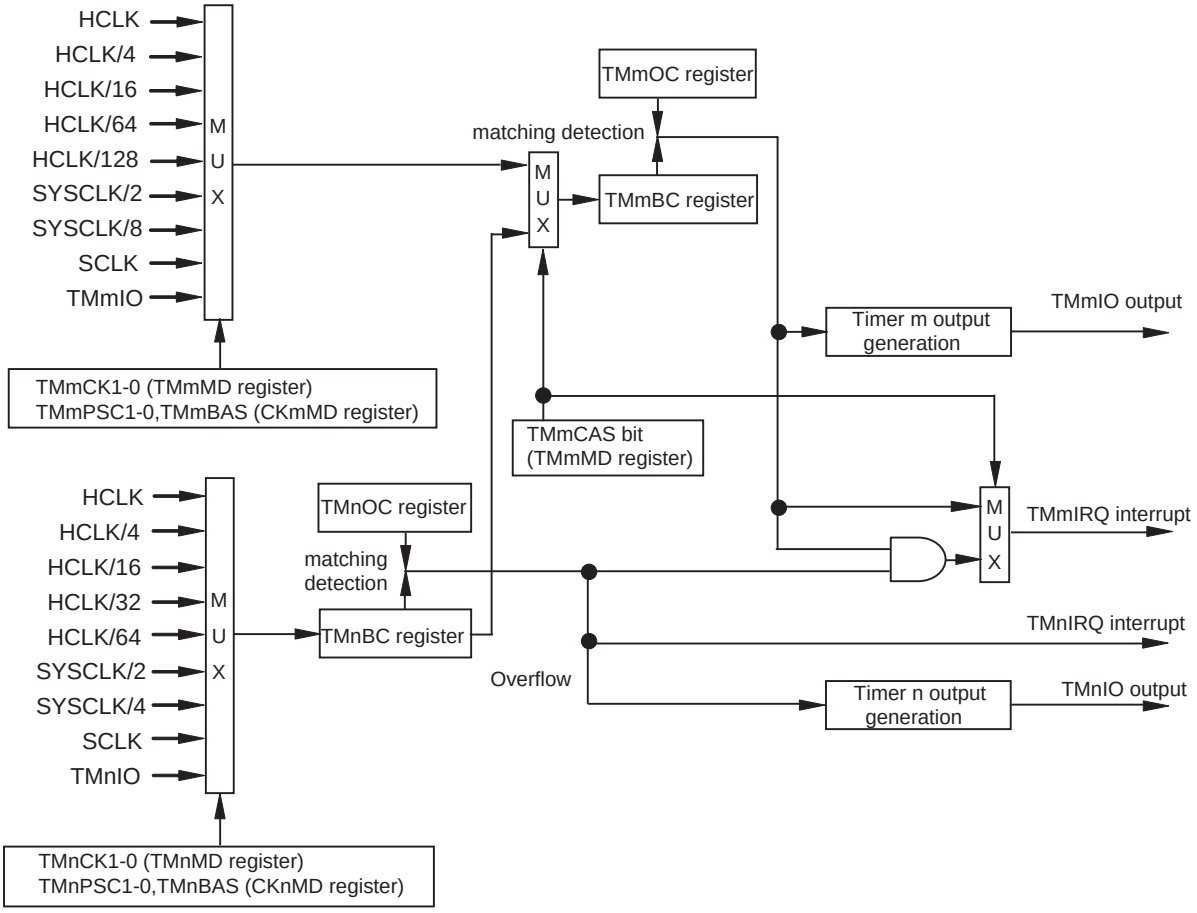


Figure:8.1.1 Block Diagram of Timer n and Timer m

8.2 8-bit Timer Control Registers

8-bit Timer control registers consist of following registers.

- Timer prescaler selection registers
- Programmable timer registers
- Timer mode registers

Table:8.2.1 shows registers that control 8-bit Timers.

Table:8.2.1 8-bit Timer Control Registers

	Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
Timer 0	TM0BC	0x03F70	R	Timer 0 binary counter	VIII-8
	TM0OC	0x03F72	R/W	Timer 0 compare register	VIII-8
	TM0MD	0x03F74	R/W	Timer 0 mode register	VIII-9
	CK0MD	0x03F76	R/W	Timer 0 prescaler selection register	VIII-5
	TM0ICR	0x03FEA	R/W	Timer 0 interrupt control register	III-29
Timer 1	TM1BC	0x03F71	R	Timer 1 binary counter	VIII-8
	TM1OC	0x03F73	R/W	Timer 1 compare register	VIII-8
	TM1MD	0x03F75	R/W	Timer 1 mode register	VIII-10
	CK1MD	0x03F77	R/W	Timer 1 prescaler selection register	VIII-5
	TM1ICR	0x03FEB	R/W	Timer 1 interrupt control register	III-29
Timer 2	TM2BC	0x03F80	R	Timer 2 binary counter	VIII-8
	TM2OC	0x03F82	R/W	Timer 2 compare register	VIII-8
	TM2MD	0x03F84	R/W	Timer 2 mode register	VIII-11
	CK2MD	0x03F86	R/W	Timer 2 prescaler selection register	VIII-6
	TM2ICR	0x03FEC	R/W	Timer 2 interrupt control register	III-29
Timer 3	TM3BC	0x03F81	R	Timer 3 binary counter	VIII-8
	TM3OC	0x03F83	R/W	Timer 3 compare register	VIII-8
	TM3MD	0x03F85	R/W	Timer 3 mode register	VIII-12
	CK3MD	0x03F87	R/W	Timer 3 prescaler selection register	VIII-6
	TM3ICR	0x03FED	R/W	Timer 3 interrupt control register	III-29
Timer 4	TM4BC	0x03F90	R	Timer 4 binary counter	VIII-8
	TM4OC	0x03F92	R/W	Timer 4 compare register	VIII-8
	TM4MD	0x03F94	R/W	Timer 4 mode register	VIII-13
	CK4MD	0x03F96	R/W	Timer 4 prescaler selection register	VIII-7
	TM4ICR	0x03FEE	R/W	Timer 4 interrupt control register	III-29
Timer 5	TM5BC	0x03F91	R	Timer 5 binary counter	VIII-8
	TM5OC	0x03F93	R/W	Timer 5 compare register	VIII-8
	TM5MD	0x03F95	R/W	Timer 5 mode register	VIII-14
	CK5MD	0x03F97	R/W	Timer 5 prescaler selection register	VIII-7
	PERI0ICR	0x03FFD	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt level control register	III-24
	PERI0EN	0x03FDC	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt enable register	III-25
	PERI0DT	0x03FDD	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt factor register	III-26

8.2.1 Timer Prescaler Selection Registers

The timer prescaler selection registers select divided HCLK or SYSCLK as the count clock of 8-bit timer. In addition, these registers control the function of PWM output with additional pulses for Timer 0, 2 and 4.

■ Timer 0 Prescaler Selection Register (CK0MD: 0x03F76)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	TM0ADD1-0		TM0ADDEN	TM0PSC1-0		TM0BAS
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 6	-	Always read as 0.
5 to 4	TM0ADD1-0	Position of additional pulse (within 4 cycles of PWM basic waveform) 00: No pulse 01: At second cycle 10: At first and third cycle 11: At first, second and third cycle
3	TM0ADDEN	PWM output with additional pulses control 0: Disabled (8-bit PWM output) 1: Enabled
2 to 0	TM0PSC1-0 TM0BAS	Clock source select 000: HCLK/4 010: HCLK/16 100: HCLK/32 110: HCLK/64 X01: SYSCLK/2 X11: SYSCLK/4

■ Timer 1 Prescaler Selection Register (CK1MD: 0x03F77)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	TM1PSC1-0		TM1BAS
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 3	-	Always read as 0.
2 to 0	TM1PSC1-0 TM1BAS	Clock source select 000: HCLK/4 010: HCLK/16 100: HCLK/64 110: HCLK/128 X01: SYSCLK/2 X11: SYSCLK/8

■ Timer 2 Prescaler Selection Register (CK2MD: 0x03F86)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	TM2ADD1-0		TM2ADDEN	TM2PSC1-0		TM2BAS
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 6	-	Always read as 0.
5 to 4	TM2ADD1-0	Position of additional pulse (within 4 cycles of PWM basic waveform) 00: No pulse 01: At second cycle 10: At first and third cycle 11: At first, second and third cycle
3	TM2ADDEN	PWM output with additional pulses control 0: Disabled (8-bit PWM output) 1: Enabled
2 to 0	TM2PSC1-0 TM2BAS	Clock source select 000: HCLK/4 010: HCLK/16 100: HCLK/32 110: HCLK/64 X01: SYSCLK/2 X11: SYSCLK/4

■ Timer 3 Prescaler Selection Register (CK3MD: 0x03F87)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	TM3PSC1-0		TM3BAS
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 3	-	Always read as 0.
2 to 0	TM3PSC1-0 TM3BAS	Clock source select 000: HCLK/4 010: HCLK/16 100: HCLK/64 110: HCLK/128 X01: SYSCLK/2 X11: SYSCLK/8

■ Timer 4 Prescaler Selection Register (CK4MD: 0x03F96)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	TM4ADD1-0		TM4ADDEN	TM4PSC1-0		TM4BAS
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 6	-	Always read as 0.
5 to 4	TM4ADD1-0	Position of additional pulse (within 4 cycles of PWM basic waveform) 00: No pulse 01: At second cycle 10: At first and third cycle 11: At first, second and third cycle
3	TM4ADDEN	PWM output with additional pulses control 0: Disabled (8-bit PWM output) 1: Enabled
2 to 0	TM4PSC1-0 TM4BAS	Clock source select 000: HCLK/4 010: HCLK/16 100: HCLK/32 110: HCLK/64 X01: SYSCLK/2 X11: SYSCLK/4

■ Timer 5 Prescaler Selection Register (CK5MD: 0x03F97)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	TM5PSC1-0		TM5BAS
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 3	-	Always read as 0.
2 to 0	TM5PSC1-0 TM5BAS	Clock source select 000: HCLK/4 010: HCLK/16 100: HCLK/64 110: HCLK/128 X01: SYSCLK/2 X11: SYSCLK/8

8.2.2 Programmable Timer Registers

The programmable timer register consists of timer n compare register (TMnOC) and timer n binary counter (TMnBC).

- Timer n Compare Register
  (TM0OC: 0x03F72, TM1OC: 0x03F73, TM2OC: 0x03F82, TM3OC: 0x03F83, TM4OC: 0x03F92, TM5OC: 0x03F93)

Timer n compare register is an 8-bit register which stores a value compared with timer n binary counter.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnOC7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

When setting the compare register in cascade connection, pair of registers (TM1OC and TM0OC, TM3OC and TM2OC, TM5OC and TM4OC) must be accessed simultaneously with 16-bit access instruction, MOVW.

- Timer n Binary Counter
  (TM0BC: 0x03F70, TM1BC: 0x03F71, TM2BC: 0x03F80, TM3BC: 0x03F81, TM4BC: 0x03F90, TM5BC: 0x03F91)

Timer n binary counter is an 8-bit up counter. If any data are written to the timer n compare register while the counter is stopped, the timer n binary counter is cleared to 0x00.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnBC7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

When reading the value of TMnBC register in cascade connection, pair of registers (TM1BC and TM0BC, TM3BC and TM2BC, TM5BC and TM4BC) must be accessed simultaneously with 16-bit access instruction, MOVW.

When reading the value of TMnBC register while operating, indeterminate data while counting up may be read. Alternatively, the register must be read multiple times, and those data confirmed to be the same.

8.2.3 Timer Mode Registers

■ Timer 0 Mode Register (TM0MD: 0x03F74)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	TM0POP	TM0MOD	TM0PWM	TM0EN	-	TM0CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	TM0POP	Initial polarity of output signal select 0: Timer output Low→High, PWM High→Low 1: Timer output High→Low, PWM Low→High
5	TM0MOD	Pulse width measurement control 0: Normal timer operation 1: Pulse width measurement (P10/P60)
4	TM0PWM	Timer 0 operation mode control 0: Normal timer operation 1: PWM operation
3	TM0EN	Timer 0 count enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	-	Always read as 0.
1-0	TM0CK1-0	Clock source select 00: HCLK 01: TM0PSC (prescaler output) 10: SCLK 11: TM0IO input

■ Timer 1 Mode Register (TM1MD: 0x03F75)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	TM1CAS	TM1EN	-	TM1CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as 0.
4	TM1CAS	Timer 1 operation mode select 0: Normal timer operation 1: Cascade connection
3	TM1EN	Timer 1 count enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	-	Always read as 0.
1-0	TM1CK1-0	Clock source select 00: HCLK 01: TM1PSC (prescaler output) 10: SCLK 11: TM1IO input

■ Timer 2 Mode Register (TM2MD: 0x03F84)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	TM2POP	TM2MOD	TM2PWM	TM2EN	-	TM2CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	TM2POP	Initial polarity of output signal select 0: Timer output Low→High, PWM High→Low 1: Timer output High→Low, PWM Low→High
5	TM2MOD	Pulse width measurement control 0: Normal timer operation 1: Pulse width measurement (P80/P62)
4	TM2PWM	Timer 2 operation mode control 0: Normal timer operation 1: PWM operation
3	TM2EN	Timer 2 count enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	-	Always read as 0.
1-0	TM2CK1-0	Clock source select 00: HCLK 01: TM2PSC (prescaler output) 10: SCLK 11: TM2IO input

■ Timer 3 Mode Register (TM3MD: 0x03F85)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	TM3CAS	TM3EN	-	TM3CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as 0.
4	TM3CAS	Timer 3 operation mode select 0: Normal timer operation 1: Cascade connection
3	TM3EN	Timer 3 count enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	-	Always read as 0.
1-0	TM3CK1-0	Clock source select 00: HCLK 01: TM3PSC (prescaler output) 10: SCLK 11: TM3IO input

■ Timer 4 Mode Register (TM4MD: 0x03F94)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	TM4POP	TM4MOD	TM4PWM	TM4EN	-	TM4CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	TM4POP	Initial polarity of output signal select 0: Timer output Low→High, PWM High→Low 1: Timer output High→Low, PWM Low→High
5	TM4MOD	Pulse width measurement control 0: Normal timer operation 1: Pulse width measurement (P14/P72/P12)
4	TM4PWM	Timer 4 operation mode select 0: Normal timer operation 1: PWM operation
3	TM4EN	Timer 4 count enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	-	Always read as 0.
1-0	TM4CK1-0	Clock source select 00: HCLK 01: TM4PSC (prescaler output) 10: SCLK 11: TM4IO input

■ Timer 5 Mode Register (TM5MD: 0x03F95)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	TM5CAS	TM5EN	-	TM5CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as 0.
4	TM5CAS	Timer 5 operation mode select 0: Normal timer operation 1: Cascade connection
3	TM5EN	Timer 5 count enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	-	Always read as 0.
1-0	TM5CK1-0	Clock source select 00: HCLK 01: TM5PSC (prescaler output) 10: SCLK 11: TM5IO input

8.3 8-bit Timer

8.3.1 Operation

In the 8-bit timer operation, the timer can generate interrupts periodically.

■ 8-bit Timer Operation (Timer 0 to Timer 5)

The interrupt generation cycle of the timer is determined by selecting the clock source and setting the value of TMnOC, in advance. When the value of TMnBC matches the setting value of timer n compare register, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock. Then, the timer n binary counter is cleared and restarts counting up from "0x00".

The clock source can be selected depending on timers as shown in the table below.

Clock source	Time per Count	Timer 0	Timer 1	Timer 2	Timer 3	Timer 4	Timer 5
HCLK	100 ns	√	√	√	√	√	√
HCLK/4	400 ns	√	√	√	√	√	√
HCLK/16	1.6 μs	√	√	√	√	√	√
HCLK/32	3.2 μs	√	-	√	-	√	-
HCLK/64	6.4 μs	√	√	√	√	√	√
HCLK/128	12.8 μs	-	√	-	√	-	√
SYSCLK/2	400 ns	√	√	√	√	√	√
SYSCLK/4	800 ns	√	-	√	-	√	-
SYSCLK/8	1600 ns	-	√	-	√	-	√
SCLK	30.5 μs	√	√	√	√	√	√
f_{HCLK} =10 MHz, f_{SCLK} =32.768 kHz f_{SYSCLK} = HCLK/2 = 5 MHz							

When using SCLK as a clock source, the timer counts at the falling edge of the count clock. When using other clocks, the timer counts at the rising edge of the count clock.

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 0 to Timer 5)

The binary counter counts up with the selected count clock, as shown below. This is the basic operation for all functions of 8-bit timer.

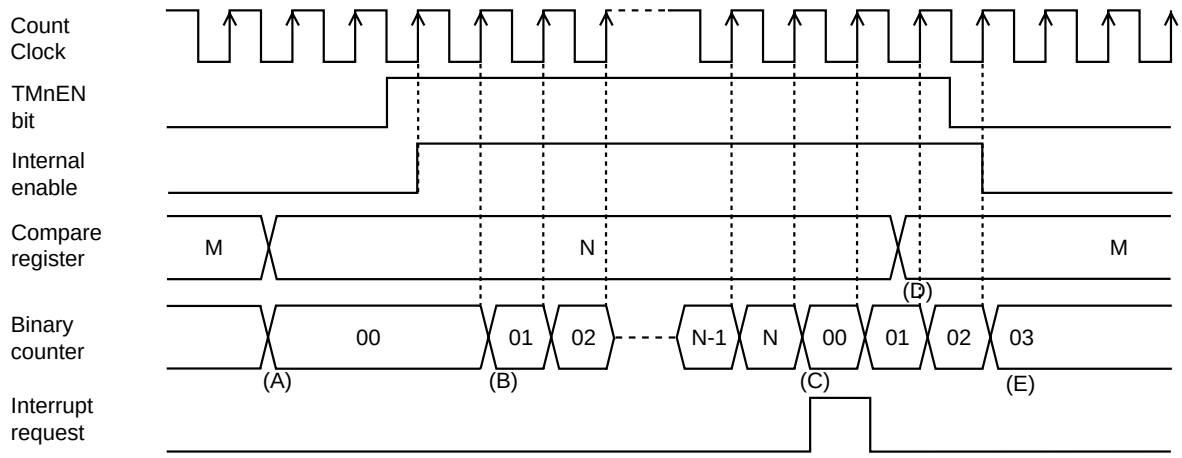


Figure:8.3.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 0 to Timer 5)

- (A) If any data are written to the compare register while the count operation is disabled (the TMnMD.TMnEN is set to "0"), the binary counter is cleared to "0x00".
- (B) When activating the counter by setting the TMnMD.TMnEN to "1", the internal enable is set at the next count clock. Then, the binary counter starts counting up from the next count clock where the internal enable has been set.
- (C) When the value of binary counter matches the setting value of compare register, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock. Then, the binary counter is cleared and restarts counting up.
- (D) Even if the compare register is rewritten while the count operation is enabled (the TMnMD.TMnEN is set to "1"), the binary counter is not changed.
- (E) When the count operation is disabled (the TMnMD.TMnEN is set to "0"), the internal enable is reset at the next count clock. The binary counter stops counting.

Stop the timer when switching the count clock. If the count clock is changed during counting, the timer doesn't count correctly .

Do not change the TMnMD.TMnEN simultaneously with other bits to avoid errors in operation.

When TMnBC is read on the operation, uncertain value on counting up may be read.

Writing the value to TMnOC during counting is prohibited.

The sampled signal of the TMnMD.TMnEN with the count clock controls start/stop of the binary counter of 8-bit timer on this LSI. Therefore, note the following two points:

I. To read the binary counter value after the timer has stopped, set the TMnMD.TMnEN to "0", wait for 1 count cycle, and read the value.
When reading the value without waiting for 1 count cycle, use the program to read the value of the binary counter multiple times. In this case, the read value is [count value - 1].

II. When changing the timer setting (clock selection, function switching, etc.), wait for 1 count clock after setting the TMnMD.TMnEN to "0" to stop the timer. Then, Restart the timer.
If the setting is switched during the timer operation, the timer operation is not guaranteed.

When the value of timer n binary counter matches the setting value of timer n compare register, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock and the timer n binary counter is cleared. So set the compare register as follows:

Setting value of the compare register = (counts till the interrupt request) -1

If the timer interrupt request bit may have already been set before the timer starts, the timer interrupt request bit should be cleared.

When changing the CPU operation mode (from NORMAL to SLOW) while the high-frequency oscillation clock (HCLK) or the prescaler output (TMnPSC) is selected as a clock source, stop the timer before the mode transition. After the mode transition, activate the timer again. In the SLOW/HALT1 mode, do not select HCLK or any clock generated from HCLK as a timer clock source.

When TMnOC is set to "00 ", clear TMnBC before starting the timer operation.

8.3.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup Example (Timer 0 to Timer 5)

Here is an example that the periodic interrupt of Timer 0 is generated to execute the timer function. An interrupt is generated every 250 cycles (200 μs) by selecting SYSCLK/2 (at f_{sysclk} = 2.5 MHz operation) as a clock source.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Symbol	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Disable the interrupt	TM0ICR.TM0IE = 0	Disable the timer interrupt.
3	Set the timer mode register	TM0MD.TM0PWM = 0 TM0MD.TM0MOD = 0	Select the normal timer operation.
4		TM0MD.TM0CK1-0 = 01	Select the clock source.
5	Set the prescaler	CK0MD.TM0PSC1-0 = X0 CK0MD.TM0BAS = 1	Select SYSCLK/2.
6	Set the interrupt cycle	TM0OC = 0xF9	Set the cycle of timer interrupt. Setup value: 249 (0xF9)
7	Set the interrupt level	TM0ICR.TM0LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
8	Enable the interrupt	TM0ICR.TM0IE = 1	
9	Enable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

8.4 8-bit Event Count

8.4.1 Operation

In the event count operation, an external input, as a count clock, can be counted.

■ 8-bit Event Count Operation

In the event count operation, TMnBC counts the input signal to the TMnIO pin from the external. When the value of TMnBC matches the setting value of timer n compare register, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock. For event count input clock of each timer, refer to Table:8.1.1.

■ Count Timing of TMnIO Input

When TMnIO input is selected, TMnIO input becomes the count clock of Timer n. The binary counter starts counting up at the falling edge of the TMnIO input signal.

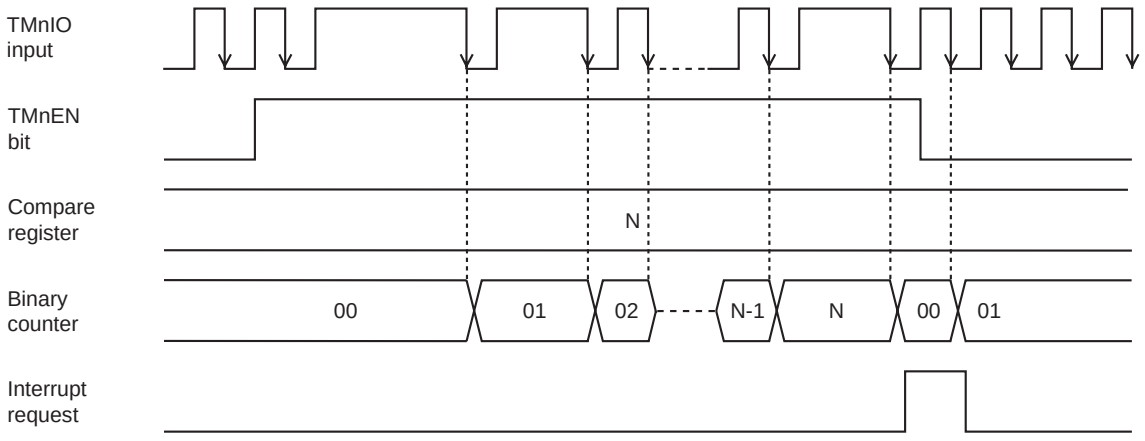


Figure:8.4.1 Count Timing of TMnIO Input

When TMnBC is read on the operation, uncertain value on counting up may be read.

Writing the value to TMnOC during counting is prohibited.

The sampled signal of the TMnMD.TMnEN with the count clock controls start/stop of the binary counter of 8-bit timer on this LSI. Therefore, note the following two points:

I. To read the binary counter value after the timer has stopped, set the TMnMD.TMnEN to "0", wait for 1 count cycle, and read the value.
When reading the value without waiting for 1 count cycle, use the program to read the value of the binary counter multiple times. In this case, the read value is [count value - 1].

II. When changing the timer setting (clock selection, function switching, etc.), wait for 1 count clock after setting the TMnMD.TMnEN to "0" to stop the timer. Then, Restart the timer.
If the setting is switched during the timer operation, the timer operation is not guaranteed.

8.4.2 8-bit Event Count Setup Example

■ Event Count Setup Example

Here is an example that an interrupt is generated by detecting the falling edge of the TM0IO input 5 times.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Disable the interrupt	TM0ICR.TM0IE = 0	Disable the timer interrupt.
3	Select the event input	TMIOSEL0.TM0IOSEL0 = 0	Select the event clock input pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
4		P0DIR.P0DIR5 = 0	
5	Set the interrupt cycle	TM0OC = 0x04	Set the interrupt generation cycle.
6	Set the timer mode register	TM0MD.TM0PWM = 0 TM0MD.TM0MOD = 0	Select the timer normal operation.
7		TM0MD.TM0CK1-0 = 11	Select TM0IO input as the count clock source.
9	Set the interrupt level	TM0ICR.TM0LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
10	Enable the interrupt	TM0ICR.TM0IE = 1	
11	Enable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

8.5 8-bit Timer Pulse Output

8.5.1 Operation

■ Operation of Timer Pulse Output

In the timer pulse output function, a pulse signal with a given frequency can be output from TMnIO pin. Timers can output the signal with twice the cycle which is set in TMnOC. Refer to Table:8.1.1 for the pulse output pin.

■ Count Timing of Timer Pulse Output

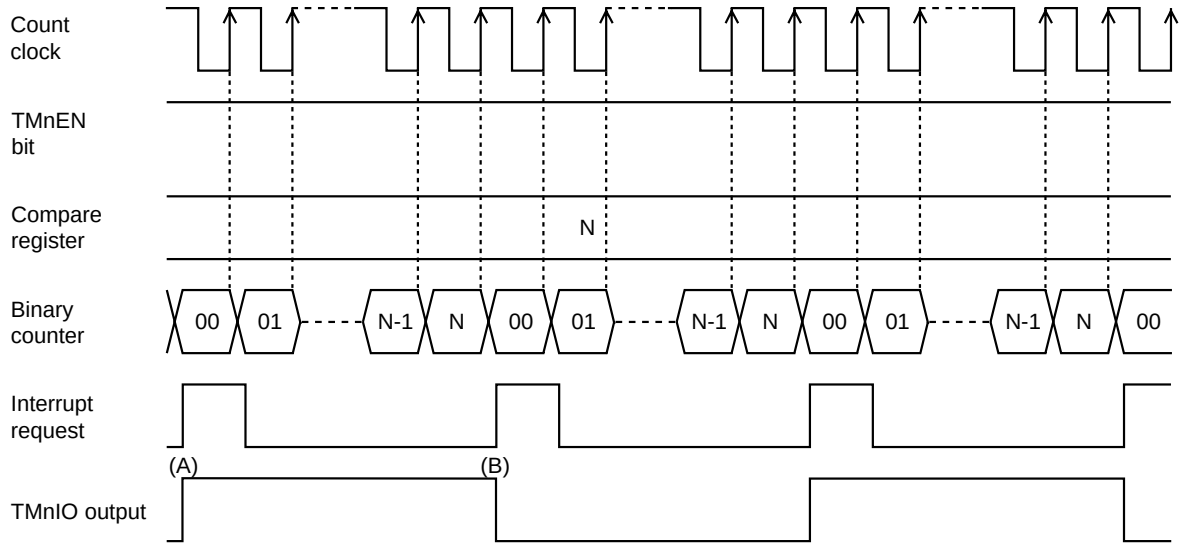


Figure:8.5.1 Count Timing of Timer Pulse Output

(A) The signal with twice the cycle which is set in TMnOC is output from TMnIO pin.

(B) When the value of TMnBC matches the setting value of TMnOC, TMnBC is cleared to "0x00"and TMnIO output (timer output) is inverted.

8.5.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Pulse Output Setup Example

Here is an example that a 50 kHz pulse is output from TM0IO pin of Timer 0. In order to output a 50 kHz pulse, select SYSCLK/2 for clock source, and set 1/2 cycle (100 kHz) in the Timer 0 compare register (at f_{sysclk} = 10 MHz).

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the timer output pin	TMIOEN0.TM0OEN = 1	Select the timer output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR5 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM0MD.TM0PWM = 0 TM0MD.TM0MOD = 0	Select the timer normal operation.
5		TM0MD.TM0CK1-0 = 01	Select the prescaler as the clock source.
6	Set the prescaler	CK0MD.TM0PSC1-0 = X0 CK0MD.TM0BAS = 1	Select SYSCLK/2.
7	Set the output cycle	TM0OC = 0x31	Set the timer output cycle. Setup value: 49 (0x31)
8	Enable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

If any data are written to TMnOC while TMnBC is stopped, the timer output turns to "Low".

8.6 8-bit PWM Output

8.6.1 Operation (Timer 0, Timer 2 and Timer 4)

■ 8-bit PWM Output Operation

Timer 0, Timer 2 and Timer 4 have PWM function. a PWM waveform with a given duty cycle is generated by setting TMnOC to "High" period of the PWM duty. And the period of the PWM is the time of the full count overflow of the 8-bit timer.

For PWM output pins, refer to Table:8.1.1.

■ Count Timing of PWM Output (at Normal)

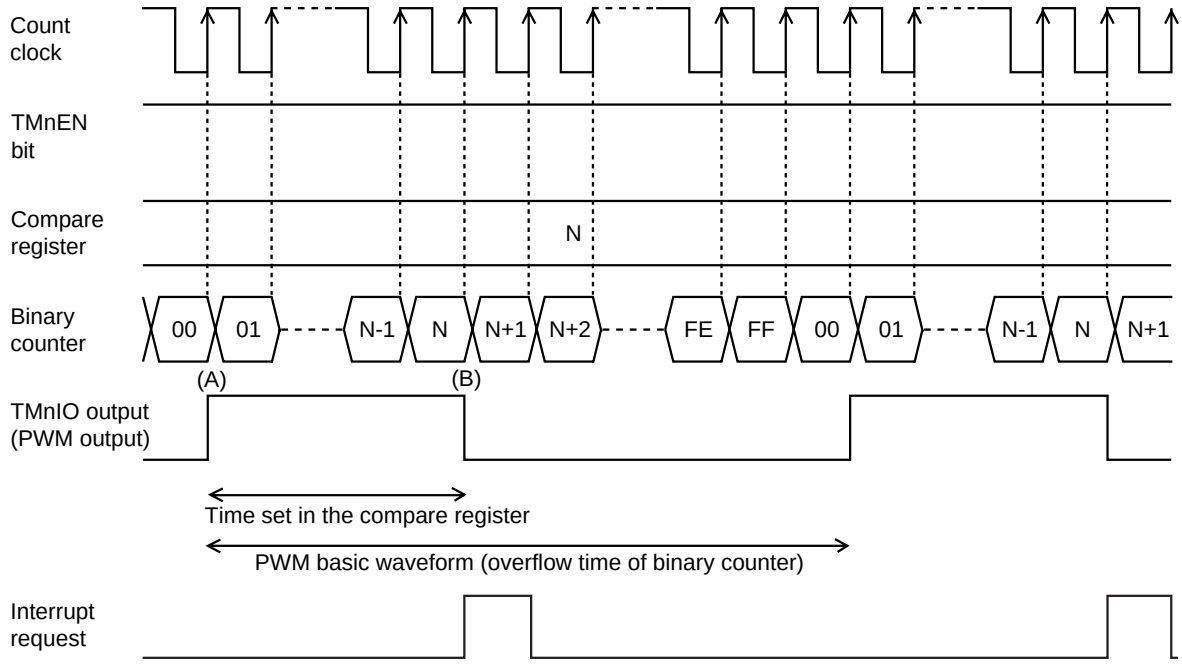


Figure:8.6.1 Count Timing of PWM Output (at Normal)

When TMnPOP bit is "0":

- (A) PWM output is "High" while TMnBC counts up from "0x01" to the setting value of TMnOC.
- (B) PWM output changes to "Low" when TMnBC matches the setting value of TMnOC, then TMnBC continues counting up until it overflows.

As for the initial setting, the PWM output is changed from "Low" to "High" when setting the TMnMD.TMnPWM (when TMnPOP bit = 0) to select the PWM operation.

■ Count Timing of PWM Output (when the compare register is "0x00")

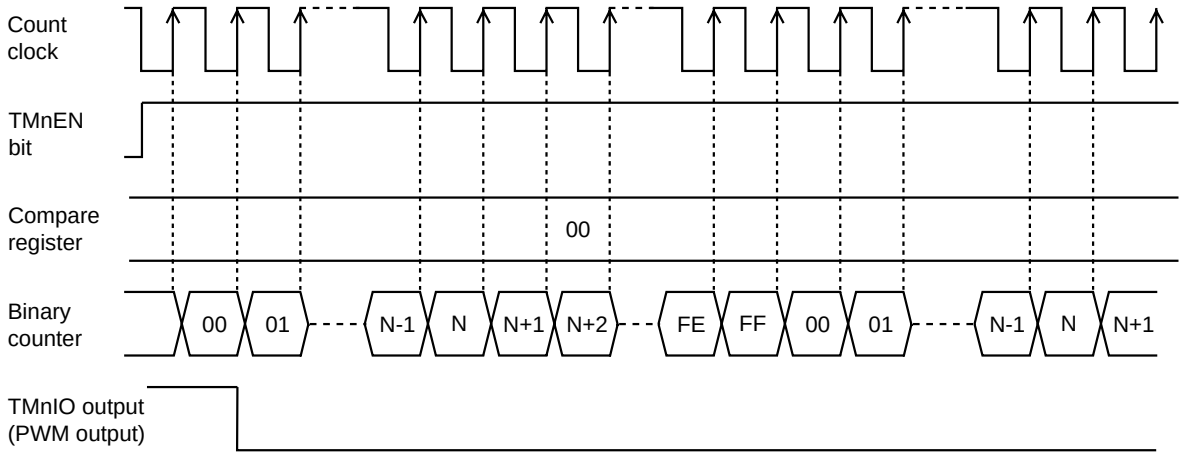


Figure:8.6.2 Count Timing of PWM Output (when the compare register is "0x00")

■ Count Timing of PWM Output (when the compare register is "0xFF")

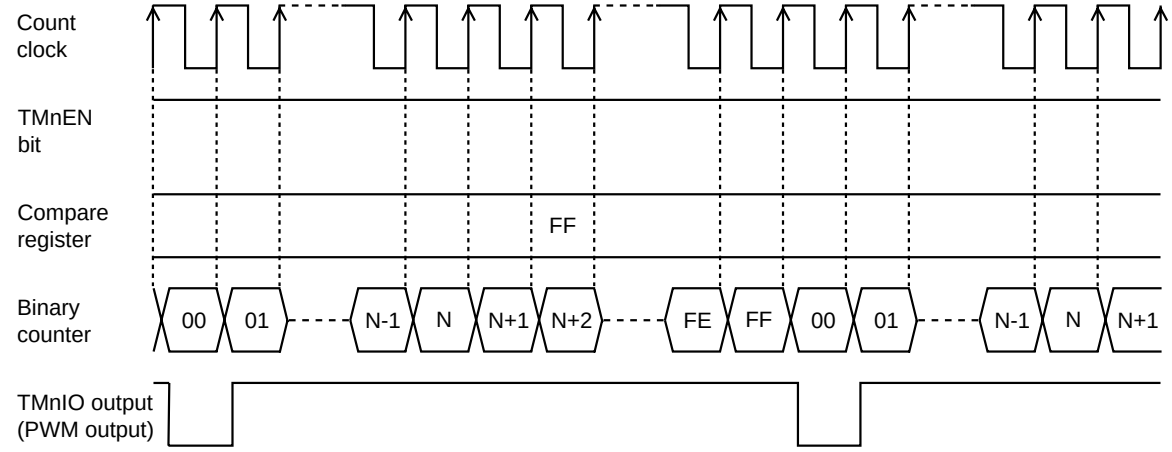


Figure:8.6.3 Count Timing of PWM Output (when the compare register is "0xFF")

When TMnMD.TMnEN is “0” (timer function is stopped), PWM output is “High”.

8.6.2 Setup Example

■ PWM Output Setup Example

The PWM output waveform with the 1/4 duty cycle and 19.53 kHz is output from TM0IO output pin of Timer 0. The oscillation of SYSCLK/2 is 5 MHz.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

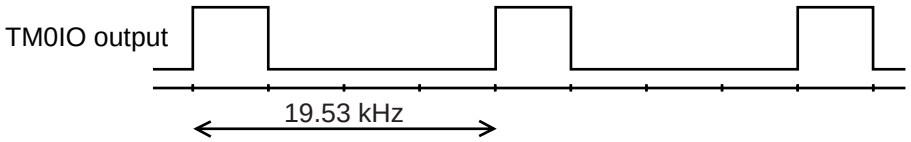


Figure:8.6.4 Output Waveform of TM0IO Output Pin

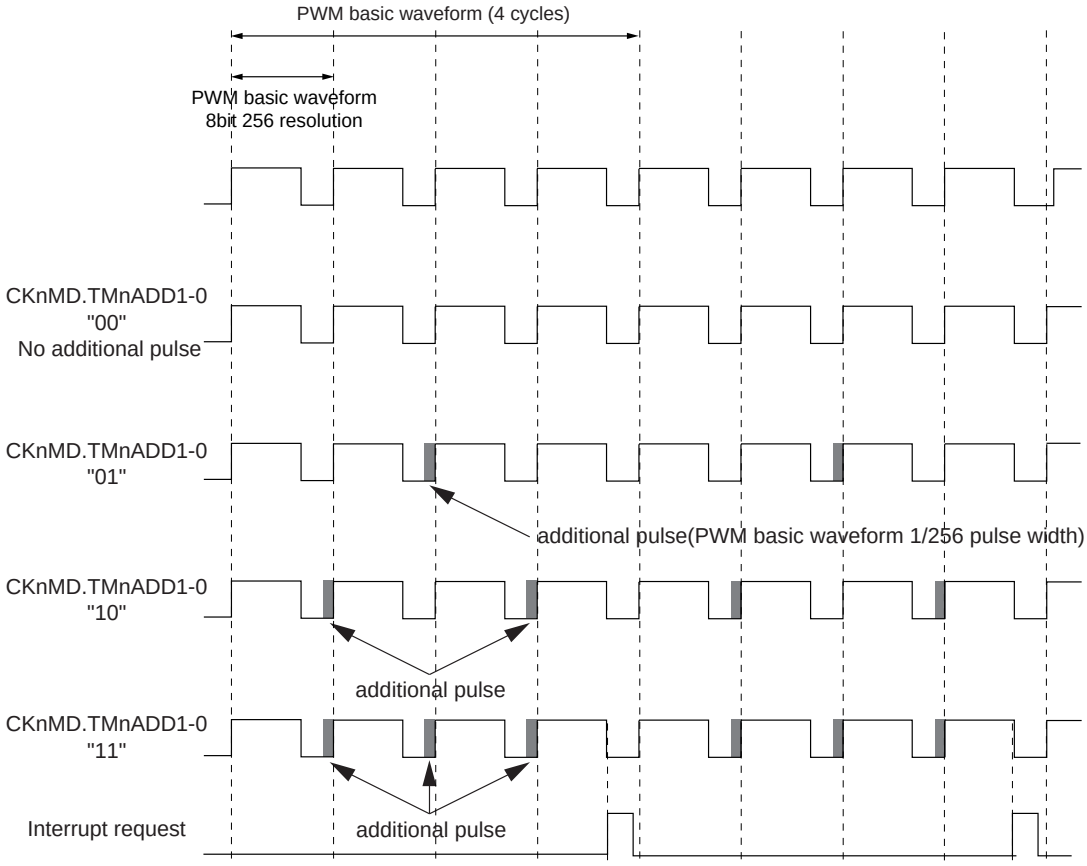
Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the timer output pin	TMIOEN0.TM0OEN = 1	Select the timer output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR5 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM0MD.TM0PWM = 1 TM0MD.TM0MOD = 0 TM0MD.TM0POP = 0	Select the PWM operation.
5		TM0MD.TM0CK1-0 = 01	Select the prescaler as the clock source.
6	Set the prescaler	CK0MD.TM0PSC1-0 = X0 CK0MD.TM0BAS = 1	Select SYSCLK/2.
7	Set the "High" period of PWM	TM0OC = 0x40	Set the "High" period of PWM output. Setup value: 256/4 = 64 (0x40)
8	Enable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

8.6.3 PWM Output With Additional Pulse (Timer 0, Timer 2, Timer 4)

■ PWM Output with Additional Pulse Method

In this method, a pulse, whose period equals to one count clock period, can be added on a PWM basic waveform. Up to 3 pulses can be added in 4 cycles of the basic PWM waveform.
Where to place, or not to place additional pulses during 4 cycles of the basic PWM waveform is controlled by setting CKnMD.TMnADD1-0.

Figure:8.6.5 shows the setting value of CKnMD.TMnADD1-0 and the location of additional pulses.



During 4 cycles of the PWM basic waveform, additional pulses (1/256 pulse width of PWM basic waveform) can be added in any of the cycles 0 to 3.

Figure:8.6.5 Count timing of PWM Output with Additional Pulses Method

An interrupt occurs at the 4th cycle of the PWM basic waveform.

8.7 Simple Pulse Width Measurement

8.7.1 Operation (Timer 0, Timer 2 and Timer 4)

■ Simple Pulse Width Measurement Operation by 8-bit Timer

The input signal from an external interrupt pin (for the simple pulse width measurement) is sampled at the count clock. The binary counter of the timer counts up while the sampled signal is "Low". It is available to measure the pulse width by reading the count value of the timer.

For pulse width measurement pins, refer to Table:8.1.1.

■ Count Timing of Simple Pulse Width Measurement

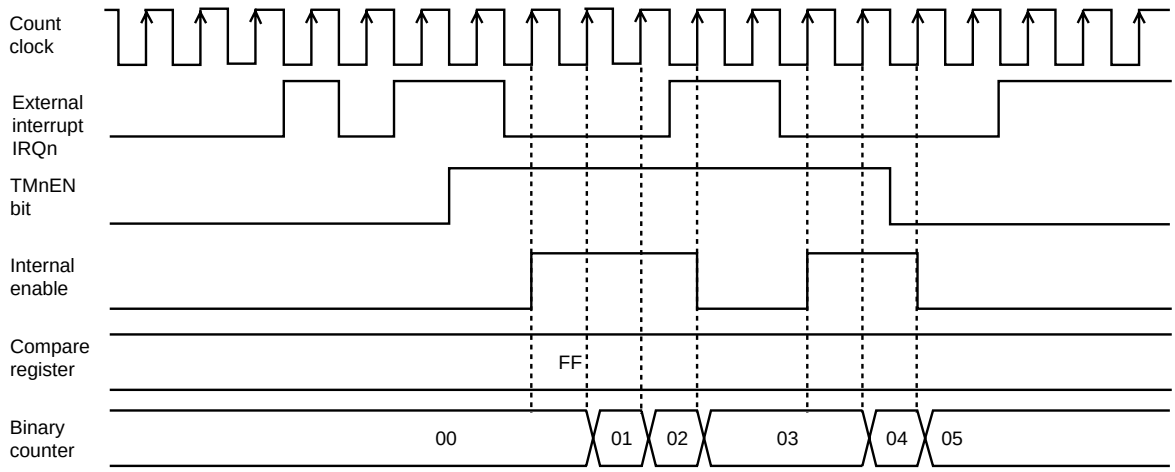


Figure:8.7.1 Count Timing of Simple Pulse Width Measurement

The internal enable signal is generated while the timer is in active by setting TMnMD.TMnEN to "1" and the signal sampled at the count clock is "Low". The signal is input from an external interrupt pin (for the simple pulse width measurement). While the internal enable signal is "High", the timer counts up.

8.7.2 Setup Example

■ Setup Example of Simple Pulse Width Measurement by 8-bit Timer

Here is an example that Timer 0 measures "Low" pulse width of the input signal of IRQ0.
SYSCLK/2 is selected as a clock source for Timer 0.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Set the timer mode register	TM0MD.TM0PWM = 0 TM0MD.TM0MOD = 1	Select the pulse width measurement function.
3		TM0MD.TM0CK1-0 = 01	Select the prescaler as the clock source.
4	Set the prescaler	CK0MD.TM0PSC1-0 = X0 CK0MD.TM0BAS = 1	Select SYSCLK/2.
5	Set the compare register	TM0OC = 0xFF	Set the value larger than that of the "Low" period of measured pulse width.
6	Set the interrupt level	TM0ICR.TM0LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
7	Set the interrupt valid edge	IRQ0ICR.REDG0 = 1	Set the external interrupt valid edge.
8	Enable the interrupt	TM0ICR.TM0IE = 1	Enable the external interrupt.
9	Enable the timer counter	TM0MD.TM0EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

The internal enable is set while the sampled signal at the count clock, which is External Interrupt 0 (IRQ0) input, is "Low" level.
TM0BC starts counting up from "0x00" after the internal enable is set. Timer 0 continues counting up while IRQ0 is "Low", and stops counting up when the sampled signal of IRQ0 becomes "High" level. At the same time, "Low" period of IRQ0 input can be detected by reading the value of TM0BC in the interrupt process.

8.8 8-bit Timer Cascade Connection

8.8.1 Operation

16-bit timers in cascade connection are the combination of the following 8-bit timers.

Timer 0 connected with Timer 1, Timer 2 connected with Timer3 , or Timer 4 connected with Timer 5 operates as a 16-bit timer in cascade connection.

- Timer 0 connected with Timer 1
- Timer 2 connected with Timer 3
- Timer 4 connected with Timer 5

In cascade connection, the timer corresponding to lower 8 bits of the 16-bit counter is grouped into "Type Timer 0" and the timer of upper 8 bits is grouped into "Type Timer 1".
Timer 0, Timer 2, and Timer 4 are Type Timer 0. Timer 1, Timer 3, and Timer 5 are Type Timer 1.

■ Operation of 16-bit Timer Cascade Connection (Timer 0 connected with Timer 1, Timer 2 connected connected with Timer 3, Timer 4 connected with Timer 5)

The timer functions in 16-bit cascade connection are listed in Table:8.8.1.

Table:8.8.1 Timer Functions in 16-bit Cascade Connection

	Timer 0 to Timer 1	Timer 2 to Timer 3	Timer 4 to Timer 5
Interrupt source	TM1IRQ	TM3IRQ	PERI0IRQ0
Event count	TM0IOA(P05) TM0IOB(P03)	TM2IOA(P05) TM2IOB(P02)	TM4IOA(P34) TM4IOB(P01)
Timer output	TM1IOA(P55) TM1IOB(P20)	TM3IOA(P56) TM3IOB(P72)	TM5IOA(P21) TM5IOB(P73)
PWM output	-	-	-
Pulse width measurement	External interrupt 0 (IRQ0A/P10) (IRQ0B/P60)	External interrupt 2 (IRQ2A/P80) (IRQ2B/P62)	External interrupt 4 (IRQ4A/P14) (IRQ4B/P72) (IRQ4C/P12)
Clock source	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/32 HCLK/64 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SCLK TM0IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/32 HCLK/64 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SCLK TM2IO input	HCLK HCLK/4 HCLK/16 HCLK/32 HCLK/64 SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SCLK TM4IO input
HCLK: Machine clock (for High speed oscillation) SCLK: Machine clock (for Low speed oscillation) SYSCLK: System clock [4.1 Clock Control]			

The binary counters and the compare registers corresponding to two timers in cascade connection operate as a 16-bit register, respectively. When activating the timer, set the TMnMD.TMnEN for lower 8-bit timer to "1".

A waveform of the timer pulse and an interrupt request is output from the upper 8-bit timer.
Select the clock source with the register for the lower 8-bit timer.

Other settings and the timing to count are the same as a single 8-bit timer operation.

When using Timer 0 connected with Timer 1 in cascade, a timer pulse and an interrupt request are output from Timer 1. "Low" fixed data are output from Timer 0 as the timer pulse. Timer 0 interrupt should be disabled though any interrupt request of Timer 0 is not generated.

When using Timer 2 connected with Timer 3 in cascade, a timer pulse and an interrupt request are output from Timer 3. "Low" fixed data are output from Timer 2 as the timer pulse. Timer 2 interrupt should be disabled though any interrupt request of Timer 2 is not generated.

When using Timer 4 connected with Timer 5 in cascade, a timer pulse and an interrupt request are output from Timer 5. "Low" fixed data are output from Timer 4 as the timer pulse. Timer 4 interrupt should be disabled though any interrupt request of Timer 4 is not generated.

At 16-bit cascade connection, when rewriting the compare register to clear the binary counter, set the TMnMD.TMnEN for lower 8-bit timer to "0" to stop counting. Then rewrite the compare registers.

Use a 16-bit access instruction to set (TM1OC to TM0OC) register, (TM2OC to TM3OC) register and (TM5OC to TM4OC) register.

During cascade connection, PWM output function cannot be used. When cascade connection, always set the TMnMD.TMnPWM to "0".

When cascade connection, read the value of TMnBC with the 16-bit access instruction, MOVW.

8.8.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup Example of 16-bit Cascade Connection

Here is an example of the timer function that the 16-bit timer, Timer 0 connected with Timer 1 in cascade connection, generates a periodic interrupt.
An interrupt occurs every 2500 cycles (1 ms) by selecting SYSCLK/2 (at f_{SYSCLK} = 5 MHz) as a clock source.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter (Upper 8 bits timer) (Lower 8 bits timer)	TM0MD.TM0EN = 0 TM1MD.TM1EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Disable the interrupt (Upper 8 bits timer) (Lower 8 bits timer)	TM0ICR.TM0IE = 0 TM1ICR.TM1IE = 0	Disable the timer interrupt.
2	Set the timer mode register (Lower 8 bits timer)	TM0MD.TM0PWM = 0 TM0MD.TM0MOD = 0	Select the timer normal operation.
3	Set the cascade connection	TM1MD.TM1CAS = 1	Select the cascade connection.
3	Set the clock source (Lower 8 bits timer)	TM0MD.TM0CK1-0 = 01	Select the prescaler as the clock source.
4	Set the prescaler (Lower 8 bits timer)	CK0MD.TM0PSC1-0 = X0 CK0MD.TM0BAS = 1	Select SYSCLK/2.
6	Set the interrupt cycle	TM0OC = 0xC3 TM1OC = 0x09	Set the interrupt generation cycle. Setup value: 2500 -1 (0x09C3)
6	Set the interrupt level (Upper 8 bits timer)	TM1ICR.TM1LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
8	Enable the interrupt (Upper 8 bits timer)	TM1ICR.TM1IE = 1	
9	Enable the timer counter (Lower 8 bits timer)	TM0MD.TM0EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

Chapter 9 16-bit Timer

9

9.1 Overview

Table:9.1.1 shows the functions of 16-bit Timer.

Table:9.1.1 16-bit Timer Functions

	Timer 7 (TM7)	Timer 8 (TM8)	Timer 9 (TM9)
Interrupt source	TM7IRQ TM7OC2IRQ	TM8IRQ TM8OC2IRQ	TM9IRQ TM9OC2IRQ
Timer operation	√	√	√
Event count	TM7IOA (P04) TM7IOB (P34) TM7IOC (P03)	TM8IOA (P57) TM8IOB (P06) TM8IOC (P02)	TM9IOA (P07) TM9IOB (P20) TM9IOC (P00)
Timer pulse output			
Standard PWM output (with variable duty)			
High-precision PWM output (with variable duty/cycle)			
Standard IGBT output (with variable duty)	TM7IOA (P04) TM7IOB (P34) TM7IOC (P03) TM8IOA (P57) TM8IOB (P06) TM8IOC (P02)	-	-
High-precision IGBT output (with variable duty/cycle)		-	-
Capture function	√	√	√
Clock source	HCLK HCLK/2 HCLK/4 HCLK/16 SYSCLK SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SYSCLK/16 TM7IO input TM7IO input/2 TM7IO input/4 TM7IO input/16 SCLK SCLK/2 SCLK/4 SCLK/16	HCLK HCLK/2 HCLK/4 HCLK/16 SYSCLK SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SYSCLK/16 TM8IO input TM8IO input/2 TM8IO input/4 TM8IO input/16 SCLK SCLK/2 SCLK/4 SCLK/16	HCLK HCLK/2 HCLK/4 HCLK/16 SYSCLK SYSCLK/2 SYSCLK/4 SYSCLK/16 TM9IO input TM9IO input/2 TM9IO input/4 TM9IO input/16 SCLK SCLK/2 SCLK/4 SCLK/16

I/O pins used for each 16-bit Timer has three pin groups, Group-A, Group-B and Group-C. (ex. Timer 7 (TM7) has TM7IOA, TM7IOB and TM7IOC.)
In this chapter, the suffix of "A", "B" and "C" is omitted to describe functions of 16-bit Timer.

■ 16-bit Timer n Block Diagram (n = 7, 8 and 9)

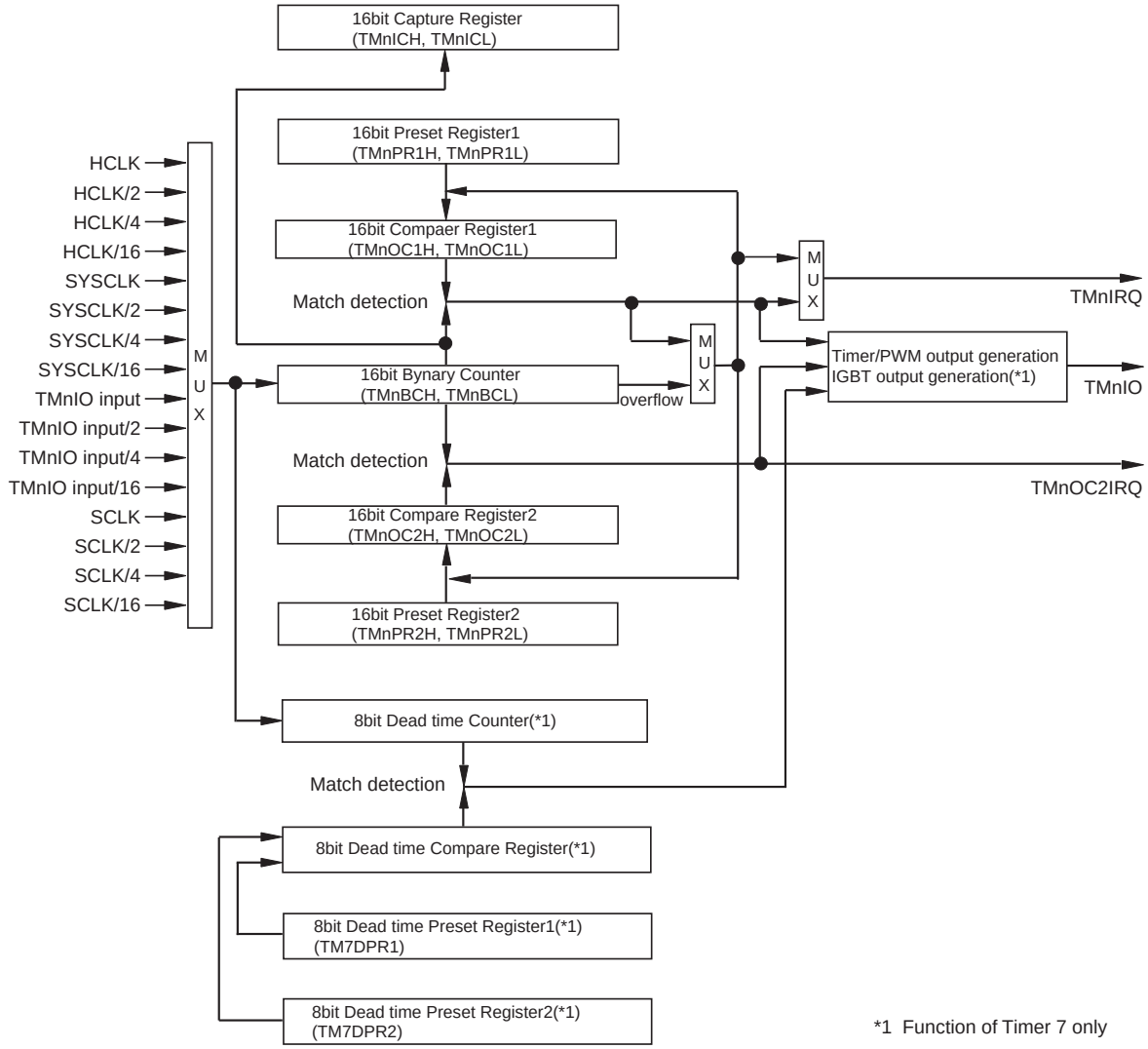


Figure:9.1.1 16-bit Timer n Block Diagram (n = 7, 8 and 9)

9.2 16-bit Timer Control Registers

Table:9.2.1 shows the registers that control 16-bit timer.

Table:9.2.1 16-bit Timer Control Registers

	Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
Timer 7	TM7BCL	0x03FA0	R	Timer 7 binary counter (lower 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM7BCH	0x03FA1	R	Timer 7 binary counter (upper 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM7OC1L	0x03FA2	R	Timer 7 compare register 1 (lower 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM7OC1H	0x03FA3	R	Timer 7 compare register 1 (upper 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM7PR1L	0x03FA4	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 1 (lower 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM7PR1H	0x03FA5	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 1 (upper 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM7ICL	0x03FA6	R	Timer 7 input capture register (lower 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM7ICH	0x03FA7	R	Timer 7 input capture register (upper 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM7MD1	0x03FA8	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 1	IX-10
	TM7MD2	0x03FA9	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 2	IX-11
	TM7OC2L	0x03FAA	R	Timer 7 compare register 2 (lower 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM7OC2H	0x03FAB	R	Timer 7 compare register 2 (upper 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM7PR2L	0x03FAC	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 2 (lower 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM7PR2H	0x03FAD	R/W	Timer 7 preset register 2 (upper 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM7DPR1	0x03FAE	R/W	Timer 7 dead time preset register 1	IX-9
	TM7DPR2	0x03FAF	R/W	Timer 7 dead time preset register 2	IX-9
	TM7MD3	0x03FBE	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 3	IX-12
	TM7MD4	0x03F9E	R/W	Timer 7 mode register 4	IX-13
	TM7ICR	0x03FEF	R/W	Timer 7 interrupt control register	III-29
	TM7OC2ICR	0x03FF0	R/W	Timer 7 compare register 2 match interrupt control register	III-29
Timer 8	TM8BCL	0x03FB0	R	Timer 8 binary counter (lower 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM8BCH	0x03FB1	R	Timer 8 binary counter (upper 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM8OC1L	0x03FB2	R	Timer 8 Compare register 1 (lower 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM8OC1H	0x03FB3	R	Timer 8 Compare register 1 (upper 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM8PR1L	0x03FB4	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 1 (lower 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM8PR1H	0x03FB5	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 1 (upper 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM8ICL	0x03FB6	R	Timer 8 input capture register (lower 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM8ICH	0x03FB7	R	Timer 8 input capture register (upper 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM8MD1	0x03FB8	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 1	IX-14
	TM8MD2	0x03FB9	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 2	IX-15
	TM8OC2L	0x03FBA	R	Timer 8 compare register 2 (lower 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM8OC2H	0x03FBB	R	Timer 8 compare register 2 (upper 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM8PR2L	0x03FBC	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 2 (lower 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM8PR2H	0x03FBD	R/W	Timer 8 preset register 2 (upper 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM8MD3	0x03FBF	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 3	IX-16
	TM8MD4	0x03F9F	R/W	Timer 8 mode register 4	IX-17
	TM8ICR	0x03FF1	R/W	Timer 8 interrupt control register	III-29
	TM8OC2ICR	0x03FF2	R/W	Timer 8 compare register 2 match interrupt control register	III-29

	Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
Timer 9	TM9BCL	0x03FC0	R	Timer 9 binary counter (lower 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM9BCH	0x03FC1	R	Timer 9 binary counter (upper 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM9OC1L	0x03FC2	R	Timer 9 compare register 1 (lower 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM9OC1H	0x03FC3	R	Timer 9 compare register 1 (upper 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM9PR1L	0x03FC4	R/W	Timer 9 preset register 1 (lower 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM9PR1H	0x03FC5	R/W	Timer 9 preset register 1 (upper 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM9ICL	0x03FC6	R	Timer 9 input capture register (lower 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM9ICH	0x03FC7	R	Timer 9 input capture register (upper 8 bits)	IX-8
	TM9MD1	0x03FC8	R/W	Timer 9 mode register 1	IX-18
	TM9MD2	0x03FC9	R/W	Timer 9 mode register 2	IX-19
	TM9OC2L	0x03FCA	R	Timer 9 compare register 2 (lower 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM9OC2H	0x03FCB	R	Timer 9 compare register 2 (upper 8 bits)	IX-6
	TM9PR2L	0x03FCC	R/W	Timer 9 preset register 2 (lower 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM9PR2H	0x03FCD	R/W	Timer 9 preset register 2 (upper 8 bits)	IX-7
	TM9MD3	0x03FCE	R/W	Timer 9 mode register 3	IX-20
	TM9ICR	0x03FF3	R/W	Timer 9 interrupt control register	III-29
	TM9OC2ICR	0x03FF4	R/W	Timer 9 compare register 2 match interrupt control register	III-29

9.2.1 Programmable Timer Registers

Programmable timer registers must be accessed with 16-bit access instruction.

Compare registers are 16-bit registers for storing the values compared with binary counters. These registers are loaded with the comparing data stored in preset registers in advance.

- Timer n Compare Register 1 (Lower 8 bits)
  (TM7OC1L: 0x03FA2, TM8OC1L: 0x03FB2, TM9OC1L: 0x03FC2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnOC1L7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

- Timer n Compare Register 1 (Upper 8 bits)
  (TM7OC1H: 0x03FA3, TM8OC1H: 0x03FB3, TM9OC1H: 0x03FC3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnOC1H7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

- Timer n Compare Register 2 (Lower 8 bits)
  (TM7OC2L: 0x03FAA, TM8OC2L: 0x03FBA, TM9OC2L: 0x03FCA)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnOC2L7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

- Timer n Compare Register 2 (Upper 8 bits)
  (TM7OC2H: 0x03FAB, TM8OC2H: 0x03FBB, TM9OC2H: 0x03FCB)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnOC2H7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Preset registers are buffer registers for compare registers.
When writing data to the preset register while the counting is stopped, the same data is loaded to the compare register. When writing data to the preset register while counting, the data of preset register is loaded to the compare register at the timing when the binary counter is cleared.

- Timer n Preset Register 1 (Lower 8 bits)
  (TM7PR1L: 0x03FA4, TM8PR1L: 0x03FB4, TM9PR1L: 0x03FC4)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnPR1L7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

- Timer n Preset Register 1 (Upper 8 bits)
  (TM7PR1H: 0x03FA5, TM8PR1H: 0x03FB5, TM9PR1H: 0x03FC5)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnPR1H7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

- Timer n Preset Register 2 (Lower 8 bits)
  (TM7PR2L: 0x03FAC, TM8PR2L: 0x03FBC, TM9PR2L: 0x03FCC)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnPR2L7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

- Timer n Preset Register 2 (Upper 8 bits)
  (TM7PR2H: 0x03FAD, TM8PR2H: 0x03FBD, TM9PR2H: 0x03FCD)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnPR2H7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Timer 7 preset register 1 and 2 must not be changed during IGBT operation.

Binary counters are 16-bit up counters. If data is written to the preset register 1 (TMnPR1L to TMnPR1H) while the counting is stopped, the binary counter is cleared to "0x0000".
For Timer 7, the binary counters are cleared to "0x0000" while IGBT operation is disabled at IGBT setting. The binary counters for Timer 7 and 8 can be cleared to "0x0000" at a capture operation while counting by setting the register.

- Timer n Binary Counter (Lower 8 bits)
  (TM7BCL: 0x03FA0, TM8BCL: 0x03FB0, TM9BCL: 0x03FC0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnBCL7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

- Timer n Binary Counter (Upper 8 bits)
  (TM7BCH: 0x03FA1, TM8BCH: 0x03FB1, TM9BCH: 0x03FC1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnBCH7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Input capture registers are registers that hold the value loaded from the binary counters at a capture trigger.

- Timer n Input Capture Register (Lower 8 bits)
  (TM7ICL: 0x03FA6, TM8ICL: 0x03FB6, TM9ICL: 0x03FC6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnICL7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

- Timer n Input Capture Register (Upper 8 bits)
  (TM7ICH: 0x03FA7, TM8ICH: 0x03FB7, TM9ICH: 0x03FC7)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TMnICH7-0							
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Timer 7 dead time preset register 1 and 2 are buffer registers of dead time compare registers.

- Timer 7 Dead Time Preset Register 1 (TM7DPR1: 0x03FAE)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM7DPR17	TM7DPR16	TM7DPR15	TM7DPR14	TM7DPR13	TM7DPR12	TM7DPR11	TM7DPR10
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

- Timer 7 Dead Time Preset Register 2 (TM7DPR2: 0x03FAF)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM7DPR27	TM7DPR26	TM7DPR25	TM7DPR24	TM7DPR23	TM7DPR22	TM7DPR21	TM7DPR20
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Timer 7 preset register 1 and 2 must not be changed during IGBT operating.

9.2.2 Timer Mode Registers

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 1 (TM7MD1: 0x03FA8)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	T7ICEDG1	TM7CL	TM7EN	TM7PS1-0		TM7CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	T7ICEDG1	Select capture trigger edge 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge
5	TM7CL	Timer output enable 0: Enabled 1: Disabled (reset)
4	TM7EN	Control timer count 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-2	TM7PS1-0	Select count clock 00: 1/1 clock 01: 1/2 clock 10: 1/4 clock 11: 1/16 clock
1-0	TM7CK1-0	Select clock source 00: HCLK 01: SYSCLK 10: TM7IO input 11: SCLK

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 2 (TM7MD2: 0x03FA9)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	T7ICEDG0	T7PWMSL	TM7BCR	TM7PWM	TM7IRS1	T7ICEN	T7ICT1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	T7ICEDG0	Select capture trigger edge 0: Both edges 1: Specified edge
6	T7PWMSL	Select PWM mode 0: Set duty through TM7OC1 1: Set duty through TM7OC2
5	TM7BCR	Select timer clear source 0: Overflow by full count 1: Match between TM7BC and TM7OC1
4	TM7PWM	Select timer output waveform 0: Timer output 1: PWM output
3	TM7IRS1	Select timer interrupt source 0: Counter clear 1: Match of TM7BC and TM7OC1
2	T7ICEN	Input capture operation enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
1-0	T7ICT1-0	Select capture trigger 00: External Interrupt 0 input signal 01: External Interrupt 1 input signal 10: External Interrupt 2 input signal 11: Timer Interrupt

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 3 (TM7MD3: 0x03FBE)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM7CK SMP	-	TM7CK EDG	T7IGBTTR	T7IGBTDT	T7IGBTEN	T7IGBT1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TM7CKSMP	Select sampling clock for capture 0: Count clock 1: SYSCLK
6	-	Always read as 0.
5	TM7CKEDG	Select count edge of TM7IO 0: Falling edge 1: Both edges
4	T7IGBTTR	Select trigger level 0: High 1: Low
3	T7IGBTDT	Input timing of IGBT dead time 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge
2	T7IGBTEN	IGBT enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
1-0	T7IGBT1-0	Select IGBT/Timer activation source 00: Timer 7 count operation 01: External Interrupt 0 input signal 10: External Interrupt 1 input signal 11: External Interrupt 2 input signal

When IGBT output operation is not used, set the following.
TM7MD3.T7IGBTEN = 0
TM7MD3.T7IGBT1-0 = 00

WHen the capture function is not used, set the TM7MD3.TM7CKSMP to "0".

■ Timer 7 Mode Register 4 (TM7MD4: 0x03F9E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	T7ONE SHOT	T7NODED	-	T7ICT2	T7CAP CLR
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as 0.
4	T7ONESHOT	Select pulse 0: Continuous pulse 1: One-shot pulse
3	T7NODED	Set dead time 0: Yes 1: No
2	-	Always read as 0.
1	T7ICT2	Select capture trigger 0: Timer 0 interrupt 1: Timer 1 interrupt
0	T7CAPCLR	Binary counter clear enable at capture 0: Disabled (not cleared) 1: Enabled (cleared)

The TM7MD4.T7CAPCLR is valid when the timer is in active. Note that the binary counter is not cleared when capturing data while the timer is stopped.

Set the Timer 7 mode registers while the TM7MD1.TM7EN is "0". And the TM7MD1.TM7EN must not be changed at the same time as the other bit.

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 1 (TM8MD1: 0x03FB8)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	T8ICEDG1	TM8CL	TM8EN	TM8PS1-0		TM8CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	T8ICEDG1	Select capture trigger edge 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge
5	TM8CL	Timer output enable 0: Enabled 1: Disabled (reset)
4	TM8EN	Control timer count 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-2	TM8PS1-0	Select count clock 00: 1/1 clock 01: 1/2 clock 10: 1/4 clock 11: 1/16 clock
1-0	TM8CK1-0	Select clock source 00: HCLK 01: SYSCLK 10: TM8IO input 11: SCLK

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 2 (TM8MD2: 0x03FB9)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	T8ICEDG0	T8PWMSL	TM8BCR	TM8PWM	TM8IRS1	T8ICEN	T8ICT1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	T8ICEDG0	Select capture trigger edge 0: Both edges 1: Specified edge
6	T8PWMSL	Select PWM mode 0: Set duty through TM8OC1 1: Set duty through TM8OC2
5	TM8BCR	Select timer clear source 0: Overflow by full count 1: Match between TM8BC and TM8OC1
4	TM8PWM	Select timer output waveform 0: Timer output 1: PWM output
3	TM8IRS1	Select timer interrupt source 0: Counter clear 1: Match between TM8BC and TM8OC1
2	T8ICEN	Input capture operation enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
1-0	T8ICT1-0	Select capture trigger 00: External Interrupt 0 input signal 01: External Interrupt 1 input signal 10: External Interrupt 2 input signal 11: Timer Interrupt

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 3 (TM8MD3: 0x03FBF)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM8CK SMP	-	-	TM8CK EDG	TM8SEL	TM8PWMF	TM8PWMO	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TM8CKSMP	Select sampling clock for capture 0: Count clock 1: SYSCLK
6-5	-	Always read as 0.
4	TM8CKEDG	Select count edge of TM8IO 0: Falling edge 1: Both edges
3	TM8SEL	Select output 0: Timer 8 output 1: IGBT output
2	TM8PWMF	Control PWM output while Timer 8 is stopped 0: Low 1: High
1	TM8PWMO	Select polarity of Timer 8 PWM output 0: Normal 1: Inverted
0	-	Always read as 0.

When capture function is not used, set the TM8MD3.TM8CKSMP to "0".

■ Timer 8 Mode Register 4 (TM8MD4: 0x03F9F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	T8ICT2	T8CAPCLR
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-2	-	Always read as 0.
1	T8ICT2	Select capture trigger 0: Timer 0 interrupt 1: Timer 1 interrupt
0	T8CAPCLR	Binary counter clear enable at capture 0: Disabled (not cleared) 1: Enabled (cleared)

The TM8MD4.T8CAPCLR is valid when the timer is in active. Note that the binary counter is not cleared when capturing data while the timer is stopped.

Set the Timer 8 mode registers while the TM8MD1.TM8EN is "0". And the TM8MD1.TM8EN must not be changed at the same time as the other bit.

■ Timer 9 Mode Register 1 (TM9MD1: 0x03FC8)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	T9ICEDG1	TM9CL	TM9EN	TM9PS1-0		TM9CK1-0	
At reset	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	T9ICEDG1	Select capture trigger edge 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge
5	TM9CL	Timer output enable 0: Enabled 1: Disabled (reset)
4	TM9EN	Control timer count 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-2	TM9PS1-0	Select count clock 00: 1/1 clock 01: 1/2 clock 10: 1/4 clock 11: 1/16 clock
1-0	TM9CK1-0	Select clock source 00: HCLK 01: SYSCLK 10: TM9IO input 11: SCLK

■ Timer 9 Mode Registers 2 (TM9MD2: 0x03FC9)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	T9ICEDG0	T9PWMSL	TM9BCR	TM9PWM	TM9IRS1	T9ICEN	T9ICT1-0	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	T9ICEDG0	Select capture trigger edge 0: Both edges 1: Specified edge
6	T9PWMSL	Select PWM mode 0: Set duty through TM9OC1 1: Set duty through TM9OC2
5	TM9BCR	Select timer clear source 0: Overflow by full count 1: Match between TM9BC and TM9OC1
4	TM9PWM	Select timer output waveform 0: Timer output 1: PWM output
3	TM9IRS1	Select timer interrupt source 0: Counter clear 1: Match of TM9BC and TM9OC1
2	T9ICEN	Input capture operation enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
1-0	T9ICT1-0	Select capture trigger 00: External Interrupt 0 input signal 01: External Interrupt 1 input signal 10: External Interrupt 2 input signal 11: External Interrupt 3 input signal

■ Timer 9 Mode Register 3 (TM9MD3: 0x03FCE)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM9CKSMP	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TM9CKSMP	Select sampling clock for capture 0: Count clock 1: SYSCLK
6-0	-	Always read as 0.

When capture function is not used, set the TM9MD3.TM9CKSMP to "0".

Set the Timer 9 mode registers while the TM9MD1.TM9EN is "0". And the TM9MD1.TM9EN must not be changed at the same time as the other bit.

9.3 16-bit Timer

9.3.1 Operation

■ 16-bit Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8 and Timer 9)

When the value of TMnBC matches the setting value of TMnOC1, an interrupt request (TMnIRQ) is generated at the next count clock. The source of TMnIRQ can be selected by TMnMD2.TMnIRS1. 16-bit timer can generate another independent interrupt request (TMnOC2IRQ) depending on the setting value of TMnOC2.

TMnMD2.TMnBCR can select the factor of which TMnBC is cleared to "0x0000".
TMnBC is cleared and restarts counting up again.

When TMnBC is cleared "0x0000", the value of timer n preset register is loaded to timer n compare register. The value of the compare register with double-buffer structure can be changed continuously without disturbing the cycle even during the timer operation.

When reading the value of TMnBC, use a 16-bit access instruction, MOVW or write data to TMnIC with a software function.
When using the MOVW instruction, indeterminate data during counting may be read. So, read the register value several times and confirm those data are identical.
When using the capture function, writing to TMnIC can capture the count value of TMnBC to the TMnIC to read the count value during counting precisely.
For more information, refer to [9.8.1 Operation].

If the count clock is changed during counting, the counter can't count up correctly.
Change the count clock after the timer operation is stopped.

Set Timer n mode register while the TMnMD1.TMnEN is set to "0" to stop counting.

To change CPU operation mode from NORMAL to SLOW when high-speed oscillation clock (HCLK) is selected as a clock source, stop the timer at first. After CPU operation mode has been changed, start the timer again. In SLOW/HALT1 mode, do not select high-speed oscillation clock (HCLK) for a clock source.

When writing data to the 16-bit preset register (TMnPR1 and TMnPR2), use a 16-bit instruction, MOVW.

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8 and Timer 9)

This is the basic operation for all functions of 16-bit timer.

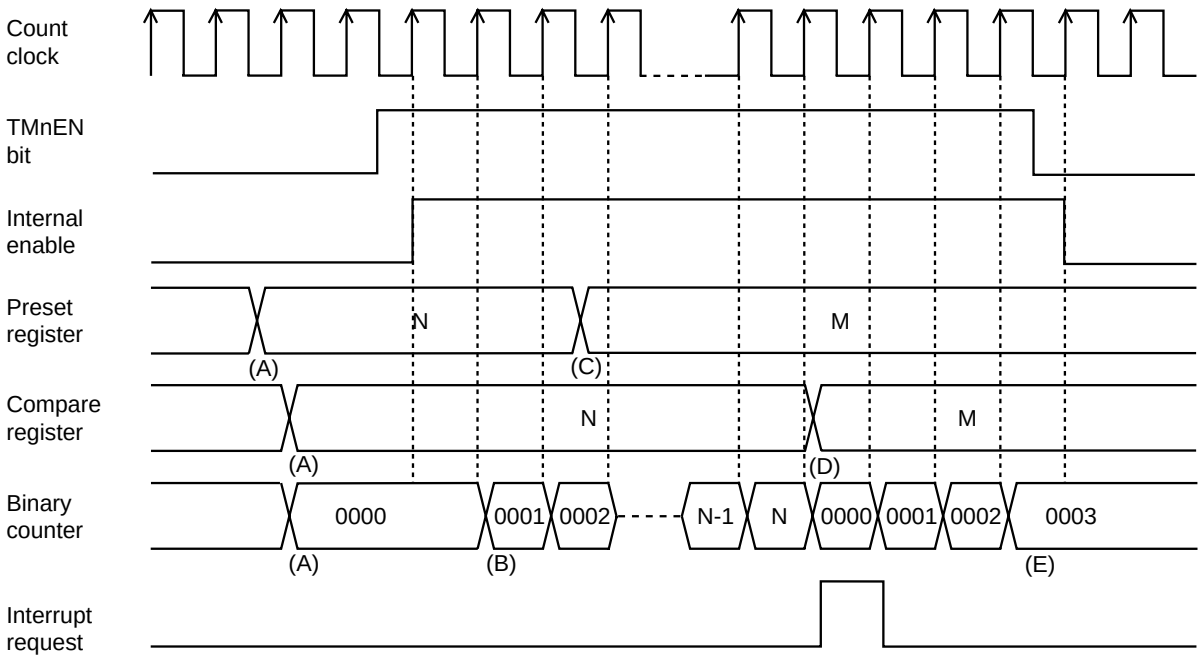


Figure:9.3.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 7, Timer 8 and Timer 9)

- (A) If data are written to the preset register while the count operation is disabled (the TMnEN bit is set to "0"), the same data are loaded to the compare register and the binary counter is cleared to "0x0000" at the next count clock.
- (B) When activating the counter by setting the TMnEN bit to "1", the internal enable is set at the next count clock. Then, the binary counter starts counting up from the next count clock where the internal enable has been set. The count operation is executed at the rising edge of the count clock.
- (C) Even if the preset register is rewritten while the count operation is enabled (the TMnEN bit is set to "1"), the binary counter is not changed.
- (D) When the value of binary counter matches the setting value of compare register 1, the setting value of the preset register is loaded to the compare register and an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock. And the binary counter is cleared to "0x0000" and restarts counting up
- (E) When the count operation is disabled (the TMnEN bit is set to "0"), the binary counter is stopped.

When the value of TMnBC matches the setting value of TMnOC, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock and the TMnBC is cleared. So set the TMnOC as follows:

Setting value of the compare register = (Counts till the interrupt request) -1

When TMnOC1 compare match is selected as a TMnBC clear source and TMnOC2IRQ is used, the setting value of TMnOC2 should be smaller than the one of TMnOC1.

If the timer interrupt request bit may have already been set before the timer starts, the timer interrupt request bit should be cleared.

When TMnBC is used as a free-counter that counts from "0x0000" to "0xFFFF", set TMnOC1 to "0xFFFF" or set the TMnMD2.TMnBCR to "0".

Do not change the TMnMD.TMnEN simultaneously with other bits to avoid any error in operation.

In 16-bit timer operation, the internal enable signal becomes ON status at the rising edge of the first count clock after the TMnMD1.TMnEN is set to "1". When it is assumed that the setting value of TMnOC1 is N, the first interrupt is generated at the rising edge of (N+2)th count clock. The following interrupts are generated at the rising edge of (N+1)th count clock.

Be sure to set a count clock of 16-bit timer while a timer interrupt is disabled.

9.3.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup Example

Here is an example that the periodic interrupt of Timer 7 is generated every 1000 cycles (250 μs) with selecting HCLK/2 (at f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz) as a clock source. The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Disable the interrupt	TM7ICR.TM7IE = 0	Disable the timer interrupt.
3	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source.
4		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 01	Select the clock source.
5	Set the interrupt cycle	TM7PR1 = 0x03E7	Set the cycle of timer interrupt. Setup value: 1000 - 1 = 999 (0x03E7)
6	Set the interrupt level	TM7ICR.TM7LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
7	Enable the interrupt	TM7ICR.TM7IE = 1	
8	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

9.4 16-bit Event Count

9.4.1 Operation

For event count operation, TMnIO input can be used as a count clock source and divided by 1 (not divided), 2, 4 or 16.
The event count input pin is shown in Table:9.1.1.

■ Count Timing of TMnIO Input

The binary counter counts up at the falling edge of TMnIO input signal that is divided or not.

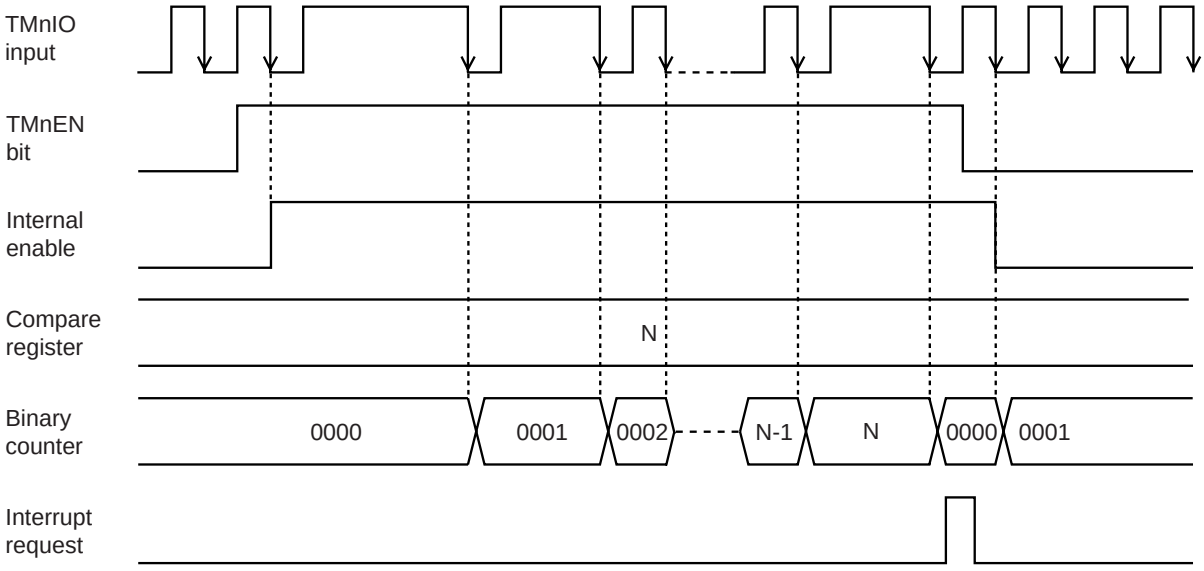


Figure:9.4.1 Count Timing TMnIO Input

When reading the value of TMnBC, use a 16-bit instruction, MOVW or write data to TMnIC with a software function.
When using the MOVW instruction, indeterminate data during counting may be read. So, read the register value several times and confirm those data are identical.
When using the capture function, Writing to TMnIC can capture the count value of TMnBC to TMnIC to read the count value during counting precisely.
For more information, refer to [9.8.1 Operation].

When using TMnIO input, be sure to set each mode register and preset register after selecting SYSCLK as a count clock source. Then, select TMnIO input to start a timer. As for the 16-bit timer, only when using TMnIO input, it is possible to return from STOP/HALT2/HALT3 mode.

When using the event input (TMnIO input), clear TMnBC before starting the timer operation.

In the event count, the internal enable signal becomes ON status at the falling edge of the first count clock after the TMnMD1.TMnEN is set to "1". When it is assumed that the setting value of compare register is N, the first interrupt is generated at the falling edge of (N+2)th count clock. The following interrupts are generated at the falling edge of (N+1)th count clock.

■ Count Timing of TMnIO Input (at Both Edges Selected) (Timer 7 and Timer 8)

The binary counter counts up at the falling and rising edges of TMnIO input signal that is divided or not.

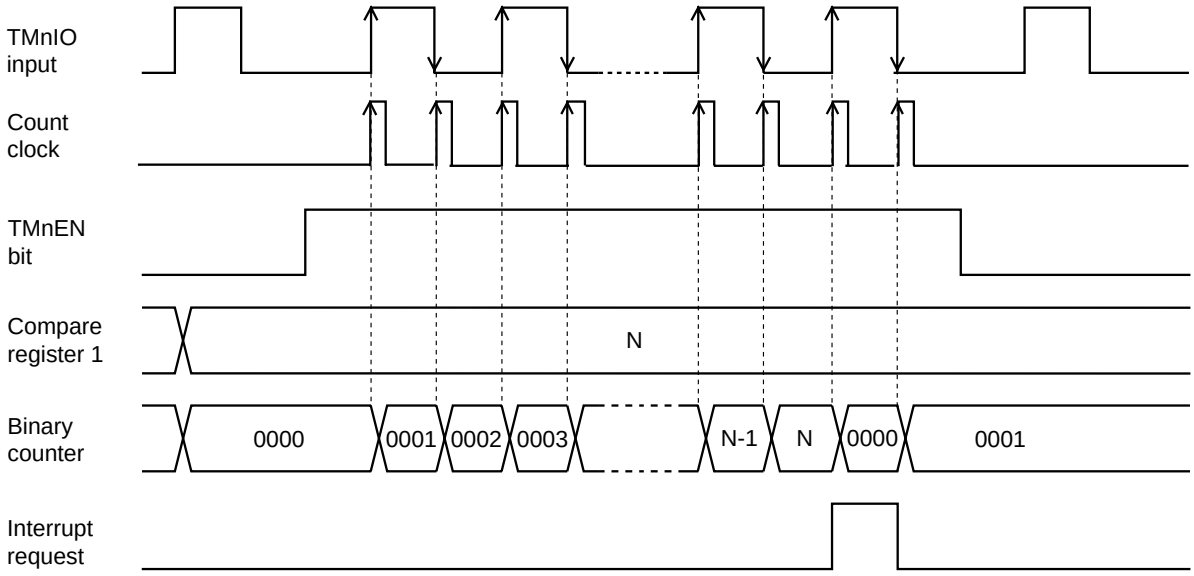


Figure:9.4.2 Count Timing of TMnIO Input (at Both Edges Selected) (Timer 7 and Timer 8)

When selecting the both edge count, the count is executed only at the normal operation mode (with high-speed oscillation). Also, when setting the TMnMD3.TMnCKSMP to 1 to select the system clock (SYSCLK), the count is not executed correctly.
Input signal from TMnIO should be set to the cycle more than twice the HCLK. When the other signal with the shorter cycle is input, the count may not be executed correctly.

9.4.2 Setup Example

■ Event Count Setup Example

Here is an example that, using timer 7, detecting the falling edge of the TM7IOA input 5 times generates the first interrupt only, and subsequent interrupts are generated every 4 detections.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Disable the interrupt	TM7ICR.TM7IE = 0	Disable the timer interrupt.
3	Select the event input	TMIOSEL1.TM7IOSEL1-0 = 00	Select the event clock input pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
4		P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 0	
5	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 01 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select SYSCLK as the clock source.
6	Set the interrupt cycle	TM7PR1 = 0x0003	Set the interrupt generation cycle.
7	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source.
8		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 10 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select TM7IO input as the count clock source.
9	Set the interrupt level	TM7ICR.TM7LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
10	Enable the interrupt	TM7ICR.TM7IE = 1	
11	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

9.5 16-bit Timer Pulse Output

9.5.1 Operation

■ 16-bit Timer Pulse Output Operation

In the timer pulse output function, a pulse signal with an arbitrary frequency can be output from TMnIO pin. Timers can output the signal with twice the cycle which is set in TMnOC1 or twice the cycle of the 16-bit full count.
The pulse output pin is shown in Table:9.1.1.

Table:9.5.1 shows register settings that control timer interrupt generation sources and timer pulse output cycles.

Table:9.5.1 16-bit Timer Interrupt Generation Source and Timer Pulse Output Cycle

TMnMD2		Interrupt source	Timer pulse output cycle
TMnIRS1	TMnBCR		
1	1	TMnOC1 compare match	Twice the value of TMnOC1
0	1	TMnOC1 compare match	Twice the value of TMnOC1
1	0	TMnOC1 compare match	Twice the TMnBC full count
0	0	Full count overflow	Twice the TMnBC full count

■ Count Timing of 16-bit Timer Pulse Output

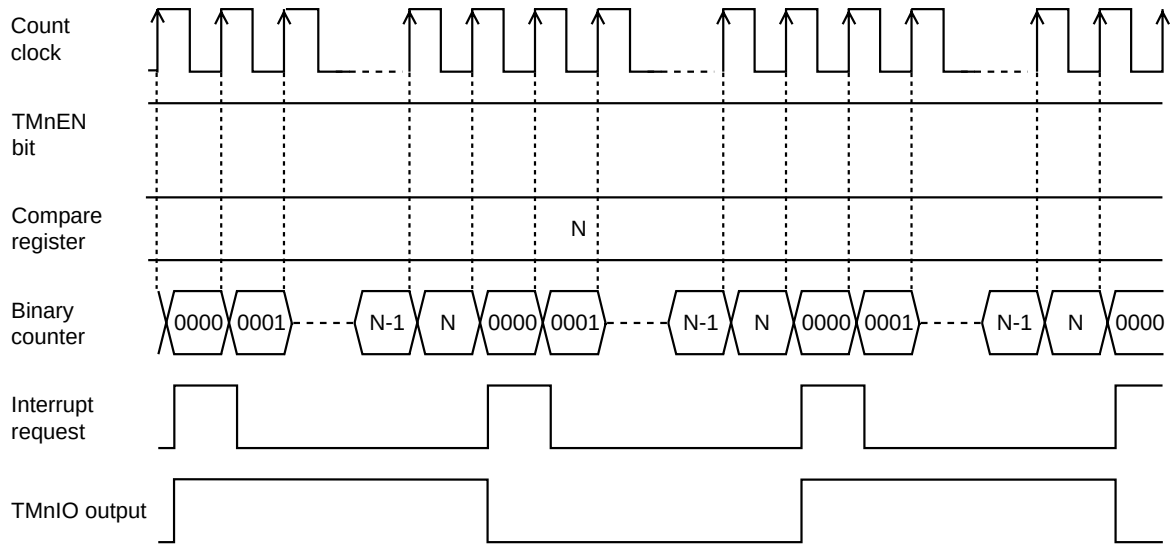


Figure:9.5.1 Count Timing of 16-bit Timer Pulse Output

In the initial state after releasing reset, the timer pulse output is reset and fixed to "Low". Therefore, release the reset of the timer pulse output by setting the TMnMD1.TMnCL to "0".

Regardless of whether TMnBC is stopped or in active, the timer output becomes "Low", when the TMnMD1.TMnCL is set to "1".

Release the reset of the timer pulse output when the timer count is stopped.

9.5.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Pulse Output Setup Example

Here is an example that, using Timer 7, a 50 kHz pulse is output from TM7IOA pin. In order to output a 50 kHz pulse, select HCLK for clock source, and set 1/2 cycle (100 kHz) in the Timer 7 compare register.
HCLK (at f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz) is selected as a clock source.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the timer output pin	TMIOEN1.TM7OEN = 1	Select the timer output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7PWM = 0	Select the timer output.
5		TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source.
6		TM7MD1.TM7CL = 0	Enable the timer output.
7		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select HCLK as the count clock source.
8	Set the output cycle	TM7PR1 = 0x004F	Set the timer output cycle. Setup value: 80 - 1 = 79 (0x004F)
9	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

9.6 16-bit Standard PWM Output (with Continuously Variable Duty)

9.6.1 Operation

In the standard PWM output function, a PWM waveform with a given duty cycle can be generated and output from TMnIO pin.

■ 16-bit Standard PWM Output

A PWM waveform with a given duty cycle is generated by setting TMnOC1 to "High" period of the PWM duty. And the period of the PWM is the time of the full count overflow of the 16-bit timer.

The PWM output pin is shown in Table:9.1.1.

■ Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (at Normal)

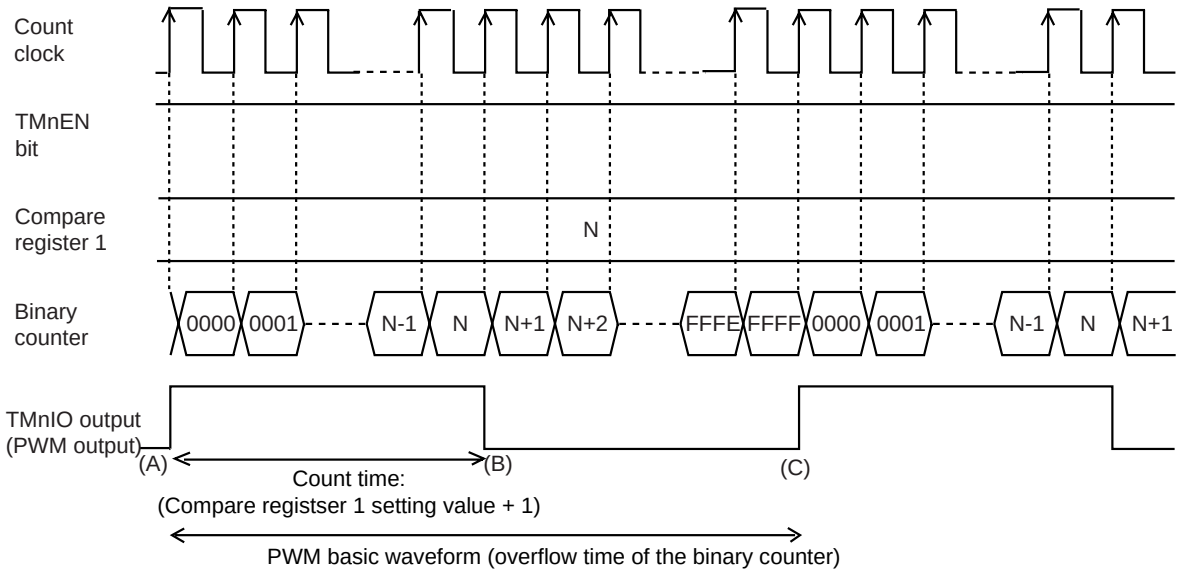


Figure:9.6.1 Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (at Normal)

As for PWM output waveform:

- (A) PWM output is "High" while the binary counter counts up from "0x0000" to the setting value of the compare register.
- (B) PWM output changes to "Low" when the binary counter matches the setting value of the compare register, then the binary counter continues counting up until it overflows.
- (C) PWM output returns to "High" when the binary counter overflows.

■ State at PWM Output Disabled and Polarity (Timer 8)

The TM8MD3.TM8PWMF can control the TM8IO output waveform at PWM output disabled. The polarity of PWM output can be selected with the TM8MD3.TM8PWMO.

■ Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is set to "0x0000")

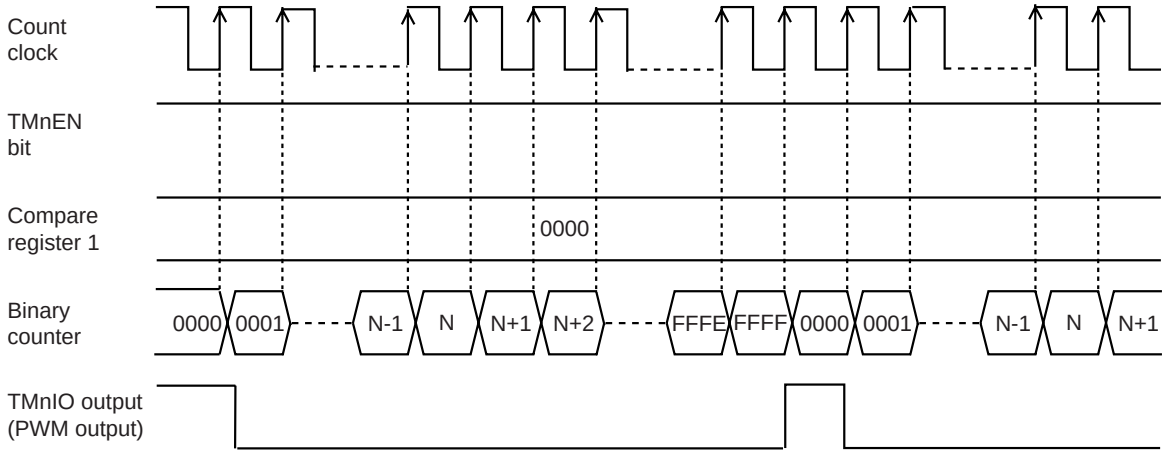


Figure:9.6.2 Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is set to "0x0000")

The PWM output is "High", while the counter is stopped by setting TMnMD1.TMnEN to "0".

■ Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is set to "0xFFFF")

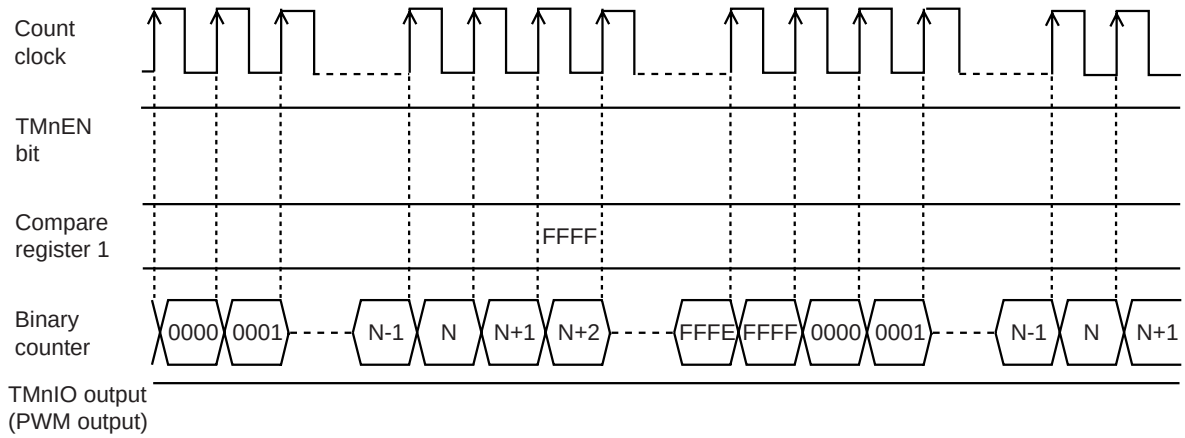


Figure:9.6.3 Count Timing of Standard PWM Output (when compare register 1 is set to "0xFFFF")

When outputting the standard PWM, set the TMnMD2.TMnBCR to "0" to select the full count overflow as the binary counter clear source and the PWM set source (to "High" state).

The TMnOC1 compare match or the TMnOC2 compare match can be selected as a PWM output reset source ("Low" output) with the TMnMD2.TnPWMSL.

The PWM output at the initial state, for Timer 7 and 9, is "Low". It changes to "High" at the time the PWM operation is selected by setting the TMnMD2.TMnPWM. For Timer 8, it is in accordance with the setting of the TM8MD2.TM8PWMF and TM8MD2.TM8PWM0.

When restarting the PWM operation after PWM operation has been stopped, write data to the preset register to clear the binary counter and the PWM waveform. Otherwise, the PWM waveform of the first cycle is not guaranteed.

9.6.2 Setup Example

■ Standard PWM Output Setup Example

Here is an example that, using Timer 7, the PWM output waveform with the 1/4 duty cycle and 122.1 Hz is output from TM7IO output pin. HCLK (at f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz) is selected as a clock source.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below

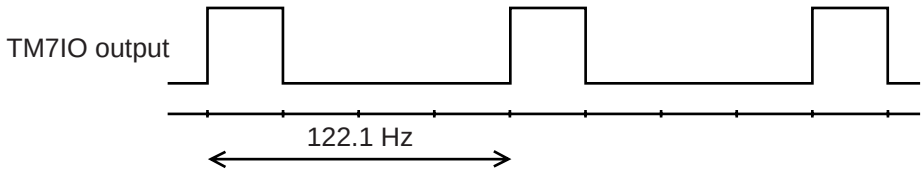


Figure:9.6.4 Output Waveform of TM7IO Output Pin

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the timer output pin	TMIOEN1.TM7OEN = 1	Select the timer output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7PWM = 1	Select the PWM output.
5		TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 0	Select the TM7BC clear source.
6		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select HCLK as the count clock source.
7	Set the "High" period of PWM	TM7PR1 = 0x3FFF	Set the "High" period of PWM output. Setup value: 65536 / 4 - 1 = 16383 (0x3FFF)
8	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

The PWM output at the initial state is "Low". It changes to "High" at the time the PWM operation is selected by setting TM7MD2.TM7PWM to "1".

9.7 16-bit High-Precision PWM Output (with Continuously Variable Period/Duty)

9.7.1 Operation

In the high-precision PWM output function, a PWM waveform with a given period and duty cycle can be generated and output from TMnIO pin.

■ 16-bit High-Precision PWM Output Operation

PWM waveform with a given period and duty cycle is generated by setting TMnOC1 to the PWM period and setting TMnOC2 to "High" period of the PWM duty.

■ Count Timing of High-Precision PWM Output (at Normal)

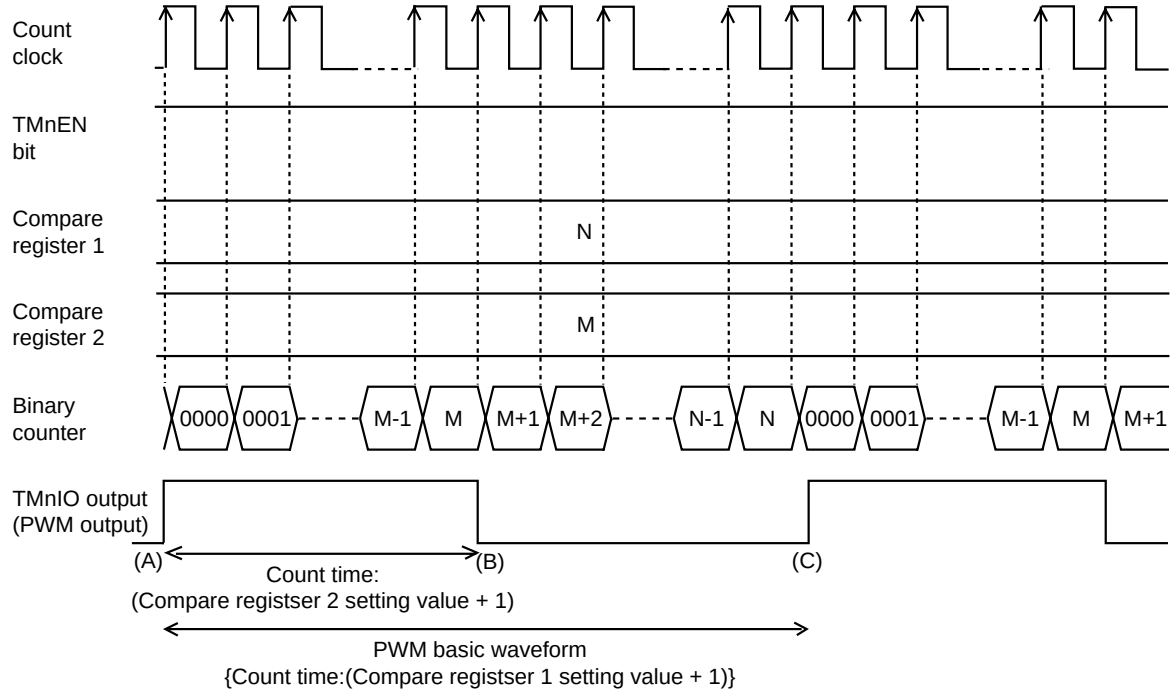


Figure:9.7.1 Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (at Normal)

PWM output waveform:

- (A) PWM output is "High" while the binary counter counts up from "0x0000" to the setting value of the compare register 2.
- (B) PWM output changes to "Low" when the binary counter matches the setting value of the compare register 2, then the binary counter continues counting up until the binary counter is cleared by the TMnOC1 compare match.
- (C) PWM output returns to "High" when the binary counter is cleared.

■ Count Timing of High-Precision PWM Output (when compare register 2 is set to "0x0000")

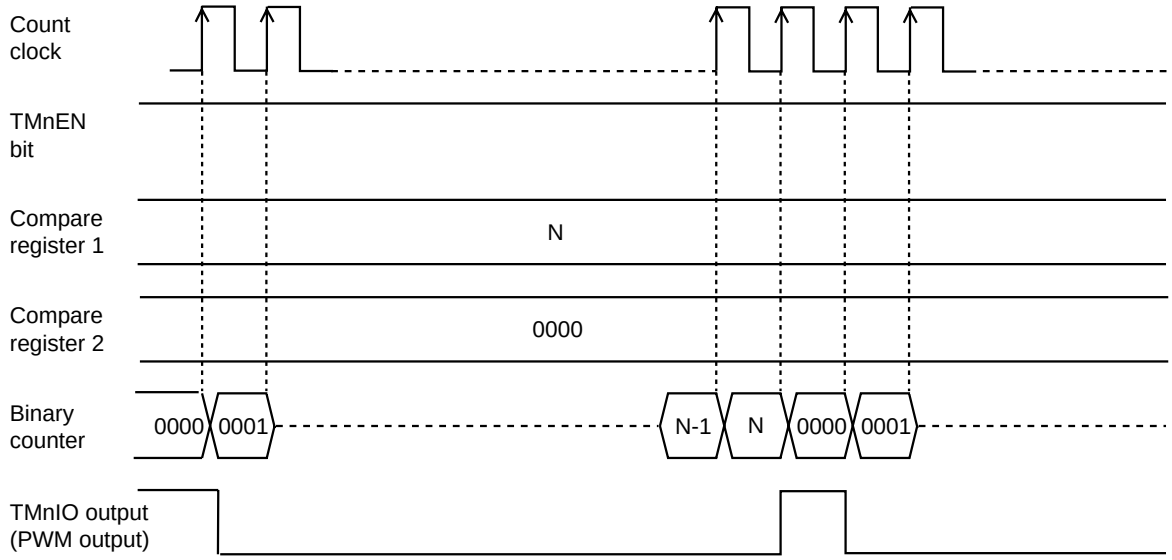


Figure:9.7.2 Count Timing of High Precision PWM Output (when compare register 2 is set to "0x0000")

The PWM output is "High", while the counter is stopped by setting TMnMD1.TMnEN to "0".

■ Count Timing of High-Precision PWM Output
(when compare register 2 is set to "compare register 1" - 1)

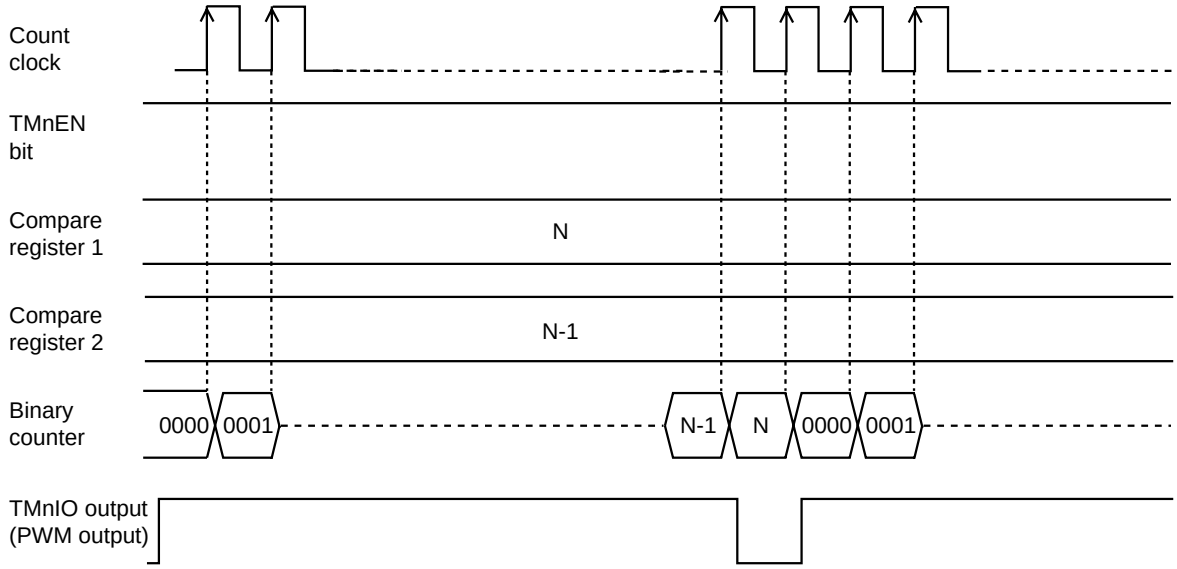


Figure:9.7.3 Count Timing of High-Precision PWM Output (When TMnOC2 is set to TMnOC1 - 1)

When outputting the high-precision PWM, set the TMnMD2.TMnBCR to "1" to select TMnOC1 compare match as the binary counter clear source and the PWM set source (to "High" state).
Also, set the TMnMD2.TnPWMSL to "1" to select TMnOC2 compare match as the PWM reset source (to "Low" state).

The PWM output at the initial state is "Low". It changes to "High" at the time the PWM operation is selected by setting the TMnMD2.TMnPWM.

When outputting the high-precision PWM, set the values of TMnOC1 and 2 as follow:
TMnOC2 < TMnOC1
If TMnOC2 ≥ TMnOC1, the PWM output is fixed to "High".

9.7.2 Setup Example

■ High Precision PWM Output Setup Example

Here is an example that, using Timer 7, the PWM output waveform with the 1/4 duty cycle and 400 Hz is output from TM7IO output pin. HCLK/2 (at f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz) is selected as a clock source.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

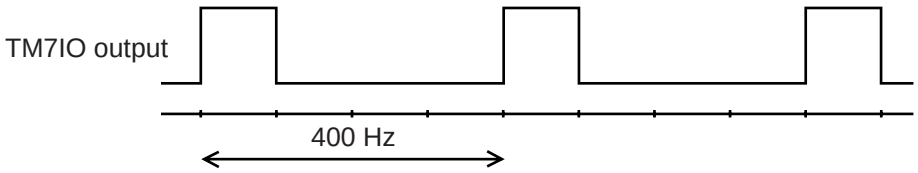


Figure:9.7.4 Output Waveform of TM7IO output pin

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the timer output pin	TMIOEN1.TM7OEN = 1	Select the timer output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7PWM = 1	Select the PWM output.
5		TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 1 TM7MD2.T7PWMSL = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source and the duty determination source of PWM output.
6		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 01	Select HCLK/2 as the count clock source.
7	Set the PWM cycle	TM7PR1 = 0x270F	Set the cycle PWM output. Setup value: 10000 - 1 = 9999 (0x270F)
8	Set the "High" period of PWM	TM7PR2 = 0x09C3	Set the "High" period of PWM output. Setup value: 10000 / 4 - 1 = 2499 (0x09C3)
9	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

9.8 16-bit Timer Capture Function

9.8.1 Operation

In the capture function, the value of the binary counter is read at the following:

- When one of IRQ0 to IRQ3, which is synchronized with the system clock or the count clock, is input.
- When an interrupt of Timer 0 or Timer 1 occurs.
- When the arbitrary data are written to the capture register.

■ Capture Operation with External Interrupt Signal as a Trigger

Input capture trigger is generated by the external interrupt input signal. Set TMnMD1 and TMnMD2 to select the capture trigger. Table:9.8.1 show the available types of capture trigger and bit settings.

Table:9.8.1 Capture Trigger

Capture trigger source	TMnMD2		TMnMD1
	TnICT1-0	TnICEDG0	TnICEDG1
IRQ0 falling edge	00(IRQ0)	1	0
IRQ0 rising edge	00(IRQ0)	1	1
IRQ0 both edges	00(IRQ0)	0	-
IRQ1 falling edge	01(IRQ1)	1	0
IRQ1 rising edge	01(IRQ1)	1	1
IRQ1 both edges	01(IRQ1)	0	-
IRQ2 falling edge	10(IRQ2)	1	0
IRQ2 rising edge	10(IRQ2)	1	1
IRQ2 both edges	10(IRQ2)	0	-
IRQ3 falling edge (Timer 9)	11(IRQ3)	1	0
IRQ3 rising edge (Timer 9)	11(IRQ3)	1	1
IRQ3 both edges (Timer 9)	11(IRQ3)	0	-

When the system clock (SYSCLK) is selected as the capture clock by setting the TMnMD3.TMnCKSMP to "1", the clock for the binary counter is the one that is selected by setting the TMnMD1.TMnCK1-0 and synchronized with SYSCLK.
However, if HCLK or SYSCLK is selected with the TMnMD1.TMnCK1-0, the binary counter doesn't count correctly. When selecting HCLK or SYSCLK, set the TMnMD3.TMnCKSMP to "0".

Each capture trigger signal of the 16-bit timers, Timer 7-9 is generated by sampling at the rising edge of the capture clock selected with the TMnMD3.TMnCKSMP.
Therefore, even if a capture trigger is input, the value of the binary counter is not loaded to the capture register until at the 2nd rising edge of the capture clock from the capture trigger.
If the clock which is slower than the CPU operation speed (f_{SYSCLK}) is used as the timer source clock, set the TMnMD3.TMnCKSMP to "SYSCLK".
Also, the interval of each capture trigger should be set more than twice the clock cycle which is set in the TMnMD3.TMnCKSMP.

If the capture clock cycle is longer than the system clock, the value of the capture register may be read out before capturing.

■ Capture Count Timing with a Trigger of Both Edges of External Interrupt Signal

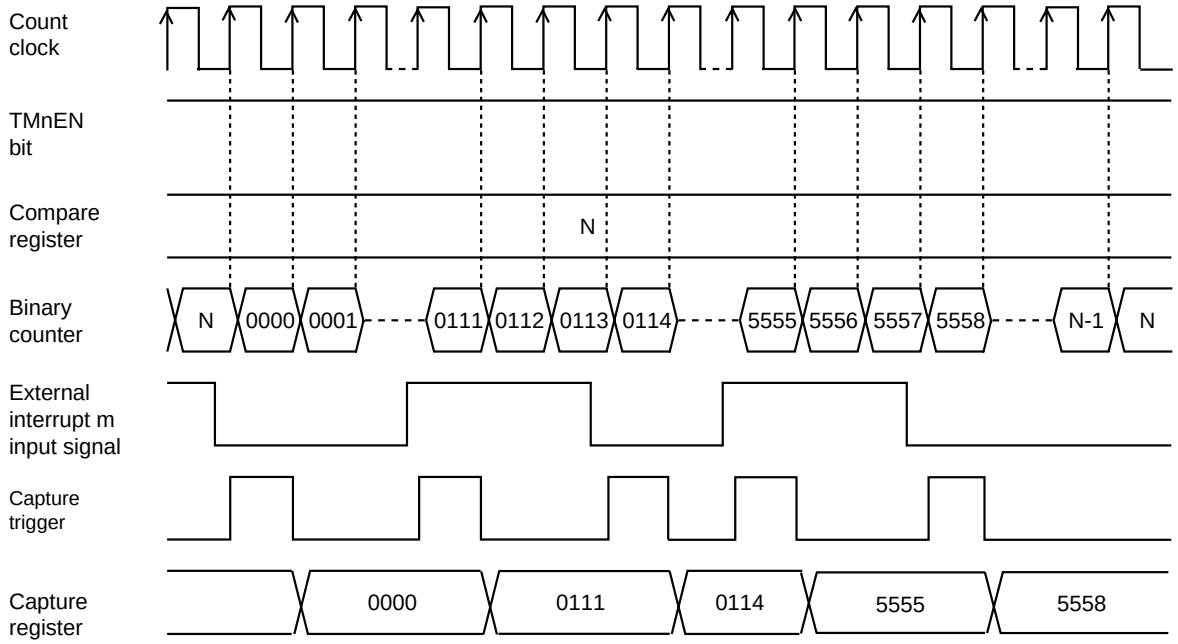


Figure:9.8.1 Capture Count Timing with a Trigger of External Interrupt Signal

A capture trigger is generated at the both edges of the external interrupt m input signal. Synchronizing with this capture trigger, the value of binary counter is loaded to the input capture register.
The value loaded to the capture register is the binary counter value at the falling edge of the capture trigger. When the specified edge is selected as the capture trigger source, the capture trigger is generated only at the specified edge of the interrupt signal. The other count timing is the same as that of the timer operation.

When the binary counter is used as a free-run counter which counts from "0x0000" to "0xFFFF", set Compare register 1 to "0xFFFF", or set the TMnMD2.TMnBCR to "0".

Even if an event occurs before the value of the input capture register is read out, the value of the input capture register is rewritten.

A capture trigger signal is generated by sampling the external interrupt input signal at the capture clock.
Therefore, the edge of the external interrupt input signal may not be detected when an interval of interrupt input signal is shorter than capture clock cycle.

It takes 1 or 2 capture clocks to load the value of the binary counter to the capture register since a capture trigger is sampled at the capture clock.

In the initial state after releasing the reset, the setting of the external interrupt signal as a trigger is disabled. Set the TMnMD2.TnICEN to "1" to enable the trigger of the external interrupt signal.

■ Capture Operation with a Trigger of Software Writing

A capture trigger can be generated by writing an arbitrary value to TMnIC. Synchronizing with this capture trigger, the value of the binary counter is loaded to TMnIC.

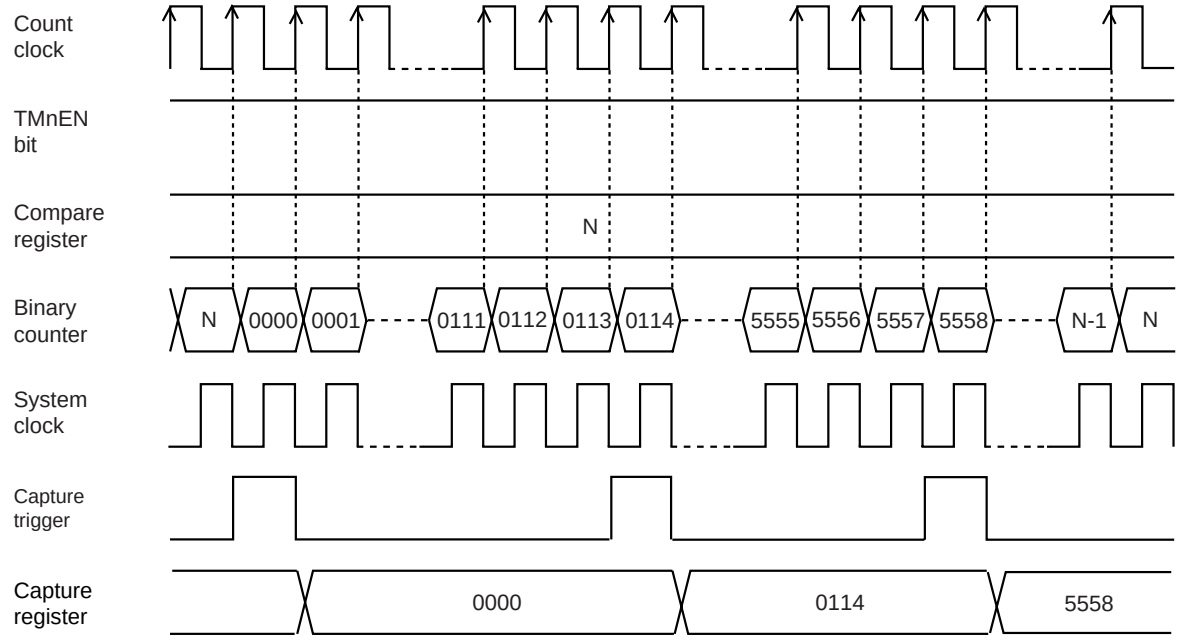


Figure:9.8.2 Capture Count Timing with a Trigger of Software Writing

A capture trigger is generated at the writing signal to the input capture register, synchronizing with the capture clock. Synchronizing with this capture trigger, the value of the binary counter is loaded to the input capture register. The value loaded to the capture register is the binary counter value at the falling edge of the capture trigger. The other count timing is the same as that of the timer operation.

On hardware, there is no bit to disable the capture operation triggered by software writing. The capture operation is enabled regardless of the TMnMD2.TnICEN.

■ Capture Operation with a Trigger of an Interrupt of Timer 0 or 1 (Timer 7 and Timer 8)

A capture trigger of the input capture function is generated at an interrupt signal of Timer 0 or 1.

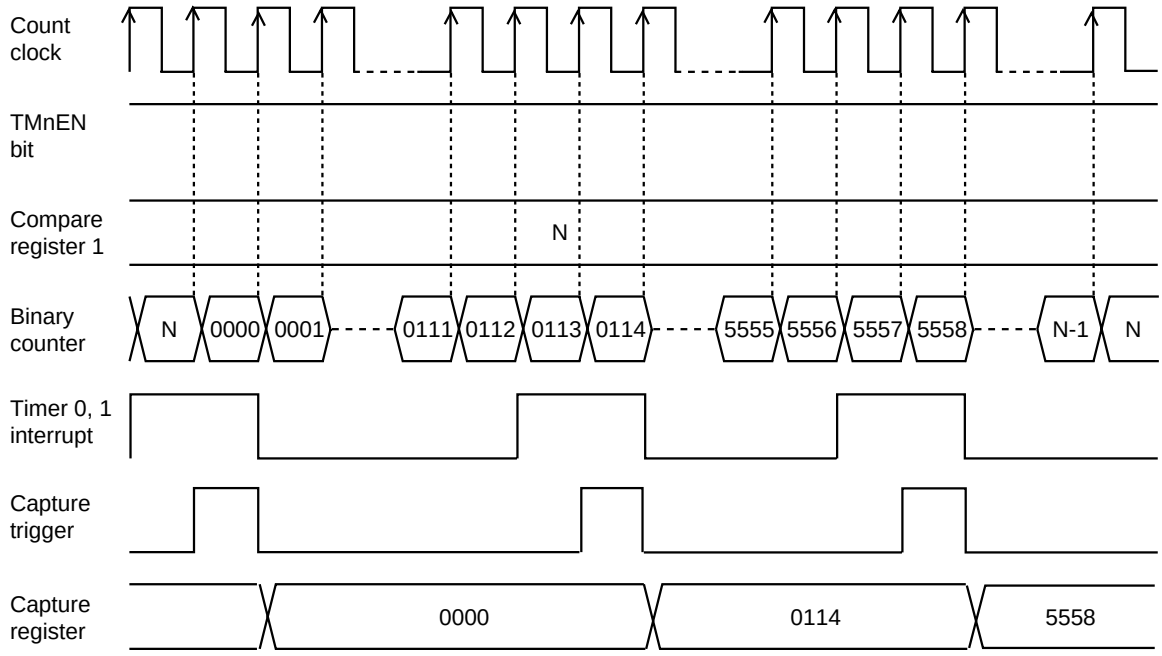


Figure:9.8.3 Capture Count Timing with a Trigger of an Interrupt of Timer 0 or 1 (Timer 7 and Timer 8)

A capture trigger is generated at an interrupt signal of Timer 0 or 1 when setting the TMnMD2.TnICT1-0 to "11". Set TMnMD2 and TMnMD4 to select the capture trigger. When selecting the Timer 0 or 1 interrupt as a capture trigger, the selected edge is invalid.

A capture trigger is generated by sampling the interrupt signal of Timer 0 or 1 at the capture clock.
Therefore, the edge of the external interrupt input signal may not be detected when an interval of interrupt input signal is shorter than capture clock cycle. To prevent this, please set count clock of Timer 0 or Timer 1 to be slower than the capture clock cycle.

■ Binary Counter Clear Function at Capture (Timer 7 and Timer 8)

When selecting the external interrupt input signal or Timer 0, 1 interrupt as a capture trigger, the binary counter can be cleared at a capture operation. When clearing the binary counter at a capture operation, set the TMnMD4.TnCAPCLR to "1". However, the binary counter can be cleared only during the timer count operation.

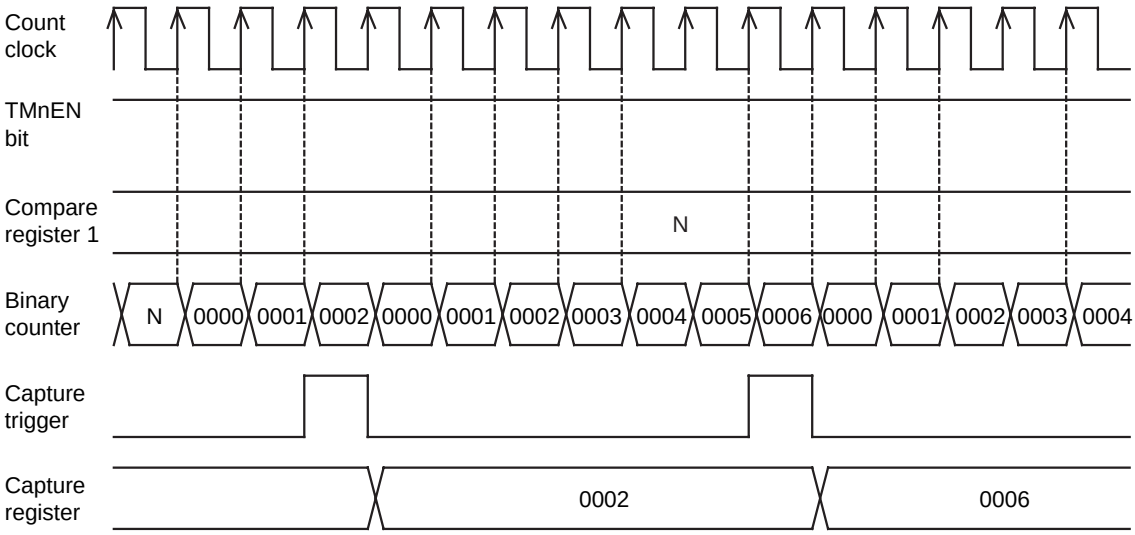


Figure:9.8.4 Binary Counter Clear Function at Capture (Timer 7 and Timer 8)

9.8.2 Setup Example

■ Capture Function Setup Example

Here is an example that, using Timer 7, the value of the binary counter is loaded to the capture register at the interrupt generation edge of IRQ0 signal to measure the pulse width. The rising edge is selected for the interrupt generation edge and capture trigger generation edge.

The following is an example of setup procedures.

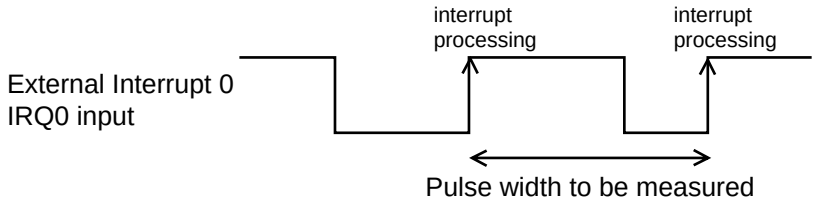


Figure:9.8.5 Pulse Width Measurement of External Interrupt 0 Input Signal

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Disable the interrupt	TM7ICR.TM7IE = 0	Disable the timer interrupt.
3	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source.
4		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select HCLK as the count clock source.
5	Set the compare register	TM7PR1 = 0xFFFF	Setup data in TM7PR1 is loaded to TM7OC1.
6	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.T7ICT1-0 = 00	Select the capture trigger source.
7		TM7MD1.T7ICEDG1 = 1 TM7MD2.T7ICEDG0 = 1	Select the capture trigger edge.
8	Set the external interrupt	IRQISEL0.IRQ0SEL = 0 IRQIEN.IRQI0EN = 1	Enable the external interrupt pin.
9	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD3.TM7CKSMP = 0	Select the count clock for capture sampling.
10	Set the external interrupt	IRQ0ICR.REDG0 = 1	Set the external interrupt valid edge.
11	Set the interrupt level	IRQ0ICR.IRQ0LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
12	Enable the interrupt	IRQ0ICR.IRQ0IE = 1	
13	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.T7ICEN = 1	Enable the capture trigger function
14	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

TM7BC counts up from "0x0000". Synchronizing with the External Interrupt 0 input signal, the value of TM7BC is loaded to TM7IC.

At that time, the pulse width from a rising edge of the external interrupt input signal to the next rising edge can be measured by reading the value of TM7IC through the interrupt process and calculating the difference between that value and the last capture value (the last value of TM7IC).

9.9 16-bit Standard IGBT Output (with Variable Duty)

Trigger of the standard IGBT output can be selected from IRQ0, 1, 2 and Timer 7 count operation. After starting the count operation, the other operation is the same as that of the 16-bit standard PWM output.

Updating the Timer 7 preset register 1 and 2 is prohibited during IGBT operation.

9.9.1 Operation

■ IGBT Trigger

IGBT trigger can be selected from IRQ0, IRQ1, IRQ2 and Timer 7 count operation by setting the TM7MD3.TM7IGBT0-1. The IGBT output operates by detecting the trigger input level.
When setting the TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR to "1" to select the rising edge, the count operation is executed while the corresponding interrupt pin is "High". When setting the TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR to "0" to select the falling edge, the count operation is executed while the corresponding interrupt pin is "Low".
To control the activation with the instruction, select "TM7EN count operation". In that case, the timer count operation and IGBT output are controlled with the TM7MD1.TM7EN. When setting the bit to "1" to start counting, the count operation continues until the bit is set to "0" to stop counting. Be sure to set the TM7MD3.T7IGBT0-1 before setting the TM7MD1.TM7EN.

■ 16-bit Standard IGBT Output Operation (Timer 7)

Detecting the trigger by the external interrupt signal through the external interrupt interface block while setting the "High" period of duty in TM7OC1 generates the IGBT waveform with a specified duty. The cycle is the time of the 16-bit timer full count overflow. The standard IGBT output function can be used in Timer 7.

Table:9.9.1 IGBT Output Pin

	Timer 7
IGBT output pin	TM7IOA output / TM8IOA output TM7IOB output / TM8IOB output TM7IOC output / TM8IOC output

Table:9.9.2 IGBT Trigger

	TM7MD3	
	T7IGBT1-0	T7IGBTTR
IRQ0 falling edge	01 (IRQ0)	1
IRQ0 rising edge	01 (IRQ0)	0
IRQ1 falling edge	10 (IRQ1)	1
IRQ1 rising edge	10 (IRQ1)	0
IRQ2 falling edge	11 (IRQ2)	1
IRQ2 rising edge	11 (IRQ2)	0
TM7EN count operation	00	-

■ Count timing of Standard IGBT Output (Normal) (Timer 7)

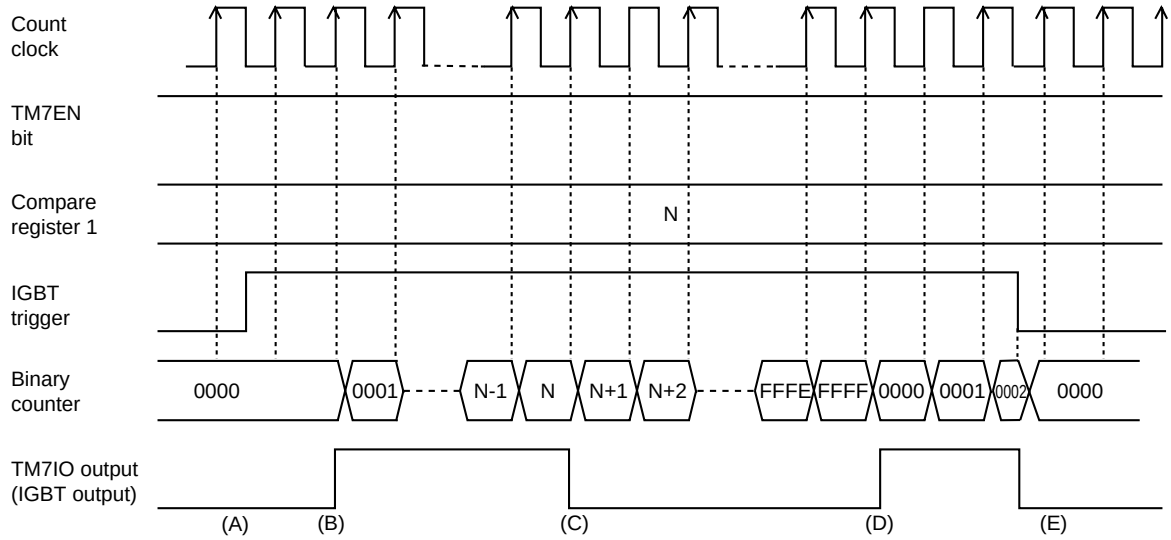


Figure:9.9.1 Count timing of Standard IGBT Output (Normal)

(A) Once the IGBT trigger is input, the IGBT operation is valid at the next clock. After the IGBT operation becomes valid, the IGBT output holds "Low" until the next count clock.

(B) While the IGBT trigger is valid and the binary counter counts up from "0x0000" to the TM7OC2 compare match, the IGBT output is "High".
(Only for the 1st cycle of counting, the output is "High" from"0x0001".)

(C) After the TM7OC2 compare match, the output changes to "Low" and the binary counter continues counting up until it overflows.

(D) When the binary counter overflows, the IGBT output returns to "High".

(E) When the IGBT trigger becomes invalid, the timer is initialized and the IGBT output is forced to be "Low".

■ Count timing of Standard IGBT Output (when compare register 1 = "0x0000") (Timer 7)

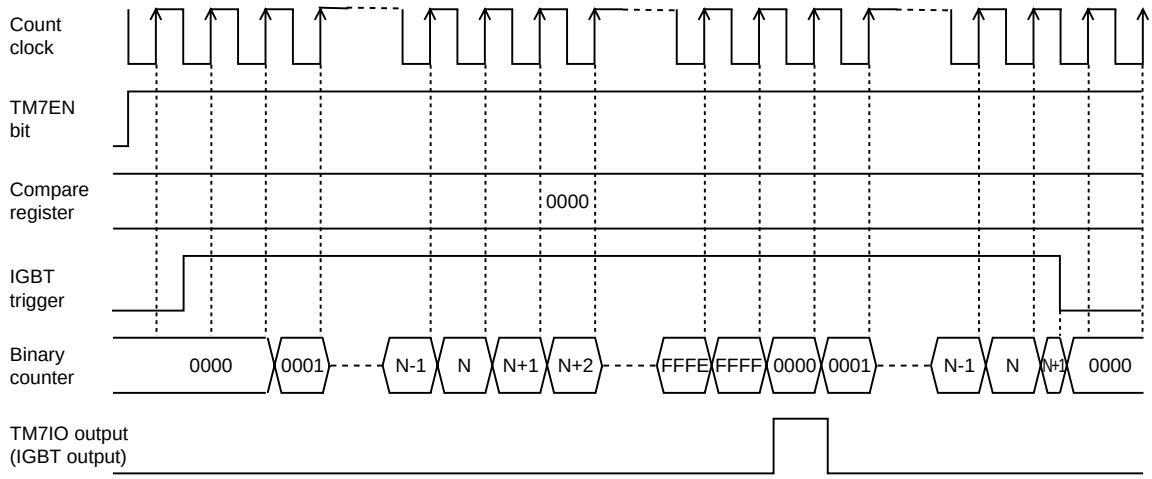


Figure:9.9.2 Count timing of Standard IGBT Output (When compare register 1 = "0x0000")

The IGBT output is "Low" while the TM7MD1.TM7EN is set to "0" to stop counting.

■ Count timing of Standard IGBT Output (when compare register 1 = "0xFFFF") (Timer 7)

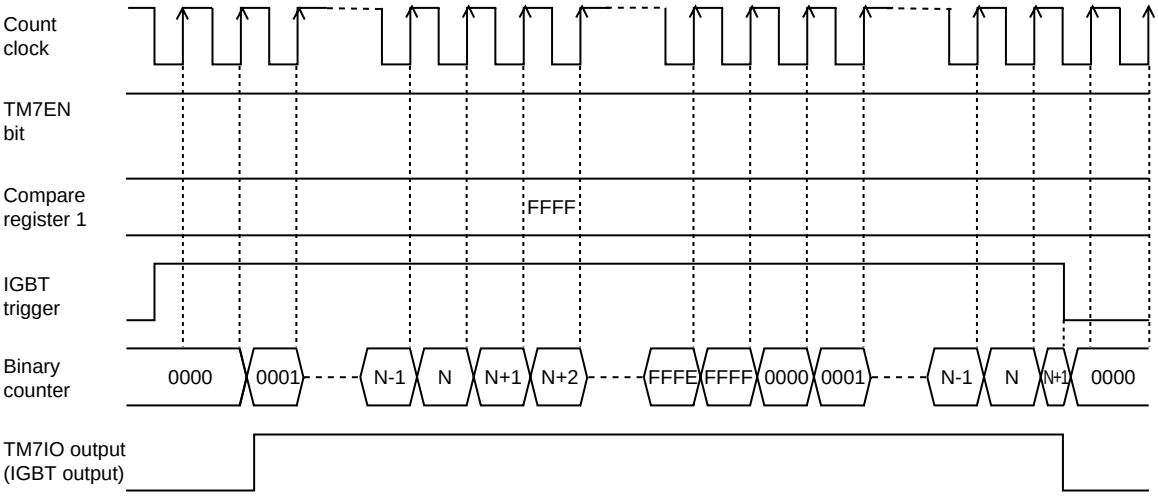


Figure:9.9.3 Count timing of Standard IGBT Output (when compare register 1 = "0xFFFF")

When using the IGBT standard output, set the TM7MD2.TM7BCR to "0" to select the full count overflow as the binary counter clear source and the IGBT output set source (to "High" state).

The TM7OC1 compare match or TM7OC2 compare match can be selected for the IGBT output reset source (to "Low" state) by setting the TM7MD2.T7PWMSL.

9.9.2 Setup Example

■ Standard IGBT Output Setup Example

Here is an example that, using Timer 7 with HCLK (f_{HCLK} = 10 MHz) as the clock source, the IGBT output waveform with the 1/4 duty cycle and 152.59 Hz is output from TM7IOA output pin using IRQ0 input signal as a trigger.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

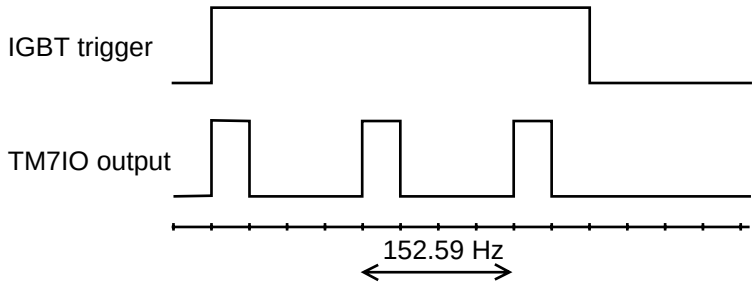


Figure:9.9.4 Output Waveform of TM7IO output pin

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the IGBT output pin	TMIOEN1.TM7OEN = 1	Select the IGBT output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD3.T7IGBTEN = 1 TM7MD2.TM7PWM = 1 TM7MD1.TM7CL = 0	Enable the IGBT output.
5		TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 0	Select the TM7BC clear source.
6		TM7MD3.T7IGBT1-0 = 01	Select the IGBT trigger source.
7		TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR = 1	Select the IGBT trigger level.
8		TM7MD4.T7NODED = 1	Select “No” as the dead time.
9		TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select HCLK as the count clock source.
10	Set the "High" period of IGBT	TM7PR1 = 0x3FFF	Set the "High" period of IGBT output. Setup value: 65536 / 4 - 1 = 16383 (0x3FFF)
11	Set the external interrupt	IRQISEL0.IRQ0SEL = 0 IRQIEN.IRQI0EN = 1	Enable the external interrupt pin.
12	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

9.10 16-bit High-Precision IGBT Output (with Variable Period/Duty)

The high-precision IGBT signal is output from TM7IO or TM8IO pin while the timer starts counting up using the external interrupt input signal as a trigger. A trigger of the high-precision IGBT output can be selected from IRQ0, 1, 2 or Timer 7 count operation. After starting the count operation, the other operation is the same as that of the 16-bit high-precision PWM output

Updating the Timer 7 preset register 1 and 2 is prohibited during IGBT operation.

9.10.1 Operation

■ IGBT Trigger

IGBT trigger can be selected from IRQ0, 1, 2 and Timer 7 count operation by setting the TM7MD3.TM7IGBT0-1. The IGBT output starts by detecting the trigger input level.
When setting the TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR to "1" to select the rising edge, the count operation is executed while the corresponding interrupt pin is "High". When setting the TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR to "0" to select the falling edge, the count operation is executed while the corresponding interrupt pin is "Low".
To control the activation with the instruction, select "TM7EN count operation". In that case, the timer count operation and IGBT output are controlled with the TM7MD1.TM7EN. When setting the bit to "1" to start counting, the count operation continues until the bit is set to "0" to stop counting. Be sure to set the TM7MD3.T7IGBT0-1 before setting the TM7MD1.TM7EN. In this case, The setting of TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR is invalid. When the counter is stopped, the binary counter is cleared at the same time. The data of the preset register are loaded to the compare register in synchronization with the count clock.

■ 16-bit High-Precision IGBT Output Operation (Timer 7)

When setting the TM7MD4.T7NODED to "1", the IGBT waveform with a specified duty can be generated by setting the IGBT cycle in TM7OC1 and the "High" period of duty in TM7OC2. The high-precision IGBT output function can be used in Timer 7.

Table:9.10.1 IGBT Output Pin

	Timer 7
IGBT output pin	TM7IOA output / TM8IOA output TM7IOB output / TM8IOB output TM7IOC output / TM8IOC output

Table:9.10.2 IGBT Trigger

	TM7MD3	
	T7IGBT1-0	T7IGBTTR
IRQ0 falling edge	01 (IRQ0)	1
IRQ0 rising edge	01 (IRQ0)	0
IRQ1 falling edge	10 (IRQ1)	1
IRQ1 rising edge	10 (IRQ1)	0
IRQ2 falling edge	11 (IRQ2)	1
IRQ2 rising edge	11 (IRQ2)	0
TM7EN count operation	00	-

■ One-shot Pulse Output

One-shot pulse can be output by setting the TM7MD4.T7ONESHOT to "1".

■ Count timing of High-Precision IGBT Output (Normal) (Timer 7)

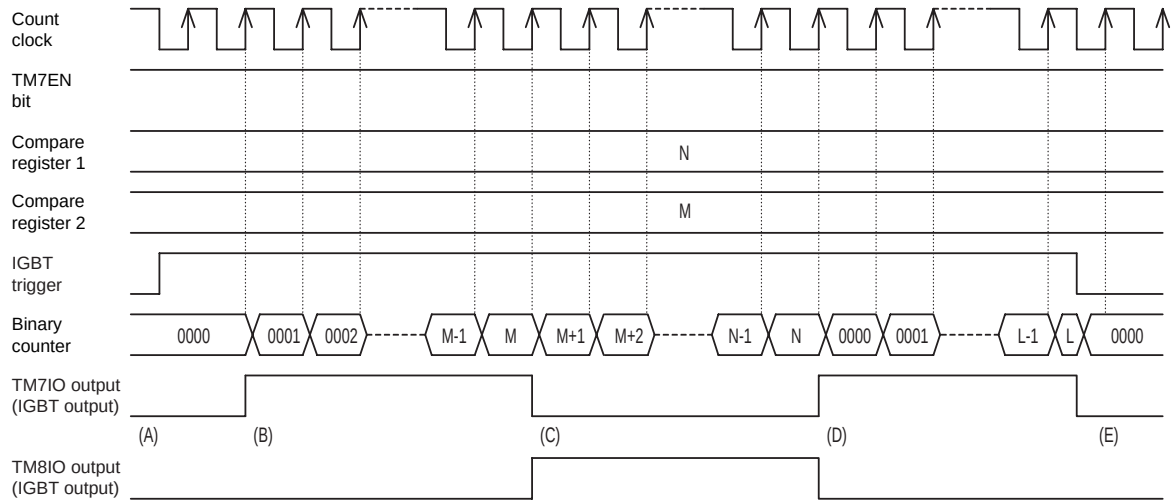


Figure:9.10.1 Count timing of High-Precision IGBT Output (Normal)

- (A) Once the IGBT trigger is input, the IGBT operation is valid at the next clock. After the IGBT operation becomes valid, the IGBT output holds "Low" until the next count clock
- (B) While the IGBT trigger is valid and the binary counter counts up from "0x0000" to the TM7OC2 compare match, the IGBT output is "High". (Only for the 1st cycle of counting, the output is "High" from "0x0001".)
- (C) After the TM7OC2 compare match, the output changes to "Low". The binary counter continues counting up until it is cleared by the TM7OC1 compare match.
- (D) When the binary is cleared, the IGBT output returns to "High".
- (E) When the IGBT trigger becomes invalid, the timer is initialized and the IGBT output is forced to be "Low".

■ Count timing of High-Precision IGBT Output (when compare register 2 = "0x0000") (Timer 7)

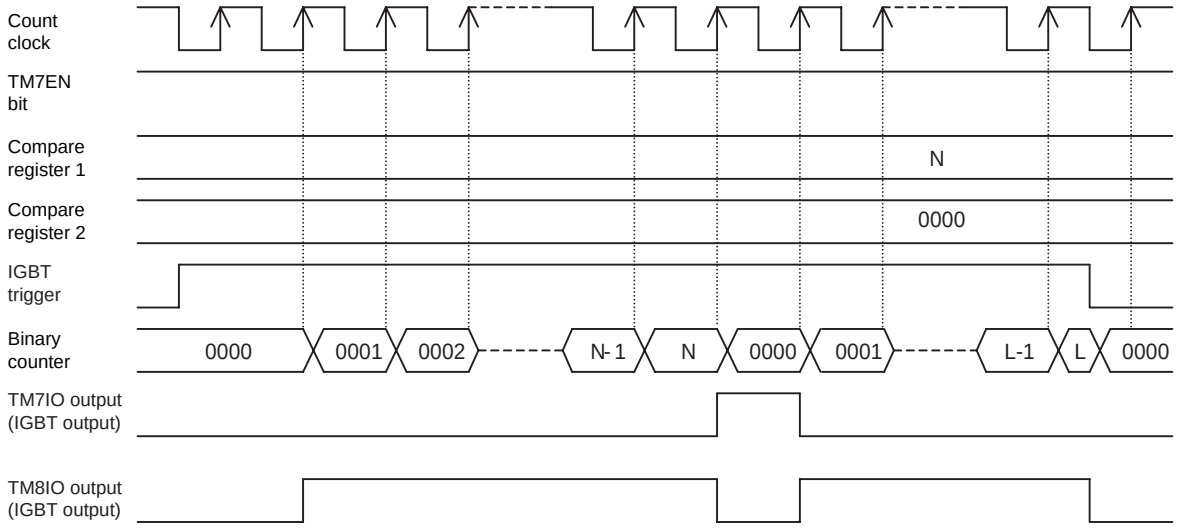


Figure:9.10.2 Count timing of High-Precision IGBT Output (when compare register 2 = "0x0000")

When the timer is not operating by setting the TM7MD1.TM7EN to "0", outputs from both TM7IO and TM8IO are "Low".

■ Count timing of High-Precision IGBT Output (when compare register 2 = compare register 1) (Timer 7)

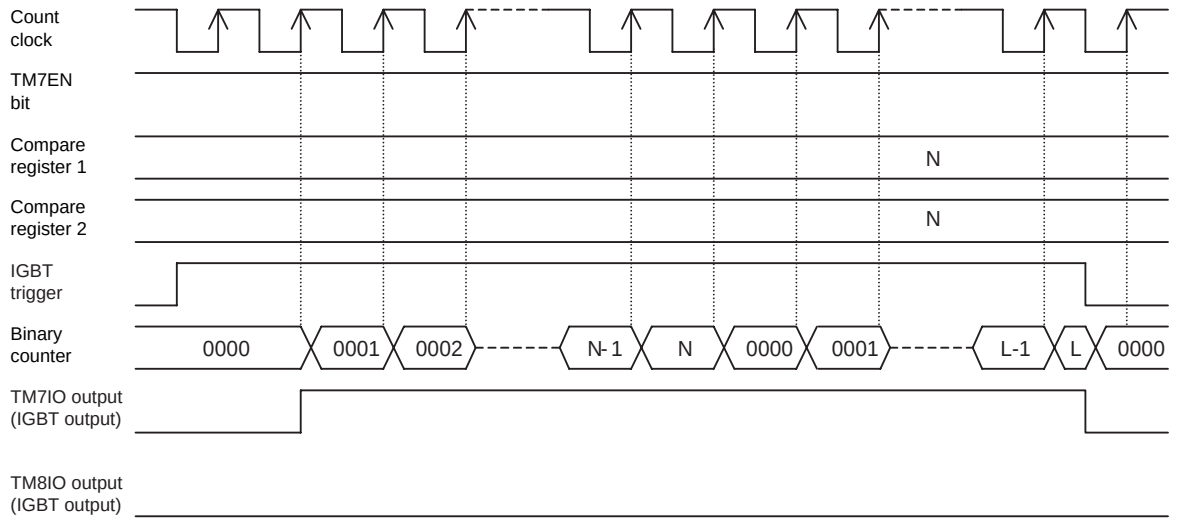


Figure:9.10.3 Count timing of High-Precision IGBT Output
(when compare register 2 = compare register 1)

When using the high-precision IGBT output, set the TM7MD2.TM7BCR to "1" to select the TM7OC1 compare match as the binary counter clear source and the IGBT output set source (to "High" state). Also, set the TM7MD2.T7PWMSL to "1" to select TM7OC2 compare match as the IGBT output reset source (to "Low" state).

The IGBT output at the initial state becomes "Low" when setting the TM7MD3.T7IGBTEN to select the IGBT output. It changes to "High" at the second count clock cycle from the trigger input.

When using the high-precision IGBT output, set the values of TM7OC1 and 2 as follow:
TM7OC2 ≤ TM7OC1
If TMnOC2 > TMnOC1, the IGBT output is fixed to "High".

■ One-shot Pulse Output of High-Precision IGBT (Normal) (Timer 7)

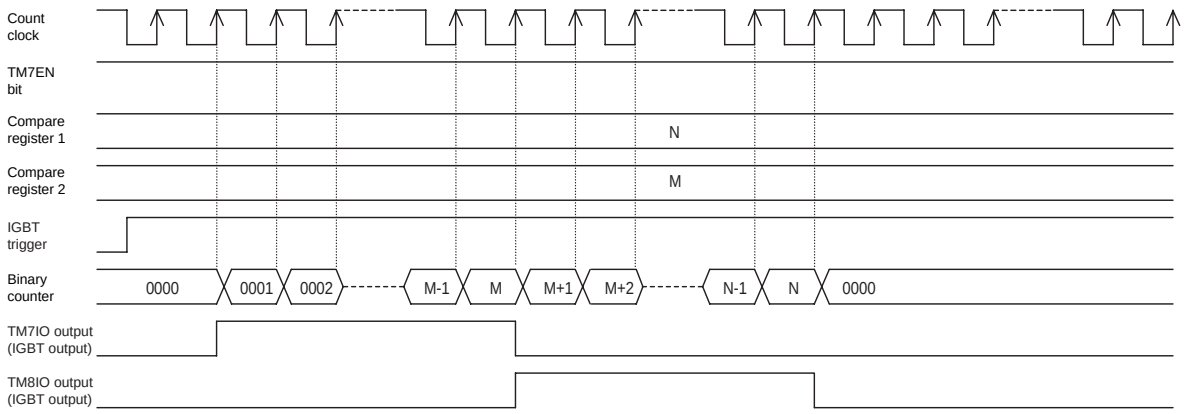


Figure:9.10.4 One-shot Pulse Output of High-Precision IGBT (Normal)

■ One-shot Pulse Output of High-Precision IGBT (when compare register 2 = "0x0000") (Timer 7)

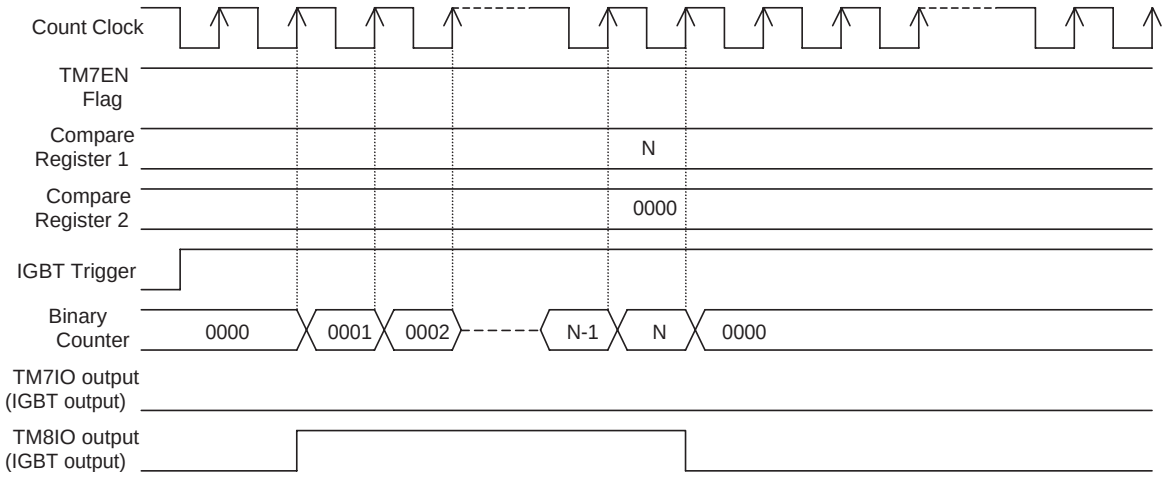


Figure:9.10.5 One-shot Pulse Output of High-Precision IGBT
(when compare register 2 = "0x0000")

■ One-shot Pulse Output of High-Precision IGBT (when compare register 2 = compare register 1) (Timer 7)

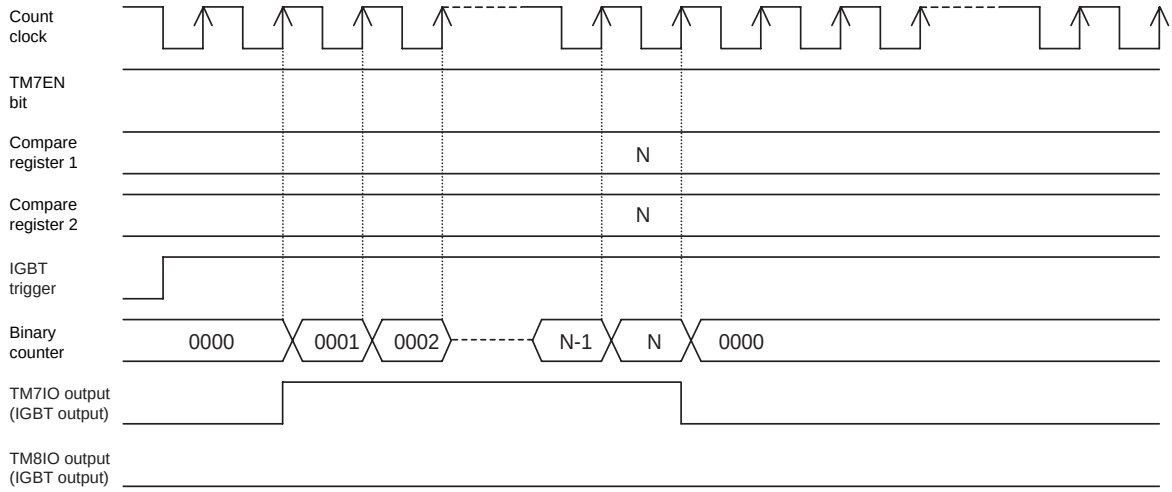


Figure:9.10.6 One-shot Pulse Output of High-Precision IGBT
(when compare register 2 = compare register 1)

9.10.2 Setup Example

■ High-Precision IGBT Output Setup Example

Here is an example that, using Timer 7 with HCLK (f_{HCLK} = 10 MHz) as clock source, the IGBT output waveform with the 1/4 duty cycle and 400 Hz is output from TM7IOA output pin using the external interrupt 0 input signal as a trigger.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

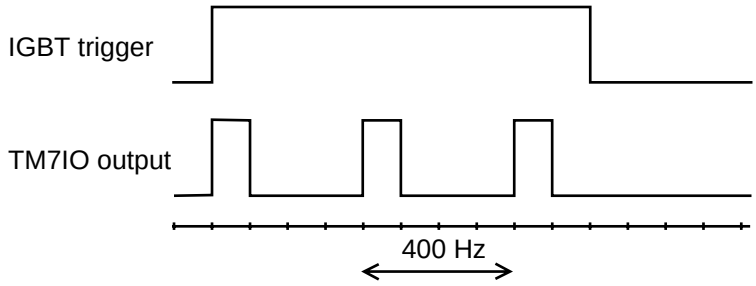


Figure:9.10.7 Output Waveform of TM7IO output pin

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Select the IGBT output pin	TMIOEN1.TM7OEN = 1 TMIOEN1.TM8OEN = 1	Select the IGBT output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
3		P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 1 P5DIR.P5DIR7 = 1	
4	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD3.T7IGBTEN = 1 TM7MD2.TM7PWM = 1 TM7MD1.TM7CL = 0	Enable the IGBT output.
5		TM8MD3.TM8SEL = 1	Select the IGBT output.
6		TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 0 TM7MD2.T7PWMSL = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source and the duty determination source of IGBT output.
7		TM7MD4.T7NODED = 1	Select “No” as the dead time.
8		TM7MD3.T7IGBT1-0 = 01	Select the IGBT trigger source.
9	Set the external interrupt	IRQ0ICR.REDG0 = 1	Set the external interrupt valid edge.
10	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR = 0 TM7MD2.T7ICEDG0 = 1	Select the IGBT trigger level and IGBT trigger edge.
11	Set the external interrupt	IRQISEL0.IRQ0SEL = 0 IRQIEN.IRQI0EN = 1	Enable the external interrupt pin.
12	Set the interrupt level	IRQ0ICR.IRQ0LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
13	Enable the interrupt	IRQ0ICR.IRQ0IE = 1	
14	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select HCLK as the count clock source.
15	Set the IGBT output cycle	TM7PR1 = 0x61A7	Set the IGBT output cycle. Setup value: 25000 - 1 = 24999 (0x61A7)
16	Set the "High" period of IGBT	TM7PR2 = 0x1869	Set the "High" period of IGBT output. Setup value: 25000 / 4 - 1 = 6249 (0x1869)
17	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

9.11 IGBT Output with Dead Time

The IGBT output with dead time which is delay time for ON/OFF is output from TM7IO or TM8IO pin when the referenced IGBT signal is inverted. The output trigger is selected from IRQ0, 1, 2 and Timer 7 count operation.

Updating the Timer 7 preset register 1, 2 and Timer 7 dead time preset register 1, 2 is prohibited during IGBT operation.

9.11.1 Operation

■ IGBT Output Operation with Dead Time (Timer 7)

The IGBT output with dead time can be selected with the TM7MD4.T7NODED. The dead time value can be set with TM7DPR1 and TM7DPR2. Only Timer 7 can support the IGBT output with dead time.

■ IGBT Trigger

IGBT trigger can be selected from IRQ0, 1, 2 and Timer 7 count operation by setting the TM7MD3.TM7IGBT0-1. When using IRQ0, 1 and 2 as a IGBT trigger, the valid level is selected by setting the TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR. When setting the bit to "1" to select the rising edge, the count operation is executed while the corresponding interrupt pin is "High". When setting the bit to "0" to select the falling edge, the count operation is executed while the corresponding interrupt pin is "Low".
To control the activation with the instruction, select "TM7EN count operation". In that case, the timer count operation and IGBT output are controlled with the TM7MD1.TM7EN. When setting the bit to "1" to start counting, the count operation continues until the bit is set to "0" to stop counting. Be sure to set the TM7MD3.T7IGBT0-1 before setting the TM7MD1.TM7EN. In this case, The setting of the TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR is invalid. When the counter is stopped, the binary counter is cleared at the same time. The data of the preset register are loaded to the compare register in synchronization with the count clock

■ Dead Time Count

The dead time counter counts the timer source clock. When the dead time is set to be inserted at the falling edge, the time from the falling edge of TM8IO to the rising edge of TM7IO is set by the TM7DPR1 and the time from the falling edge of TM7IO to the rising edge of TM8IO is set by the TM7DPR2. The dead time inserted actually is the setting value in TM7DPR2 + 1 cycles.
Only during the period from the time when the IGBT output is enabled by the IGBT trigger to the first rising edge of TM7IO (in the input at IGBT falling edge), the dead time is the setting value in TM7DPR1 + 2 cycles. (The dead time is one count longer than the normal.)

■ Count Timing of IGBT Output with Dead Time (Timer 7)

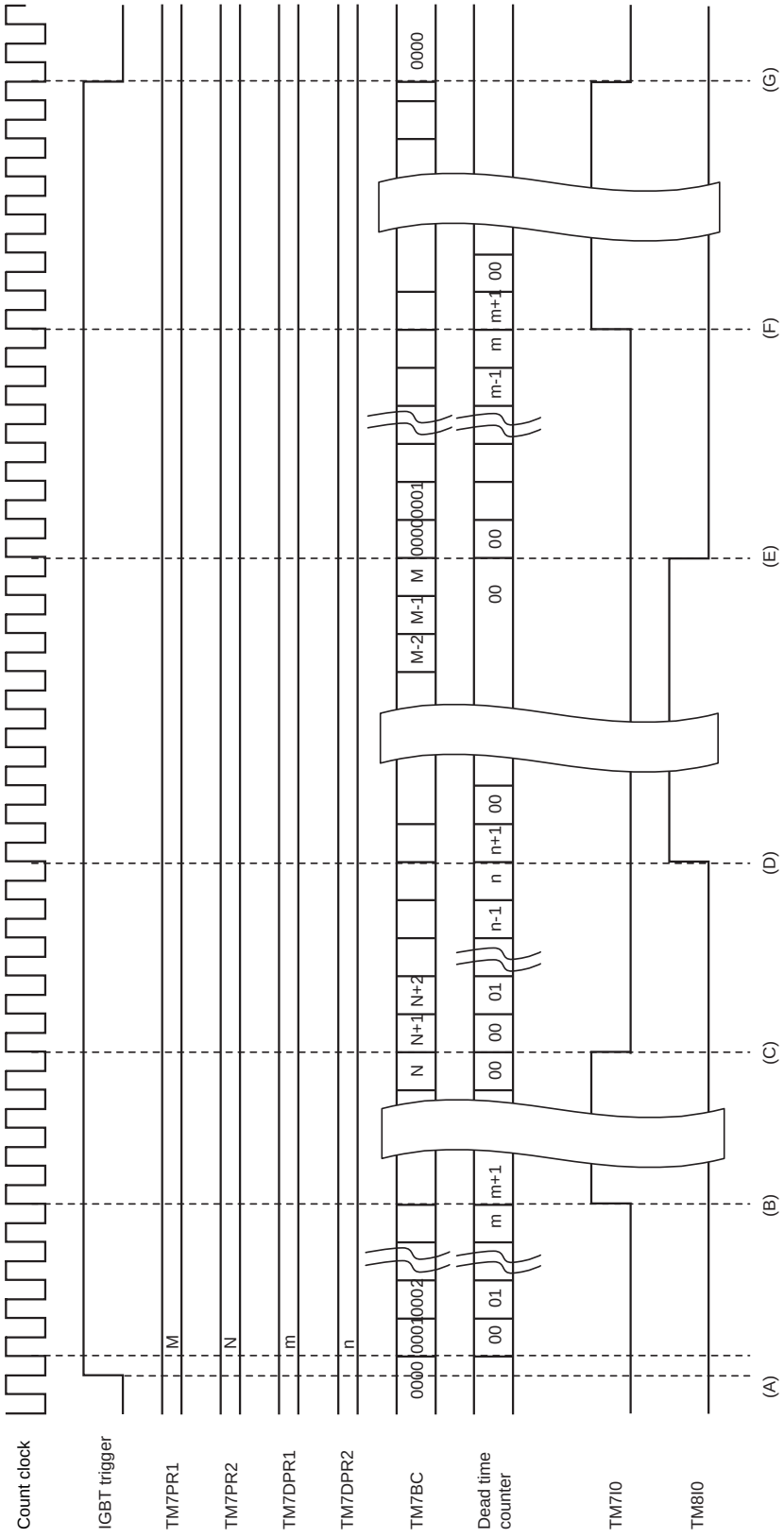


Figure:9.11.1 Count Timing of IGBT Output with Dead Time

IGBT output waveform with dead time (at the falling edge setting):

(A) Until the IGBT output is valid from the IGBT trigger input, the TM7IO and TM8IO are: TM7IO = "Low", TM8IO = "Low".
(B) TM7IO rises after the time, that is one count clock + count clock × "the dead time preset register 1 + 1" from the rising edge of the next count clock of the IGBT trigger input, elapses.
(C) TM7IO falls at the next count clock from the compare match between the binary counter and TM7OC2.
(D) TM8IO rises after the time, that is count clock × "the dead time preset register 2 + 1", elapses.
(E) TM8IO falls at the next count clock from the compare match between the binary counter and TM7OC1.
(F) TM7IO rises after the time, that is count clock × "the dead time preset register 1 + 1", elapses since TM8IO falls.
(G) As soon as the IGBT trigger is invalid, the TM7IO and TM8IO are: TM7IO = "Low", TM8IO = "Low".

When using the IGBT output with dead time, set the values of TM7OC1 and 2 as follow:
TM7OC2 ≤ TM7OC1
If TMnOC2 > TMnOC1, the IGBT output are at the falling edge setting:
TM7IO = fixed to "Low", TM8IO = fixed to "Low".

If the IGBT trigger is enabled before 2 count clock cycles elapsed after the IGBT trigger is disabled, the preset register data set during the IGBT operation may not be loaded to the compare register or the dead time preset register data set during the IGBT operation may not be reflected.

If the event input is selected as a count clock source, the preset register data set during the IGBT operation may not be loaded to the compare register or the dead time preset register data set during the IGBT operation may not be reflected.

If the event input is selected as a count clock source, the dead time preset register data may not be reflected even if it is set when the IGBT operation is disabled. To prevent this, select the system clock (SYSCLK) as a count clock source at first and set the data to the dead time preset register. Then, select the event input (TM7IO) as a clock source to start IGBT operation.

When selecting IRQ0, 1 or 2 as an IGBT trigger, the IGBT operation may start at most one count clock before and after the usual start.

■ One-shot Pulse Output Setting

One-shot pulse can be output by setting the TM7MD4.T7ONESHOT to "1".

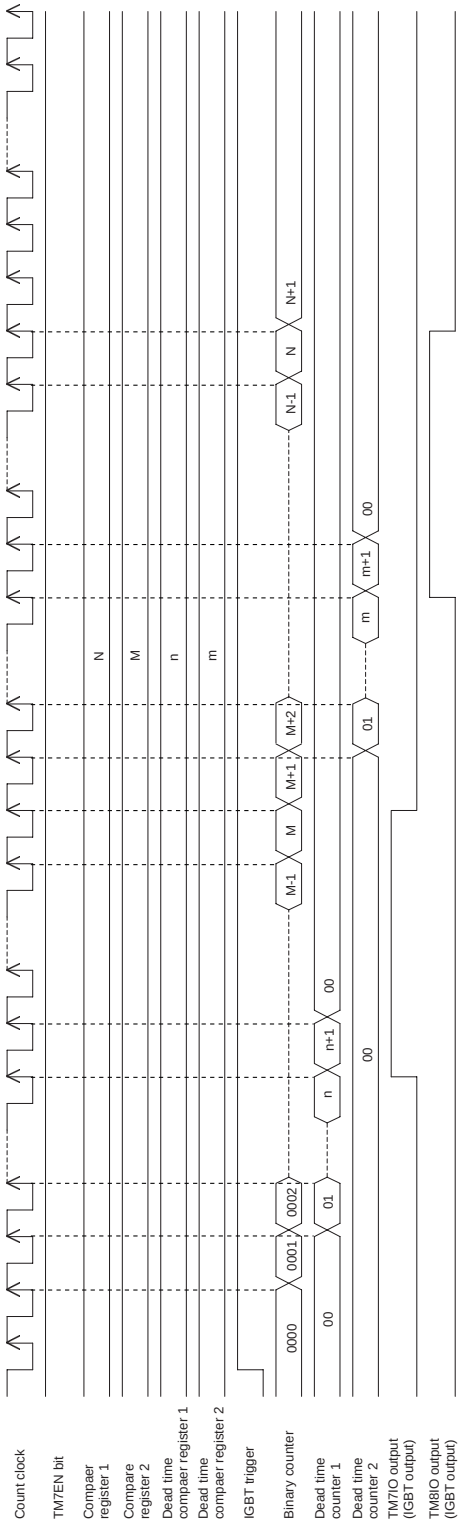


Figure:9.11.2 IGBT One-shot Pulse Output Timing with dead time

9.11.2 Setup Example

■ Setup Example of IGBT Output with Dead Time (Timer 7)

Here is an example that, using Timer 7 with HCLK (f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz) as a clock source, while the external interrupt 0 input signal is generated, the IGBT output waveform having a duty cycle of 1/4 and a frequency of 200 Hz is output from the TM7IO and TM8IO output pins with a dead time of 0.01 ms or 0.02 ms added.

The setup procedure and its description are shown below.

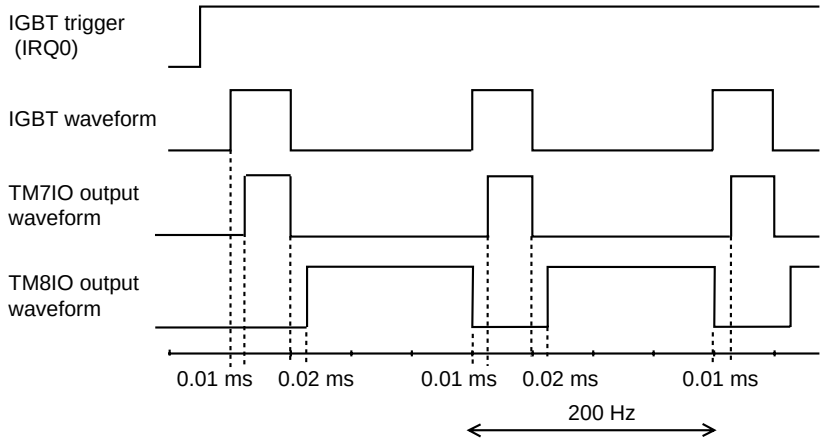


Figure:9.11.3 Output Waveform of TM7IO and TM8IO

Step	Setting	Register	Description
1	Disable the timer counter	TM7MD.TM7EN = 0	Disable the timer count operation.
2	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD2.TM7BCR = 1 TM7MD2.T7PWMSL = 1	Select the TM7BC clear source and the duty determination source of IGBT output.
3		TM7MD3.T7IGBT1-0 = 01	Select the IGBT trigger source.
4		TM7MD3.T7IGBTTR = 0 TM7MD2.T7ICEDG0 = 1	Select the IGBT trigger level and IGBT trigger edge.
5		TM7MD3.T7IGBTDT = 0	Select the dead time input timing.
6	Set the external interrupt	IRQISEL0.IRQ0SEL = 0 IRQIEN.IRQI0EN = 1	Enable the external interrupt pin.
7	Set the interrupt level	IRQ0ICR.IRQ0LV1-0	Refer to [3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
8	Enable the interrupt	IRQ0ICR.IRQ0IE = 1	
9	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD1.TM7CK1-0 = 00 TM7MD1.TM7PS1-0 = 00	Select HCLK as the count clock source.
10	Set the IGBT output cycle	TM7PR1 = 0x9C3F	Set the IGBT output cycle. Setup value: 40000 - 1 = 39999 (0x9C3F)
11	Set the "High" period of IGBT	TM7PR2 = 0x270F	Set the "High" period of IGBT output. Setup value: 40000 / 4 - 1 = 9999 (0x270F)
12	Set the dead time	TM7DPR1 = 0x4F TM7DPR2 = 0x9F	The time from the falling edge of TM7IO to the rising edge of TM8IO: 0.02 ms (0x4F) The time from the falling edge of TM8IO to the rising edge of TM7IO: 0.01 ms (0x9F)

Step	Setting	Register	Description
13	Set the timer mode register	TM7MD3.T7IGBTEN = 1 TM7MD2.TM7PWM = 1 TM8MD3.TM8SEL = 1 TM7MD1.TM7CL = 0	Enable the IGBT output.
14	Select the IGBT output pin	TMIOEN1.TM7OEN = 1 TMIOEN1.TM8OEN = 1 P0DIR.P0DIR4 = 1 P5DIR.P5DIR7 = 1	Select the IGBT output pin. [Chapter 7 I/O Port]
15	Enable the timer counter	TM7MD1.TM7EN = 1	Enable the timer count operation.

TM7BC starts counting up from "0x0000". The IGBT output waveform is "High" until the TM7BC matches the setting value of TM7OC2. The IGBT output waveform changes to "Low" at the TM7OC2 compare match.

The TM7BC continues counting up. The IGBT output waveform returns to "High" when the binary counter is cleared by the TM7OC1 compare match.

The IGBT output waveform with dead time is output from the TM7IO pin.
The inverted IGBT output waveform with dead time is output from the TM8IO pin.

Chapter 10 General-Purpose Time Base/Free-Running Timer

10

10.1 Overview

This LSI has a time base timer and an 8-bit free-running timer (timer 6).

The time base timer is a 15-bit timer counter.

10.1.1 Functions

Table:10.1.1 shows the clock source and the interrupt generation cycle that can be used for the timer 6 and the time base timer.

Table:10.1.1 Clock Source and Interrupt Generation Cycle

	Time base timer	Timer 6 (8-bit free-running)
8-bit timer operation	-	Yes
Interrupt source	PERI0IRQ2	PERI0IRQ1
Clock source	HCLK SCLK	HCLK SCLK SYSCLK HCLK/2^7 (*1) HCLK/2^{13} (*1) SCLK/2^7 (*2) SCLK/2^{13} (*2)
Interrupt generation cycle	$2^7 \times 1/f_{HCLK}$, $2^8 \times 1/f_{HCLK}$ $2^9 \times 1/f_{HCLK}$, $2^{10} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$ $2^{12} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$, $2^{13} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$ $2^{14} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$, $2^{15} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$ $2^7 \times 1/f_{SCLK}$, $2^8 \times 1/f_{SCLK}$ $2^9 \times 1/f_{SCLK}$, $2^{10} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$ $2^{12} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$, $2^{13} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$ $2^{14} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$, $2^{15} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	The interrupt generation cycle is decided by the arbitrary value written to TM6OC.
HCLK: machine clock (high-speed oscillation) SCLK: machine clock (low-speed oscillation) SYSCLK: system clock [Chapter 4 4.1 Clock Control] *1: It is available when 'HCLK' is selected as a clock source of time base timer. *2: It is available when 'SCLK' is selected as a clock source of time base timer.		

10.1.2 Block Diagram

■ Timer 6, Time Base Timer Block Diagram

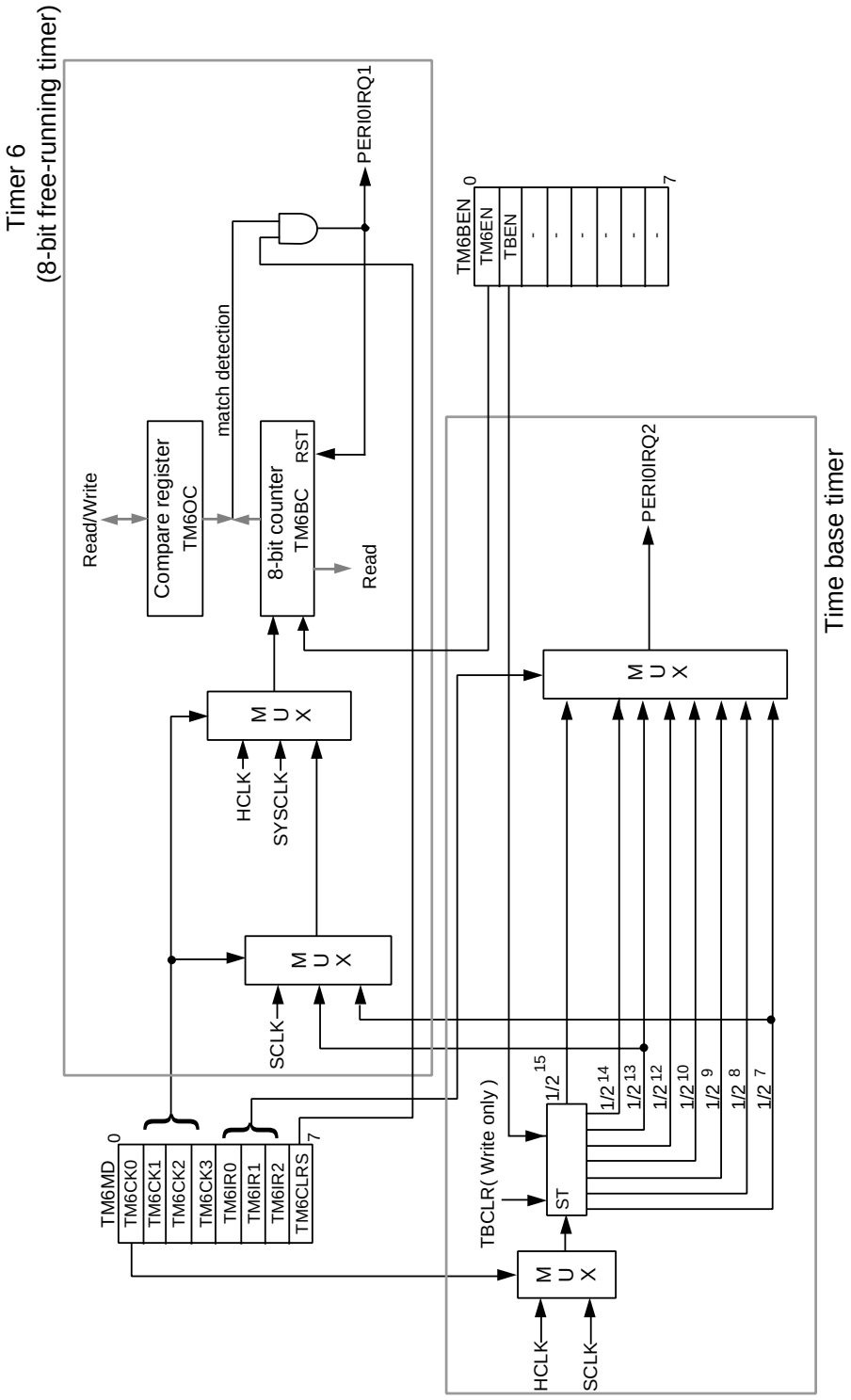


Figure:10.1.1 Block Diagram (Timer 6, Time Base Timer)

10.2 Control Registers

The timer 6 consists of the binary counter (TM6BC) and compare register (TM6OC), and is controlled by mode register (TM6MD) setting. The time base timer is controlled by using the mode register (TM6MD) and time base timer clear register (TBCLR). Start/stop operation of both timers is controlled with the enable signal of the timer 6 enable register (TM6BEN).

10.2.1 Control Registers

Table:10.2.1 shows the registers that control the timer 6 and the time base timer.

Table:10.2.1 Control Registers

	Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
Timer 6	TM6BC	0x03F78	R	Timer 6 binary counter	X-5
	TM6OC	0x03F79	R/W	Timer 6 compare register	X-5
	TM6MD	0x03F7A	R/W	Timer 6 mode register	X-7
	TM6BEN	0x03F7C	R/W	Timer 6 enable register	X-6
	PERI0ICR	0x03FFD	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt level control register	III-24
	PERI0EN	0x03FDC	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt enable register	III-25
	PERI0DT	0x03FDD	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt factor register	III-26
Time base timer	TM6MD	0x03F7A	R/W	Timer 6 mode register	X-7
	TBCLR	0x03F7B	W	Time base timer clear control register	X-5
	PERI0ICR	0x03FFD	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt level control register	III-24
	PERI0EN	0x03FDC	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt enable register	III-25
	PERI0DT	0x03FDD	R/W	Peripheral function Group 0 interrupt factor register	III-26

10.2.2 Programmable Timer Registers

The timer 6 is a 8-bit programmable counter.

Programmable counter consists of compare register (TM6OC) and binary counter (TM6BC).

Binary counter is a 8-bit up-counter. When the TM6CLRS bit of the timer 6 mode register (TM6MD) is "0" and the interrupt cycle data is written to the compare register (TM6OC), the timer 6 binary counter (TM6BC) is cleared to 0x00.

■ Timer 6 Binary Counter (TM6BC:0x03F78)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM6BC7	TM6BC6	TM6BC5	TM6BC4	TM6BC3	TM6BC2	TM6BC1	TM6BC0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

■ Timer 6 Compare Register (TM6OC:0x03F79)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM6OC7	TM6OC6	TM6OC5	TM6OC4	TM6OC3	TM6OC2	TM6OC1	TM6OC0
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

The time base timer can be reset by the software. The time base timer can be cleared by writing an arbitrary value to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR).

■ Time Base Timer Clear Control Register (TBCLR:0x03F7B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TBCLR7	TBCLR6	TBCLR5	TBCLR4	TBCLR3	TBCLR2	TBCLR1	TBCLR0
At reset	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Access	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

10.2.3 Timer 6 Enable Register

This register controls the starting operation of the timer 6 and the time base timer.

■ Timer 6 Enable Register (TM6BEN:0x03F7C)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	TBEN	TM6EN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 2	-	Always read as 0.
1	TBEN	Time base timer operation control 0: Stop 1: Start
0	TM6EN	Timer 6 operation control 0: Stop 1: Start

10.2.4 Timer Mode Register

This is a readable/writable register that controls the timer 6 and the time base timer.

■ Timer 6 Mode Register (TM6MD:0x03F7A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TM6CLRS	TM6IR2	TM6IR1	TM6IR0	TM6CK3	TM6CK2	TM6CK1	TM6ICK0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TM6CLRS	Timer 6 binary counter clear select 0: Enable the initialization of TM6BC when TM6OC is written. 1: Disable the initialization of TM6BC when TM6OC is written. * When TM6CLRS = 0, PERI0IRQ1 is disabled. When TM6CLRS = 1, PERI0IRQ1 is enabled.
6 to 4	TM6IR2 to 0	Interrupt cycle of time base timer select 000: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{7}$ 001: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{8}$ 010: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{9}$ 011: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{10}$ 100: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{12}$ 101: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{13}$ 110: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{14}$ 111: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{15}$
3 to 1	TM6CK3 to 1	Timer 6 clock source select 000: HCLK 001: SYSCLK 010: SCLK 011: Setting prohibited 100: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{13}$ 101: Setting prohibited 110: Time base selection clock × $1/2^{7}$ 111: Setting prohibited
0	TM6CK0	Time base timer clock source select 0: HCLK 1: SCLK

10.3 8-bit Free-running Timer

10.3.1 Operation

■ 8-bit Free-running Timer (Timer 6)

The generation cycle of the timer interrupt should be set in advance by selecting the clock source and setting the compare register (TM6OC). When the binary counter (TM6BC) reaches the setting value of the compare register, an interrupt request is generated at the next count clock and the binary counter is cleared to restart counting up from 0x00.

Table:10.3.1 shows selectable clock sources.

Table:10.3.1 Clock Source at Timer Operation (Timer 6)

Clock source	One count time		
	At f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz	At f_{HCLK} = 4 MHz	At f_{HCLK} = 2 MHz
HCLK	125 ns	250 ns	500 ns
SCLK	30.5 μs		
SYSCLK	250 ns	500 ns	1000 ns
HCLK/2^7	16 μs	32 μs	64 μs
HCLK/2^{13}	1024 μs	2048 μs	4096 μs
SCLK/2^7	3.9 ms		
SCLK/2^{13}	250 ms		
f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz, 4 MHz, 2 MHz f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz f_{SYSCLK} = f_{HCLK}/2			

When SCLK is used as the clock source, the timer counts at "falling edge" of the count clock. When other clock is used, it counts "rising edge" of the count clock.

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 6)

Binary counter counts up with the selected clock source as a count clock.

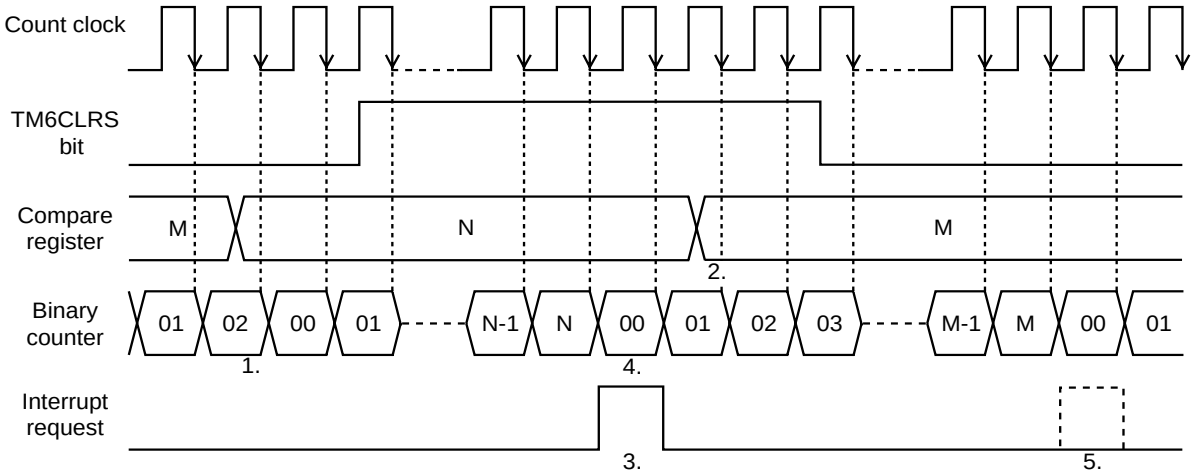


Figure:10.3.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Timer 6)

1. When any data is written to the compare register during the TM6CLRS = 0, the binary counter is cleared to 0x00.
2. Even if any data is written to the compare register during the TM6CLRS = 1, the binary counter is not cleared.
3. When the binary counter reaches the setting value of the compare register during the TM6CLRS = 1, an interrupt request is set at the next count clock.
4. When an interrupt request is set, the binary counter is cleared to 0x00 and restarts counting.
5. Even if the binary counter reaches the setting value of the compare register during the TM6CLRS = 0, no interrupt request is set.

Stop the timer when switching the count clock. If the count clock is changed during counting, the timer doesn't count correctly.

When the timer 6 binary counter (TM6BC) is read on the operation, uncertain value on counting up may be read.

Writing the value to the timer 6 compare register (TM6OC) during counting is prohibited.

The sampled signal of the TM6EN/TBEN bit with the count clock controls start/stop of the binary counter of the timer 6 and the time base timer on this LSI. Therefore, note the following two points:

I. To read the binary counter value after the timer has stopped, set the TM6EN bit to "0", wait for 1 count cycle, and read the value.
When reading the value without waiting for 1 count cycle, use the program to read the value of the binary counter multiple times. In this case, the read value is [count value - 1].

II. When changing the timer setting (clock selection, function switching, etc.), wait for 1 count clock after setting the TM6EN/TBEN bit to "0" to stop the timer. Then, Restart the timer.
If the setting is switched during the timer operation, the timer operation is not guaranteed.

When the binary counter reaches the setting value of the compare register, the interrupt request is set and the binary counter is cleared at the next count clock.
So set the compare register as follows:
the value of compare register setting = (the counts till the interrupt request generation) - 1

If the TM6CLRS bit of the TM6MD register is set to "0", TM6BC can be initialized every time the value of TM6OC register is rewritten. However, in that state, the timer 6 interrupt is disabled. If you use the timer 6 interrupt, set the TM6CLRS bit to "1" after rewriting the value of the TM6OC register.

On the timer 6 clock source selection, if the time base timer output is selected, the clock setup of the time base timer is necessary.

10.3.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup (Timer 6)

The timer 6 generates interrupts regularly for the clock function. Interrupts are generated every 250 dividing (62.5 μs) when selecting SYSCLK (at f_{SYSCLK} = 4 MHz) as a clock source.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Enable the binary counter initialization TM6MD (0x03F7A) bp7: TM6CLRS = 0	(1) Set the TM6CLRS bit of the timer 6 mode register (TM6MD) to "0" to enable the initialization of the timer 6 binary counter (TM6BC).
(2) Disable the interrupt PERI0EN (0x03FDC) bp1: PERI0EN1 = 0	(2) Set the PERI0EN1 bit of the PERI0EN register to "0" to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the clock source TM6MD (0x03F7A) bp3-1: TM6CK3-1 = 001	(3) Set the TM6CK3-1 bits of the TM6MD register to select the clock source. In this case, SYSCLK is selected.
(4) Set the interrupt generation cycle TM6OC (0x03F79) = 0xF9	(4) Set the interrupt generation cycle to the timer 6 compare register (TM6OC). At this time, TM6BC is initialized to 0x00.
(5) Enable the interrupt request generation TM6MD (0x03F7A) bp7: TM6CLRS = 1	(5) Set the TM6CLRS bit of the TM6MD register to "1" to enable the interrupt request generation.
(6) Set the interrupt level PERI0ICR (0x03FFD) bp7-6: PERI0LV1-0 = 01	(6) Set the PERI0LV1-0 bits of the peripheral function group 0 interrupt level control register (PERI0ICR) to select the interrupt level. Clear the corresponding interrupt request bit of PERI0DT register, if it may have already been set. [3.1.5 Set up procedure for Interrupt control register for peripheral function group]
(7) Enable the interrupt PERI0EN (0x03FDC) bp1: PERI0EN1 = 1	(7) Set the PERI0EN1 bit of the PERI0EN register to "1" to enable the interrupt.
(8) Start the TM6 operation TM6BEN (0x03F7C) bp0: TM6EN = 1	(8) Set the TM6EN bit of the TM6BEN register to "1" to start the timer 6.

When TM6OC is set, TM6BC is initialized to 0x00.

When TM6BC value matches the value specified in TM6OC, the timer 6 interrupt request is set at the next count clock and TM6BC is cleared to 0x00 to restart counting.

10.4 Time Base Timer

10.4.1 Operation

■ Time Base Timer (Time Base Timer)

The timer generates interrupts regularly by selecting a clock source and a interrupt generation cycle. Table:10.4.1 shows the interrupt generation cycles on each clock source.

Table:10.4.1 Selection of Time Base Timer Interrupt Generation Cycle

Selected clock source	Interrupt generation cycle	
HCLK	$2^7 \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	16 μs
	$2^8 \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	32 μs
	$2^9 \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	64 μs
	$2^{10} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	128 μs
	$2^{12} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	512 μs
	$2^{13} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	1024 μs
	$2^{14} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	2048 μs
	$2^{15} \times 1/f_{HCLK}$	4096 μs
SCLK	$2^7 \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	3.9 ms
	2^8 x $1/f_{SCLK}$	7.8 ms
	$2^9 \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	15.6 ms
	$2^{10} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	31.3 ms
	$2^{12} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	125 ms
	$2^{13} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	250 ms
	$2^{14} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	500 ms
	$2^{15} \times 1/f_{SCLK}$	1000 ms
f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz, f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz		

■ Count Timing of Timer Operation (Time Base Timer)

The counter counts up with the selected clock source as a counter clock.

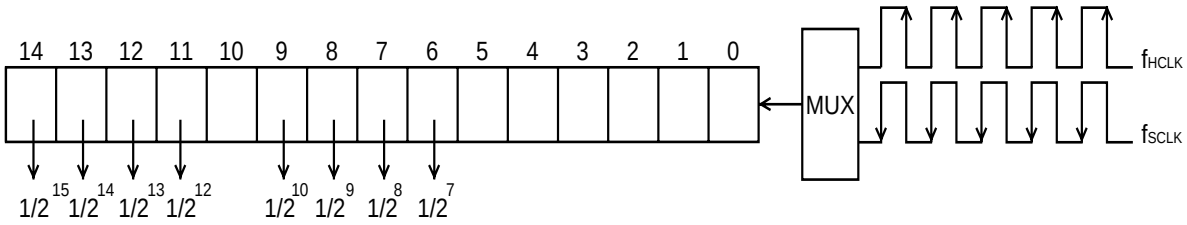


Figure:10.4.1 Count Timing of Timer Operation (Time Base Timer)

- When the selected interrupt cycle elapsed, the time base interrupt request (PERI0DT2) of the peripheral function group 0 interrupt factor register (PERI0DT) is set to "1".

Stop the timer when switching the count clock. If the count clock is changed during counting, the timer doesn't count correctly.

The timer can be initialized by writing an arbitrary value to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR).

10.4.2 Setup Example

■ Timer Operation Setup (Time Base Timer)

The time base timer generates interrupts regularly by selecting a interrupt generation cycle. The interrupt generation cycle is $f_{HCLK} \times 1/2^{13}$ (1.024 ms: f_{HCLK} = 8 MHz).

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the clock source TM6MD (0x03F7A) bp0: TM6CK0 = 0	(1) Select HCLK as a clock source by the TM6CK0 bit of the timer 6 mode register (TM6MD).
(2) Disable the interrupt PERI0EN (0x03FDC) bp2: PERI0EN2 = 0	(2) Set the PERI0EN2 bit of the PERI0EN register to "0" to disable the interrupt.
(3) Select the interrupt generation cycle TM6MD (0x03F7A) bp6-4 :TM6IR2-0 = 101	(3) Set the TM6IR2-0 bits of the TM6MD register to select the specified clock $\times$ $1/2^{13}$ as an interrupt generation cycle.
(4) Initialize the time base timer TBCLR (0x03F7B) = 0x00	(4) Write an arbitrary value to the time base timer clear control register (TBCLR) to initialize the time base timer.
(5) Set the interrupt level PERI0ICR(0x03FEB) bp7-6: G11LV1-0 = 01	(5) Set the PERI0LV1-0 bits of the peripheral function group 0 interrupt level control register (PERI0ICR) to select the interrupt level. Clear the corresponding interrupt request bit of PERI0DT register, if it may have already been set. [3.1.5 Set up procedure for Interrupt control register for peripheral function group]
(6) Enable the interrupt PERI0EN (0x03FDC) bp2: PERI0EN2 = 1	(6) Set the PERI0EN2 bit of the PERI0EN register to "1" to enable the interrupt.
(7) Start the time base timer operation TM6BEN (0x03F7C) bp1: TBEN = 1	(7) Set the TBEN bit of the TM6BEN register to "1" to start the time base timer.

- When the selected interrupt cycle elapsed, the time base interrupt request bit (PERI0DT2) of the interrupt control register for peripheral function Group 0 (PERI0DT) is set to "1".

Chapter 11 RTC Time Base Timer (RTC-TBT)

11

11.1 Overview

RTC time base timer (RTC-TBT) generates 1 Hz clock with SCLK of 32.768 kHz for Real Time Clock (RTC).

11.1.1 Functions

Table:11.1.1 shows the function of RTC-TBT.

Table:11.1.1 RTC-TBT Function

Function	Description
Clock source	SCLK (SOSCCLK or SRCCLK is selected.)
Interrupt	Frequency of RTC-TBT interrupt 1 Hz, 2 Hz, 4 Hz, 8 Hz, 16 Hz, 32 Hz, 64 Hz, 128 Hz (In the case of SCLK of 32.768 kHz)
Adjustment for the 1 Hz clock period	When selecting 32.768 kHz clock, Range: Period of 128 sec: - 488 ppm to + 488 ppm Period of 32 sec: - 1954 ppm to + 1952 ppm Period of 8 sec: - 7813 ppm to + 7805 ppm Period of 2 sec: - 31250 ppm to + 31220 ppm Accuracy: Period of 128 sec: 0.48 ppm Period of 32 sec: 1.92 ppm Period of 8 sec: 7.63 ppm Period of 2 sec: 30.52 ppm

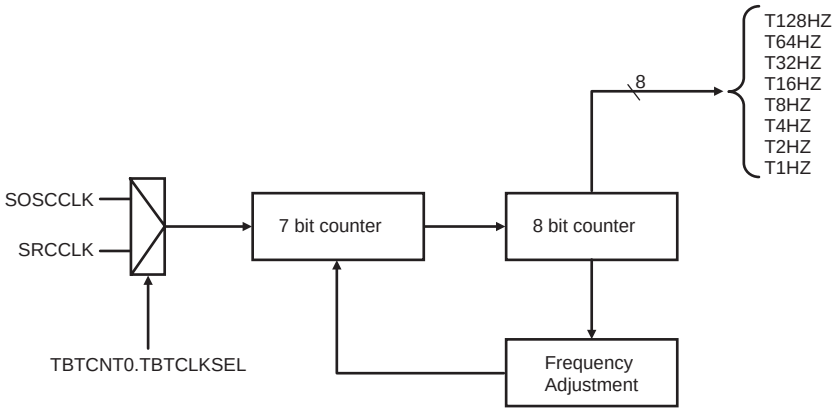


Figure:11.1.1 RTC-TBT Block Diagram

11.2 Control Register

Table:11.2.1 shows registers for controlling RTC-TBT.

Table:11.2.1 Control Register

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
TBTCNT0	0x03EEA	R/W	RTC-TBT control register 0	XI-4
TBTCNT1	0x03EEB	R/W	RTC-TBT control register 1	XI-5
TBTR	0x03EEC	R/W	RTC-TBT register	XI-6
TBTADJL	0x03EEE	R/W	RTC-TBT frequency adjustment register for lower bits	XI-8
TBTADJH	0x03EEF	R/W	RTC-TBT frequency adjustment register for upper bits	XI-8

11.2.1 RTC-TBT Control Register

■ RTC-TBT Control Register 0 (TBTCNT0: 0x03EEA)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TBTCLKSEL	ADJCNT1-0		-	TBTIRQEN	TBTIRQSEL2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TBTCLKSEL	Clock source select for RTC-TBT 0: SOSCCLK 1: SRCCLK
6-5	ADJCNT1-0	Adjustment period select for RTC-TBT 00: 128 sec 01: 32 sec 10: 8 sec 11: 2 sec
4	-	Always read as 0.
3	TBTIRQEN	Interrupt enable for RTC-TBT 0: Disable 1: Enable
2-0	TBTIRQSEL 2-0	Interrupt cycle select for RTC-TBT 000: 128 Hz 001: 64 Hz 010: 32 Hz 011: 16 Hz 100: 8 Hz 101: 4 Hz 110: 2 Hz 111: 1 Hz

■ RTC-TBT Control Register 1 (TBTCNT1: 0x03EEB)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TBTCLKOE	-	-	-	TBTCLKOS3-0			
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	TBTCLKOE	Clock output enable for RTC-TBT 0: Disable 1: Enable
6-4	-	Always read as 0.
3-0	TBTCLKOS 3-0	Clock output select for RTC-TBT 0000: 256 Hz 0001: 128 Hz 0010: 64 Hz 0011: 32 Hz 0100: 16 Hz 0101: 8 Hz 0110: 4 Hz 0111: 2 Hz 1000: 1 Hz

11.2.2 RTC-TBT Register

- RTC-TBT Register (TBTR: 0x03EEC)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	T1HZ	T2HZ	T4HZ	T8HZ	T16HZ	T32HZ	T64HZ	T128HZ
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	T1HZ	T1HZ output of RTC-TBT
6	T2HZ	T2HZ output of RTC-TBT
5	T4HZ	T4HZ output of RTC-TBT
4	T8HZ	T8HZ output of RTC-TBT
3	T16HZ	T16HZ output of RTC-TBT
2	T32HZ	T32HZ output of RTC-TBT
1	T64HZ	T64HZ output of RTC-TBT
0	T128HZ	T128HZ output of RTC-TBT

When reading the TBTR register during the time base timer operation, read the register several times and confirm that those values are same. Otherwise, the indeterminate data during counting up may be read.

11.2.3 RTC-TBT Frequency Adjustment Register

The frequency of T1HZ to T128HZ can be adjusted with the TBTADJL and the TBTADJH.
The following table shows the frequency adjustment rate of T1HZ.

Adjustment value = 128 [sec] × Frequency adjustment rate × 2097152 / Adjustment period [sec] (in decimal)

= Frequency adjustment rate × 0x200000 (in hexadecimal) (At Adjustment period = 128 [sec])

Table:11.2.2 lists the setting value of TBTADJ10-0 and frequency adjustment rate.

Table:11.2.2 Frequency Adjustment Rate (Adjustment period = 128 sec)

TBTADJ10-0											Hexadecimal	Frequency adjustment rate (ppm)
10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0x3FF	+ 487.80
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0x3FE	+ 487.33
0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0x3FD	+ 486.85
:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0x004	+ 1.91
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0x003	+ 1.43
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0x002	+ 0.95
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0x001	+ 0.48
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0x000	0
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0x7FF	- 0.48
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0x7FE	- 0.95
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0x7FD	- 1.43
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0x7FC	- 1.91
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0x7FB	- 2.38
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0x7FA	- 2.86
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0x7F9	- 3.34
:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0x402	- 487.33
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0x401	- 487.80
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0x400	- 488.28

■ Time Base Timer Frequency Adjustment Register for Lower Bits (TBTADJL: 0x03EEE)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TBTADJ7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	TBTADJ7-0	Frequency adjustment setting (lower 8 bits)

■ Time Base Timer Frequency Adjustment Register for Upper Bits (TBTADJH: 0x03EEF)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	TBTADJ10-8		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-3	-	Always read as 0.
2-0	TBTADJ10-8	Frequency adjustment setting (upper 3 bits)

RTC calculates the calendar with the clock generated by RTC-TBT, and therefore the calendar calculation is affected by the frequency adjustment.

11.3 RTC-TBT Operation

11.3.1 RTC-TBT Operation

RTC-TBT counts up at the rising edge of SCLK after the internal reset.
T128HZ, T64HZ, T32HZ, T16HZ, T8HZ, T4HZ and T2HZ bits of the TBTR register are used as RTC-TBT interrupt. The interrupt request is generated at the rising edge of each output.
When writing data to the TBTR register, it is cleared and T128HZ, T64HZ, T32HZ, T16HZ, T8HZ, T4HZ, T2HZ, and T1HZ become "0".

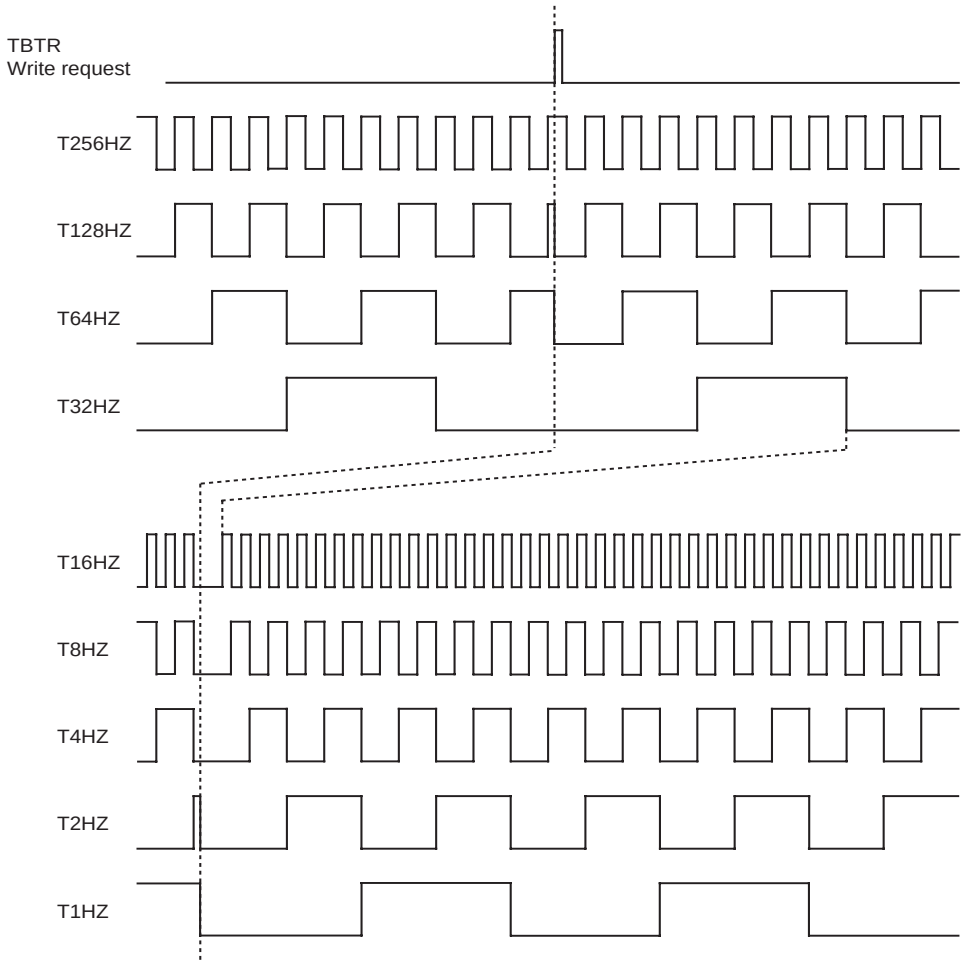


Figure:11.3.1 Output Waveform and clearing time of RTC-TBT

11.3.2 Operation Setting Example

■ Interrupt of RTC-TBT

128-Hz periodic interrupt by RTC-TBT is generated.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Symbol	Description
1	Disable all maskable interrupts	PSW *	Set the MIE bit to "0".
2	Set the interrupt level	PERI0ICR *	Set the PERI0LV1-0 bits to "00". Clear the corresponding interrupt request bit of PERI0DT register, if it may have already been set. Refer to [Chapter 3 3.1.3 Maskable Interrupt Control Register Setup].
3	Set output of RTC-TBT interrupt	TBTCNT0	Set the TBTIRQSEL2-0 bits of TBTCNT0 register to "000".
4	Enable output of RTC-TBT interrupt	TBTCNT0	Set the TBTIRQEN bit of TBTCN0 register to "1".
5	Enable RTC-TBT interrupt	PERI0EN *	Set the PERI0EN3 bit to "1".
6	Enable the maskable interrupt	PSW *	Set the MIE bit to "1".

* For PERI0ICR and PERI0EN, refer to [Chapter 3 Interrupts].
For PSW, refer to [Chapter 2 CPU].

Chapter 12 Real Time Clock (RTC)

12

12.1 Overview

Real Time Clock (RTC) provides the calendar function.

Table:12.1.1 shows functions of RTC.

Table:12.1.1 RTC Function

Function	Description
Clock source	RTC time base timer output (1 Hz)
Time display	Auto calender (years with the last two digits from 00 until 99) Adjustment for leap year (Years ending in "00" and divisible by 4 are set as leap years.) Two time Display mode: 12-hour clock or 24-hour clock.
Periodic interrupt	1/2-second 1-second 1-minute 1-hour
Alarm 0 interrupt	Generated when specified date/hour/minute match.
Alarm 1 interrupt	Generated when specified month/day/hour/minute match.

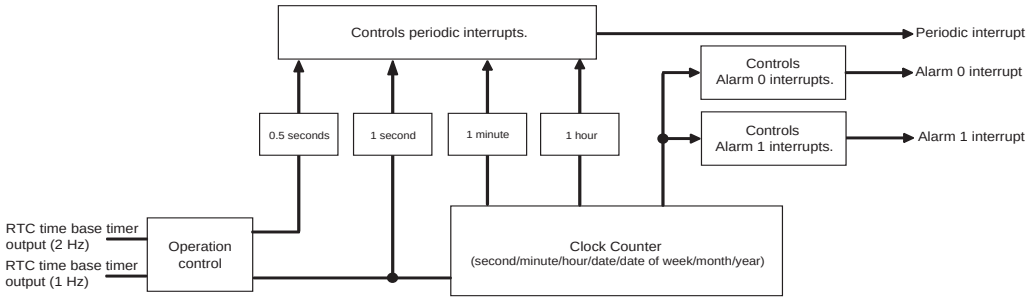


Figure:12.1.1 Block Diagram of RTC

12.2 Control Registers

Table:12.2.1 lists the registers that control RTC.

Table:12.2.1 List of Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
RTCCTR	0x03ED0	R/W	RTC control register	XII-4
RTCAL0IRQ	0x03ED3	R/W	Alarm 0 interrupt control register	XII-5
AL0IRQMI	0x03ED4	R/W	Alarm 0 minutes setting register	XII-5
AL0IRQH	0x03ED5	R/W	Alarm 0 hours setting register	XII-6
AL0IRQW	0x03ED6	R/W	Alarm 0 day of week setting register	XII-6
RTCAL1IRQ	0x03ED7	R/W	Alarm 1 interrupt control register	XII-7
AL1IRQMI	0x03ED8	R/W	Alarm 1 minutes setting register	XII-7
AL1IRQH	0x03ED9	R/W	Alarm 1 hours setting register	XII-8
AL1IRQD	0x03EDA	R/W	Alarm 1 day setting register	XII-8
AL1IRQMO	0x03EDB	R/W	Alarm 1 month setting register	XII-9
RTCCIRQ	0x03ED2	R/W	Periodic interrupt control register	XII-10
RTCSD	0x03EE0	R/W	Seconds setting register	XII-11
RTCMID	0x03EE1	R/W	Minutes setting register	XII-11
RTCHD	0x03EE2	R/W	Hours setting register	XII-12
RTCWD	0x03EE3	R/W	Day of week setting register	XII-12
RTCDD	0x03EE4	R/W	Day setting register	XII-13
RTCMOD	0x03EE5	R/W	Month setting register	XII-13
RTCYD	0x03EE6	R/W	Year setting register	XII-13
RTCSTR	0x03ED1	R	RTC status register	XII-14

12.2.1 RTC Control Register

■ RTC Control Register (RTCCTR: 0x03ED0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	HDMD	CLKEN	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 4	-	Always read as 0.
3	HDMD	Display mode select 0: 24-hour display mode 1: 12-hour display mode
2	CLKEN	RTC operation control 0: Stop 1: Start
1 to 0	-	Always read as 0.

HDMD must not be set when CLKEN is "0".
HDMD and CLKEN must not be set at the same time.

12.2.2 Alarm 0 Interrupt Registers

■ Alarm 0 Interrupt Control Register (RTCAL0IRQ: 0x03ED3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	AL0IRQ SET	-	-	-	AL0IRQ WEN	AL0IRQ HEN	AL0IRQ MIEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	AL0IRQSET	Alarm 0 interrupt control 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
5 to 3	-	Always read as 0.
2	AL0IRQWEN	Alarm 0 "Date" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	AL0IRQHEN	Alarm 0 "Hour" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	AL0IRQMIEN	Alarm 0 "Minute" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable

■ Alarm 0 Minutes Setting Register (AL0IRQMI: 0x03ED4)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	AL0IRQMI6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6 to 0	AL0IRQMI6-0	Alarm 0 "Minute" setting Set a value within the range of "00" to "59" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Alarm 0 Hours Setting Register (AL0IRQH: 0x03ED5)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	AL0IRQH6	AL0IRQH5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	AL0IRQH6	Alarm 0 "AM/PM" setting 0: AM 1: PM * This bit must be set in 12-hour clock mode. In 24-hour clock mode, this bit must be set to "0".
5 to 0	AL0IRQH5-0	Alarm 0 "Hour" setting <24-hour clock mode> Set a value within the range of "00" to "23" using the BCD format. <In 12-hour clock> Set a value within the range of "00" to "11" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Alarm 0 Day of Week Setting Register (AL0IRQW: 0x03ED6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	AL0IRQW2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 3	-	Always read as 0.
2 to 0	AL0IRQW2-0	Alarm 0 "Day of the week" setting 000: Sunday 001: Monday 010: Tuesday 011: Wednesday 100: Thursday 101: Friday 110: Saturday 111: Setting Prohibited

Alarm 0 interrupt is not guaranteed if the prohibited value is set in AL0IRQMI, AL0IRQH, and AL0IRQW.
RTCAL0IRQ, AL0IRQMI, AL0IRQH and AL0IRQW must be set when RTCAL0IRQ.AL0IRQSET is "0".

12.2.3 Alarm 1 Interrupt Registers

■ Alarm 1 Interrupt Control Register (RTCAL1IRQ: 0x03ED7)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	AL1IRQ SET	-	AL1IRQ MOEN	AL1IRQ DEN	-	AL1IRQ HEN	AL1IRQ MIEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6	AL1IRQSET	Alarm 1 interrupt control 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
5	-	Always read as 0.
4	AL1IRQMOEN	Alarm 1 "Month" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	AL1IRQDEN	Alarm 1 "Day" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	-	Always read as 0.
1	AL1IRQHEN	Alarm 1 "Hour" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	AL1IRQMIEN	Alarm 1 "Minute" comparator enable control 0: Disable 1: Enable

■ Alarm 1 Minutes Setting Register (AL1IRQMI: 0x03ED8)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	AL1IRQMI6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6 to 0	AL1IRQMI6-0	Alarm 1 "Minute" setting Set a value within the range of "00" to "59" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Alarm 1 Hours Setting Register (AL1IRQH: 0x03ED9)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	AL1IRQH6	AL1IRQH5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	AL1IRQH6	Alarm 1 "AM/PM" setting 0: AM 1: PM * This bit must be set in 12-hour clock mode. When 24-hour clock mode, this bit must be set to "0".
5 to 0	AL1IRQH5-0	Alarm 1 "Hour" setting <24-hour clock mode> Set a value within the range of "00" to "23" using the BCD format. <In 12-hour clock> Set a value within the range of "00" to "11" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Alarm 1 Day Setting Register (AL1IRQD: 0x03EDA)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	AL1IRQD5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 6	-	Always read as 0.
5 to 0	AL1IRQD5-0	Alarm 1 "Day" setting Set a value within the range of "01" to "31" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Alarm 1 Month Setting Register (AL1IRQMO: 0x03EDB)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	AL1IRQMO4-0				
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 5	-	Always read as 0.
4 to 0	AL1IRQMO4-0	Alarm 1 "Month" setting Set a value within the range of "01" to "12" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

Alarm 1 interrupt is not guaranteed if the prohibited value is set in AL1IRQMI, AL1IRQH, AL1IRQD and AL1IRQW.
RTCAL1IRQ, AL1IRQMI, AL1IRQH, AL1IRQD and AL1IRQW must be set when RTCAL1IRQ.AL1IRQSET is "0".

12.2.4 Periodic Interrupt Control Register

■ Periodic Interrupt Control Register (RTCCIRQ: 0x03ED2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	CIRQHEN	CIRQMIEN	CIRQSEN	CIRQS05EN	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 5	-	Always read as 0.
4	CIRQHEN	Periodic interrupt control (The periodic interrupt is generated every hour) 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	CIRQMIEN	Periodic interrupt control (The periodic interrupt is generated every minute) 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	CIRQSEN	Periodic interrupt control (The periodic interrupt is generated every second) 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	CIRQS05EN	Periodic interrupt control (The periodic interrupt is generated every 1/2 second) 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	-	Always read as "0".

The periodic interrupt of 1/2 or 1 second can occur even when the RTCCTR.CLKEEN is "0", which means that RTC stops.

More than one bit of the CIRQHEN, the CIRQMIEN, the CIRQSEN and the CIRQS05EN must not be set to "1".

12.2.5 Clock Registers

■ Seconds Setting Register (RTCSD: 0x03EE0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	SD6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as "0".
6 to 0	SD6 to 0	"Second" setting Set a value within the range of "00" to "59" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set. * The value is incremented by one from "00" to "59" per second.

■ Minutes Setting Register (RTCMID: 0x03EE1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	MID6-0						
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6 to 0	MID6 to 0	"Minute" setting Set a value within the range of "00" to "59" using the BCD format. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set. * The value is incremented by one from "00" to "59" per minute.

■ Hours Setting Register (RTCHD: 0x03EE2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	HD6	HD5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	-	Always read as 0.
6	HD6	"AM/PM" setting 0: AM 1: PM * In 24-hour clock mode, bit setting of the HD6 is ignored.
5 to 0	HD5 to 0	"Hour" setting <24-hour clock mode> Set a value within the range of "00" to "23" using the BCD format. The value is incremented by one from "00" to "23" per hour. <In 12-hour clock> Set a value within the range of "00" to "11" using the BCD format. The value is incremented by one from "00" to "11" per hour. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Day of Week Setting Register (RTCWD: 0x03EE3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	WD2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 3	-	Always read as 0.
2 to 0	WD2 to 0	"Day of the week" setting 000: Sunday 001: Monday 010: Tuesday 011: Wednesday 100: Thursday 101: Friday 110: Saturday 111: Setting Prohibited * The value is incremented by one from "000" to "110" per day.

■ Day Setting Register (RTCDD: 0x03EE4)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	DD5-0					
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Access	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 6	-	Always read as 0.
5 to 0	DD5 to 0	"Day" setting Set a value within the range of "01" to "31" using the BCD format. * The value is incremented by one from "01" to "31" per day. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Month Setting Register (RTCMOD: 0x03EE5)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	MOD4-0				
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Access	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 5	-	Always read as 0.
4 to 0	MOD4 to 0	"Month" setting Set a value within the range of "01" to "12" using the BCD format. * The value is incremented by one from "01" to "12" per day. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set.

■ Year Setting Register (RTCYD: 0x03EE6)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	YD7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 0	YD7 to 0	"Year" setting Set a value within the range of "00" to "99" using the BCD format. * The value is incremented by one from "00" to "99" per day. * The value which doesn't exist must not be set. * The Year ending in "00" or divisible by 4 is set as a leap year automatically.

12.2.6 RTC Status Register

■ RTC Status Register (RTCSTR: 0x03ED1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	LEAPFL
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7 to 1	-	Always read as 0.
0	LEAPFL	Leap year flag 0: The RTCYD does not show a leap year. 1: The RTCYD shows a leap year.

12.3 RTC Operation

When the RTCCTR.CLKEN is set to "1", RTC starts time counting by using the clock registers described in [12.2.5 Clock Registers]. RTC has two types of interrupts, the periodic interrupt and the alarm interrupt.

The periodic interrupt occurs according to the condition set in the RTCCIRQ.

There are two alarm interrupts, Alarm-0 and Alarm-1.

<Alarm-0 interrupt>

Alarm-0 interrupt occurs when the condition which is defined with the AL0IRQMI, the AL0IRQH and the AL0IRQW matches the calendar counter.
- When the RTCAL0IRQ.AL0IRQSET is "0", Alarm-0 interrupt does not occur.
- When the RTCAL0IRQ.AL0IRQWEN is "0", AL0IRQW is not compared with the calendar calculator.
- When the RTCAL0IRQ.AL0IRQHEN is "0", AL0IRQH is not compared with the calendar calculator.
- When the RTCAL0IRQ.AL0IRQMIEN is "0", AL0IRQMI is not compared with the calendar calculator.

<Alarm-1 interrupt>

Alarm-1 interrupt occurs when the condition which is defined with the AL1IRQMI, the AL1IRQH, the AL1IRQD and the AL1IRQMO matches the calendar counter.
- When the RTCAL1IRQ.AL1IRQSET is "0", Alarm-1 interrupt does not occur.
- When the RTCAL1IRQ.AL1IRQMIEN is "0", AL1IRQMI is not compared with the calendar calculator.
- When the RTCAL1IRQ.AL1IRQHEN is "0", AL1IRQH is not compared with the calendar calculator.
- When the RTCAL1IRQ.AL1IRQDEN is "0", AL1IRQD is not compared with the calendar calculator.
- When the RTCAL1IRQ.AL1IRQMOEN is "0", AL1IRQMO is not compared with the calendar calculator.

12.3.1 Clock Data Reading Procedure

After RTC is activated, the calendar information can be obtained by reading CALENDAR registers described in Chapter 12.2.5. To avoid misreading the calendar information because of the occurrence of the calendar update while reading it, the following procedure (1) or (2) must be performed.

(1) Using 1 second periodic interrupt

In the interrupt handler of 1 second periodic interrupt, read the calendar information.

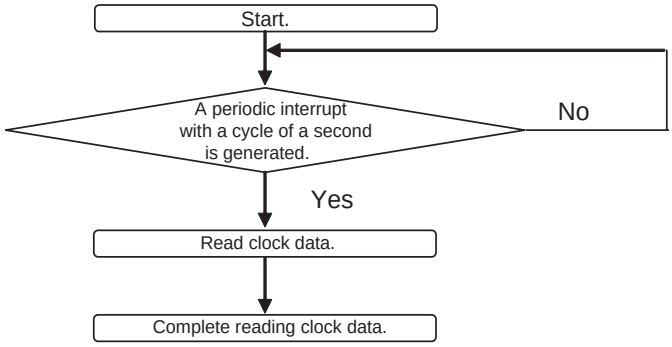


Figure:12.3.1 Clock Data Reading Procedure (1)

(2) Reading the calendar information several times

Reading the calendar information several times until confirming the calendar information is stable.

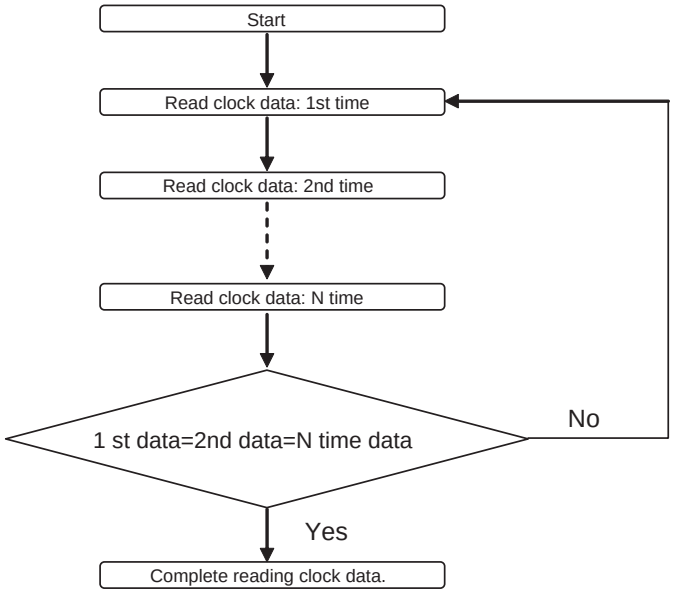


Figure:12.3.2 Clock Data Reading Procedure (2)

12.3.2 Setup Example

■ Periodic Interrupt Setup Example

The following is an example to generate a periodic interrupt with a cycle of a minute with the RTC function. Set the initial time to "01:01:00 (Thursday), April 01, 2010" in 24-hour display mode.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Symbol	Description
1	RTC stops	RTCCTR	Set the CLKEN bit to "0".
2	Periodic interrupt disabled	RTCCIRQ	Set the CIRQMIEN bit to "0".
3	Display mode setting	RTCCTR	Set the HDMD bit to "0".
4	Clock data setting	-	Set the clock data to "01:01:00 (Thursday), April 01, 2010" using the following registers.
		RTCYD	Set it to "0x10".
		RTCMOD	Set it to "0x04".
		RTCDD	Set it to "0x01".
		RTCWD	Set it to "0x04".
		RTCHD	Set it to "0x01".
		RTCMID	Set it to "0x01".
		RTCSD	Set it to "0x00".
5	Periodic interrupt enabled	RTCCIRQ	Set the CIRQMIEN bit to "1".
6	All maskable interrupts disabled	PSW *	Set the MIE bit to "0".
7	Interrupt level setting	PERI0ICR *	Set the PERI0LV1-0 bits to "00". Clear the corresponding interrupt request bit of PERI0DT register, if it may have already been set. Refer to [3.1.5 Set up procedure for Interrupt control register for peripheral function group]
8	Periodic Interrupt enabled	PERI0EN *	Set the PERI0EN4 bit to "1".
9	Maskable interrupts enabled	PSW *	Set the MIE bit to "1".
10	RTC starts	RTCCTR	Set the CLKEN bit to "1". The RTC starts.

* For PSW, refer to [Chapter 2 CPU].
For PERI0ICR and PERI0EN, refer to [Chapter 3 Interrupts].

■ Alarm Interrupt Setup Example

The following is an example to generate the Alarm 0 interrupt at 10:23 on Saturday with the RTC function.
Set the initial time to "01:01:00 (Thursday)" in 24-hour display mode.

The setup procedure and the description of each step are shown below.

Step	Setting	Symbol	Description
1	RTC stops	RTCCTR	Set the CLKEN bit to "0".
2	Alarm interrupt disabled	RTCAL0IRQ	Set the AL0IRQSET bit to "0".
3	Display mode setting	RTCCTR	Set the HDMD bit to "0".
4	Clock data setting	-	Set the clock data to "01:01:00 (Thursday)" using the following registers.
		RTCWD	Set it to "0x04".
		RTCHD	Set it to "0x01".
		RTCMID	Set it to "0x01".
5	Alarm interrupt enabled	RTCAL0IRQ	Set the AL0IRQSET bit to "1".
6	Alarm detection enabled	RTCAL0IRQ	Set the AL0IRQWEN, AL0IRQHEN, and AL0IRQMIEN bits to "1".
7	Alarm time setting	-	Set the alarm time to "10:23 (Saturday)" using the following registers.
		AL0IRQW	Set it to "0x6".
		AL0IRQH	Set it to "0x10".
		AL0IRQMI	Set it to "0x23".
8	All maskable interrupts disabled	PSW *	Set the IE bit to "0".
9	Interrupt level setting	PERI0ICR *	Set the PERI0LV1-0 bits to "00". Clear the corresponding interrupt request bit of PERI0DT register, if it may have already been set. Refer to [3.1.5 Set up procedure for Interrupt control register for peripheral function group]
10	Alarm 0 Interrupt enabled	PERI0EN *	Set the PERI0EN5 bit to "1". Refer to [Chapter 3 Interrupts]
11	Maskable interrupts enabled	PSW *	Set the IE bit to "1".
12	RTC starts	RTCCTR	Set the CLKEN bit to "1". The RTC starts.

* For PSW, refer to [Chapter 2 CPU].
For PERI0ICR and PERI0EN, refer to [Chapter 3 Interrupts]

Chapter 13 Serial Interface

13

13.1 Overview

The LSI has 4 serial interfaces (SCIF0/SCIF1/SCIF2/SCIF3), which support the following types of communication.

Table:13.1.1 Serial Interface Communication Types

	SCIF0, SCIF1	SCIF2, SCIF3
Clock-Synchronous	√	√
UART(Full duplex)	√	-
Multi master IIC	-	√

Table:13.1.2 shows pins used for each SCIF. Each SCIF has two pin groups, Group-A and Group-B.
In this chapter, the suffix of "A" and "B" is omitted to describe functions of SCIF.

Table:13.1.2 Serial Interface Pins

		SCIF0		SCIF1		SCIF2		SCIF3	
Pin group		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Clock synchronous	Data I/O pin	SBO0A (P65)	SBO0B (P36)	SBO1A (P30)	SBO1B (P46)	SBO2A (P42)	SBO2B (P23)	SBO3A (P04)	SBO3B (P52)
	Data input pin	SBI0A (P64)	SBI0B (P35)	SBI1A (P26)	SBI1B (P45)	SBI2A (P41)	SBI2B (P22)	SBI3A (P06)	SBI3B (P51)
	Clock I/O pin	SBT0A (P66)	SBT0B (P37)	SBT1A (P31)	SBT1B (P47)	SBT2A (P43)	SBT2B (P24)	SBT3A (P05)	SBT3B (P53)
	Chip select I/O pin	SBCS0A (P67)	SBCS0B (P40)	SBCS1A (P32)	SBCS1B (P50)	SBCS2A (P44)	SBCS2B (P25)	SBCS3A (P07)	SBCS3B (P54)
Full duplex UART	Data I/O pin	TXD0A (P65)	TXD0B (P36)	TXD1A (P30)	TXD1B (P46)	-	-	-	-
	Data input pin	RXD0A (P64)	RXD0B (P35)	RXD1A (P26)	RXD1B (P45)	-	-	-	-
Multi master IIC	Data I/O pin	-	-	-	-	SDA2A (P42)	SDA2B (P23)	SDA3A (P04)	SDA3B (P52)
	Clock I/O pin	-	-	-	-	SCL2A (P43)	SCL2B (P24)	SCL3A (P05)	SCL3B (P53)

The combination of pins of Group-A and Group-B must not be used.
For example, in SCIF0 Clock-Synchronous communication, the pin combination of SBO0A (Group-A), SBI0A (Group-A), and SBT0B (Group-B) is not be allowed.

13.1.1 Functions

Table:13.1.3, Table:13.1.4, and Table:13.1.5 show the serial interface functions.

Table:13.1.3 Functions of Clock-Synchronous Communication

	SCIF0/SCIF1/SCIF2/SCIF3
Transfer clock	SCIF0/SCIF1: Generated by dividing BRTMn output clock by 1, 8 or 16 SCIF2/SCIF3: Generated by dividing BRTMn output clock by 1
Duty of BRTM output clock	1:1
BRTM count clock	HCLK/2^a (a = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) SCLK/2^b (b = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) SYSCLK/2^c (c = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6)
First transfer bit	MSB-first or LSB-first
Clock polarity & phase selection	√
2/3/4-wire communication	√
Consecutive communication	√
Interrupt	SCnTICR

Table:13.1.4 Functions of UART Communication

	SCIF0/SCIF1
Transfer clock	Generated by dividing BRTMn output clock by 8 or 16
Duty of BRTM output clock	1:1 or 1:N
BRTM count clock	HCLK/2^a (a = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) SCLK/2^b (b = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) SYSCLK/2^c (c = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6)
First transfer bit	MSB-first or LSB-first
Number of transfer bit	7 or 8 bits
Number of Stop bit	1 or 2 bits
Parity bit	0 parity 1 parity Odd parity Even parity
Interrupt	SCnTICR, SCnRICR

Table:13.1.5 Functions of IIC Communication

	SCIF2/SCIF3
Transfer clock	Generated by dividing BRTMn output clock by 8
Duty of BRTM output clock	1:1 or 1:N
BRTM count clock	HCLK/2^a (a = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) SCLK/2^b (b = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8) SYSCLK/2^c (c = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6)
First transfer bit	MSB-first or LSB-first
Address format	7-bit address
General call address	√
Communication mode	Standard mode (100 kHz) High speed mode (400 kHz
Interrupt	SCnTICR, SCnSICR

13.1.2 Block Diagram

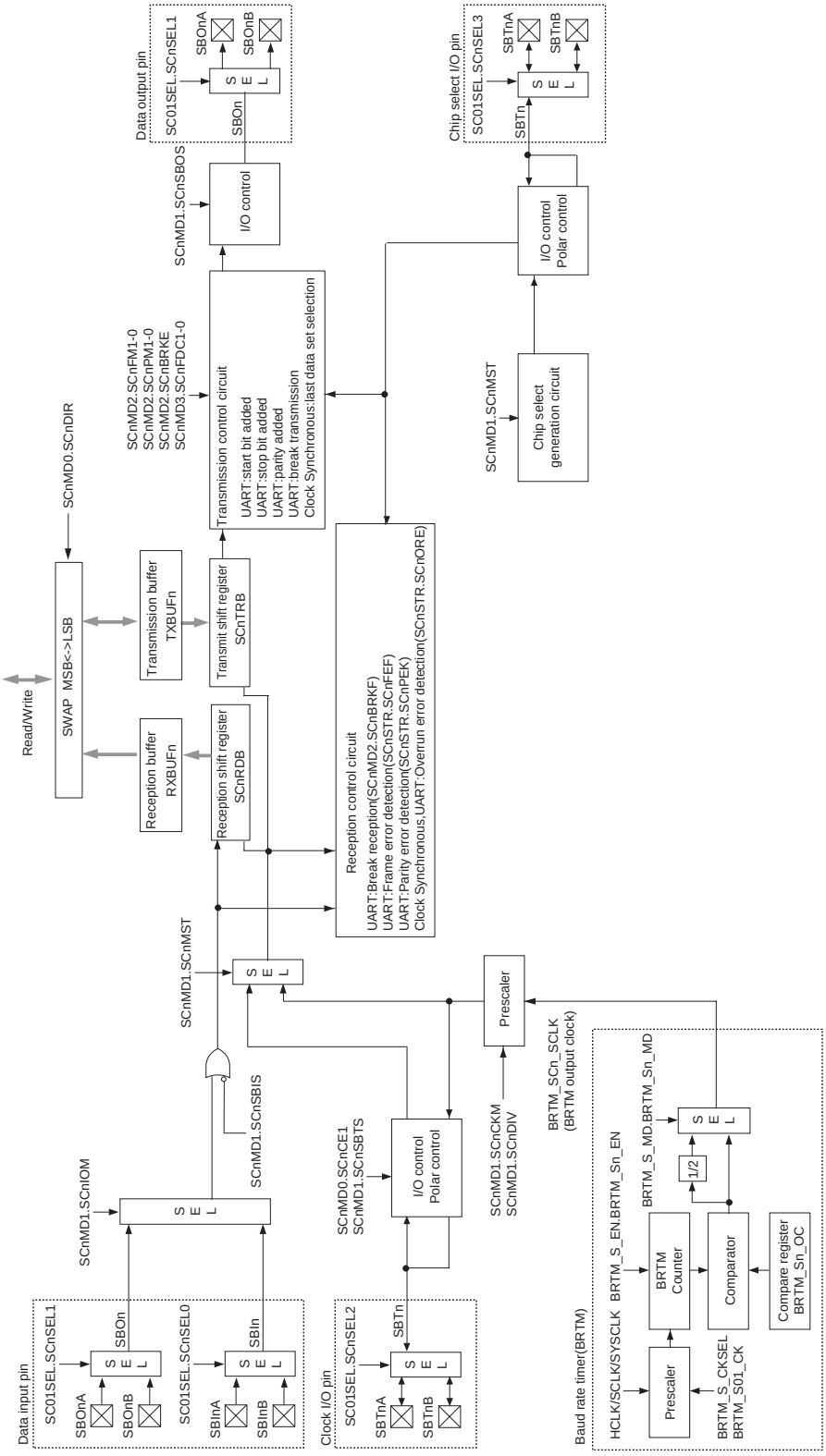


Figure:13.1.1 SCIFn (n = 0, 1) Block Diagram

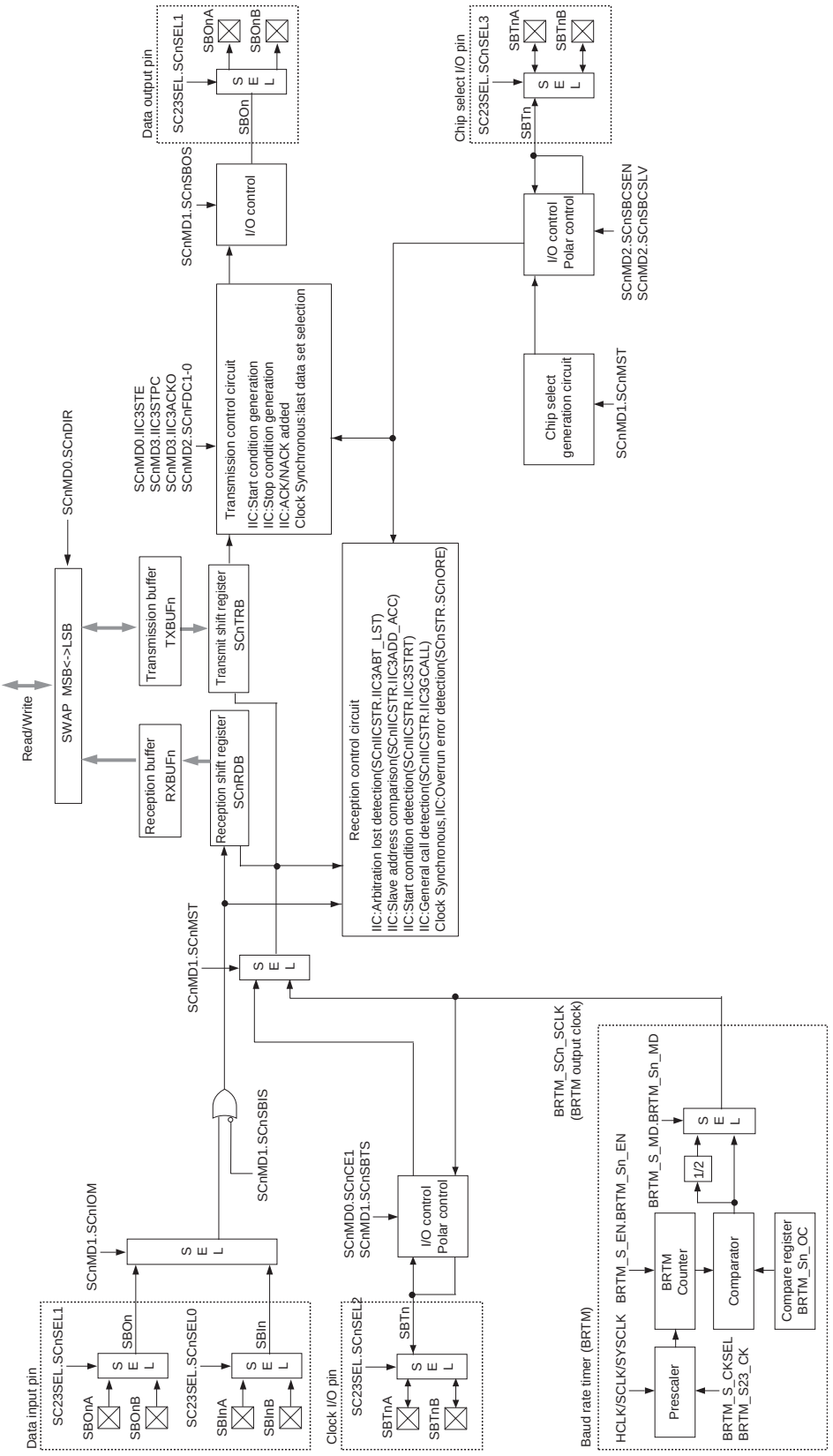


Figure:13.1.2 SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Block Diagram

13.2 Control Registers

Registers of SCIFn and baud rate timer (hereafter indicated as BRTMn) that generates a transfer clock are shown in Table:13.2.1.

13.2.1 Registers

Table:13.2.1 Serial Interface Control Registers

	Register symbol	Address	Access	Register name	Page
SCIF0	SC0MD0	0x03E30	R/W	SCIF0 Mode Register 0	XIII-11
	SC0MD1	0x03E31	R/W	SCIF0 Mode Register 1	XIII-13
	SC0MD2	0x03E32	R/W	SCIF0 Mode Register 2	XIII-15
	SC0MD3	0x03E33	R/W	SCIF0 Mode Register 3	XIII-17
	SC0STR	0x03E34	R	SCIF0 Status Register	XIII-19
	RXBUF0	0x03E35	R	SCIF0 Reception Data Buffer	XIII-10
	TXBUF0	0x03E36	R/W	SCIF0 Transmission Data Buffer	XIII-10
	SC01SEL	0x03F1C	R/W	SCIF01 I/O Pin Switching Control Register	XIII-9
SCIF1	SC1MD0	0x03E40	R/W	SCIF1 Mode Register 0	XIII-11
	SC1MD1	0x03E41	R/W	SCIF1 Mode Register 1	XIII-13
	SC1MD2	0x03E42	R/W	SCIF1 Mode Register 2	XIII-15
	SC1MD3	0x03E43	R/W	SCIF1 Mode Register 3	XIII-17
	SC1STR	0x03E44	R	SCIF1 Status Register	XIII-19
	RXBUF1	0x03E45	R	SCIF1 Reception Data Buffer	XIII-10
	TXBUF1	0x03E46	R/W	SCIF1 Transmission Data Buffer	XIII-10
	SC01SEL	0x03F1C	R/W	SCIF01 I/O Pin Switching Control Register	XIII-9
SCIF2	SC2MD0	0x03E50	R/W	SCIF2 Mode Register 0	XIII-12
	SC2MD1	0x03E51	R/W	SCIF2 Mode Register 1	XIII-14
	SC2MD2	0x03E52	R/W	SCIF2 Mode Register 2	XIII-16
	SC2MD3	0x03E53	R/W	SCIF2 Mode Register 3	XIII-18
	SC2AD	0x03E54	R/W	SCIF2 Address Setting Register	XIII-22
	SC2STR	0x03E56	R/W	SCIF2 Status Register	XIII-20
	SC2IICSTR	0x03E57	R/W	SCIF2 Status Register for IIC dedicated	XIII-21
	RXBUF2	0x03E58	R	SCIF2 Reception Data Buffer	XIII-10
	TXBUF2	0x03E59	R/W	SCIF2 Transmission Data Buffer	XIII-10
	SC23SEL	0x03F1D	R/W	SCIF23 I/O Pin Switching Control Register	XIII-9

	Register symbol	Address	Access	Register name	Page
SCIF3	SC3MD0	0x03E60	R/W	SCIF3 Mode Register 0	XIII-12
	SC3MD1	0x03E61	R/W	SCIF3 Mode Register 1	XIII-14
	SC3MD2	0x03E62	R/W	SCIF3 Mode Register 2	XIII-16
	SC3MD3	0x03E63	R/W	SCIF3 Mode Register 3	XIII-18
	SC3AD	0x03E64	R/W	SCIF3 Address Setting Register	XIII-22
	SC3STR	0x03E66	R/W	SCIF3 Status Register	XIII-20
	SC3IICSTR	0x03E67	R/W	SCIF3 Status Register for IIC dedicated	XIII-21
	RXBUF3	0x03E68	R	SCIF3 Reception Data Buffer	XIII-10
	TXBUF3	0x03E69	R/W	SCIF3 Transmission Data Buffer	XIII-10
	SC23SEL	0x03F1D	R/W	SCIF23 I/O Pin Switching Control Register	XIII-9
BRTM	BRTM_S_MD	0x03E70	R/W	BRTM Operation Mode Setting Register	XIII-22
	BRTM_S_EN	0x03E71	R/W	BRTM Enable Register	XIII-23
	BRTM_S_CKSEL	0x03E72	R/W	BRTM Base Count Clock Selection Register	XIII-24
	BRTM_S01_CK	0x03E74	R/W	BRTM 01 Count Clock Selection Register	XIII-25
	BRTM_S23_CK	0x03E75	R/W	BRTM 23 Count Clock Selection Register	XIII-26
	BRTM_S0_OC	0x03E78	R/W	BRTM 0 Compare Register	XIII-27
	BRTM_S1_OC	0x03E79	R/W	BRTM 1 Compare Register	XIII-27
	BRTM_S2_OC	0x03E7A	R/W	BRTM 2 Compare Register	XIII-27
	BRTM_S3_OC	0x03E7B	R/W	BRTM 3 Compare Register	XIII-27

R/W: Readable/Writable
R: Read only

In Clock-Synchronous communication, SCIFn (n = 0, 1) mode registers (SCnMD0-3) must be changed during serial reset of SCIFn. In UART communication, SCIFn (n = 0, 1) mode registers (SCnMD0-3 other than SCnMD2.SCnBRKE) must be changed during the serial reset of SCIFn.

SCIFn (n = 2, 3) mode registers (SCnMD0-3 other than SCnMD0.IIC3STE, SCnMD3.IIC3STPC, SCnMD3.IIC3REX, and SCnMD3.IIC3ACKO) must be changed during the serial reset of SCIFn.

BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_EN must be changed during the serial reset of SCIFn.
The following registers must be changed while BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_EN is "0".
BRTM_S_MD.BRTM_Sn_MD, BRTM_S_CKSEL.BRTM_Sn_CKSEL, BRTM_Sn_OC, BRTM_Sn_CK3-0 of BRTM_S01_CK and BRTM_Sn_CK3-0 of BRTM_S23_CK.

13.2.2 Input/Output Pin Control Register

■ SCIF01 I/O Pin Switching Control Register (SC01SEL)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SC1SEL3	SC1SEL2	SC1SEL1	SC1SEL0	SC0SEL3	SC0SEL2	SC0SEL1	SC0SEL0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	SC1SEL3-0	SCIF1 pin group selection 0000: SBCS1A/SBT1A/SBO1A(TXD1A)/SBI1A(RXD1A) 1111: SBCS1B/SBT1B/SBO1B(TXD1B)/SBI1B(RXD1B) *Setting other value is prohibited.
3-0	SC0SEL3-0	SCIF0 pin group selection 0000: SBCS0A/SBT0A/SBO0A(TXD0A)/SBI0A(RXD0A) 1111: SBCS0B/SBT0B/SBO0B(TXD0B)/SBI0B(RXD0B) *Setting other value is prohibited.

■ SCIF23 I/O Pin Switching Control Register (SC23SEL)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SC3SEL3	SC3SEL2	SC3SEL1	SC3SEL0	SC2SEL3	SC2SEL2	SC2SEL1	SC2SEL0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	SC3SEL3-0	SCIF3 pin group selection 0000: SBCS3A/SBT3A(SCL3A)/SBO3A(SDA3A)/SBI3A 1111: SBCS3B/SBT3B(SCL3B)/SBO3B(SDA3B)/SBI3B *Setting other value is prohibited.
3-0	SC2SEL3-0	SCIF2 pin group selection 0000: SBCS2A/SBT2A(SCL2A)/SBO2A(SDA2A)/SBI2A 1111: SBCS2B/SBT2B(SCL2B)/SBO2B(SDA2B)/SBI2B *Setting other value is prohibited.

13.2.3 Receive Data Buffer

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3) Reception Data Buffer (RXBUF0, RXBUF1, RXBUF2, RXBUF3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	RXBUFn7	RXBUFn6	RXBUFn5	RXBUFn4	RXBUFn3	RXBUFn2	RXBUFn1	RXBUFn0
Initial value	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	RXBUFn7-0	Received data is stored.

13.2.4 Transmit Data Buffer

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3) Transmission Data Buffer (TXBUF0, TXBUF1, TXBUF2, TXBUF3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	TXBUFn7	TXBUFn6	TXBUFn5	TXBUFn4	TXBUFn3	TXBUFn2	TXBUFn1	TXBUFn0
Initial value	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	TXBUFn7-0	Set the data to be transmitted.

13.2.5 Mode Register

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1) Mode Register 0 (SC0MD0, SC1MD0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnCE1	Reserved	SCnCTM	SCnDIR	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCnCE1	Clock polarity selection 0: Initial value "High" 1: Initial value "Low"
6	Reserved	Always set to "0"
5	SCnCTM	Communication mode selection 0: Single byte communication 1: Consecutive byte communication
4	SCnDIR	Transfer bit selection 0: MSB-first 1: LSB-first
3-0	Reserved	Always set "0111"

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Mode Register 0 (SC2MD0, SC3MD0)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnCE1	SCnCTM	IIC3DEM	IIC3DIR	IIC3STE	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCnCE1	Clock polarity selection 0: Initial value "High" 1: Initial value "Low"
6	SCnCTM	Communication mode selection 0: Single byte communication 1: Consecutive byte communication
5	IIC3DEM	Always set to "0"
4	SCnDIR	Transfer bit selection 0: MSB-first 1: LSB-first
3	IIC3STE	Start condition selection (Selectable only in IIC communication, always set to "0 in Clock-Synchronous communication) 0: Disable 1: Enable
2-0	Reserved	Always set "111"

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1) Mode Register 1 (SC0MD1, SC1MD1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnIOM	SCnSBTS	SCnSBIS	SCnSBOS	SCnCKM	SCnMST	SCnDIV	SCnCMD
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCnIOM	Data input pin selection 0: SBIn 1: SBOn
6	SCnSBTS	SBTn function control 0: Disable 1: Enable (Input or Output transfer clock)
5	SCnSBIS	SBIn function control 0: Disable ("1" fixed input) 1: Enable (Serial data input)
4	SCnSBOS	SBOn function control 0: Disable 1: Enable (Serial data output)
3	SCnCKM	BRTM output clock division control 0: Not divided 1: Divided
2	SCnMST	Clock master/salve selection 0: Clock slave 1: Clock master
1	SCnDIV	Division ratio of BRTM output clock 0: Divided by 8 1: Divided by 16
0	SCnCMD	Communication mode selection 0: Clock-Synchronous communication 1: UART communication

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Mode Register 1 (SC2MD1, SC3MD1)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnIOM	SCnSBTS	SCnSBIS	SCnSBOS	SCnIFS	SCnMST	-	-
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCnIOM	Data input pin selection 0: SBIn 1: SBOn
6	SCnSBTS	SBTn function control 0: Disable 1: Enable (Input or Output transfer clock)
5	SCnSBIS	Serial input control selection 0: Disable ("1" fixed input) 1: Enable (Serial data input)
4	SCnSBOS	SBOn function selection 0: Disable 1: Enable (Serial data output)
3	SCnIFS	Interrupt trigger selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, and always set "0" in IIC communication.) 0: Communication completion interrupt 1: TXBUFn empty interrupt
2	SCnMST	Clock master/salve selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, and always set "1" in IIC communication.) 0: Clock slave 1: Clock master
1-0	-	"0" is always read out.

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1) Mode Register 2 (SC0MD2, SC1MD2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnFM1	SCnFM0	SCnPM1	SCnPM0	SCnNPE	SCnIFS	SCnBRKF	SCnBRKE
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	SCnFM1-0	UART Frame mode specification 00: Data 7 bit + stop 1 bit 01: Data 7 bit + stop 2 bit 10: Data 8 bit + stop 1 bit 11: Data 8 bit + stop 2 bit
5-4	SCnPM1-0	UART parity bit selection At transmission / At reception 00: Add "0" parity / 00: Check "0" parity 01: Add "1" parity / 01: Check "1" parity 10: Add "odd" parity / 10: Check "odd" parity 11: Add "even" parity / 11: Check "even" parity
3	SCnNPE	UART Parity addition enable control 0: Enabled 1: Disabled
2	SCnIFS	Interrupt trigger selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, and always set "0" in UART communication.) 0: Communication completion interrupt 1: TXBUFn empty interrupt
1	SCnBRKF	UART Break reception monitor 0: Data reception 1: Break reception
0	SCnBRKE	UART Break transmission control 0: Data transmission 1: Break transmission

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Mode Register 2 (SC2MD2, SC3MD2)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnFDC1	SCnFDC0	SCnRSTN	-	SCnCKPH	SCnSBCSEN	SCnSBCSLV	-
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	SCnFDC1-0	Output level selection after the final bit of SBOn is transmitted 00: Fixed at "1" (High) output 01: Hold the final data 10: Fixed at "0" (Low) output 11: Setting prohibit
5	SCnRSTN	Serial reset control 0:Reset 1:Reset release
4	-	"0" is always read out.
3	SCnCKPH	Clock phase selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, always set "0" in IIC communication.) 0: Data transmission at leading edge, data reception at trailing edge 1: Data reception at leading edge, data transmission at trailing edge
2	SCnSBCSEN	SBCSn function selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, always set "0" in IIC communication.) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled (Chip select I/O)
1	SCnSBCSLV	SBCSn polarity selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, and always set "0" in IIC communication.) 0: Active-low 1: Active-high
0	-	"0" is always read out.

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1) Mode Register 3 (SC0MD3, SC1MD3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnFDC1	SCnFDC0	SCnRSTN	SCnRSRN	SCnCKPH	SCnSBCSEN	SCnSBCSLV	-
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	SCnFDC1-0	Output level selection after the final bit of SBOn is transmitted 00: Fixed at "1" (High) output 01: Hold the final data 10: Fixed at "0" (Low) output 11: Setting prohibit
5	SCnRSTN	Serial reset control in Clock-Synchronous communication 0: Reset 1: Reset release
		Serial reset control in UART transmission 0: Reset 1: Reset release
4	SCnRSRN	Always set to "0 in Clock-Synchronous communication
		Serial reset control in UART reception 0: Reset 1: Reset release
3	SCnCKPH	Clock phase selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, Always set "0" in IIC communication.) 0: Data transmission at leading edge, data reception at trailing edge 1: Data reception at leading edge, data transmission at trailing edge
2	SCnSBCSEN	SBCSn function selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, Always set "0" in UART communication.) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled (Chip select I/O)
1	SCnSBCSLV	SBCSn polarity selection (Selectable only in Clock-Synchronous communication, Always set "0" in UART communication.) 0: Active-low 1: Active-high
0	-	"0" is always read out.

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Mode Register 3 (SC2MD3, SC3MD3)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	Reserved	Reserved	IIC3STPC	IIC3TMD	IIC3REX	SCnCMD	IIC3ACKS	IIC3ACKO
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	Reserved	Always set to "0"
5	IIC3STPC	IIC stop condition generation 0: None 1: Generate stop condition
4	IIC3TMD	IIC communication mode 0: Standard mode 1: High-speed mode
3	IIC3REX	Selection of Transmission/reception in master communication 0: Transmission mode 1: Reception mode
2	SCnCMD	Communication mode selection 0: Clock-Synchronous communication 1: IIC communication
1	IIC3ACKS	Always set "1".
0	IIC3ACKO	ACK/NACK detection (when IIC3REX is "0".) 0: ACK detected 1: NACK detected ACK/NACKACK bit level selection (*1)(when IIC3REX is "1".) 0: ACK transmission 1: NACK transmission

The readout value of IIC3STPC can be different from the value that is written to the bit in advance since IIC3STPC is cleared to "0" by hardware after the stop condition is generated. To avoid rewriting a value of IIC3STPC, be sure not to set the SCnMD3 (n = 2, 3) with read-modify-write instructions such as BSET or BCLR.

*1 When reception mode (IIC3REX bit = 1), IIC3ACKO cannot be read out.

13.2.6 Status Register

■ SCIFn (n = 0, 1) Status Register (SC0STR, SC1STR)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnTBSY	SCnRBSY	SCnTEMP	SCnREMP	SCnFEF	SCnPEK	SCnORE	SCnERE
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCnTBSY	Data transmission state 0: IDLE 1: During transmission
6	SCnRBSY	Data reception state 0: IDLE 1: During reception
5	SCnTEMP	Transmission data buffer empty detection 0: Detected 1: Not detected
4	SCnREMP	Reception data buffer empty detection 0: Detected 1: Not detected
3	SCnFEF	UART frame error detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
2	SCnPEK	UART parity error detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
1	SCnORE	Overrun error detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
0	SCnERE	Error detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Status Register (SC2STR, SC3STR)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SCnTBSY	-	SCnTEMP	SCnREMP	-	-	-	SCnORE
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	SCnTBSY	Data transmission state in Clock-Synchronous communication 0: IDLE 1: During transmission
6	-	"0" is always read out.
5	SCnTEMP	Transmission data buffer empty detection 0: detected 1: Not detected
4	SCnREMP	Reception data buffer empty detection 0: detected 1: Not detected
3-1	-	"0" is always read out.
0	SCnORE	Overrun error detection 0: Not detected 1: detected

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Status Register for IIC (SC2IICSTR, SC3IICSTR)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	IIC3WRS	IIC3ABT_LST	IIC3ADD_ACC	IIC3STRT	IIC3BUSBSY	Reserved	IIC3GCALL	IIC3DATA_ERR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R	R	R	R	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	IIC3WRS	Transmission/reception mode in slave communication 0: Reception mode 1: Transmission mode
6	IIC3ABT_LST	Arbitration lost detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
5	IIC3ADD_ACC	Slave address match detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
4	IIC3STRT	Start condition detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
3	IIC3BUSBSY	Bus busy detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
2	Reserved	"x (undefined value) " is always read out.
1	IIC3GCALL	General call detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected
0	IIC3DATA_ERR	Communication error detection 0: Not detected 1: Detected

When writing "1" to IIC3ABT_LST, it is not changed.
When writing "0" to IIC3ABT_LST, it is cleared to "0".

When writing "1" to IIC3DATA_ERR, it is not changed.
When writing "0" to IIC3DATA_ERR, it is cleared to "0".

When detecting the General-call address, ACK bit is always sent to the IIC master.
IIC3GCALL is valid only when the interrupt caused by the reception of the General-call address occurs.

13.2.7 Address Setting Register

■ SCIFn (n = 2, 3) Address Setting Register (SC2AD, SC3AD)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	IIC3AD7	IIC3AD6	IIC3AD5	IIC3AD4	IIC3AD3	IIC3AD2	IIC3AD1	IIC3AD0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

13.2.8 BRTM Operation Mode Setting Register

■ BRTM Operation Mode Setting Register (BRTM_S_MD)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	BRTM_S3_MD	BRTM_S2_MD	BRTM_S1_MD	BRTM_S0_MD
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	"0" is always read out
3	BRTM_S3_MD	Duty mode of BRTM3 output clock 0: 1:1 1: 1:N
2	BRTM_S2_MD	Duty mode of BRTM2 output clock 0: 1:1 1: 1:N
1	BRTM_S1_MD	Duty mode of BRTM1 output clock 0: 1:1 1: 1:N
0	BRTM_S0_MD	Duty mode of BRTM0 output clock 0: 1:1 1: 1:N

1:1 Duty mode	The period is "2 × (N+1) × Count Clock Period".
1:N Duty mode	The Period is "(N+1) × Count Clock Period". (However, "N = 0" is excluded.)

"N" is the value of BRTM_Sn_OC.

13.2.9 BRTM Operation Enable Register

■ BRTM Operation Enable Register (BRTM_S_EN)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	BRTM_S3_EN	BRTM_S2_EN	BRTM_S1_EN	BRTM_S0_EN
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	"0" is always read out.
3	BRTM_S3_EN	BRTM3 count operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	BRTM_S2_EN	BRTM2 count operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
1	BRTM_S1_EN	BRTM1 count operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
0	BRTM_S0_EN	BRTM0 count operation 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

13.2.10 BRTM Clock Select Register

■ BRTM Base Clock Select Register (BRTM_S_CKSEL)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	BRTM_ S3_CKSEL	BRTM_ S2_CKSEL	BRTM_ S1_CKSEL	BRTM_ S0_CKSEL
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	-	"0" is always read out
3	BRTM_S3_CKSEL	BRTM3 base clock 0: HCLK 1: SCLK
2	BRTM_S2_CKSEL	BRTM2 base clock 0: HCLK 1: SCLK
1	BRTM_S1_CKSEL	BRTM1 base clock 0: HCLK 1: SCLK
0	BRTM_S0_CKSEL	BRTM0 base clock 0: HCLK 1: SCLK

■ BRTM01 Count Clock Select Register (BRTM_S01_CK)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	BRTM_S1_CK3	BRTM_S1_CK2	BRTM_S1_CK1	BRTM_S1_CK0	BRTM_S0_CK3	BRTM_S0_CK2	BRTM_S0_CK1	BRTM_S0_CK0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	BRTM_S1_CK3-0	BRTM1 count clock selection 0000: BRT1SCLK 0001: BRT1SCLK/2 0010: BRT1SCLK/4 0011: BRT1SCLK/8 0100: BRT1SCLK/16 0101: BRT1SCLK/32 0110: BRT1SCLK/64 0111: BRT1SCLK/128 1000: BRT1SCLK/256 1001: SYSCLK 1010: SYSCLK/2 1011: SYSCLK/4 1100: SYSCLK/8 1101: SYSCLK/16 1110: SYSCLK/32 1111: SYSCLK/64 *BRT1SCLK is the clock selected with BRTM_S_CKSEL.BRTM_S1_CKSEL
3-0	BRTM_S0_CK3-0	BRTM0 count clock selection 0000: BRT0SCLK 0001: BRT0SCLK/2 0010: BRT0SCLK/4 0011: BRT0SCLK/8 0100: BRT0SCLK/16 0101: BRT0SCLK/32 0110: BRT0SCLK/64 0111: BRT0SCLK/128 1000: BRT0SCLK/256 1001: SYSCLK 1010: SYSCLK/2 1011: SYSCLK/4 1100: SYSCLK/8 1101: SYSCLK/16 1110: SYSCLK/32 1111: SYSCLK/64 *BRT0SCLK is the clock selected with BRTM_S_CKSEL.BRTM_S0_CKSEL

■ BRTM23 Count Clock Select Register (BRTM_S23_CK)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	BRTM_S3_CK3	BRTM_S3_CK2	BRTM_S3_CK1	BRTM_S3_CK0	BRTM_S2_CK3	BRTM_S2_CK2	BRTM_S2_CK1	BRTM_S2_CK0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-4	BRTM_S3_CK3-0	BRTM3 count clock selection 0000: BRT3SCLK 0001: BRT3SCLK/2 0010: BRT3SCLK/4 0011: BRT3SCLK/8 0100: BRT3SCLK/16 0101: BRT3SCLK/32 0110: BRT3SCLK/64 0111: BRT3SCLK/128 1000: BRT3SCLK/256 1001: SYSCLK 1010: SYSCLK/2 1011: SYSCLK/4 1100: SYSCLK/8 1101: SYSCLK/16 1110: SYSCLK/32 1111: SYSCLK/64 *BRT3SCLK is the clock selected with BRTM_S_CKSEL.BRTM_S3_CKSEL
3-0	BRTM_S2_CK3-0	BRTM2 count clock selection 0000: BRT2SCLK 0001: BRT2SCLK/2 0010: BRT2SCLK/4 0011: BRT2SCLK/8 0100: BRT2SCLK/16 0101: BRT2SCLK/32 0110: BRT2SCLK/64 0111: BRT2SCLK/128 1000: BRT2SCLK/256 1001: SYSCLK 1010: SYSCLK/2 1011: SYSCLK/4 1100: SYSCLK/8 1101: SYSCLK/16 1110: SYSCLK/32 1111: SYSCLK/64 *BRT2SCLK is the clock selected with BRTM_S_CKSEL.BRTM_S2_CKSEL

13.2.11 BRTM Compare Register

- BRTMn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3) Compare Register
  (BRTM_S0_OC, BRTM_S1_OC, BRTM_S2_OC, BRTM_S3_OC)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	BRTM_Sn_OC7	BRTM_Sn_OC6	BRTM_Sn_OC5	BRTM_Sn_OC4	BRTM_Sn_OC3	BRTM_Sn_OC2	BRTM_Sn_OC1	BRTM_Sn_OC0
Initial value	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	BRTM_Sn_OC7-0	BRTMn compare register

13.3 Clock-Synchronous Communication

This section describes the Clock-Synchronous communication. The index "n" of serial interface (SCIF) denotes "n = 0, 1, 2, 3", unless otherwise noted.

When communicating with Clock-Synchronous by using SCIFn (n = 0, 1), set SCnMD1.SCnCMD to "0".
When communicating with Clock-Synchronous by using SCIFn (n = 2, 3), set SCnMD3.SCnCMD to "0".

13.3.1 Form

- 2-wire Communication

Data transmission or reception is executed with a clock pin (SBTn) and a data pin (SBOn or SBIn).
SBOn can be used for data transmission and reception. SBIn is used only for data reception.

- 3-wire Communication

Data transmission and reception are executed with 3 pins (SBTn, SBOn and SBIn).
SBOn and SBIn are used for data transmission and reception, respectively.

- 4-wire Communication

Data transmission and reception are executed with 3 pins of 3-wire communication and a chip select pin (SBCSn).

13.3.2 Operation

■ Initialization (Serial Reset)

SCIFn has a built-in serial reset function for abnormal operation.
Registers other than TXBUFn must be changed during the serial reset of SCIFn.
The way of serial reset is as follows.

SCIFn (n = 0, 1): SCnMD2.SCnBRKF and SCnSTR are initialized by setting SCnMD3.SCnRSTN to "0".
SCIFn (n = 2, 3): SCnSTR and SCnIICSTR are initialized by setting SCnMD2.SC3RSTN to "0".

■ Pin Settings

(1) To use the data pins (SBOn/SBIn), the following settings are required.

<2-wire communication>
At data reception: Set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS to "1" and SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "0".
At data transmission: Set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS to "0" and SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "1".

<3-wire communication>
Set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS and SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "1". (SCnIOM must be set to "0".)

(2) To use the clock pin (SBTn), the following setting is required.

At master (SCnMD1.SCnMST is "1"): the communication clock outputs from SBTn.
At slave (SCnMD1.SCnMST is "0"): input the communication clock to SBTn.

(3) In 4-wire communication, the following setting of the chip select pin (SBCSn) is required.

SCIFn (n = 0, 1): Set SCnMD3.SCnSBCSEN to "1" and select the direction SCnMD3.SCnSBCSLV.
SCIFn (n = 2, 3): Set SCnMD2.SCnSBCSEN to "1" and select the direction SCnMD2.SCnSBCSLV.

When the LSI is a master, the chip select signal outputs from SBCSn.
When the LSI is a slave, the input signal to SBTn is masked and SBOn is high impedance state while chip select signal input to SBCSn is negated.

In time-division 2-wire communication with SBOn, be careful to prevent data collision at SBOn.

When the LSI only send data (not receive data), set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS to "0".
When the LSI only receive data (not send data), set SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "0".

■ Setting of Transfer Clock (SCnCLK)

SCIFn (n = 0, 1) operates with SCnCLK which is generated based on BRTM output clock (BRTM_SCnCLK).
When SCnMD1.SCnCKM is "0", SCnCLK is the same as BRTM_SCnCLK.
When SCnMD1.SCnCKM is "1", SCnCLK is as follows:
When SCnMD1.SCnDIV is "0", SCnCLK is BRTM_SCnCLK divided by 8.
When SCnMD1.SCnDIV is "1", SCnCLK is BRTM_SCnCLK divided by 16.

SCnCLK of SCIF (n = 2, 3) is the same as BRTM_SCnCLK.

When the LSI is a master, SCnCLK is output from SBTn as a transfer clock.
When the LSI is a slave, set the frequency of SCnCLK to the value faster than the transfer clock's and as close to the transfer clock's as possible.

■ Generating Baud Rate Timer Output Clock (BRTM_SCnCLK)

SCIFn has a dedicated Baud Rate Timer (BRTMn).
Select a count clock for BRTMn with BRTM_S_CKSEL, BRTM_S01_CK, and BRTM_S23_CK.

When BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_EN is set to "1", the binary counter of BRTMn (BRTM_Sn_BC) starts counting up. When BRTM_Sn_BC becomes equal to BRTM_Sn_OC, BRTM_Sn_BC is cleared at the next count clock and restarts counting up.

While the duty of BRTM_SCnCLK is "1:1" (BRTM_S_MD.BRTM_Sn_MD is "0"), the cycle and operation of BRTMn are shown in the figure below.

BRTM_SnCLK Cycle = 2 × (N + 1) × Count Clock Cycle (N: Setting value of BRTM_Sn_OC)

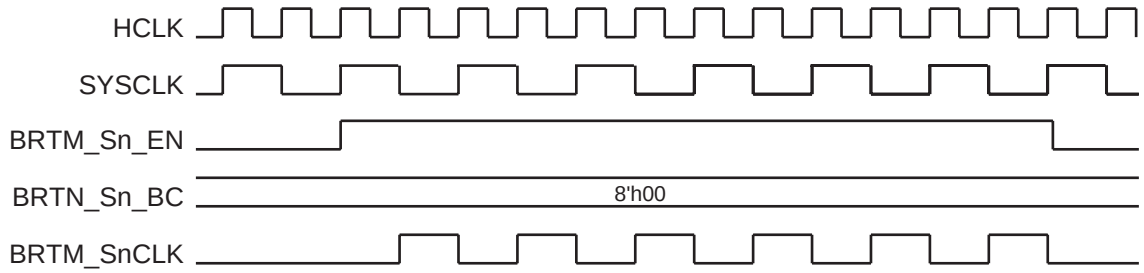


Figure:13.3.1 BRTMn Count Operation (Duty: 1:1, Count Clock: HCLK, N: 0x00)

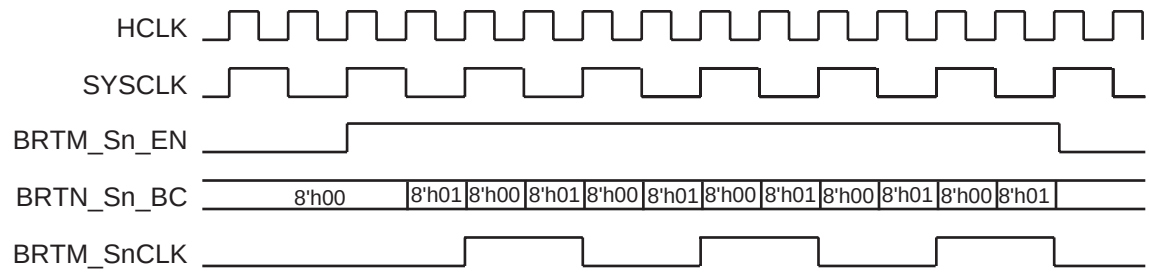


Figure:13.3.2 BRTMn Count Operation (Duty: 1:1, Count Clock: HCLK, N: 0x01)

While the duty is "1:N" (BRTM_S_MD.BRTM_Sn_MD = 1), the cycle and operation of BRTMn are shown in the figure below.

BRTM_SnCLK Cycle = (N + 1) × Count Clock Cycle
(N: Setting value of BRTM_Sn_OC, The setting of N = 0x00 is disabled.)

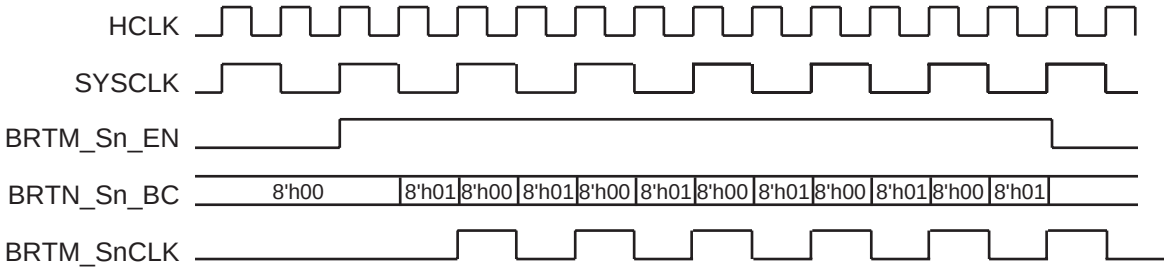


Figure:13.3.3 BRTMn Count Operation (Duty: 1:N, Count Clock: HCLK, N: 0x01)

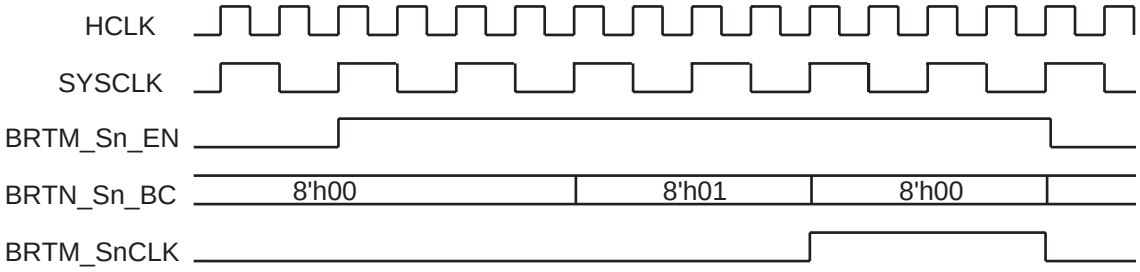


Figure:13.3.4 BRTMn Count Operation (Duty: 1:N, Count Clock: HCLK/4, N: 0x01)

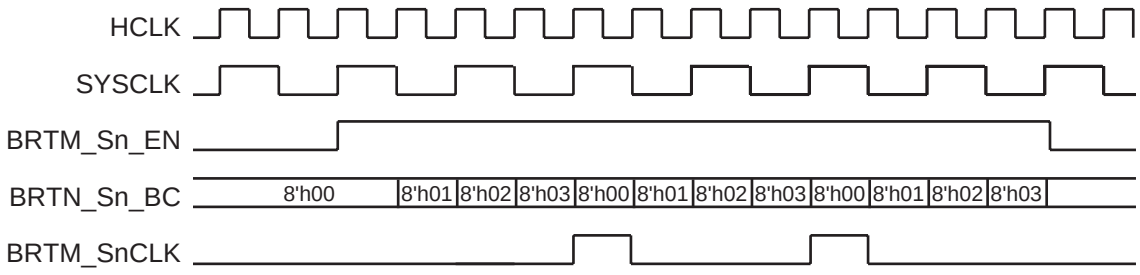


Figure:13.3.5 BRTMn Count Operation (Duty: 1:N, Count Clock: HCLK, N: 0x03)

When the duty is "1:N", the value of "0x00" must not be set to BRTM_Sn_OC.

In Clock-Synchronous communication, BRTM_SCnCLK with "1:N" duty must not be used as a transfer clock when SCnMD1.SCnCKM is "0".

■ Setting of Clock Pin (SBTn)

Figure:13.3.1 shows the relation among SBTn level at bus-idle (serial communication is not executed), active edge of SBTn at data transmission/reception and SCnMD0.SCnCE1, SCnMD3.SCnCKPH (n = 0, 1), and SCnMD2.SCnCKPH (n = 2, 3).

"Leading edge" represents the first edge of square wave when communication is started. "Trailing edge" represents the inverted edge of "Leading edge". For example, when SBTn during non-communication is "High", the first falling edge after the start of communication is "Leading edge" and the inverted rising edge is "Trailing edge".

Table:13.3.1 Clock Edge of Data Transmission and Reception

SCnCE1	SCnCKPH	SBTn status during non-communication	Clock edge in data transmission	Clock edge in data reception
0	0	"High"	Leading edge (falling)	Trailing edge (rising)
0	1	"High"	Trailing edge (rising)	Leading edge (falling)
1	0	"Low"	Leading edge (rising)	Trailing edge (falling)
1	1	"Low"	Trailing edge (falling)	Leading edge (rising)

Figure:13.3.6 and Figure:13.3.7 show the 3-wire communication waveform when SCnCKPH = 0.

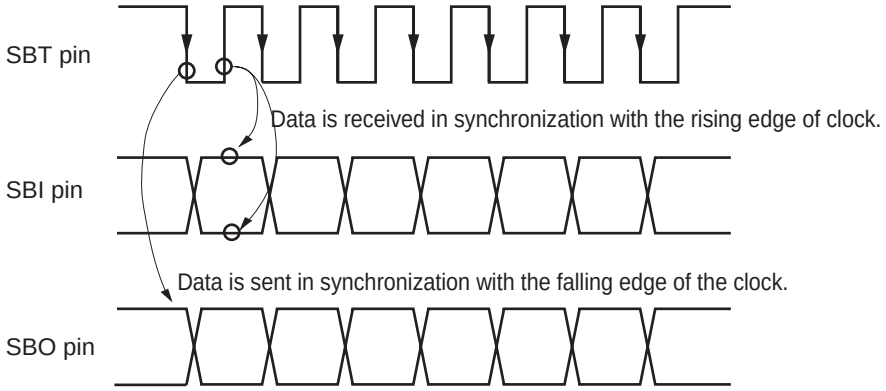


Figure:13.3.6 3-wire Communication Transmission/ Reception Timing
(When SCnCKPH = 0 and SCnCE1 = 0)

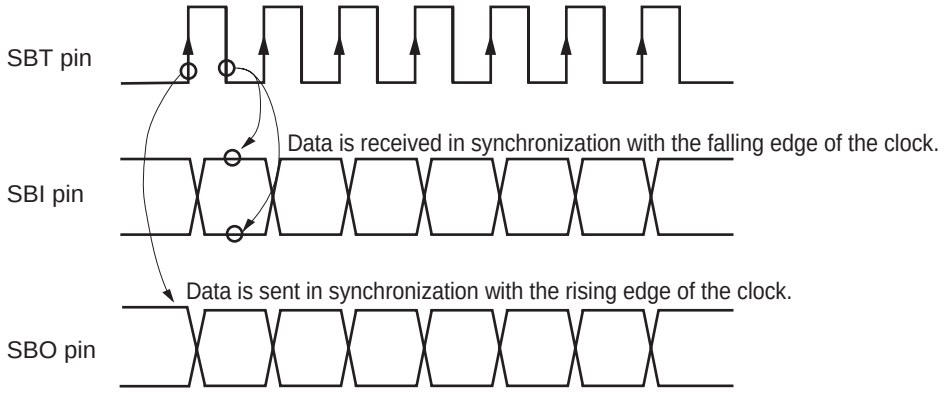


Figure:13.3.7 3-wire Communication Transmission/ Reception Timing
(When SCnCKPH = 0 and SCnCE1 = 1)

Figure:13.3.8 shows the 4-wire communication waveform when SCnCKPH = 1. Data are received at a leading edge and transferred at a trailing edge. Conversely, During 4-wire communication when SCnCKPH = 0, data are received at a trailing edge and transferred at a leading edge as shown in Figure:13.3.9.

In master communication, a transfer clock is output from SBTn after the time of 0.5 transfer clock (0.5 T) has elapsed since SBCSn was asserted. In slave communication, input a transfer clock to SBTn after the time of 0.5 transfer clock (0.5 T) has elapsed since SBCSn was asserted.

The last bit data output hold time of transmission data is different depending on the value of SCnCKPH. (Refer to Figure:13.3.8 and Figure:13.3.9.) Allow adequate 1-T time for the last bit of reception data to hold data.

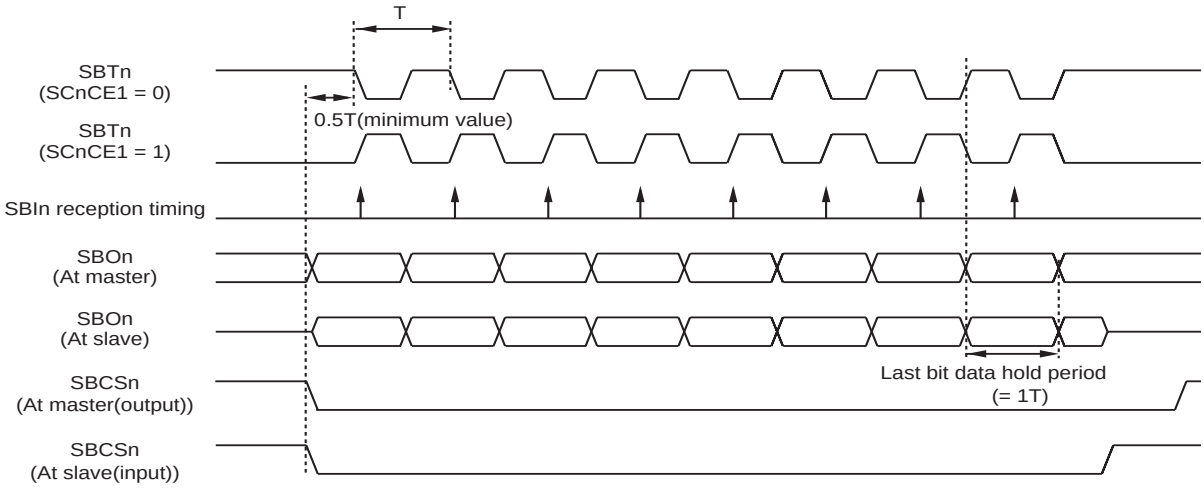


Figure:13.3.8 4-wire Communication Transmission/ Reception Timing (SCnCKPH = 1)

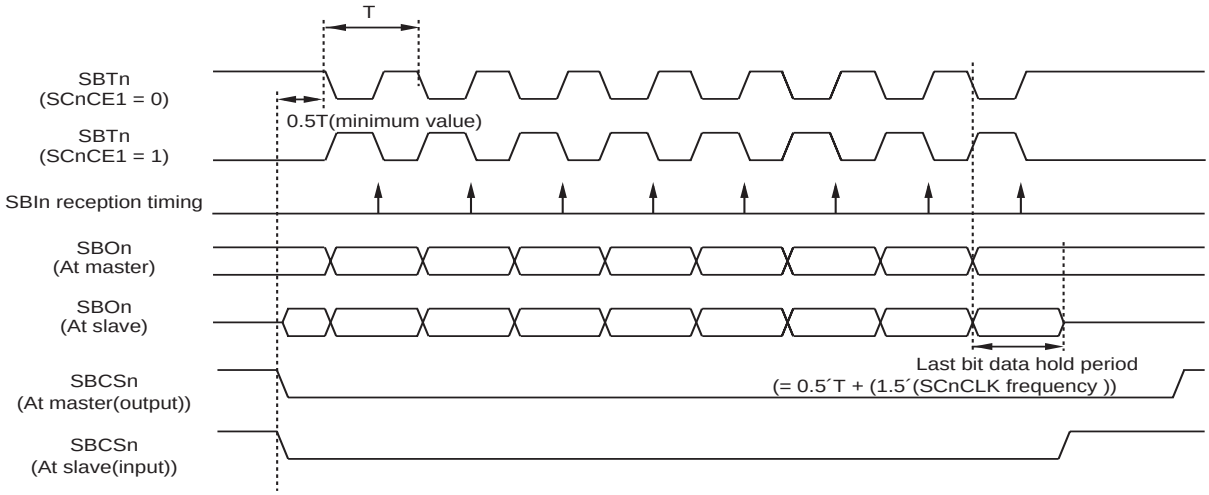


Figure:13.3.9 4-wire Communication Transmission/ Reception Timing (SCnCKPH = 0)

■ Transmission Data Buffer (TXBUFn) and Transmission Buffer Empty Flag (SCnTEMP)

TXBUFn is the buffer to store the data to be transmitted. SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is set to "1" when data is written to TXBUFn, and is cleared to "0" when data in TXBUFn is transferred to the transmit shift register (SCnTRB) and the serial communication starts.

Write data to TXBUFn only when SCnTEMP is "0". When writing the next data to TXBUFn during single byte communication, the following communication will be automatically started after the present communication finishes. The blank period is different depending on the communication mode (consecutive communication mode/ 1-byte communication mode).

When the LSI is a master, a wait time for communication start (T_{wait}) of up to 3.5 transfer clocks is inserted until communication starts after a data write to TXBUFn. When the LSI is a slave, T_{wait} must be ensured until a transfer clock is input after a data write to TXBUFn.

Write data to TXBUFn only when SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0".
If data is written to TXBUFn while SCnTEMP is "1", SCIFn does not work properly.

When the LSI is a slave, a transfer clock is not input to prevent abnormal operation caused by external noise while serial communication is not executed. Transfer clock input is enabled after a wait time (T_{wait}) of 3.5 transfer clocks has elapsed after a data is written to TXBUFn.

■ Reception Data Buffer (RXBUFn) and Reception Buffer Empty Flag (SCnREMP)

RXBUFn is a buffer to store the received data. The received data in the reception shift register is transferred to RXBUFn automatically.

SCnSTR.SCnREMP is set to "1" when reception data is stored in RXBUFn, and is cleared to "0" when the data is read out from RXBUFn.

Be sure to read out the received data in RXBUFn before the following data reception finishes.
The received data in RXBUFn is updated with new data every time the data reception is completed.

Read out the received data of RXBUFn when SCnSTR.SCnREMP is "1".
If data is read from RXBUFn when SCnREMP is "0", SCIFn does not work properly.
When receiving the following data before reading the data in RXBUFn register, an overrun error occurs.

■ Activation Source for Communication

Data write to TXBUFn is the trigger to start data transmission or reception.
When the LSI only receive data (not send data), write dummy data to TXBUFn.

■ First Bit Specification for Transfer

When SCnMD0.SCnDIR is "0", MSB-first transfer is selected.
When SCnMD0.SCnDIR is "1", LSB-first transfer is selected.

Interrupt Source Select

For SCIFn (n = 0, 1), interrupt source can be selected with SCnMD2.SCnIFS. When SCnIFS is "1", an interrupt occurs by an empty detection of TXBUFn (detecting that SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0"). When SCnIFS is "0", an interrupt (communication complete interrupt) occurs after single byte communication has finishes.

For SCIFn (n = 2, 3), interrupt source can be selected with SCnMD1.SCnIFS. When SCnIFS is "1", an interrupt occurs by an empty detection of TXBUFn (detecting that SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0"). When SCnIFS is "0", an interrupt (communication complete interrupt) occurs after single byte communication has been completed.

Transmission BUSY Flag (SCIF0 and SCIF1)

When SCnMD1.SCnSBOS is "1", SCnSTR.SCnTBSY is set to "1" by writing data to TXBUFn.
When SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0", SCnSTR.SCnTBSY is cleared to "0" by a communication complete interrupt.
If SCnTEMP is "1" by writing data to TXBUFn before a communication completion interrupt, SCnTBSY is held at "1".

Reception BUSY Flag (SCIF0 and SCIF1)

When SCnMD1.SCnSBIS is "1", SCnSTR.SCnRBSY is set to "1" by writing data to TXBUFn.
While SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0", SCnSTR.SCnRBSY is cleared to "0" by a communication complete interrupt.
If SCnTEMP is "1" by writing data to TXBUFn before a communication completion interrupt, SCnRBSY is held at "1".

Communication BUSY Flag (SCIF2 and SCIF3)

SCnSTR0.SCnTBSY is set to "1" when data is written to TXBUFn. When SCnSTR0.SCnTEMP is "0", SCnSTR0.SCnTBSY is cleared to "0" by a communication complete interrupt.
If SCnTEMP is "1" by writing data to TXBUFn before a communication completion interrupt, SCnTBSY is held at "1".

Reception Error Flag

When receiving new data before reading out the data in RXBUFn, an overrun error occurs and the following flags are set.

- For SCIFn (n = 0, 1), SCnSTR.SCnORE and SCnSTR.SCnERE are set to "1".
  SCnSTR.SCnREMP is cleared to "0" by reading data of RXBUFn, and SCnORE and SCnERE are cleared to "0" by a communication complete interrupt when SCnSTR.SCnREMP is "0".

- For SCIFn (n = 2, 3), SCnSTR.SCnORE is set to "1".
  Clear SCnSTR.SCnORE by software.

■ Consecutive Communication Mode

When SCnMD0.SCnCTM is "1", consecutive communication mode is selected.

In this mode, when the next data is written to TXBUFn by the specified timing, the following communication is executed without a communication blank. To execute a communication without a blank, write the next data to TXBUFn before the 7th bit of data (1 byte) is received after the data in TXBUFn was read out to the transmission shift register (SCnTRB) and SCnTEMP changed to "0". (Refer to the "inverted triangle" sign of Figure:13.3.11, Figure:13.3.12, Figure:13.3.13, and Figure:13.3.14.) If this restriction is not satisfied, the communication blank occurs.

In consecutive communication mode, set data to TXBUFn for slave device to enable the consecutive communication. When a setting timing is delayed, a transfer clock is masked and a communication does not work properly.

■ Single byte Communication Mode

When SCnMD0.SCnCTM is "0", single byte communication mode is selected.
In this mode, the following blank is inserted.

(1) When writing the next data to TXBUFn by the time specified with "inverted triangle" sign in Figure:13.3.11, Figure:13.3.12, Figure:13.3.13, and Figure:13.3.14., the blank period of up to 4.5T (including T_{wait} of 3.5T) is inserted between each byte data transmission/reception.
(2) Other than the above (1), the blank period of up to 4.5T (including T_{wait} of 3.5T) is inserted after writing the next data to TXBUFn

When the LSI is a master, the transfer clock output is stopped while the serial communication is not executed.
When the LSI is a slave, the transfer clock input to SBTn is masked while the serial communication is not executed.

When the LSI is a slave, inform a master device when the transfer clock output form the master can be input in the LSI.

■ Communication in CPU STANBY Mode

In CPU STANBY mode, a communication complete interrupt of slave reception can make CPU operation mode return from CPU STANBY mode to NORMAL mode. Read reception data in RXBUFn after the return to NORMAL mode.

Before CPU operation mode becomes NORMAL mode, write data to TXBUFn as an activation source. While in communication during STANBY mode, be sure to set SCnCTM and SCnCKPH bits to 0.

When the reception with STANDBY mode in SDIF0/SCIF1, set SCnMD0.SCnCTM and SCnMD3.SCnCKPH to 0. If they are not set to 0, SCIFn does not work properly.

When the reception with STANDBY mode in SDIF2/SCIF3, set SCnMD0.SCnCTM and SCnMD2.SCnCKPH to 0. If they are not set to 0, SCIFn does not work properly.

A transfer clock can be input after a time of 3.5 transfer clocks has elapsed since the activation source with a data write to TXBUFn occurred. So, change CPU operation mode to STANDBY mode after that.

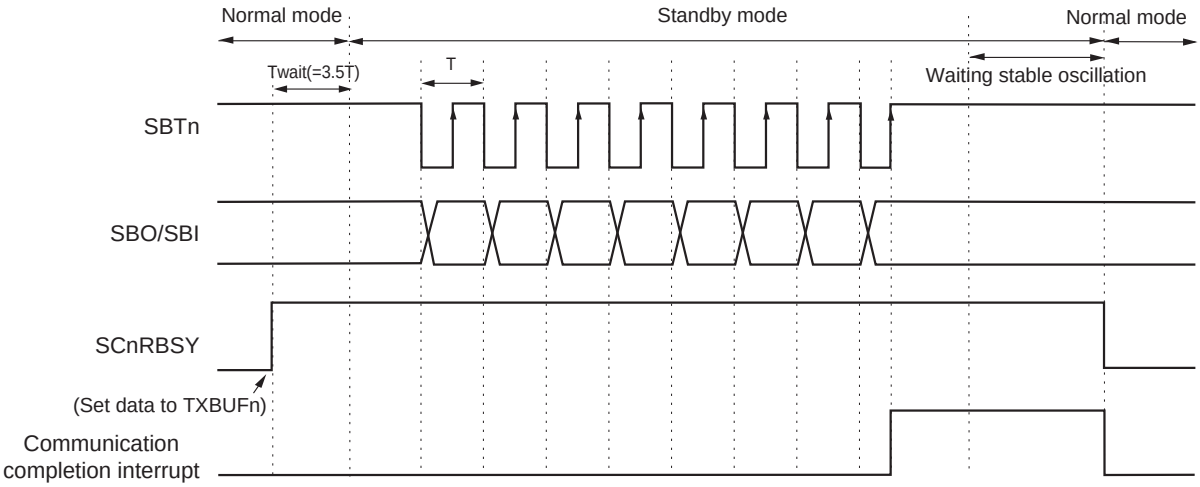


Figure:13.3.10 Reception Timing in STANDBY mode
(Reception: at rising edge)

13.3.3 Operation Timing

■ Transmission Timing

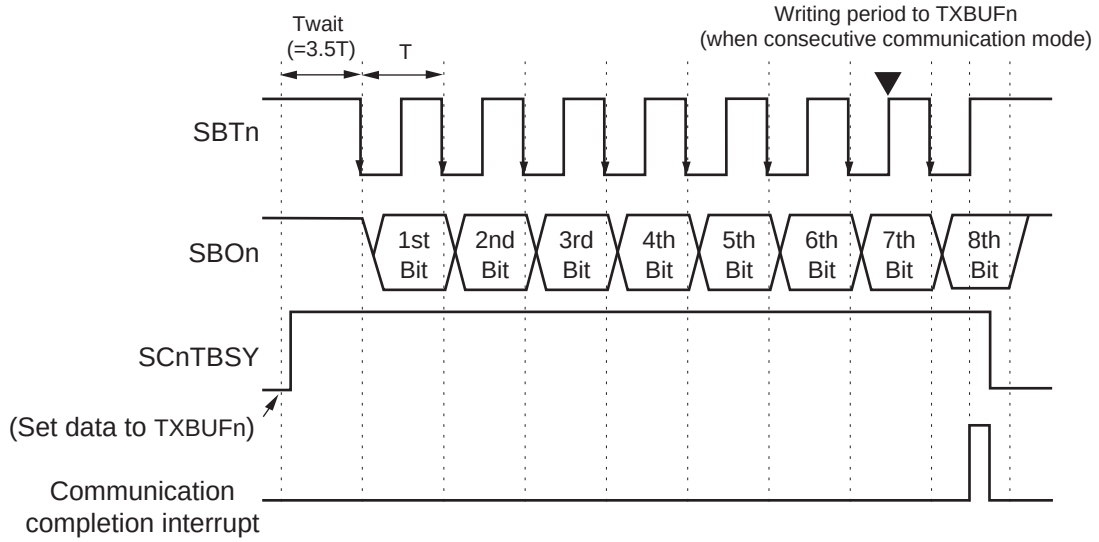


Figure:13.3.11 Transmission Timing (At Falling Edge, SCnCKPH bit = 0)

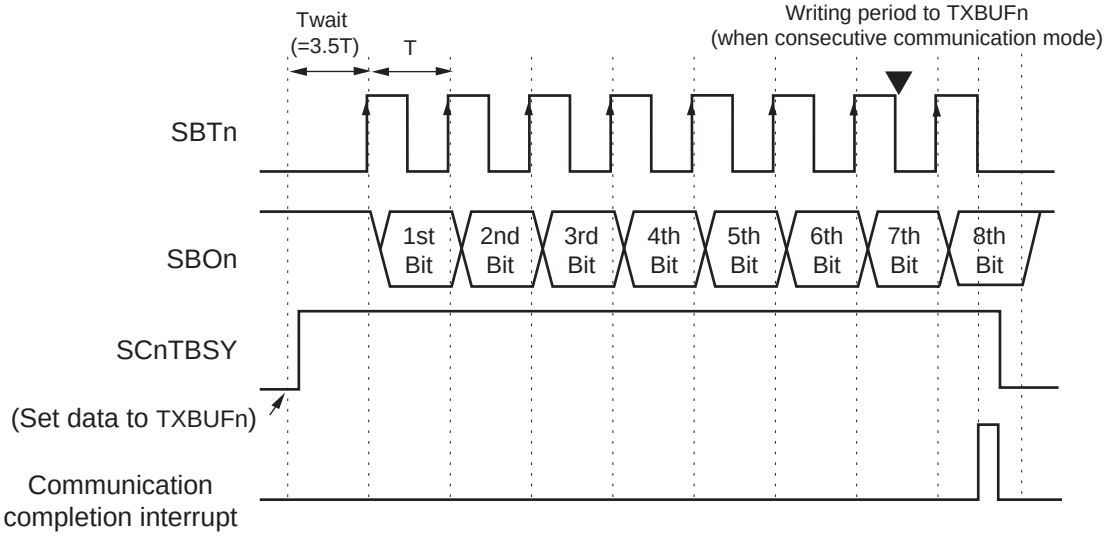


Figure:13.3.12 Transmission Timing (At Rising Edge, SCnCKPH bit = 0)

■ Reception Timing

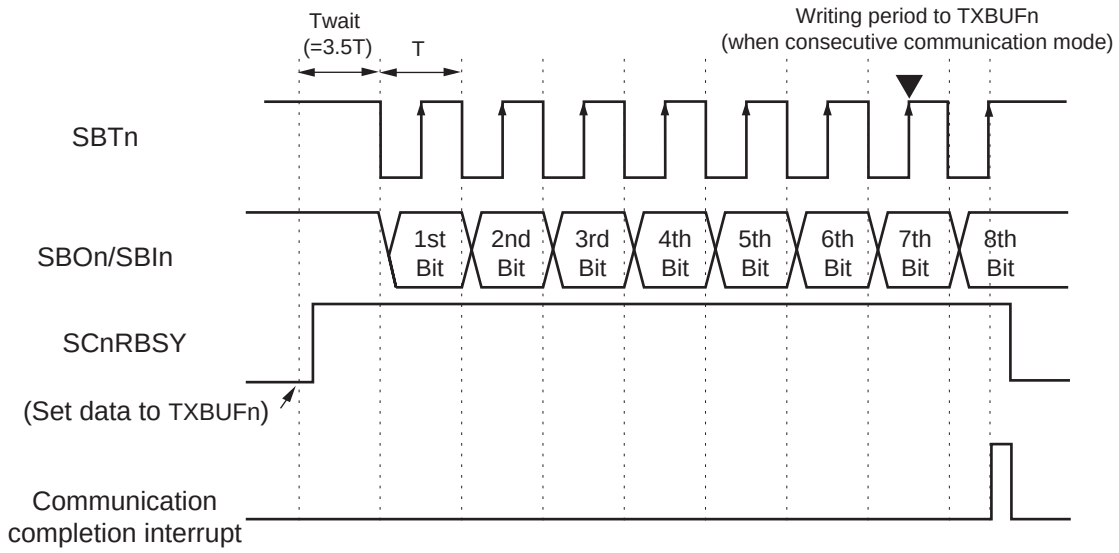


Figure:13.3.13 Reception Timing (At Rising Edge, SCnCKPH bit = 0)

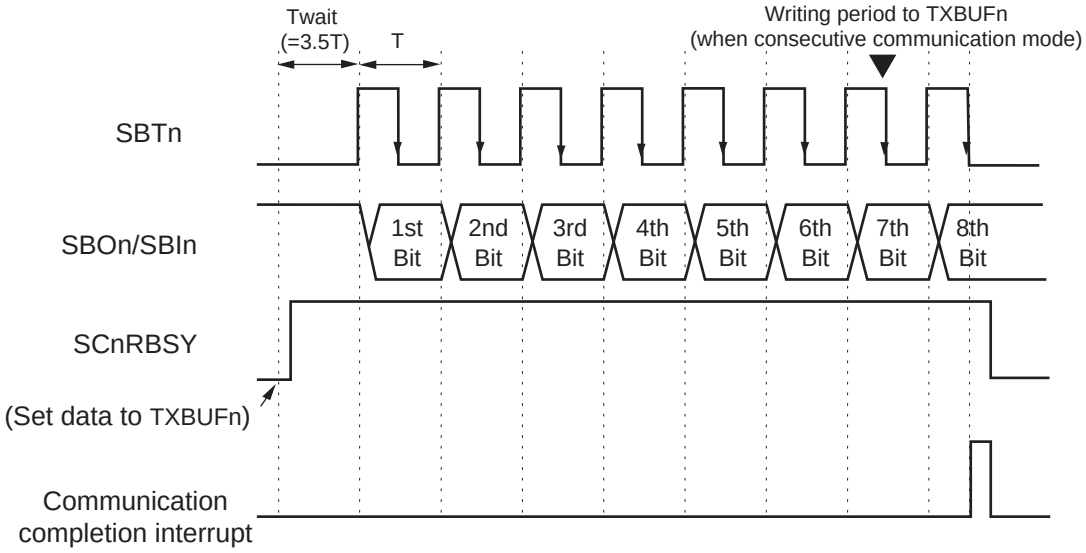


Figure:13.3.14 Reception Timing (At Falling Edge, SCnCKPH bit = 0)

13.3.4 Setting Procedure

Refer to the following pages for the setting procedure in clock synchronous mode.

Setting	Page
Initial setting before communication	XIII-42
Data transmission/reception (1-byte communication mode)	XIII-43
Data transmission (1-byte communication mode)	XIII-43
Data reception (1-byte communication mode)	XIII-44
Data transmission/reception (consecutive communication mode)	XIII-44
Data transmission (consecutive communication mode)	XIII-45
Data reception (consecutive communication mode)	XIII-45

■ Initial Setting Before Communication

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Disable interrupt	SCnTICR.SCnTIE = 0	Disable the interrupt for SCIFn to be used.
2	Reset	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnMD3.SCnRSTN = 0 <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnMD2.SCnRSTN = 0	Reset SCIFn to be used.
3	Pin setting (Disable serial output)	PnMD	Set pins to general-purpose ports.
4	BRTMn setting	BRTM_S_MD BRTM_S_CKSEL BRTM_S01_CK BRTM_S23_CK BRTM_Sn_OC	While BRTMn is active, set BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_EN to 0 to stop counting. Output clock cycle and duty for BRTMn are set.
5	Mode register setting	SCnMD0 SCnMD1 SCnMD2 SCnMD3	Set SCIFn operation mode.
6	Pin setting (Enable communication pins)	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnMD1.SCnSBOS SCnMD1.SCnSBIS SCnMD1.SCnSBTS SCnMD3.SCnSBCSEN <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnMD1.SCnSBOS SCnMD1.SCnSBIS SCnMD1.SCnSBTS SCnMD2.SCnSBCSEN	Set pins to be used for serial communication to 1.
7	Pin setting (Enable serial output)	PnMD	Enable communication pins.
8	Clear interrupt source	SCnTICR.SCnTIR = 0	Clear the interrupt source.
9	Enable interrupt	SCnTICR.SCnTIE	To use an interrupt, set SCnTICR.SCnTIE to 1.
10	BRTMm counting start	BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_EN = 1	BRTM starts counting.
11	Release serial reset	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnMD3.SCnRSTN = 1 <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnMD2.SCnRSTN = 1	Release the serial reset. After that, serial communication is enabled.

■ Data Transmission/Reception (1-byte Communication Mode)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Data write to TXBUFn	TXBUFn	Set transmission data in TXBUFn.
3	Wait for communication completion	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnSTR.SCnTBSY SCnSTR.SCnRBSY <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnTBSY	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> When the communication has been completed, SCnTBSY and SCnRBSY become 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs. <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> When the communication has been completed, SCnTBSY becomes 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
4	Reception data read from RXBUFn.	RXBUFn	Read out the reception data from RXBUFn.
5	Confirmation of overrun error	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnSTR.SCnORE SCnSTR.SCnERE <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnORE	If SCnORE/SCnERE(*) is 1, it indicates an overrun error has occurred. When an overrun error has occurred, take measures, such as data retransmission, since reception data may be destroyed. (*) SCnERE is only for SCIFn (n = 0, 1).
6	Transmission/reception end	-	Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication.

■ Data Transmission (1-byte Communication Mode)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Data write to TXBUFn	TXBUFn	Set transmission data in TXBUFn.
3	Wait for communication completion	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnTBSY	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3)> When the communication has been completed, SCnTBSY becomes 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
4	Transmission end	-	Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication.

■ Data Reception (1-byte Communication Mode)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Dummy data write to TXBUFnTXBUFn	TXBUFn	Set dummy data in TXBUFn.
3	Wait for communication completion	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnSTR.SCnRBSY <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnTBSY	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> When the communication has been completed, SCnRBSY becomes 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs. <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> When the communication has been completed, SCnTBSY becomes 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
4	Reception data read from RXBUFn	RXBUFn	Read out the reception data from RXBUFn.
5	Confirmation of overrun error	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnSTR.SCnORE SCnSTR.SCnERE <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnORE	If SCnORE/SCnERE(*) is 1, it indicates an overrun error has occurred. When an overrun error has occurred, take measures, such as data retransmission, since reception data may be destroyed. (*) SCnERE is only for SCIFn (n = 0, 1).
6	Reception end	-	Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication.

■ Data Transmission/Reception (Consecutive Communication Mode)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Data write to TXBUFn (The first data transmission)	TXBUFn	Set transmission data in TXBUFn.
3	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR.SCnTEMP becomes 0 since communication starts.
4	Data write to TXBUFn (The second and subsequent data transmission)	TXBUFn	Set the next transmission data in TXBUFn.
5	Wait for communication completion	SCnSTR.SCnREMP	When reception data are stored in RXBUFn, SCnSTR.SCnREMP is set to 1. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
6	Reception data read from RXBUFn	RXBUFn	Read out the reception data from RXBUFn.
7	Confirmation of overrun error	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnSTR.SCnORE SCnSTR.SCnERE <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnORE	If SCnORE/SCnERE(*) is 1, it indicates an overrun error has occurred. When an overrun error has occurred, take measures, such as data retransmission, since reception data may be destroyed. (*) SCnERE is only for SCIFn (n = 0, 1).
8	Consecutive communication or not	-	When continuing data transmission, repeat procedures from step 3. When completing data transmission, go to step 9.
9	Transmission/reception end	-	After the operations from step 5 to step7 are executed, the communication is completed since data reception to be set in step 4 has not been completed. Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication

■ Data Transmission (Consecutive Communication Mode)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Data write to TXBUFn (The first data transmission)	TXBUFn	Set transmission data in TXBUFn.
3	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR.SCnTEMP becomes 0 since communication starts.
4	Data write to TXBUFn (The second and subsequent data transmission)	TXBUFn	Set the next transmission data in TXBUFn.
5	Consecutive communication or not	-	When continuing data transmission, repeat procedures from step 3. When completing data transmission, go to step 6.
6	Wait for communication completion	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnTBSY	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1, 2, 3)> When the communication has been completed, SCnTBSY becomes 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
7	Transmission end	-	Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication.

■ Data Reception (Consecutive Communication Mode)

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Data write to TXBUFn (The first data transmission)	TXBUFn	Set dummy data in TXBUFn.
3	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR.SCnTEMP becomes 0 since communication starts.
4	Data write to TXBUFn (The second and subsequent data transmission)	TXBUFn	Set the next dummy data in TXBUFn.
5	Wait for communication completion	SCnSTR.SCnREMP	When reception data are stored in RXBUFn, SCnSTR.SCnREMP is set to 1. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
6	Reception data read from RXBUFn	RXBUFn	Read out the reception data from RXBUFn.
7	Confirmation of overrun error	<SCIFn (n = 0, 1)> SCnSTR.SCnORE SCnSTR.SCnERE <SCIFn (n = 2, 3)> SCnSTR.SCnORE	If SCnORE/SCnERE(*) is 1, it indicates an overrun error has occurred. When an overrun error has occurred, take measures, such as data retransmission, since reception data may be destroyed. (*) SCnERE is only for SCIFn (n = 0, 1).
8	Consecutive communication or not	-	When continuing data transmission, repeat procedures from step 3. When completing data transmission, go to step 9.
9	Reception end	-	After the operations from step 5 to step7 are executed, the communication is completed since data reception to be set in step 4 has not been completed. Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication

13.4 Full-duplex UART Communication

This chapter describes a full-duplex UART communication.
The index "n" of serial interface denotes "n = 0, 1", unless otherwise noted.

When communicating with UART by using SCIFn, set SCnMD1.SCnCMD to "1".

13.4.1 Communication Form

- 1-wire UART

Data is transmitted or received by using either TXDn or RXDn.
TXDn is used for both data transmission and reception. RXDn is used for data reception only.

- 2-wire UART (full-duplex UART)

Data are transmitted and received with 2-wire communication by using both TXDn and RXDn.
TXDn is used for data transmission and RXDn is used for data reception.
Be sure to set the data frame and parity bit on the transmission/reception data to the same setting.

When the serial communication is not executed, set data reception pin to "High" level. Otherwise, SCIFn does not work properly.

■ Setup of Data Frame and Parity Bit

Figure:13.4.1 shows data format of UART communication.

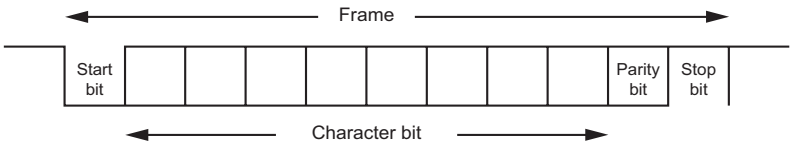


Figure:13.4.1 Data Format in UART Communication

Data frame consists of following types of bit that are shown in Table:13.4.1.
Set character and stop bits with SCnMD2.SCnFM1-0.

Table:13.4.1 Data Types of Full-duplex UART Communication

Start bit	1 bit
Character bit	7 to 8 bits
Parity bit	fixed to 0, fixed to 1, odd, even, none
Stop bit	1to 2 bits

Table:13.4.2 shows the types of parity bit.
Set the parity bit with SCnMD2.SCnNPE and SCnMD2.SCnPM1-0.

Table:13.4.2 Parity Bit of UART Serial Interface

SCnMD2			Transmission	Reception
SCnNPE	SCnPM1	SCnPM0		
0	0	0	Fixed to "0"	Confirm parity bit is "0".
0	0	1	Fixed to "1"	Confirm parity bit is "1".
0	1	0	For the total number of "1" of character bit; odd: "0", even: "1"	Confirm the total number of "1" of character and parity bits is odd.
0	1	1	For the total number of "1" of character bit; odd: "1", even: "0"	Confirm the total number of "1" of character and parity bits is even.
1	-	-	Parity bit is not added	Parity bit is not checked.

13.4.2 Operation

■ Circuit Initialization (Serial Reset)

SCIFn has a built-in serial reset function for abnormal operation.
Registers other than TXBUFn and SCnMD2.SCnBRKE must be changed during serial reset.

SCnSTR and SCnMD2.SCnBRKF are initialized by setting both SCnMD3.SCnRSTN and SCnMD3.SCnRSRN to "0".

■ Pin Settings

<1-wire communication>

At data reception: Set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS to "1" and SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "0".
At data transmission: Set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS to "0" and SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "1".
(When SCnMD1.SCnIOM is "1", data reception via SBOn is enabled.)

<2-wire communication>

Set both SCnMD1.SCnSBIS and SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "1". (SCnIOM must be set to "0".)

In UART communication, set SCnMD1.SCnSBTS and SCnMD3.SCnSBCSEN to "0".

In time-division 1-wire communication with SBOn, be sure to prevent data collision at SBOn.

When the LSI only send data (not receive data), set SCnMD1.SCnSBIS to "0".
When the LSI only receive data (not send data), set SCnMD1.SCnSBOS to "0".

■ Setting of Transfer Clock (SCnCLK)

SCIFn operates with SCnCLK which is generated based on BRTM output clock (BRTM_SCnCLK).
Regardless of the setting value of SCnMD1.SCnCKM, SCnCLK is as follows:

When SCnMD1.SCnDIV is "0", SCnCLK is generated by dividing BRTM_SCnCLK by 8.
When SCnMD1.SCnDIV is "1", SCnCLK is generated by dividing BRTM_SCnCLK by 16.

■ Generating Baud Rate Timer Output Clock (BRTM_SCnCLK)

This is a common feature with the Clock-Synchronous communication. For more information, refer to XIII-30.

■ Transmission Data Buffer (TXBUFn) and Transmission Buffer Empty Flag (SCnTEMP)

This is a common feature with the Clock-Synchronous communication. For more information, refer to XIII-35.

Write data to TXBUFn only when SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0".
If data is written to TXBUFn while SCnTEMP is "1", SCIFn does not work properly.

As in the Clock-Synchronous communication, a wait time (T_{wait}) from a data write to TXBUFn to the first data transmission is the period of 3.5 transfer clocks.
(A start bit is transmitted after 2.5 transfer clocks after a data is written to TXBUFn.)

■ Reception Data Buffer (RXBUFn) and of Reception Buffer Empty Flag (SCnREMP)

This is a common feature with the Clock-Synchronous communication. For more information, refer to XIII-35.

■ Activation Source for Communication

Data write to TXBUFn is the trigger to start data transmission.
In data reception, a communication starts with a detection of start bit. "Low" level input time of 0.5 transfer clock or more is required for a detection of start bit.

■ Interrupt

In data transmission, transmission complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs every 1-frame transmission completion.
In data reception, reception complete interrupt (SCnRIRQ) occurs every 1-frame reception completion.

■ Transmission BUSY Flag

When SCnMD1.SCnSBOS is "1", SCnSTR.SCnTBSY is set to "1" by writing data to TXBUFn.
When SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0" (no data existed in TXBUFn), SCnSTR.SCnTBSY is cleared to "0" when SCnTICR occurs.
While SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "1" (data existed in TXBUFn), SCnSTR.SCnTBSY is held at "1" when SCnTICR occurs.

■ Reception BUSY Flag

When SCnMD1.SCnSBIS is "1", SCnSTR.SCnRBSY is set to "1" by a start bit detection.
When SCnTICR occurs, SCnSTR.SCnRBSY is cleared to "0".

■ Reception Error Flag

Reception error sources are shown in Table:13.4.3. All error flags are updated when a reception finishes.
SCnSTR.SCnERE shows the logical OR of three error flags.

When the data is received before the previous data is read from RXBUFn, SCnSTR.SCnORE is set to "1".
To clear SCnSTR.SCnORE, set SCnREMP to "0" by reading data from RXBUFn before the next data is received.

Table:13.4.3 UART Communication Error Sources

Flag name	Error content	
SCnSTR.SCnORE	Overrun error	A data is received before reading the previous received data from RXBUFn.
SCnSTR.SCnPEK	Parity error	A parity bit error is detected.
SCnSTR.SCnFEF	Flaming error	A stop bit is not detected.

■ Break Transmission

To transmit a break, set SCnMD2.SCnBRKE to "1" and write dummy data to TXBUFn.
In break transmission, all "0" data (all bits of the data frame is "0") is transmitted.
To send a normal data, set SCnMD2.SCnBRKE to "0".

Be sure to write data to SCnBRKE while both SCnSTR.SCnTBSY and SCnSTR.SCnTEMP are "0".

■ Break Reception

A break is detected with SCnMD2.SCnBRKF.
When the break is detected, SCnBRKF is set to "1" at the event of SCnRIRQ.
SCnBRKF is updated every time SCnRICR occurs, so read out SCnBRKF before the next data is received.

■ Consecutive Communication Mode

<Consecutive Data Transmission>
Before setting the next transmission data to TXBUFn, confirm that SCnSTR.SCnTEMP is "0" after the previous data is set to TXBUFn. The next transmission data must be set by 0.5 transfer clock before the last stop bit of the previous data frame is transmitted.
If this restriction is not satisfied, the communication blank more than 1 bit length may occurs between transmission data.

<Consecutive Data Reception>
A start bit can be detected immediately after a stop bit. In consecutive data reception, SCnSTR.SCnRBSY is held at "0" for the period from a stop bit to the next start bit.

■ Data Storage to TXBUFn

In MSB first mode, write transmission data to TXBUFn in order from the upper bit.
For example, when transmitting 7-bit data, write data to TXBUFn from bp7 to bp1 as shown in Figure:13.4.2.
Each bit from A to G is transmitted in the order from G to A.

In LSB first mode, write transmission data to TXBUFn in order from the lower bit.
For example, when transmitting 7-bit data, write data to TXBUFn as shown in Figure:13.4.3.
Each bit from A to G is transmitted in the order from A to G.

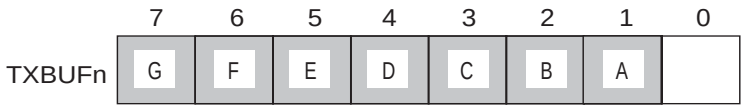


Figure:13.4.2 Transmission Data Storage (MSB first)

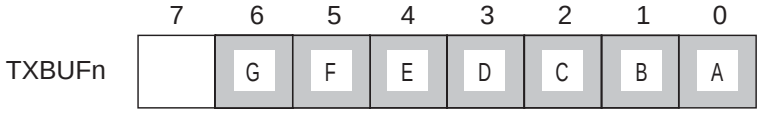


Figure:13.4.3 Transmission Data Storage (LSB first)

■ Data Storage to RXBUFn

In MSB first mode, reception data are stored in RXBUFn in order from the upper bit.
For example, when receiving 7-bit data, each bit from A to G (A is the first reception bit.) is stored in RXBUFn from bp7 to bp1 as shown in Figure:13.4.4.

In LSB first mode, reception data are stored in RXBUFn in order from the lower bit.
For example, when receiving 7-bit data, each bit from A to G (A is the first reception bit.) is stored in RXBUFn from bp0 to bp6 as shown in Figure:13.4.5.

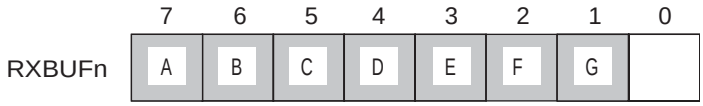


Figure:13.4.4 Reception Data Storage (MSB first)

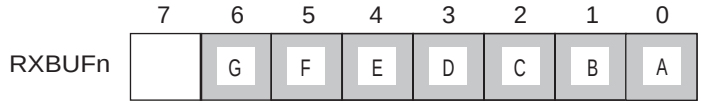


Figure:13.4.5 Reception Data Storage (LSB first)

13.4.3 Timing

■ Transmission

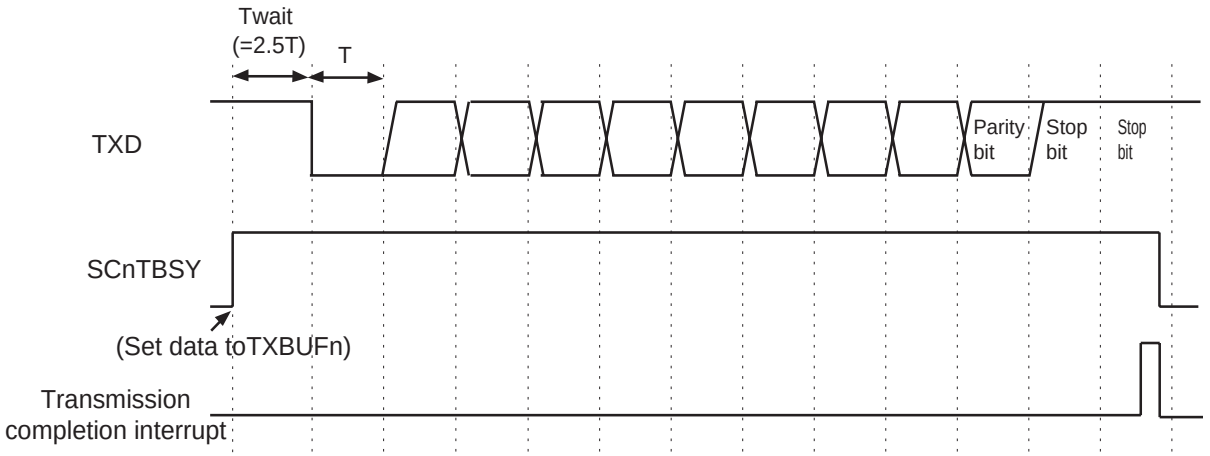


Figure:13.4.6 Transmission Timing (with Parity Bit)

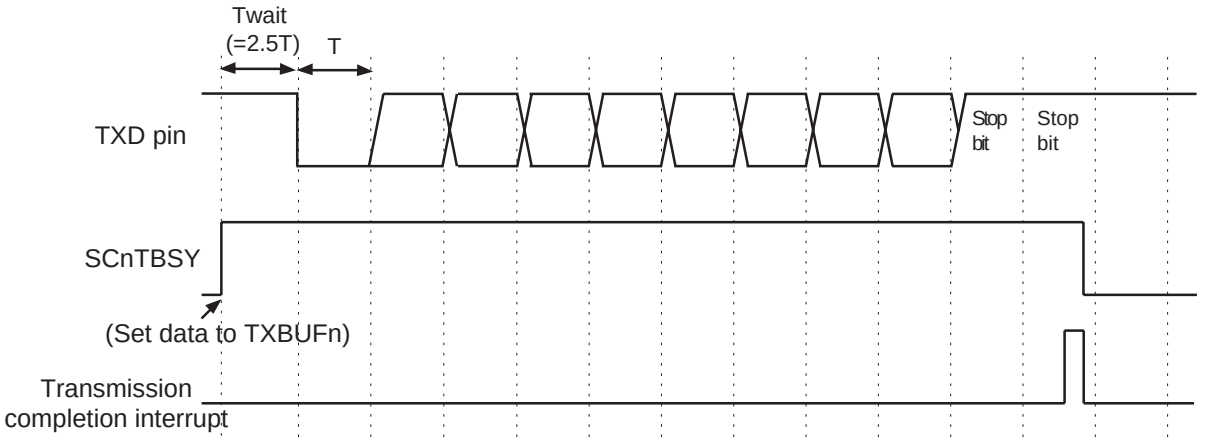


Figure:13.4.7 Transmission Timing (without Parity Bit)

■ Reception

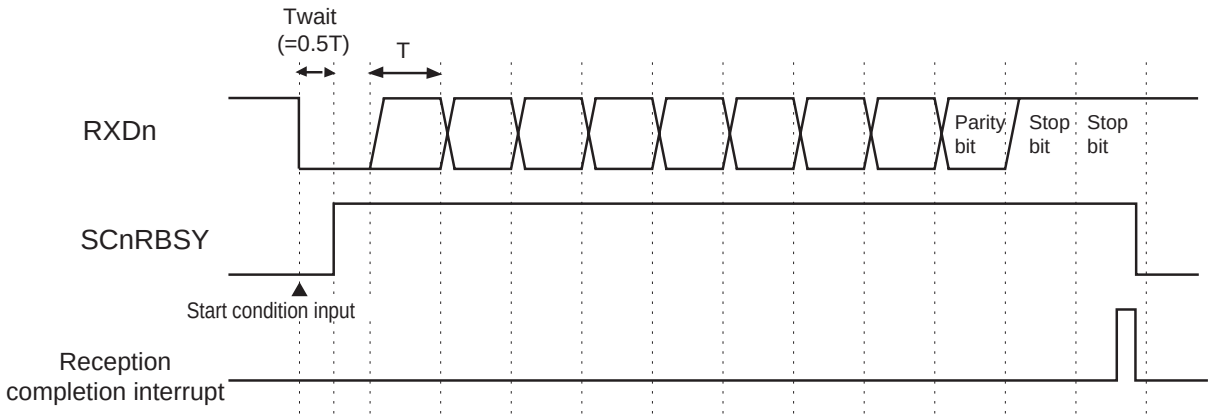


Figure:13.4.8 Reception Timing (with Parity Bit)

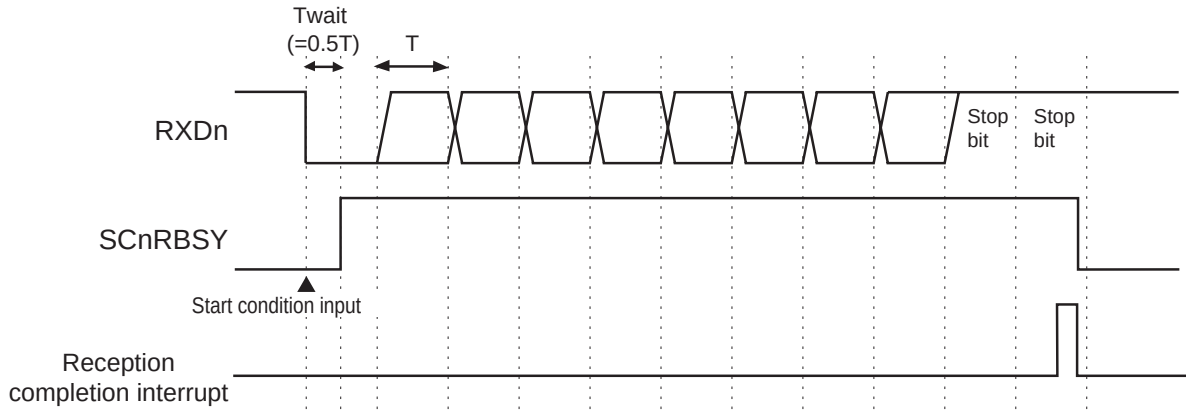


Figure:13.4.9 Reception Timing (without Parity Bit)

13.4.4 Setting procedure

The setting procedure of full-duplex UART is shown as follows.

■ Initial Setting Before Communication

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Disable interrupt	SCnTICR.SCnTIE = 0 SCnRICR.SCnRIE = 0	Disable the interrupt for SCIFn to be used.
2	Serial reset	SCnMD3.SCnRSTN = 0 SCnMD3.SCnRSRN = 0	Execute serial reset.
3	Pin setting 1 (Disable communication pins)	-	Set pins to general-purpose ports to disable communication pins. Refer to the chapter, "IO Port" for setting general-purpose ports.
4	BRTMn setting	BRTM_S_MD BRTM_S_CKSEL BRTM_S01_CK BRTM_S23_CK BRTM_Sn_OC	While BRTMn is active, set BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_EN to 0 to stop counting. Output clock cycle and duty for BRTMn are set.
5	Mode register setting	SCnMD0 SCnMD1 SCnMD2 SCnMD3	Set SCIFn operation mode.
6	Pin setting 2	SCnMD1.SCnSBOS SCnMD1.SCnSBIS	Set pins used for serial communication to 1.
7	Pin setting 3 (Enable communication pins)	-	Enable communication pins.
8	Clear interrupt source	SCnTICR.SCnTIR SCnRICR.SCnRIR	Clear the interrupt source.
9	Enable interrupt	SCnTICR.SCnTIE SCnTICR.SCnTIE	Enable the interrupt to be used.
10	BRTMm counting start	BRTM_S_EN.BRTM_Sn_ EN = 1	BRTM starts counting.
11	Release serial reset	SCnMD3.SCnRSTN = 1 SCnMD3.SCnRSRN = 1	Release the serial reset. After that, serial communication is enabled.

■ Data Transmission

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmis-sion buffer	SCnSTR.SCnTEMP	Confirm that SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP is 0.
2	Data write to TXBUFn	TXBUFn	Set transmission data in TXBUFn.
3	Transmission end	-	Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication.

■ Data Reception

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Start bit reception	-	Detect a start bit.
2	Wait for communication completion	SCnSTR.SCnREMP	When reception data are stored in RXBUFn, SCnSTR.SCnREMP is set to 1. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs.
3	Reception error and break reception	SCnSTR.SCnBRKF SCnSTR.SCnFEF SCnSTR.SCnPEK SCnSTR.SCnERE	If an error occurs, SCnSTR.SCnERE is set to 1. Take measures, such as data retransmission, since reception data may be destroyed. When a break reception, SCnBRKF is set to 1. The above flag is updated every frame data reception. Confirm the flag immediately after communication has been completed. The flag can be also confirmed at step 5 if there is enough time to check it.
4	Reception data read from RXBUFn	RXBUFn	Read out the reception data from RXBUFn.
5	Confirmation of overrun error	SCnSTR.SCnORE SCnSTR.SCnERE	If SCnORE/SCnERE is 1, it indicates an overrun error has occurred. When an overrun error has occurred, take measures, such as data retransmission, since reception data may be destroyed.
6	Reception end	-	Repeat these procedures from step 1 to execute the next communication.

■ UART Break Transmission

Step	Setting	Register name	Description
1	Empty confirmation of transmission buffer and wait for transmission completion	SCnSTR1.SCnTBSY SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP	Confirm that both SCnSTR1.SCnTBSY and SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP become 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs. Even in that case, confirm that above two flags are 0.
2	Setting of break transmission	SCnMD2.SCnBRKE = 1	Set a break transmission.
3	Data write to TXBUFn	TXBUFn	Set dummy data to TXBUFn.
4	Wait for a break transmission completion	SCnSTR1.SCnTBSY SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP	Confirm that both S CnSTR1.SCnTBSY and SCnSTR1.SCnTEMP become 0. When an interrupt is enabled, a communication complete interrupt (SCnTIRQ) occurs. Even in that case, confirm that above two flags are 0.
5	Release a break transmission	SCnMD2.SCnBRKE = 0	Release setting of a break transmission.
6	Break transmission end	-	-

13.5 IIC Communication

This section describes IIC communication.
The index "n" of interface denotes "n = 2, 3", unless otherwise noted.

When executing IIC communication with SCIFn, set SCnMD3.SCnCMD to "1".

13.5.1 Format

■ Transfer Format

SCIFn supports "7-bit addressing format" in which 7-bit slave addresses are sent following a start condition

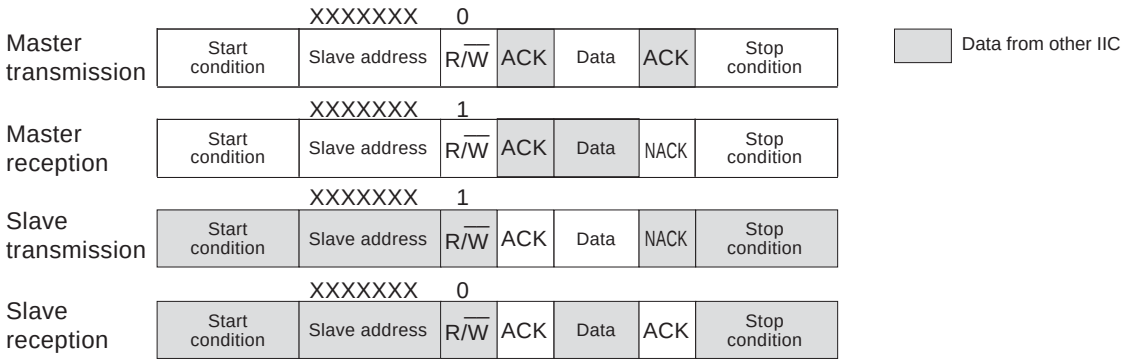


Figure:13.5.1 Communication Sequence in 7-bit Addressing Format

13.5.2 Operation

■ Serial Reset

SCIFn has a built-in serial reset function for abnormal operation.
SCnMD0-3 other than SCnMD0.IIC3STE, SCnMD3.IIC3STPC, SCnMD3.IIC3REX, and SCnMD3.IIC3ACKO must be changed during the serial reset of SCIFn.

SCnSTR.SCnTEMP/SCnREMP/SCnORE, bp6-0 of SCnIICSTR, and SC3MD3.IIC3STPC are initialized by the serial reset when setting SC3MD2.SCnRSTN to "0".

■ Generating Transfer Clock (SCnCLK) and Baud Rate Timer Output Clock (BRTM_SCnCLK)

SCnCLK is identical with BRTM_SCnCLK in IIC communication mode.
This function is common with the Clock-Synchronous communication. For more information, see XIII-30.
In slave communication, set BRTM_SCnCLK to detect start/stop condition. (See Table:13.5.1.)

■ Interrupt Source

A communication completion interrupt (SCnTICR) occurs when transmitting/receiving ACK/NACK or detecting the forced termination of a communication. A stop condition detection interrupt (SCnSICR) occurs when s stop condition is detected. (SCnSIRQ doesn’t occur when it is generated by the LSI.)

■ Generating Start/Restart Condition

When SC3MD0.IIC3STE is "1", a restart condition is generated by setting an address data (consisting of 7-bit slave address + R/W bit) to TXBUFn. A start condition is generated by writing a address data to TXBUFn regardless of the value of SC3MD0.IIC3STE.

Start Condition Setup Example

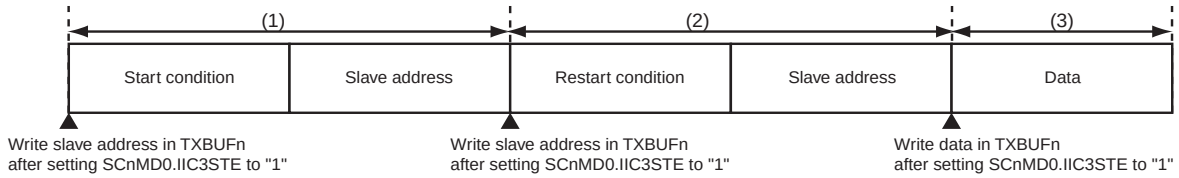


Figure:13.5.2 Setting Example of Start Condition

■ Generating Stop Condition

A stop condition is generated by writing "1" to SC3MD3.IIC3STPC.
When a stop condition is generated, IIC3STPC is automatically cleared.

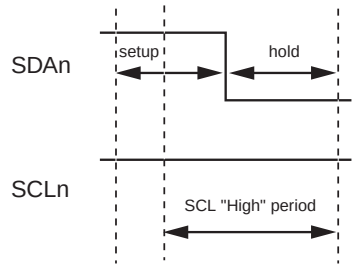
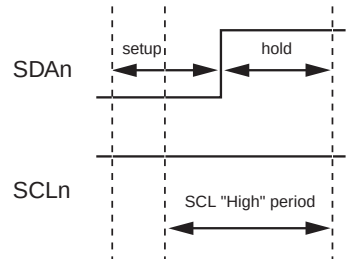
Note that a stop condition is generated by writing "1" to IIC3STPC even if SCIFn is not a master.
In addition, a stop condition detection interrupt (SCnSIRQ) does not occur when the LSI generates the stop condition.

■ Detection of Start/Restart Condition and Stop Condition

When a start/restart condition is detected, SC3IICSTR.IIC3STRT is set to "1".
When the received slave address is equal to SCnAD, SC3IICSTR.IIC3STRT is cleared to "0" by setting data to TXBUFn during the interrupt processing right after the slave address reception. When the received slave address is not equal to SCnAD, SC3IICSTR.IIC3STRT is cleared automatically by hardware.

Confirm a busy flag to detect a stop condition.
Conditions to detect a start or a stop condition are shown in the table below.

Table:13.5.1 Start Condition/Stop Condition Detection Condition

Start Condition		"High" period of SCLn ≥ (SCnCLK period) × 3
		SDAn setup time ≥ (SCnCLK period) × 2
		SDAn hold time ≥ (SCnCLK period) × 2
Stop Condition		"High" period of SCLn ≥ (SCnCLK period) × 3
		SDAn setup time ≥ (SCnCLK period) × 2
		SDAn hold time ≥ (SCnCLK period) × 2

■ Busy Flag

IIC3BUSBSY is set when a start condition is detected on the IIC bus and is cleared when a stop condition is detected. It is possible to check that IIC communication is executed between devices on IIC bus.

■ ACK/NACK Transmission and Detection

When the LSI receive data, select ACK/NACK transmission with SCnMD3.IIC3ACKO.
When the LSI send data, confirm that ACK/NACK is received with SCnMD3.IIC3ACKO.

■ First Bit Specification for Transfer

First bit for transfer can be selected. Select MSB first or LSB first with SCnMD0.IIC3DIR.

■ Detection of Communication Forcibly Terminated

When a start/stop condition is detected during the transmission/reception of data, including a slave address and R/W bit, and ACK bit, SCnIICSTR.IIC3DATA_ERR is set to "1" as judged the serial communication is forced to be terminated. When the situation occurs, clear IIC3DATA_ERR to "0" and restart a communication.

When the LSI is a master and the above situation occurs, the LSI continues communication until single byte is transmitted (*) and SCnTIRQ occurs at the end of byte transmission.
(* If the arbitration lost occurs, the LSI changes to slave and stop communication.)

When the LSI is a slave and the above situation occurs, SCnTIRQ occurs and the LSI stop communication.

■ Arbitration Lost

When the LSI is a master, if transmission data doesn't match SDAn signal level, SCnSTR.IIC3ABT_LST is set and SDAn and SCLn are released as judged it an arbitration lost.
The arbitration lost detection does not cause SCnTIRQ, but if the slave address sent from another master matches the value of SCnAD after an arbitration lost detection, SCnTIRQ occurs. Confirm IIC3ABT_LST at the next interrupt timing (SCnTIRQ or SCnSIRQ). Clear IIC3ABT_LST by program.

■ General Call Communication

When a general call is detected, SCnIICSTR.IIC3ADD_ACC and SCnIICSTR.IIC3GCALL are set and send ACK bit. The value of SCnIICSTR.IIC3GCALL is valid only when SCnTIRQ occurs in the slave address reception.

■ Operation of Transmission Data Buffer register (TXBUFn) and Transmission Data Buffer Empty Flag (SCnTEMP)

TXBUFn is a buffer to store transmission data. The data are transferred from TXBUFn to a transmission shift register (SCnTRB) automatically. SCnTEMP is set to "1" by storing data to TXBUFn, and is cleared to "0" when the data of TXBUFn is sent to SCnTRB and the communication starts.
When a data is written to TXBUFn during SCnTEMP being "1", the data can not be stored properly.

■ Operation of Reception Data Buffer Register (RXBUFn) and Reception Data Buffer Empty Flag (SCnREMP)

RXBUFn is a buffer to store the reception data.
Received data is stored in a received shift register (SCnRDB) at first, and then it is moved to RXBUFn automatically, SCnSTR.SCnREMP is set to "1" and SCnTIRQ occurs. SCnREMP is cleared to 0 by reading out RXBUFn.

When a data reception is received before the previous data is read from RXBUFn, SCnORE is set.

■ Overrun Error Flag

If the next data reception has been completed before a data read from RXBUFn, an overrun error occurs and SCnSTR.SCnORE is set to "1". Clear SCnORE by program.

■ Clock Extension in Master Communication

SCLn is sampled at falling edges of SCnCLK in Standard Mode, or rising edges of SCnCLK in High-speed Mode. When the transfer clock output from the LSI is "High" but SCLn is "Low", the high period of the transfer clock is extended since the slave device keeps SCLn "Low".

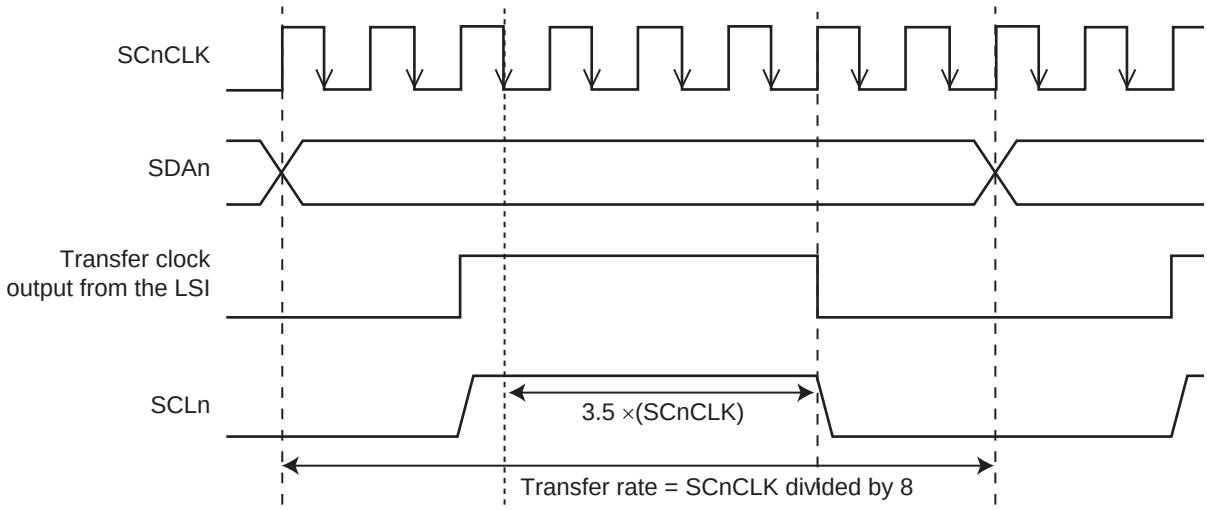


Figure:13.5.3 SCLn without "Low" Period Extension by Slave Device (Standard Mode)

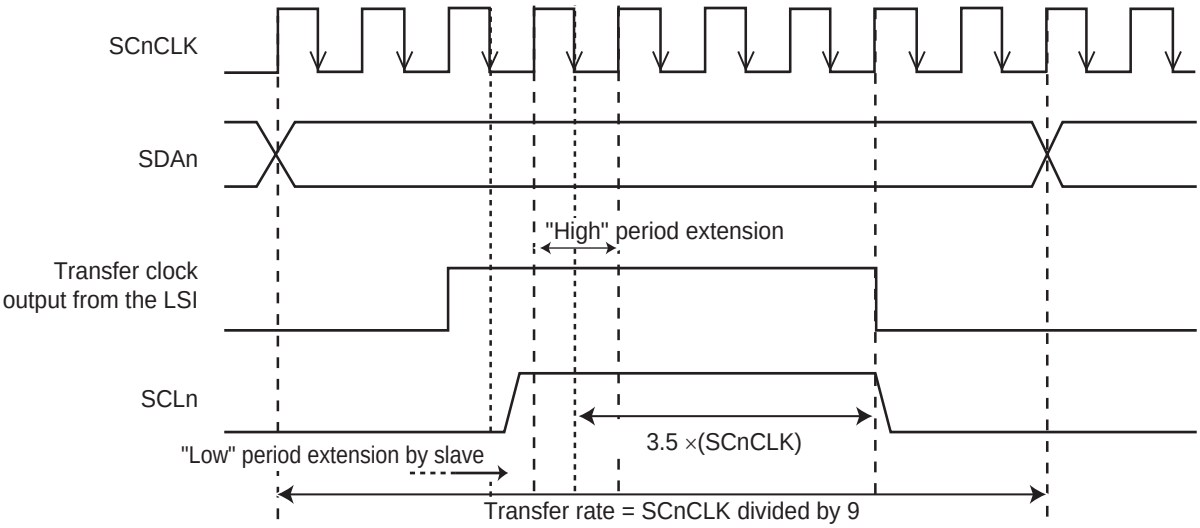


Figure:13.5.4 SCLn with "Low" Period Extension by Slave Device (Standard Mode)

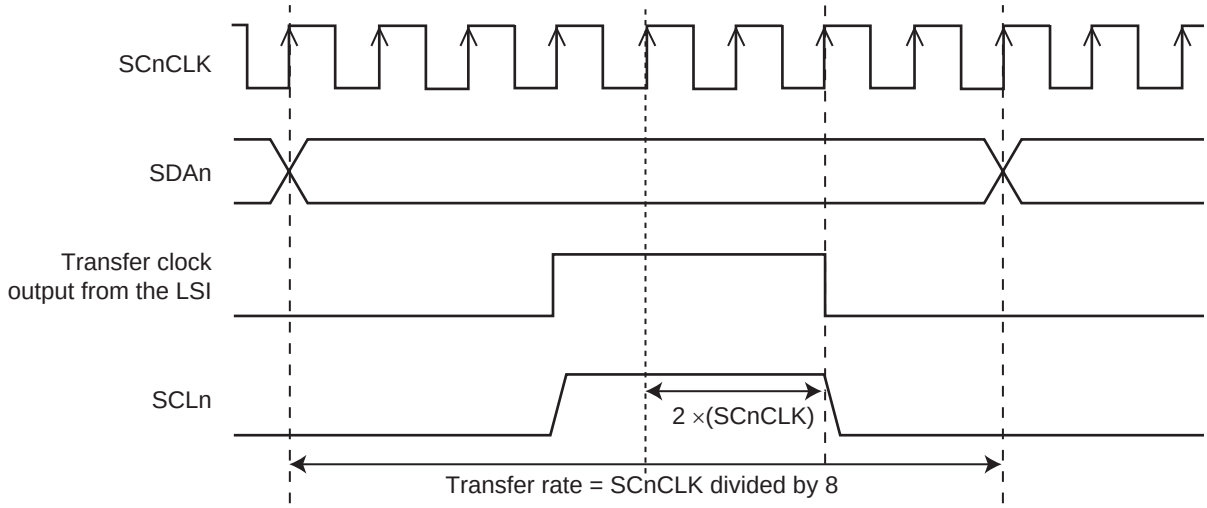


Figure:13.5.5 SCLn without "Low" Period Extension by Slave Device (High-speed Mode)

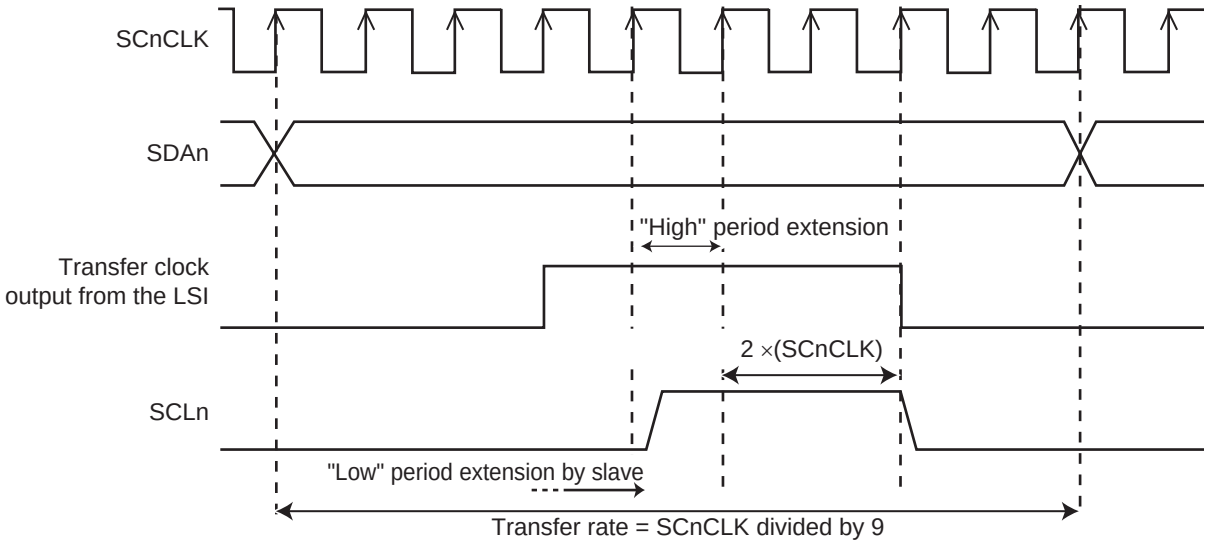


Figure:13.5.6 SCLn with "Low" Period Extension by Slave Device (High-speed Mode)

Set the rising time of SCLn to the period of up to 0.5 SCNCLK in Standard Mode or up to 1 SCnCLK in High-speed Mode.

13.5.3 Timing

■ Master Transmission Timing

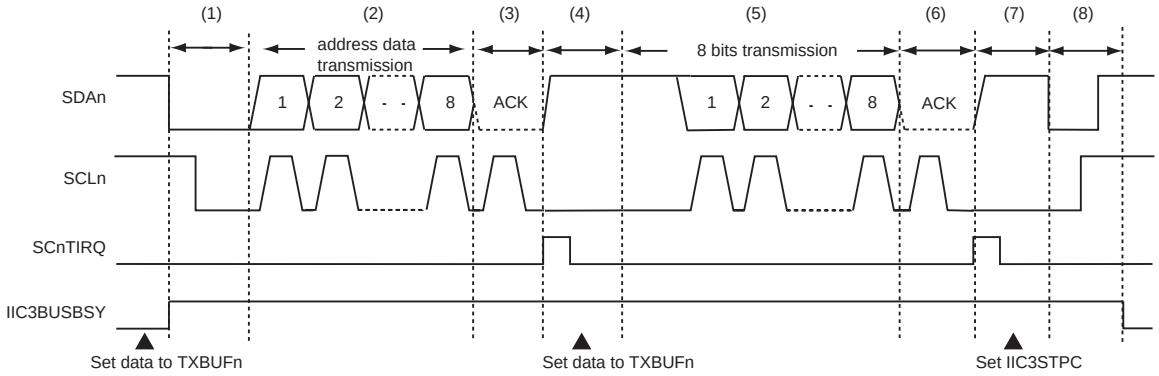


Figure:13.5.7 Master Transmission Timing

(1) Generate start condition by setting data to TXBUFn

(2) Transmit Address data (slave address + R/W bit)

(3) Receive ACK bit

(4) Set data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(5) Transmit data

(6) Receive ACK bit

(7) Set SCnMD3.IIC3STPC in interrupt handler

(8) Generate stop condition

■ Master Reception Timing

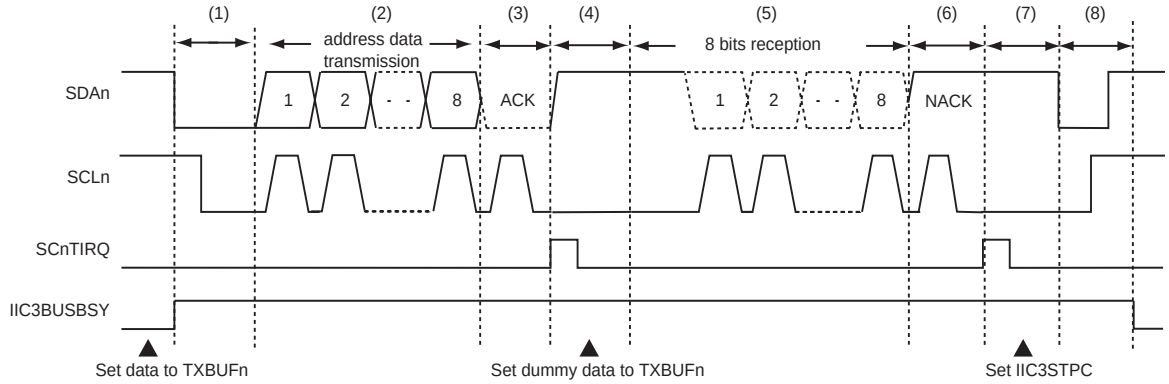


Figure:13.5.8 Master Reception Timing

(1) Generate start condition by setting data to TXBUFn

(2) Transmit Address data (slave address + R/W bit)

(3) Receive ACK bit

(4) Set SCnMD3.IIC3REX to "1" and write dummy data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(5) Receive data

(6) Transmit NACK bit

(7) Set SCnMD3.IIC3STPC in interrupt handler

(8) Generate stop condition

■ Slave Transmission Timing

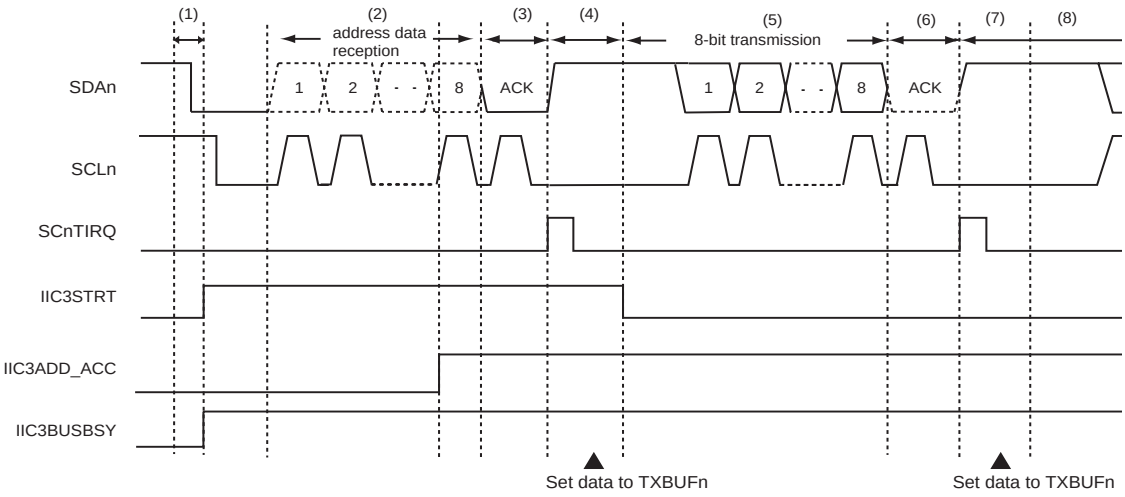


Figure:13.5.9 Slave Transmission Timing

(1) Detect start condition

(2) Receive address data (slave address + R/W bit)

(3) Transmit ACK bit

(4) Set data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(5) Transmit data

(6) Receive ACK bit

(7) Set data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(8) Transmit data

■ Slave Transmission Timing (NACK Reception)

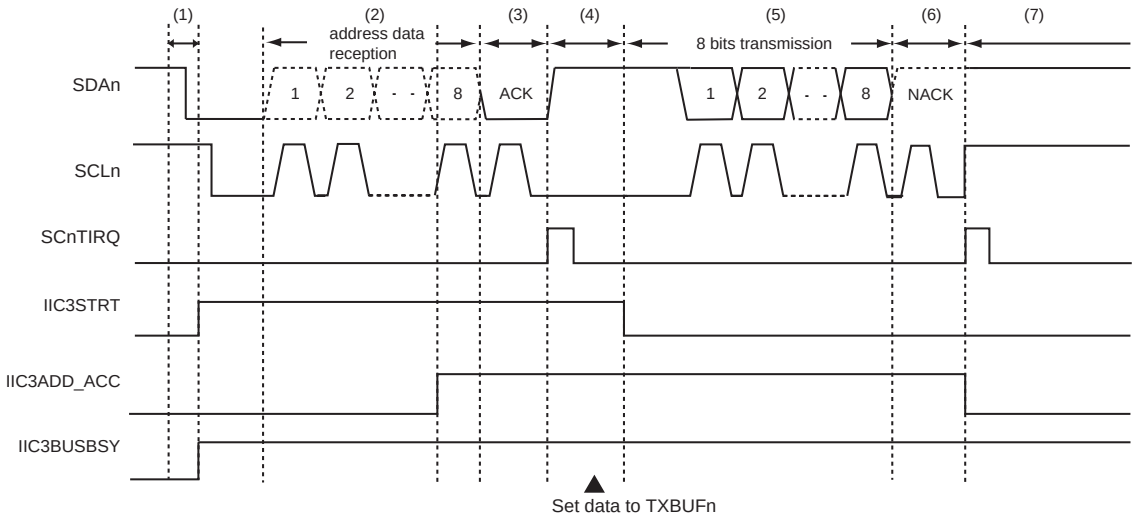


Figure:13.5.10 Slave Transmission Timing (NACK Reception)

(1) Detect start condition

(2) Receive address data (slave address + R/W bit)

(3) Transmit ACK bit

(4) Set data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(5) Transmit data

(6) Receive NACK bit

(7) Release SDAn and SCLn

■ Slave Reception Timing (Stop Condition Detection)

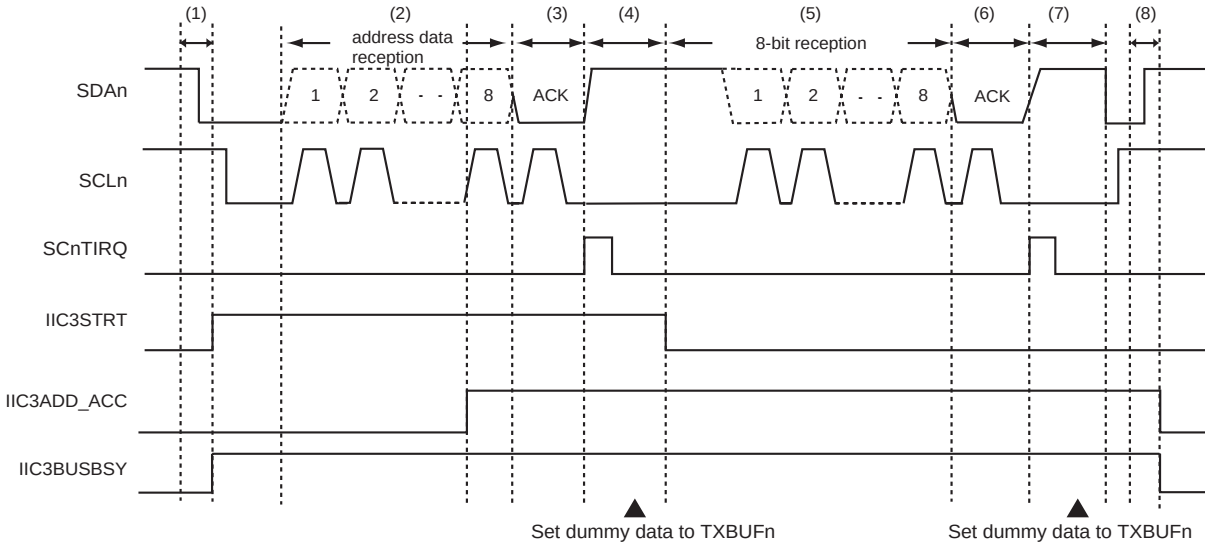


Figure:13.5.11 Slave Reception Timing (Stop Condition Detection)

(1) Detect start condition

(2) Receive address data (slave address + R/W bit)

(3) Transmit ACK bit

(4) Set dummy data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(5) Receive data

(6) Transmit ACK bit

(7) Set dummy data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(8) Detect stop condition

■ Slave Reception Timing (Restart Condition Detection)

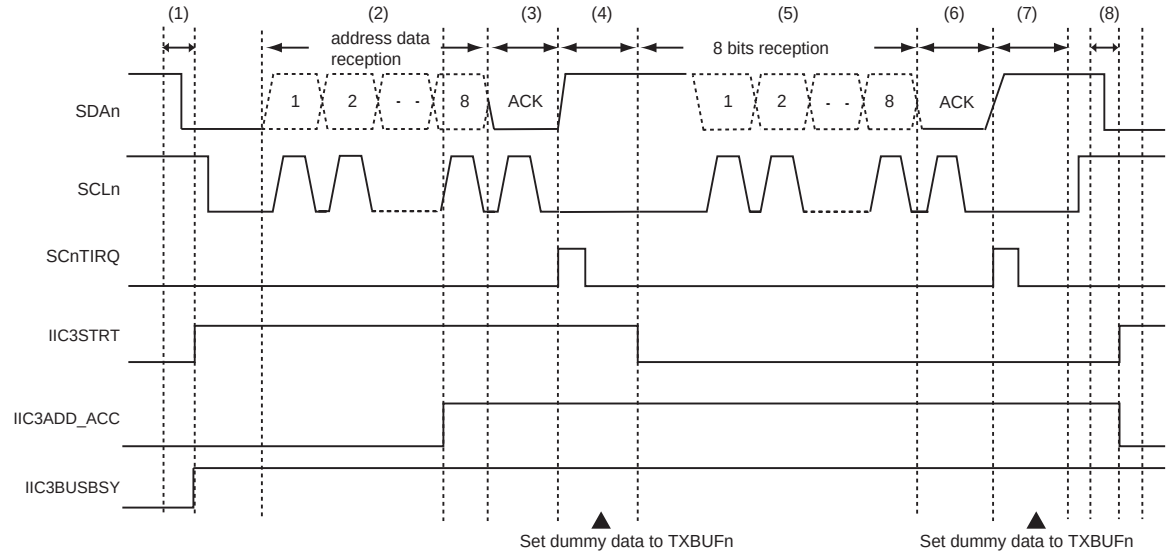


Figure:13.5.12 Slave Reception Timing (Restart Condition Detection)

(1) Detect start condition

(2) Receive address data (slave address + R/W bit)

(3) Transmit ACK bit

(4) Set dummy data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(5) Receive data

(6) Transmit ACK bit

(47 Set dummy data to TXBUFn in interrupt handler

(8) Detect restart condition

13.5.4 Setup Example

■ Setting Example of Master Communication

(*1) As initial setting, register changed at the time of serial reset is shown below.
Please change it if needed, such as interrupt setting or port setting.

Master setting at slave address transmission

SCnMD0	SCnCE1	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnCTM	Be sure to set it to "0".
	IIC3DEM	Be sure to set it to "0".
SCnMD1	SCnIOM	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnMST	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnSBTS	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnSBIS	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnSBOS	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnIFS	Be sure to set it to "0".
SCnMD2	SCnCKPH	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnSBCSEN	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnSBCSLV	Be sure to set it to "0".
SCnMD3	IIC3STPC	Be sure to set it to "0".
	IIC3REX	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnCMD	Be sure to set it to "1".
	IIC3ACKS	Be sure to set it to "1".

Other, SCnMD0, SCnMD3, SCnAD register

SCnMD0	SCnDIR	Select MSB-first or LSB-first
	IIC3STE	Start condition setting
SCnMD3	IIC3TMD	Communication mode selectioon
SCnAD	IIC3AD7-0	Slave address setting

Serial transfer clock is needed to be set with BRTM_S_EN, BRTM_S_MD and so forth.

(*2) To avoid communication error, confirm that IIC serial communication is not executed with IIC3BUSBSY before starting next communication.

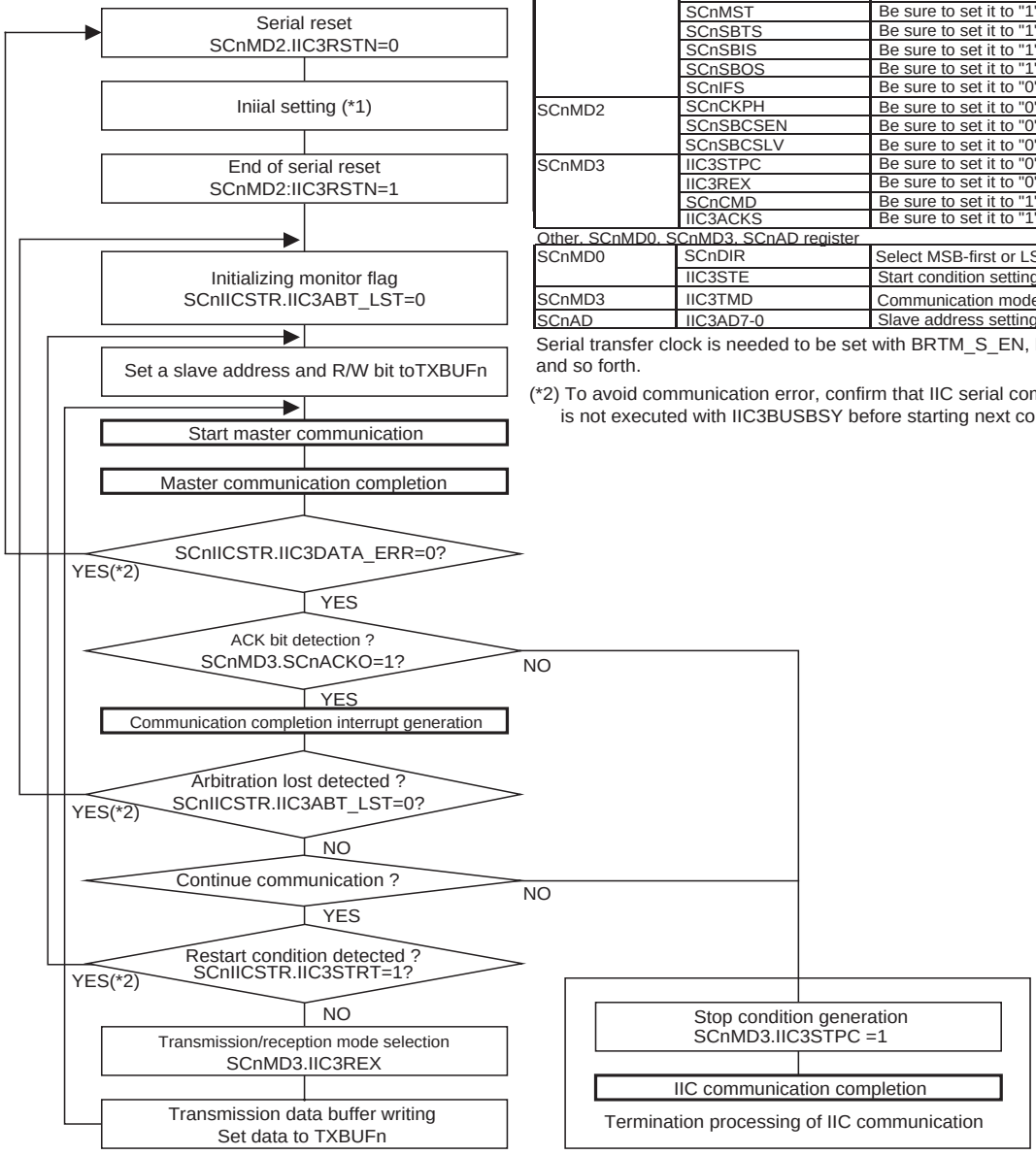


Figure:13.5.13 Master communication Setting Flow Diagram

■ Setting Example of Slave Communication

Note:1 As initial setting, register changed at the time of serial reset is shown below.
Please change it if needed, such as interrupt setting or port setting.

Master setting at slave address transmission

SCnMD0	SCnCE1	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnCTM	Be sure to set it to "0".
	IIC3DEM	Be sure to set it to "0".
SCnMD1	SCnIOM	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnMST	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnSBTS	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnSBIS	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnSBOS	Be sure to set it to "1".
	SCnIFS	Be sure to set it to "0".
SCnMD2	SCnCKPH	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnSBCSEN	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnSBCSLV	Be sure to set it to "0".
SCnMD3	IIC3STPC	Be sure to set it to "0".
	IIC3REX	Be sure to set it to "0".
	SCnCMD	Be sure to set it to "1".
	IIC3ACKS	Be sure to set it to "1".

Other, SCnMD0, SCnMD3, SCnAD register

SCnMD0	SCnDIR	Select MSB-first or LSB-first
	IIC3STE	Start condition setting
SCnMD3	IIC3TMD	Communication mode selectioon
SCnAD	IIC3AD7-0	Slave address setting

Serial transfer clock is needed to be set with BRTM_S_EN, BRTM_S_MD and so forth.

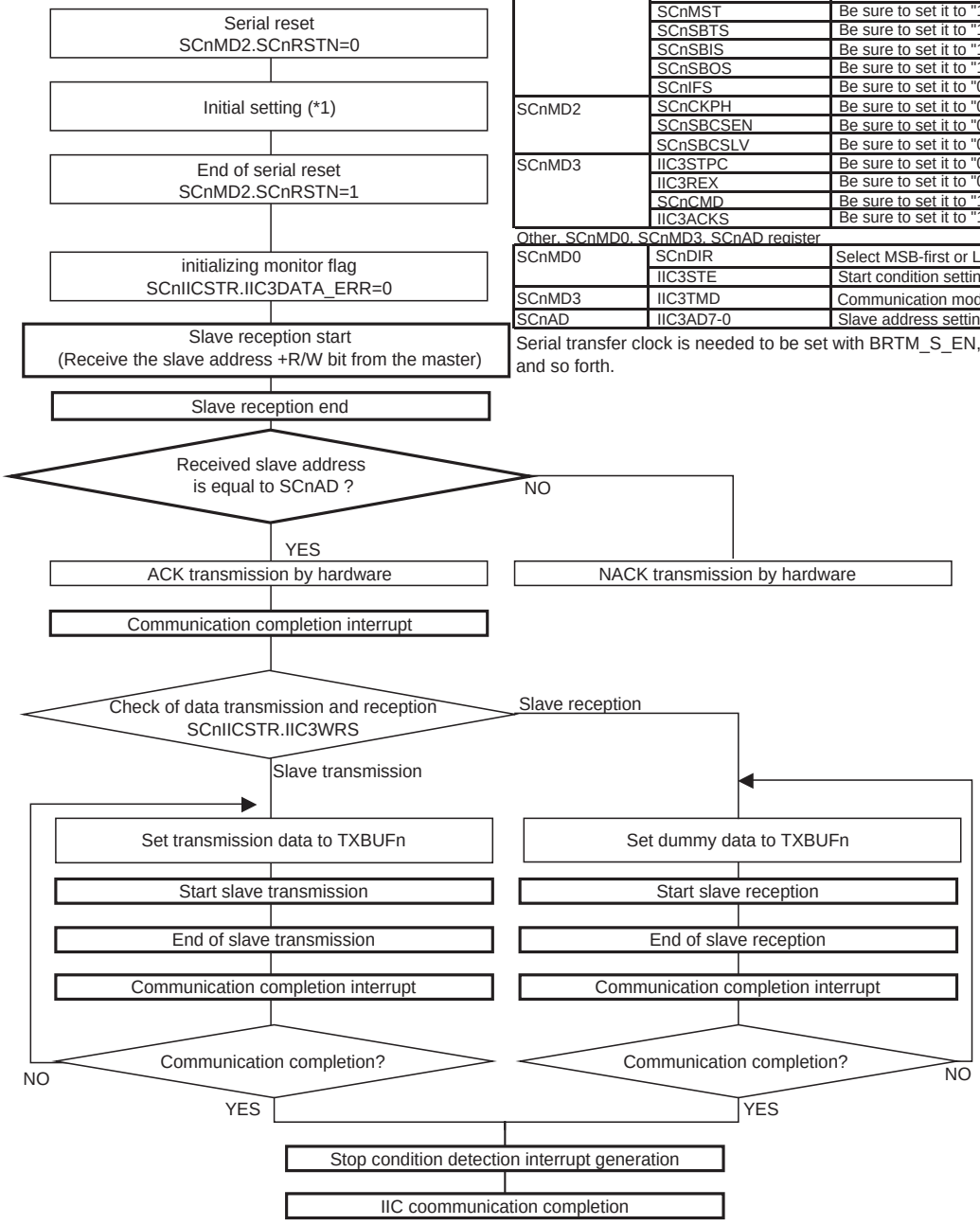


Figure:13.5.14 Slave Communication Setting Flow Diagram

Chapter 14 DMA Controller

14

14.1 Overview

Direct memory access controller (DMA) allows the direct data access in all memory area without CPU. DMA has priority to access data in memory area over CPU. For internal memory (ReRAM/RAM), CPU can access memory during DMA data transfer if the bus collision between DMA and CPU doesn't happen.

DMA has the following features.

Table:14.1.1 Function

Data transmission unit	8-bit or 16-bit
Maximum number of DMA transfer	$2^{10}-1$
DMA start trigger	External interrupt (including Key interrupt), Internal interrupt and Software trigger
Transfer mode	Single transfer or Burst transfer
Emergency stop	DMA transfer can be stopped during DMA data transfer by software.

14.1.1 Block Diagram

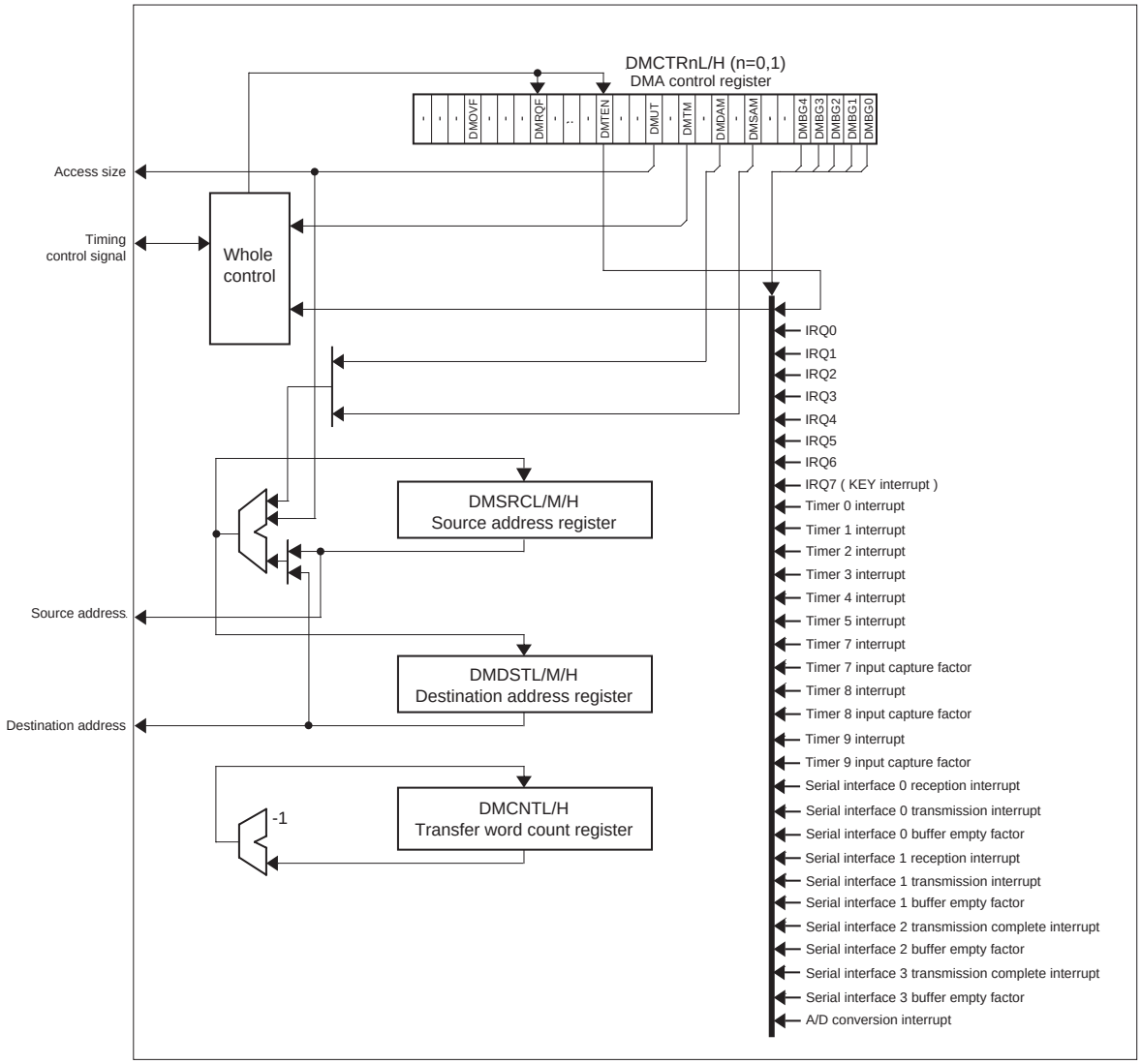


Figure:14.1.1 Block Diagram

14.2 DMA Controller Control Registers

Table:14.2.1. shows the list of DMA control registers.

Table:14.2.1 DMA Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register Name	Page
DMCTR0L	0x03E00	R/W	DMA control register0 (lower side)	XIV-5
DMCTR0H	0x03E01	R/W	DMA control register0 (upper side)	XIV-6
DMCTR1L	0x03E02	R/W	DMA control register1 (lower side)	XIV-7
DMCTR1H	0x03E03	R	DMA control register1 (upper side)	XIV-8
DMSRCL	0x03E04	R/W	DMA source address register (lower side)	XIV-9
DMSRCM	0x03E05	R/W	DMA source address register (middle side)	XIV-9
DMSRCH	0x03E06	R/W	DMA source address register (upper side)	XIV-9
DMDSTL	0x03E08	R/W	DMA destination address register (lower side)	XIV-10
DMDSTM	0x03E09	R/W	DMA destination address register (middle side)	XIV-10
DMDSTH	0x03E0A	R/W	DMA destination address register (upper side)	XIV-10
DMCNTL	0x03E0C	R/W	DMA transfer word count register (lower side)	XIV-11
DMCNTH	0x03E0D	R/W	DMA transfer word count register (upper side)	XIV-11

R/W :Readable and Writable
R :Readable

Setup data of DMA control registers (except DMCTR1L) in Table:14.2.1 must not be changed when the DMCTR1L.DMTEN is "1".

In STOP/HALT2/HALT3 mode, DMA cannot be used.
Halt DMA before entering STOP/HALT2/HALT3 mode.

14.2.1 DMA Control Register

■ DMA Control Register 0 lower side (DMCTR0L: 0x03E00)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	DMSAM	-	-	DMBG4-0				
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	DMSAM	Source Address increment control 0: Enable (Incremented) 1: Disable (Fixed)
6-5	-	Always read as "0".
4-0	DMBG4-0	DMA start trigger 00000: software trigger 00001: IRQ0 00010: IRQ1 00011: IRQ2 00100: IRQ3 00101: IRQ4 00110: IRQ5 00111: IRQ6 01000: IRQ7 (KEY interrupt) 01001: Timer 0 interrupt 01010: Timer 1 interrupt 01011: Timer 2 interrupt 01100: Timer 3 interrupt 01101: Timer 4 interrupt 01110: Timer 5 interrupt 01111: Timer 7 interrupt 10000: Timer 7 input capture factor 10001: Timer 8 interrupt 10010: Timer 8 input capture factor 10011: Timer 9 interrupt 10100: Timer 9 input capture factor 10101: Serial interface 0 reception interrupt 10110: Serial interface 0 transmission interrupt 10111: Serial interface 0 buffer empty factor 11000: Serial interface 1 reception interrupt 11001: Serial interface 1 transmission interrupt 11010: Serial interface 1 buffer empty factor 11011: Serial interface 2 transmission complete interrupt 11100: Serial interface 2 buffer empty factor 11101: Serial interface 3 transmission complete interrupt 11110: Serial interface 3 buffer empty factor 11111: A/D conversion interrupt

■ DMA Control Register 0 upper side (DMCTR0H: 0x03E01)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	DMUT	-	DMTM	-	DMDAM	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R/W	R	R/W	R	R/W	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	-	Always read as "0".
5	DMUT	Data transmission unit 0: 8-bit 1: 16-bit
4	-	Always read as "0".
3	DMTM	Transfer mode 0: Burst transfer 1: Single transfer
2	-	Always read as "0".
1	DMDAM	Destination Address increment control 0: Enable (Incremented) 1: Disable (Fixed)
0	-	Always read as "0".

■ DMA Control Register 1 lower side (DMCTR1L: 0x03E02)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	DMTEN
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-1	-	Always read as "0".
0	DMTEN	DMA transfer enable control After the DMTEN is set, DMA waits for the DMA start trigger to occur. (When the software trigger is selected in DMCTR0L.DMBG4-0, DMA transfer starts immediately after the DMTEN is set to "1".) When the last data is transferred, the DMTEN is cleared to "0" by hardware. Setting the DMTEN to "0" during DMA transfer makes the transfer finished, which is called "Emergency stop".

■ DMA Control Register 1 upper side (DMCTR1H: 0x03E03)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	DMOVF	-	-	-	DMRQF
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-5	-	Always read as "0".
4	DMOVF	DMA-Error detection When the DMA-Error occurs, the DMOVF is set to "1". The DMOVF is cleared to "0" by writing DMCTR1L.DMTEN. 0: Not Detect 1: Detect
3-1	-	Always read as "0".
0	DMRQF	DMA Busy monitor The DMRQF is set to "1" when the DMA start trigger occurs. In the case of the single transfer, the DMRQF is cleared to "0" at the end of single data transfer. In the case of the burst transfer, the DMRQF is cleared to "0" at the end of the last burst data transfer. 0: Not Busy 1: Busy

14.2.2 DMA Source Address Register

■ DMA Source Address Register lower side (DMSRCL: 0x03E04)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	DMSA7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	DMSA7-0	Source address lower side (bit 0 to 7) This register shows the address where the next data to be loaded is contained.

■ DMA Source Address Register middle side (DMSRCM: 0x03E05)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	DMSA15-8							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	DMSA15-8	Source address middle side (bit 8 to 15) This register shows the address where the next data to be loaded is contained.

■ DMA Source Address Register upper side (DMSRCH: 0x03E06)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	DMSA16
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-1	-	Always read as "0".
0	DMSA16	Source address upper side (bit 16) This register shows the address where the next data to be loaded is contained.

14.2.3 DMA Destination Address Register

■ DMA Destination Address Register lower side (DMDSTL: 0x03E08)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	DMDA7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	DMDA7-0	Destination address lower side (bit 0 to 7) This register shows the address where the next data from source address is stored.

■ DMA Destination Address Register middle side (DMDSTM: 0x03E09)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	DMDA15-8							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-0	DMDA15-8	Destination address middle side (bit 8 to 15) This register shows the address where the next data from source address is stored.

■ DMA Destination Address Register upper side (DMDSTH: 0x03E0A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	DMDA16
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-1	-	Always read as "0".
0	DMDA16	Destination address upper side (bit 16) This register shows the address where the next data from source address is stored.

14.2.4 DMA Transfer Word Count Register

■ DMA Transfer Word Count Register (DMCNTL: 0x03E0C, DMCNTH: 0x03E0D)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	DMCT7-0							
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	-	DMCT9-8	
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
15-10	-	Always read as "0".
9-0	DMCT9-0	Number of DMA transfer This value is decremented when each transfer is finished. 0x000: Prohibited 0x001: 1 time 0x002: 2 times .... 0x3FF: 2^{10}- 1 times transfers (maximum)

14.3 DMA Data Transfer

There are two transfer modes, single transfer and burst transfer, which are selected with the DMCTR0H.DMTM.

14.3.1 Single Transfer Mode

When the DMA start trigger occurs, single data, the size of which is decided with DMCTR0H.DMUT, is transferred and the data transfer counter consisting of DMCNTH and DMCNTL are decremented by one. When all the single data transfer finishes, DMA interrupt occurs.

If the DMA start trigger happens during the time after DMA reads the last single data from Source Address and before the DMCTR1L.DMTEN is set to "1" by software (for example, the period (B) in the Figure:14.3.1), DMA-AddReq interrupt occurs.

If the DMA start trigger happens during the time after the DMA start trigger occurs and before DMA reads the data (not limited to the last single data) from Source Address (for example, the period (A) in the Figure:14.3.1), DMA-Error interrupt occurs.

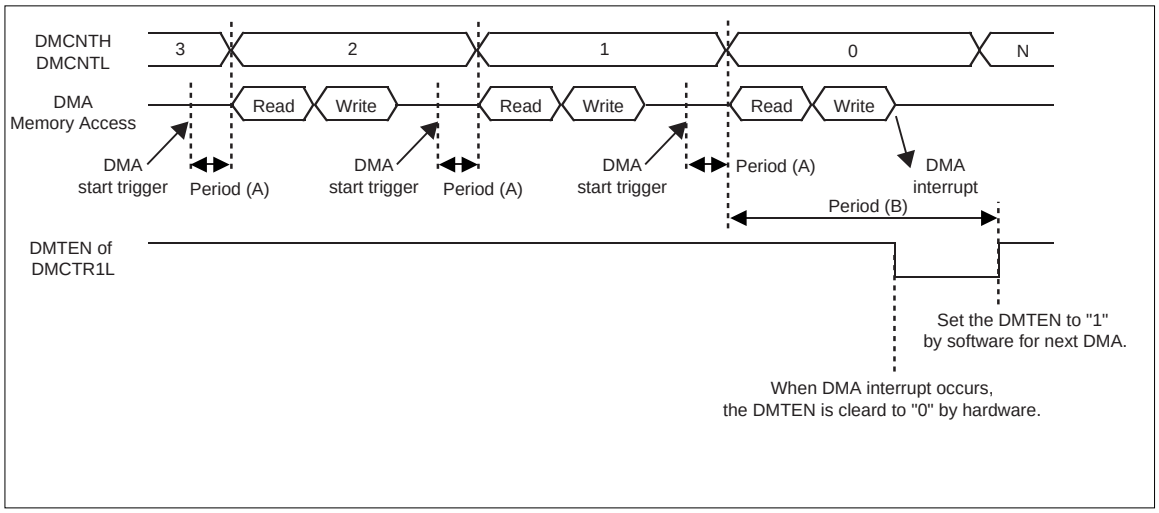


Figure:14.3.1 Example of Single Transfer

14.3.2 Burst Transfer Mode

When the DMA start trigger occurs, data, the size of which is decided with DMCTR0H.DMUT, is transferred in a single burst until the data transfer counter consisting of DMACNTH and DMACNTL are decremented to zero. When all the data transfer finishes, DMA interrupt occurs.

If the DMA start trigger happens during the time after DMA reads the last burst data from Source Address and before the DMCTR1L.DMTEN is set to "1" by software (for example, the period (B) in the Figure 14.3.2), DMA-AddReq interrupt occurs.

If the DMA start trigger happens during the time after the DMA start trigger occurs and before DMA reads the last data) from Source Address (for example, the period (A) in the Figure 14.3.2), DMA-Error interrupt occurs.

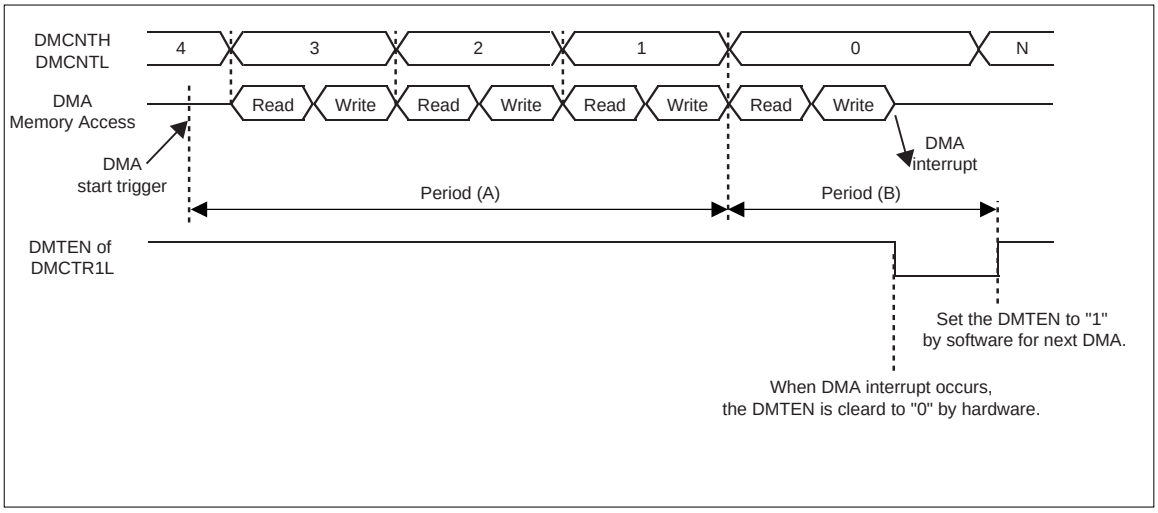


Figure:14.3.2 Example of Burst Transfer

Chapter 15 Buzzer

15

15.1 Overview

Buzzer circuit outputs the square wave generated by dividing HCLK by $1/2^9$ to $1/2^{14}$ or SCLK by $1/2^3$ to $1/2^4$.

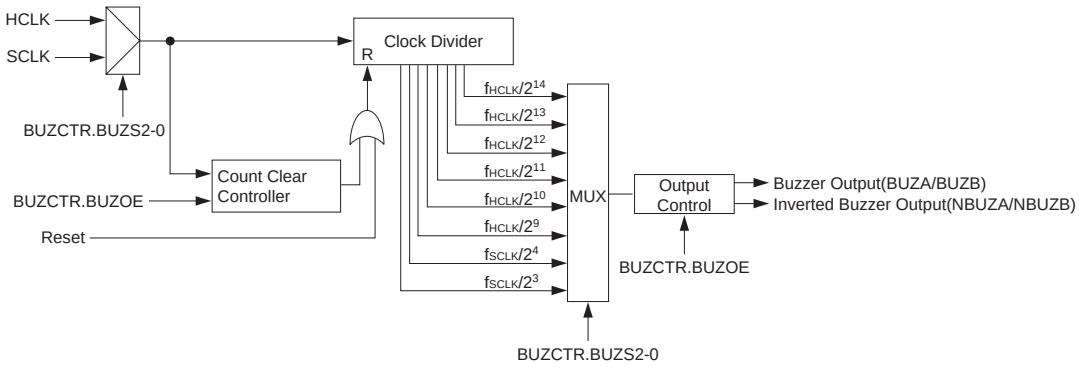


Figure:15.1.1 Buzzer Block Diagram

15.2 Control Register

15.2.1 Registers

Table:15.2.1 shows the Buzzer Control Registers.

Table:15.2.1 Buzzer Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
BUZCTR	0x03F7F	R/W	Buzzer Control Register	XV-4
P0DIR	0x03F30	R/W	Port 0 direction control register	VII-12
P3DIR	0x03F33	R/W	Port 3 direction control register	VII-13
BUZCNT	0x03F5F	R/W	Buzzer output / Buzzer output terminal control register	VII-32

15.2.2 Buzzer Control Register

■ Buzzer Control Register (BUZCTR:0x03F7F)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	BUZOE	BUZS2-0			-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	BUZOE	Buzzer output selection 0: Buzzer output disable 1: Buzzer output enable
6-4	BUZS2-0	Buzzer output frequency selection 000: $f_{HCLK}/2^{14}$ 001: $f_{HCLK}/2^{13}$ 010: $f_{HCLK}/2^{12}$ 011: $f_{HCLK}/2^{11}$ 100: $f_{HCLK}/2^{10}$ 101: $f_{HCLK}/2^{9}$ 110: $f_{SCLK}/2^{4}$ 111: $f_{SCLK}/2^{3}$
3-0	-	Always read as 0.

The BUZCTR.BUZOE and BUZCTR.BUZS2-0 must not be set at the same time.

When the BUZCTR.BUZOE is "0", "Low" level signal is output from BUZ/NBUZ.

15.3 Operation

15.3.1 Operation

■ Buzzer Output Frequency

The frequency of buzzer output is decided by the setting value of BUZCTR.BUZS2-0 and the frequency of HCLK (f_{HCLK}) and SCLK (f_{SCLK}).

Table:15.3.1 Buzzer Output Frequency

f_{HCLK}	f_{SCLK}	BUZS2	BUZS1	BUZSO	Buzzer output frequency
10 MHz	-	0	0	0	0.61 kHz
10 MHz	-	0	0	1	1.22 kHz
4 MHz	-	0	1	0	0.98 kHz
4 MHz	-	0	1	1	1.95 kHz
2 MHz	-	1	0	0	1.95 kHz
2 MHz	-	1	0	1	3.91 kHz
-	32 kHz	1	1	0	2 kHz
-	32 kHz	1	1	1	4 kHz

■ Buzzer Output Pin

Buzzer output pin, and the polarity of it is decided with BUZCNT.
Refer to BUZCNT in [7.2.14 Buzzer output / Buzzer output pin control Register] for more information.

15.3.2 Setup Example

■ Setup Example

The following example shows how to output the buzzer of 2.44 kHz from BUZB pin under the 10 MHz of f_{HCLK}.

Step	Setup Procedure	Register	Description
1	Set the buzzer frequency	BUZCTR	Set the BUZCTR.BUZS to "010".
2	Set the buzzer output pin	BUZCNT P0OUT P0DIR	Select the P02 as the buzzer output pin by - Setting the BUZCNT.BUZEN to 1. - Setting the BUZCNT.BUZSEL to 1. Select the output direction, and the output data of "1" at P02. - Set the P0OUT.P0OUT2 to "0". - Set the P0DIR.P0DIR2 to "1".
3	Enable buzzer output	BUZCTR	Set the BUZCTR.BUZOE to "1".
4	Disable buzzer output	BUZCTR	Set the BUZCTR.BUZOE to "0". "Low" level signal is output from buzzer output pin.

Chapter 16 A/D Converter (ADC)

16

16.1 Overview

This LSI has an analog-to-digital converter (ADC) with 12 bits resolutions. This ADC has a sample hold circuit, the channel 0 to channel 7 (AN0 to AN7) of analog input can be switched by software.
When the ADC is stopped, the power consumption can be reduced by turning the A/D resistor ladder off.
The ADC is activated by setting a register, an external interrupt, a timer 7 interrupt and an A/D conversion interrupt.

16.1.1 Functions

Table:16.1.1 shows the ADC functions.

Table:16.1.1 ADC Functions

Function	Content
Number of A/D Input Pins	8 pins
Pin Name	AN7 to AN0
Interrupt	ADIRQ
Resolution	12 bits
Conversion Time (Minimum)	15.38 μs (at T_{ADCLK} = 750 ns)
Input Range	V_{SS} to V_{REFP}
Power Reduction	A/D resistor ladder (ON/OFF)

This function can not be used in STOP/HALT mode.

Do not execute mode switching as follows;
- Normal operation state (NORMAL) to Low-speed operation state (SLOW)
- Low-speed operation state (SLOW) to Idle state (IDLE) to Normal operation state (NORMAL)

If the above mode switching is executed, the result of A/D conversion can not be guaranteed.

To realize a low power consumption, it is recommended that the A/D resistor ladder is turned off while the A/D conversion is not executed.

16.1.2 Block Diagram

■ ADC Block Diagram

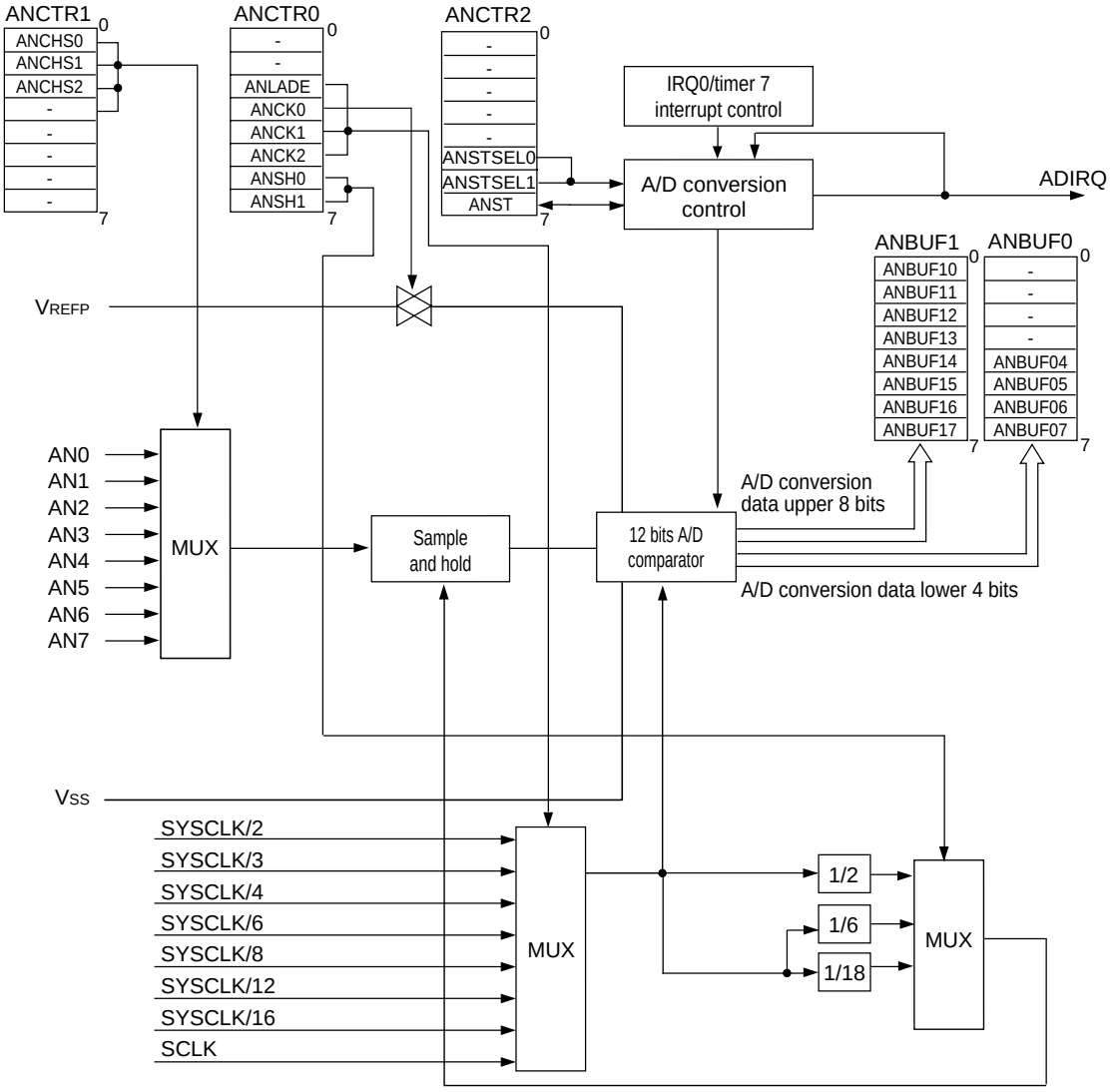


Figure:16.1.1 ADC Block Diagram

16.2 Control Registers

The ADC control registers consists of the control registers (ANCTRn) and the data storage buffers (ANBUFn).

16.2.1 Registers

Table:16.2.1 shows the registers that control the ADC.

Table:16.2.1 ADC Control Registers

Symbol	Address	R/W	Register name	Page
ANCTR0	0x03F60	R/W	A/D control register 0	XVI-5
ANCTR1	0x03F61	R/W	A/D control register 1	XVI-6
ANCTR2	0x03F62	R/W	A/D control register 2	XVI-6
ANBUF0	0x03F64	R	ADC data storage buffer 0	XVI-7
ANBUF1	0x03F65	R	ADC data storage buffer 1	XVI-7
ANEN0	0x03F5C	R/W	Analog input control register 0	VII-30

R/W: Readable/Writable
R: Read only

16.2.2 Control Registers

■ A/D Control Register 0 (ANCTR0: 0x03F60)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	ANSH1-0		ANCK2-0			ANLADE	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7-6	ANSH1-0	Sample hold time 00: $T_{ADCLK} \times 2$ 01: $T_{ADCLK} \times 6$ 10: $T_{ADCLK} \times 18$ 11: Prohibited
5-3	ANCK2-0	A/D conversion clock (ADCLK) 000: SYSCLK/2 001: SYSCLK/3 010: SYSCLK/4 011: SYSCLK/6 100: SYSCLK/8 101: SYSCLK/12 110: SYSCLK/16 111: SCLK * as 750 ns ≤ T_{ADCLK} ≤ 100 μs
2	ANLADE	A/D resistor ladder control 0: A/D resistor ladder OFF 1: A/D resistor ladder ON
1-0	-	Always read as 0.

■ A/D Control Register 1 (ANCTR1: 0x03F61)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	-	ANCHS2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-3	-	Always read as 0.
2-0	ANCHS2-0	Analog input channel 000 : AN0 pin 001 : AN1 pin 010 : AN2 pin 011 : AN3 pin 100 : AN4 pin 101 : AN5 pin 110 : AN6 pin 111 : AN7 pin

■ A/D Control Register 2 (ANCTR2: 0x03F62)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	ANST	ANSTSEL1-0		-	-	-	-	-
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R	R	R	R	R

bp	Bit name	Description
7	ANST	A/D conversion status 0: Finish, Stop 1: Start, Converting
6-5	ANSTSEL1-0	A/D conversion starting factor selection 00: Setting ANST bit to "1" 01: External interrupt 0, or setting ANST bit to "1" 10: Timer 7 interrupt, or setting ANST bit to "1" 11: A/D conversion interrupt, or setting ANST bit to "1"
4-0	-	Always read as 0.

16.2.3 Data Buffers

■ ADC Data Storage Buffer 0 (ANBUF0: 0x03F64)

This register stores lower 4 bits data after A/D conversion.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	ANBUF07	ANBUF06	ANBUF05	ANBUF04	-	-	-	-
At reset	X	X	X	X	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

■ ADC Data Storage Buffer 1 (ANBUF1: 0x03F65)

This register stores upper 8 bits after A/D conversion.

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	ANBUF17	ANBUF16	ANBUF15	ANBUF14	ANBUF13	ANBUF12	ANBUF11	ANBUF10
At reset	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Access	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

16.3 Operation

The following shows the procedures for setting ADC circuit.

1. Set the analog input terminal.

   Set the analog input terminal by ANEN0.

   * Be sure to set Analog input control register before applying analog voltage to the terminals.

2. Select the analog input terminal.

   Select the analog input pin from AN7 to AN0 by setting the ANCTR1.ANCHS2 to 0.

3. Select the A/D conversion clock.

   Select the A/D conversion clock by setting the ANCTR0.ANCK2-0. Set the conversion clock (T_{ADCLK}) between 750 ns and 100 μs depending on the resonator to be used.

4. Set the sample hold time.

   Set the sample hold time by the ANCTR0.ANSH1-0.
   Select the appropriate value based on the analog impedance.

   * The steps of (2) to (4) can be performed in random order. The steps of (3) and (4) can be operated simultaneously.

5. Set the A/D resistor ladder.

   Set the ANCTR0.ANLADE to "1" to apply current to the resistor ladder so that ADC will be in standby condition.

6. Select the ADC activation factor, then start A/D conversion.

   Set the ANCTR2.ANST to "1" to enable the ADC or set the ANCTR2.ANSTSEL1-0 to "01" or "10" to enable the ADC by external trigger factor.

7. A/D conversion.

   A/D conversion is compared and determined sequentially by MSB after the sampling in the sample hold time (which is set in the step (4)).

8. Complete A/D conversion.

   After A/D conversion is completed, the result of the conversion is stored in ANBUF0 and ANBUF1, A/D conversion interrupt is generated and the ANCTR2.ANST is cleared to "0".

Set ANCTR0.ANLADE to "1", then start A/D conversion after waiting for 12 conversion clocks.

When ADC is started again after setting ANCTR2.ANST to "0" and ADC was stopped by force during A/D conversion, start ADC after waiting for an equivalent time of (2 system clock) + (2 converter clock) or longer.

When the A/D conversion is converted that select the start by External interrupt 0, Timer 7 interrupt or A/D conversion interrupt as the start A/D conversion factor and set the ANCTR2.ANST to "0" during A/D conversion and A/D conversion is finished forcibly; if the conversion is stopped forcibly by setting ANCTR2.ANST to "0", set the ANCTR2.ANSTSEL1-0 to "00" before setting ANCTR2.ANST.

If the data of ANCTR0 or ANCTR1 is changed during A/D conversion, the operation and the result of A/D conversion cannot be guaranteed.
Set the ANCTR.ANLADE to "0" to turn the A/D resistor ladder off before changing the data of ANCTR0 or ANCTR1.

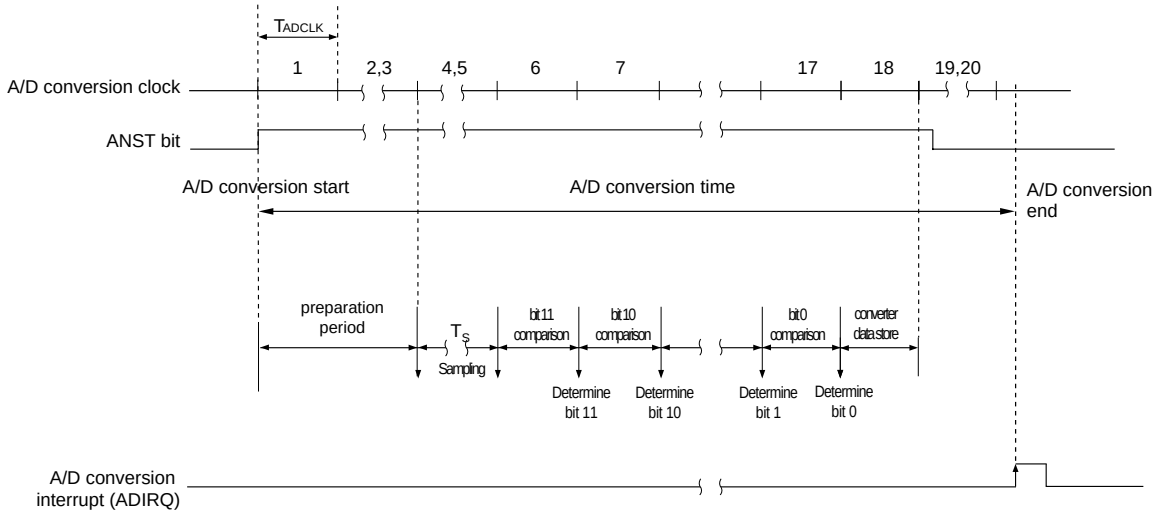


Figure:16.3.1 Operation of A/D conversion (sample hold time at $T_{ADCLK} \times 2$)

Before reading out the value of the A/D conversion, A/D conversion should be done several times to prevent noise error by confirming the match of level by program, or by using the average value.

16.3.1 Setup

■ Input Pins of A/D Conversion Setup

Input pins for ADC is selected by the ANCTR1.ANCHS2-0.

■ A/D Conversion Clock Setup

The A/D conversion clock is set by the ANCTR0.ANCK2-0.
Set the A/D conversion cycle (T_{ADCLK}) between 750 ns and 100 μs. Table:16.3.1 shows the machine clock (HCLK, SCLK, SYSCLK) and the A/D conversion cycle (T_{ADCLK}). (calculated as $f_{SYSCLK} = f_{HCLK}/2$, f_{SCLK})

Table:16.3.1 A/D Conversion Clock and A/D Conversion Cycle

ANCK2-0	A/D conversion clock	A/D conversion cycle (T_{ADCLK})	
		f_{HCLK} = 10 MHz	f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz
000	SYSCLK/2	400 ns (Setting is prohibited.)	61.035 μs
001	SYSCLK/3	600 ns (Setting is prohibited.)	91.552 μs
010	SYSCLK/4	800 ns	122.070 μs (Setting is prohibited.)
011	SYSCLK/6	1.2 μs	183.105 μs (Setting is prohibited.)
100	SYSCLK/8	1.6 ns	244.140 μs (Setting is prohibited.)
101	SYSCLK/12	2.4 μs	366.210 μs (Setting is prohibited.)
110	SYSCLK/16	3.2 μs	488.281 μs (Setting is prohibited.)
111	SCLK	-	30.517 μs

■ A/D Conversion Sample hold Time (T_S) Setup

The sample hold time of A/D conversion is set with the ANCTR0.ANSH1-0.
The sample hold time of A/D conversion depends on the external circuit, so set the appropriate value based on the analog input impedance.

Table:16.3.2 Sample Hold Time of A/D Conversion and A/D Conversion Time

ANSH1-0	Sample hold clock	A/D conversion cycle (T_{AD})
00	$T_{ADCLK} \times 2$	$T_{ADCLK} \times (18 + 2) + 3 \times 1 / f_{SYSCLK}$
01	$T_{ADCLK} \times 6$	$T_{ADCLK} \times (18 + 6) + 3 \times 1 / f_{SYSCLK}$
10	$T_{ADCLK} \times 18$	$T_{ADCLK} \times (18 + 18) + 3 \times 1 / f_{SYSCLK}$
11	-	-

The A/D conversion time indicated in Table:16.3.2 may shorten up to one cycle time of A/D conversion cycle depending on phase differences between system clock and A/D conversion clock.

■ A/D Resistor Ladder Control

The ANCTR0.ANLADE is set to "1" to apply current to the resistor ladder for A/D conversion. When A/D conversion is stopped, the ANCTR0.ANLADE is set to "0" to save the power consumption.

■ A/D Conversion Starting Factor Setup

A/D conversion starting factor is set by the ANCTR2.ANSTSEL1-0.
The ANCTR2.ANSTSEL1-0 are set to select the starting factor of External interrupt 0, Timer 7 interrupt or A/D conversion interrupt.
In addition, the A/D conversion is started by setting the ANCTR2.ANST to "1".

When External Interrupt 0 is selected as the A/D conversion starting factor, the valid edge should be assigned by IRQ0ICR.REDG0.

The interrupt valid edge need to be assigned before selecting the interrupt 0 factor for A/D conversion starting factor.

■ A/D Conversion Starting Setup

The start of A/D conversion is set by the ANCTR2.ANST. The A/D conversion is started by setting the ANCTR2.ANST to "1". When A/D conversion is started by External Interrupt 0 factor, Timer 7 interrupt factor or A/D conversion interrupt factor, the ANCTR2.ANST is set to "1" automatically after External Interrupt 0 is generated and the A/D conversion is started. The ANCTR2.ANST is cleared to "0" automatically after the conversion data is stored.

16.3.2 Setup Procedure

■ Initial setup of A/D conversion operation

The following flow chart shows the initial setup procedure of A/D conversion operation.

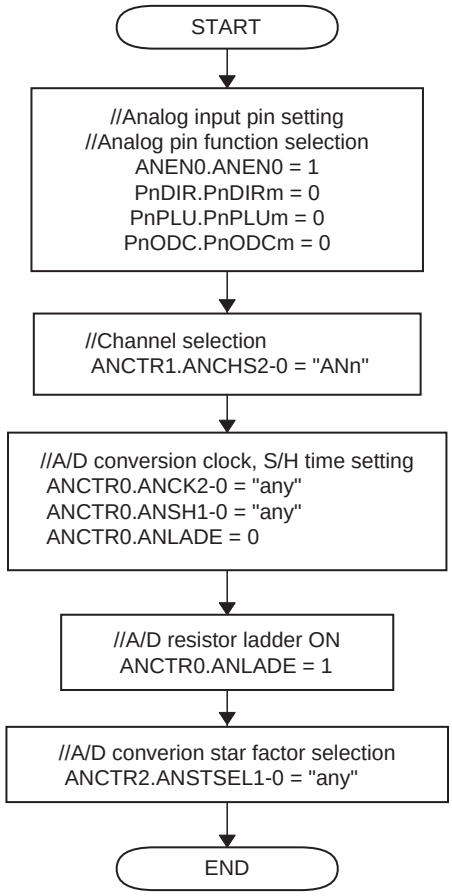


Figure:16.3.2 Initial setup procedure of A/D conversion operation

After initial setup, the A/D conversion is started, when the selected A/D conversion start factor occurs.
The conversion completion can be confirmed by monitoring A/D conversion interrupt or the ANCTR2.ANST.

When the conversion is restarted by changing the setting after the A/D conversion, set the ANCTR0.ANLADE to "0" to change the setup after stopping an analog circuit.
Note that operation is not guaranteed if the procedures above are not properly conducted.

After setting the ANCTR0.ANLADE to "1" and waiting for 12 conversion clocks, start A/D conversion.

16.3.3 Cautions

As A/D conversion could be easily damaged by noise, sufficient anti-noise measures are needed.

■ Anti-noise measures

Connect capacitors to analog input pins AN7 to AN0, which is positioned close to VSS pins.
In addition, Connect capacitors (the different capacities more than two are recommended.) to ADC reference voltage pins VREFP, which is positioned close to VSS pins.

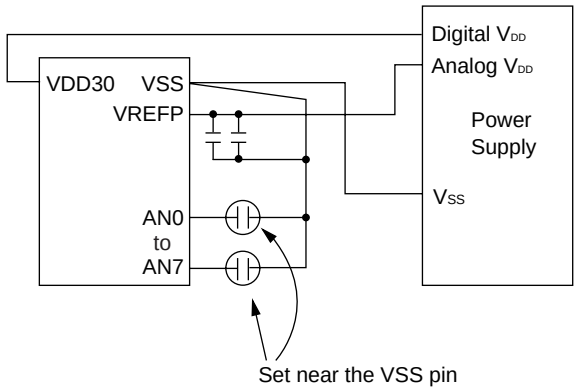


Figure:16.3.3 ADC Recommended Example 1

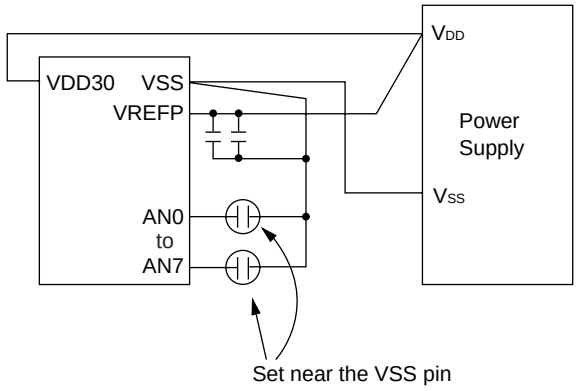


Figure:16.3.4 ADC Recommended Example 2

During the A/D conversion, if the output level of LSI is changed, or the additional peripheral circuits are switched to ON/OFF, the ADC may operate incorrectly, as the analog control terminals cannot be fixed.
At circuit board evaluation, confirm the waveform of analog input pins.

■ Sample Hold Time

This LSI contains a sample hold capacitor (C_{AD} = 16 pF), input pin capacitor (C_{IO} = 2 pF) and resistor (R_{AD} = 4.0 kΩ).
Set the sample hold time (T_{AD}) based on the time constant (τ) with C_{AD}, C_{IO}, R_{AD} and impedance (R_{OUT}) of external analog signal output circuit.

It is recommended to select to be $T_{AD} > 8\tau$ ($\tau = RC$).

For example, when R_{OUT} = 10 kΩ, T_{AD} is determined as follows.

R = 10 kΩ + 4.0 kΩ = 14 kΩ
C = 2 pF + 16 pF = 18 pF * R and C will be simplified to calculate.
8RC = 2.0 μs

Set the conversion clock that T_{AD} > 2.0 μs

When the setting of sample hold time (ANCTR0.ANSH1-0) is "$T_{ADCLK} \times 2$", set A/D conversion clock (ADCLK) < 1.0 MHz.

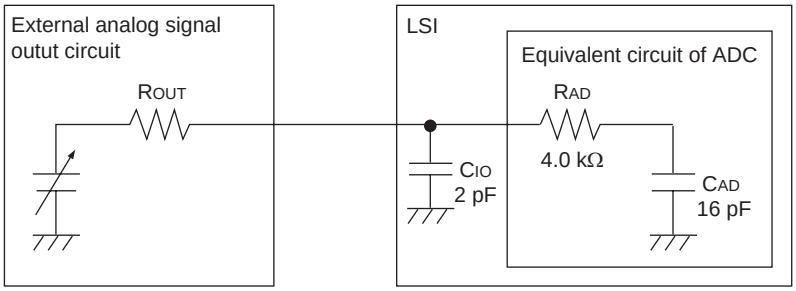


Figure:16.3.5 Circuit Example

■ External Capacitor

When R_{OUT} is large, the input load will essentially comprise only R_{AD}, C_{AD} and C_{IO} by providing a large-capacitance (1000 pF to 1 μF) outside.
It is also recommended that a large-capacitance is added to outside as the protection against noise for the analog signal.
In this case, ADC may not be possible to follow the analog signal with the large differential coefficient by an external capacitor affecting as a low-path filter.
When converting a high-speed analog signal, insert a low-impedance buffer.

* When using this ADC, evaluate enough that A/D conversion is ensured the expected precision.

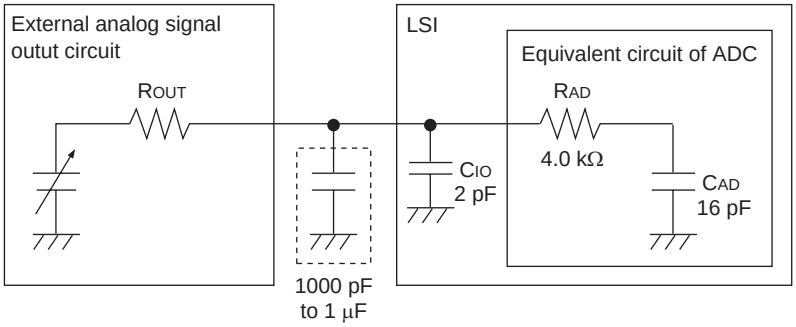


Figure:16.3.6 Circuit Example with External Capacitor

Chapter 17 LCD

17

17.1 Overview

This LSI has an LCD driver circuit (LCDDRV) which is composed of 43 segment output pins and 4 common output pins (39 segment output pins and 8 common output pins). The LCDDRV has an LCD reference voltage circuit (REFVOL) and a voltage booster circuit (BSTVOL).

Table:17.1.1 shows the functions of LCDDRV.

Table:17.1.1 LCD Functions

Function	Details
Duty	Static 1/2 to 1/8 duty
LCD Power Supply	V_{LC1} ,V_{LC2}, V_{LC3}
LCD Reference Voltage Circuit (REFVOL)	0.05 V increments within a range of 0.9 V to 1.8 V
LCD Voltage Booster Circuit (BSTVOL)	Boosts reference voltage input by 2, 3 times.
Clock Source for LCD Display (LCDCLKS)	SCLK, HCLK/2^4, HCLK/2^5, HCLK/2^6, HCLK/2^7, HCLK/2^8
LCD Display Clock (LCDCLK)	LCDCLKS/2^3, LCDCLKS/2^4, LCDCLKS/2^5, LCDCLKS/2^6, LCDCLKS/2^7, LCDCLKS/2^8, LCDCLKS/2^9, LCDCLKS/2^{10}, LCDCLKS/2^{11}, LCDCLKS/2^{12}
Clock Source for BSTVOL (LCUPCKS)	SCLK, HCLK/2^4, HCLK/2^5, HCLK/2^6, HCLK/2^7, HCLK/2^8
Boost Clock for BSTVOL (LCUPCK)	LCUPCKS × 1/8, LCUPCKS × 1/16, LCUPCKS × 1/32, LCUPCKS × 1/64, LCUPCKS × 1/128
LCDCLKS : Selected clock with LCDMD3.LCCKS2-0 LCDCLK : Selected clock with LCDMD3.LCCK3-0 LCUPCKS : Selected clock with LCDMD0.LCUPCKS2-0 LCUPCK : Selected clock with LCDMD0.LCUPCKDIV2-0	

LCD operations are restricted depending on the CPU mode which is shown in Table:17.1.2.

Table:17.1.2 LCD Function Restrictions in Each CPU Mode

CPU Mode		Clock Source for LCDCLKS Clock Source for LCUPCKS	
		HCLK-based	SCLK-based
Operation Mode	NORMAL	√	√
	SLOW	-	√
Standby Mode	HALT0	Δ	Δ
	HALT1	-	Δ
	HALT2/HALT3	-	Δ
	STOP0/STOP1	-	-
√: LCD operation is enabled Δ: Displaying data can be maintained. –: LCD operation is disabled.			

The supply voltage to VLC1 (V_{LC1}) must be kept between V_{DD30} and 3.6 V.
($V_{DD30} \leq V_{LC1} \leq 3.6$ V).
When LCDDRV is not used, Supply V_{DD30} to VLC1 pin. At this time, VLC2/VLC3/C1/C2 pins are used as general-purpose ports.

17.1.1 LCD Driver Circuit Block Diagram

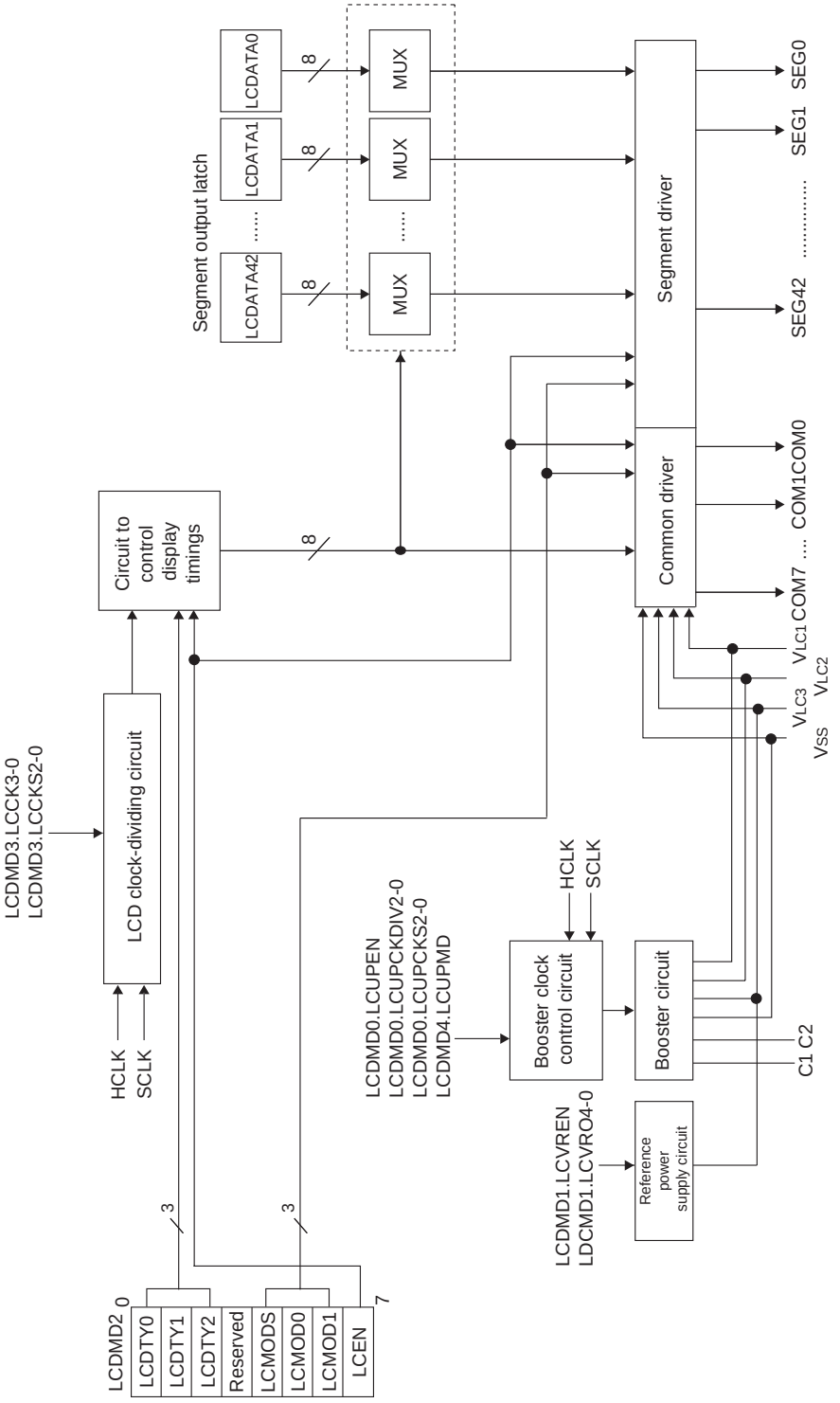


Figure:17.1.1 LCD Driver Circuit Block Diagram

17.2 Control Registers

Table:17.2.1 shows the registers that control LCDDRV.

Table:17.2.1 LCD Control Registers

Register	Address	R/W	Function	Page
LCDMD0	0x03E80	R/W	LCD mode control register 0	XVII-5
LCDMD1	0x03E81	R/W	LCD mode control register 1	XVII-6
LCDMD2	0x03E82	R/W	LCD mode control register 2	XVII-7
LCDMD3	0x03E83	R/W	LCD mode control register 3	XVII-8
LCDMD4	0x03ECE	R/W	LCD mode control register 4	XVII-8
LCCTR0	0x03E86	R/W	LCD output control register 0	XVII-9
LCCTR1	0x03E87	R/W	LCD output control register 1	XVII-10
LCCTR2	0x03E88	R/W	LCD output control register 2	XVII-11
LCCTR3	0x03E89	R/W	LCD output control register 3	XVII-12
LCCTR4	0x03E8A	R/W	LCD output control register 4	XVII-13
LCCTR5	0x03E8B	R/W	LCD output control register 5	XVII-14
LCDSEL	0x03E8E	R/W	LCD display select register	XVII-15
LCDATA0-42	0x03E90-0x03EBA	R/W	LCD segment latch	XVII-16

R/W: Readable/Writable

17.2.1 LCD Mode Control Registers

■ LCD Mode Control Register 0 (LCDMD0: 0x03E80)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LCUPEN	Reserved	LCUPCKDIV2-0			LCUPCKS2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	LCUPEN	BSTVOL enable control 0: stop 1: start
6	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
5-3	LCUPCKDIV2-0	LCUPCK selection 000: LCUPCKS × 1/8 001: LCUPCKS × 1/16 010: LCUPCKS × 1/32 011: LCUPCKS × 1/64 100: LCUPCKS × 1/128 110-111: Setting prohibited
2-0	LCUPCKS2-0	LCUPCKS selection. 000: SCLK 001: HCLK/2^4 010: HCLK/2^5 011: HCLK/2^6 100: HCLK/2^7 101: HCLK/2^8 110-111: Setting prohibited

■ LCD Mode Control Register 1 (LCDMD1: 0x03E81)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LCVREN	-	-	LCVRO4-0				
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	LCVREN	REFVOL enable control 0: stop 1: start
6-5	-	Always read as 0.
4-0	LCVRO4-0	Output voltage of REFVOL (Incremented by 0.05 V) 00000: 0.9 V 00001: 0.95 V | 10010: 1.8 V 10011-11111: Setting prohibited

■ LCD Mode Control Register 2 (LCDMD2: 0x03E82)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	LCEN	LCMOD1-0		LCMODS	Reserved	LCDTY2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	LCEN	LCD display driver control 0: Stop 1: Start
6 to 5	LCMOD1-0	LCD display mode 00: Normal 01: All LCD on 10: All LCD off 11: Setting prohibited
4	LCMODS	Selects a display waveform 0: Line reverse 1: Frame reverse
3	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
2-0	LCDTY2-0	LCD display duty 000: 1/1 (Static) 001: 1/2 010: 1/3 011: 1/4 100: 1/5 101: 1/6 110: 1/7 111: 1/8

■ LCD Mode Control Register 3 (LCDMD3: 0x03E83)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	Reserved	LCCK3-0				LCCKS2-0		
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
6-3	LCCK3-0	LCDCLK selection 0000: LCDCLKS/2^3 0001: LCDCLKS/2^4 0010: LCDCLKS/2^5 0011: LCDCLKS/2^6 0100: LCDCLKS/2^7 0101: LCDCLKS/2^8 0110: LCDCLKS/2^9 0111: LCDCLKS/2^{10} 1000: LCDCLKS/2^{11} 1001: LCDCLKS/2^{12} 1010-1111: Setting prohibited
2-0	LCCKS2-0	LCDCLKS selection 000: SCLK (Low-speed clock) 001: HCLK (High-speed clock) /2^4 010: HCLK (High-speed clock) /2^5 011: HCLK (High-speed clock) /2^6 100: HCLK (High-speed clock) /2^7 101: HCLK (High-speed clock) /2^8 110-111: Setting prohibited

■ LCD Mode Control Register 4 (LCDMD4: 0x03ECE)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	Reserved							LCUPMD
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description
7-1	Reserved	Must be set to "0".
0	LCUPMD	BSTVOL boost voltage selection 0: Three times voltage boost 1: Two times voltage boost

17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers

LCD port control registers are described the control bits for each product.

■ LCD Port Control Register 0 (LCCTR0: 0x03E86)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SEGSL3	SEGSL2	SEGSL1	SEGSL0	COMSL3	COMSL2	COMSL1	COMSL0
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7	SEGSL3	COM7/SEG3/P70 selection 0: P70 1: COM7/SEG3	SEG3/P64 selection 0: P64 1: SEG3	Must be set to "0".
6	SEGSL2	COM6/SEG2/P71 selection 0: P71 1: COM6/SEG2	SEG2/P65 selection 0: P65 1: SEG2	
5	SEGSL1	COM5/SEG1/P72 selection 0: P72 1: COM5/SEG1	SEG1/P66 selection 0: P66 1: SEG1	
4	SEGSL0	COM4/SEG0/P73 selection 0: P73 1: COM4/SEG0	SEG0/P67 selection 0: P67 1: SEG0	
3	COMSL3	COM3/P74 selection 0: P74 1: COM3	COM3/P70 selection 0: P70 1: COM3	
2	COMSL2	COM2/P75 selection 0: P75 1: COM2	COM2/P71 selection 0: P71 1: COM2	
1	COMSL1	COM1/P76 selection 0: P76 1: COM1	COM1/P72 selection 0: P72 1: COM1	
0	COMSL0	COM0/P77 selection 0: P77 1: COM0	COM0/P73 selection 0: P73 1: COM0	

■ LCD Port Control Register 1 (LCCTR1: 0x03E87)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SEGSL11	SEGSL10	SEGSL9	SEGSL8	SEGSL7	SEGSL6	SEGSL5	SEGSL4
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7	SEGSL11	SEG11/P60 selection 0: P60 1: SEG11	SEG11/P50 selection 0: P50 1: SEG11	Must be set to "0".
6	SEGSL10	SEG10/P61 selection 0: P61 1: SEG10	SEG10/P55 selection 0: P55 1: SEG10	SEG6/P55 selection 0: P55 1: SEG6
5	SEGSL9	SEG9/P62 selection 0: P62 1: SEG9	SEG9/P56 selection 0: P56 1: EG9	SEG5/P56 selection 0: P56 1: SEG5
4	SEGSL8	SEG8/P63 selection 0: P63 1: SEG8	SEG8/P57 selection 0: P57 1: SEG8	SEG4/P57 selection 0: P57 1: SEG4
3	SEGSL7	SEG7/P64 selection 0: P64 1: SEG7	SEG7/P60 selection 0: P60 1: SEG7	SEG3/P60 selection 0: P60 1: SEG3
2	SEGSL6	SEG6/P65 selection 0: P65 1: SEG6	SEG6/P61 selection 0: P61 1: SEG6	SEG2/P61 selection 0: P61 1: SEG2
1	SEGSL5	SEG5/P66 selection 0: P66 1: SEG5	SEG5/P62 selection 0: P62 1: SEG5	SEG1/P62 selection 0: P62 1: SEG1
0	SEGSL4	SEG4/P67 selection 0: P67 1: SEG4	SEG4/P63 selection 0: P63 1: SEG4	SEG0/P63 selection 0: P63 1: SEG0

■ LCD Port Control Register 2 (LCCTR2: 0x03E88)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SEGSL19	SEGSL18	SEGSL17	SEGSL16	SEGSL15	SEGSL14	SEGSL13	SEGSL12
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7	SEGSL19	SEG19/P50 selection 0: P50 1: SEG19	SEG19/P40 selection 0: P40 1: SEG19	SEG11/P40 selection 0: P40 1: SEG11
6	SEGSL18	SEG18/P51 selection 0: P51 1: SEG18	SEG18/P41 selection 0: P41 1: SEG18	SEG10/P41 selection 0: P41 1: SEG10
5	SEGSL17	SEG17/P52 selection 0: P52 1: SEG17	SEG17/P42 selection 0: P42 1: SEG17	SEG9/P42 selection 0: P42 1: SEG9
4	SEGSL16	SEG16/P53 selection 0: P53 1: SEG16	SEG16/P43 selection 0: P43 1: SEG16	SEG8/P43 selection 0: P43 1: SEG8
3	SEGSL15	SEG15/P54 selection 0: P54 1: SEG15	SEG15/P44 selection 0: P44 1: SEG15	SEG7/P44 selection 0: P44 1: SEG7
2	SEGSL14	SEG14/P55 selection 0: P55 1: SEG14	SEG14/P45 selection 0: P45 1: SEG14	Must be set to "0".
1	SEGSL13	SEG13/P56 selection 0: P56 1: SEG13	SEG13/P62 selection 0: P62 1: SEG13	
0	SEGSL12	SEG12/P57 selection 0: P57 1: SEG12	SEG12/P46 selection 0: P46 1: SEG12	

■ LCD Port Control Register 3 (LCCTR3: 0x03E89)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SEGSL27	SEGSL26	SEGSL25	SEGSL24	SEGSL23	SEGSL22	SEGSL21	SEGSL20
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7	SEGSL27	SEG27/P40 selection 0: P40 1: SEG27	SEG27/P30 selection 0: P30 1: SEG27	SEG19/P30 selection 0: P30 1: SEG19
6	SEGSL26	SEG26/P41 selection 0: P41 1: SEG26	SEG26/P31 selection 0: P31 1: SEG26	SEG18/P31 selection 0: P31 1: SEG18
5	SEGSL25	SEG25/P42 selection 0: P42 1: SEG25	SEG25/P32 selection 0: P32 1: SEG25	SEG17/P32 selection 0: P32 1: SEG17
4	SEGSL24	SEG24/P43 selection 0: P43 1: SEG24	SEG24/P33 selection 0: P33 1: SEG24	SEG16/P33 selection 0: P33 1: SEG16
3	SEGSL23	SEG23/P44 selection 0: P44 1: SEG23	SEG23/P34 selection 0: P34 1: SEG23	SEG15/P34 selection 0: P34 1: SEG15
2	SEGSL22	SEG22/P45 selection 0: P45 1: SEG22	SEG22/P35 selection 0: P35 1: SEG22	SEG14/P35 selection 0: P35 1: SEG14
1	SEGSL21	SEG21/P46 selection 0: P46 1: SEG21	SEG21/P36 selection 0: P36 1: SEG21	SEG13/P36 selection 0: P36 1: SEG13
0	SEGSL20	SEG20/P47 selection 0: P47 1: SEG20	SEG20/P37 selection 0: P37 1: SEG20	SEG12/P37 selection 0: P37 1: SEG12

■ LCD Port Control Register 4 (LCCTR4: 0x03E8A)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	SEGSL35	SEGSL34	SEGSL33	SEGSL32	SEGSL31	SEGSL30	SEGSL29	SEGSL28
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7	SEGSL35	SEG35/P30 selection 0: P30 1: SEG35	Must be set to "0".	Must be set to "0".
6	SEGSL34	SEG34/P31 selection 0: P31 1: SEG34		
5	SEGSL33	SEG33/P32 selection 0: P32 1: SEG33		
4	SEGSL32	SEG32/P33 selection 0: P33 1: SEG32		
3	SEGSL31	SEG31/P34 selection 0: P34 1: SEG31		
2	SEGSL30	SEG30/P35 selection 0: P35 1: SEG30	SEG30/P20 selection 0: P20 1: SEG30	
1	SEGSL29	SEG29/P36 selection 0: P36 1: SEG29	SEG29/P21 selection 0: P21 1: SEG29	
0	SEGSL28	SEG28/P37 selection 0: P37 1: SEG28	SEG28/P26 selection 0: P26 1: SEG28	SEG20/P26 selection 0: P26 1: SEG20

■ LCD Port Control Register 5 (LCCTR5: 0x03E8B)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	SEGSL42	SEGSL41	SEGSL40	SEGSL39	SEGSL38	SEGSL37	SEGSL36
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7	-	Always read as 0.		
6	SEGSL42	SEG42/P20 selection 0: P20 1: SEG42	Must be set to "0".	
5	SEGSL41	SEG41/P21 selection 0: P21 1: SEG41		
4	SEGSL40	SEG40/P22 selection 0: P22 1: SEG40		
3	SEGSL39	SEG39/P23 selection 0: P23 1: SEG39		
2	SEGSL38	SEG38/P24 selection 0: P24 1: SEG38		
1	SEGSL37	SEG37/P25 selection 0: P25 1: SEG37		
0	SEGSL36	SEG36/P26 selection 0: P26 1: SEG36		

■ LCD Display Select Register (LCDSEL: 0x03E8E)

bp	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit name	-	-	-	-	COMSL7	COMSL6	COMSL5	COMSL4
At reset	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Access	R	R	R	R	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

bp	Bit name	Description		
		MN101LR05D	MN101LR04D	MN101LR03D
7-4	-	Always read as 0.		
3	COMSL7	SEG3/COM7 selection 0: SEG3 1: COM7	Must be set to "0".	
2	COMSL6	SEG2/COM6 selection 0: SEG2 1: COM6		
1	COMSL5	SEG1/COM5 selection 0: SEG1 1: COM5		
0	COMSL4	SEG0/COM4 selection 0: SEG0 1: COM4		

■ Segment Output Latch (LCDATA0-42: 0x03E90-0x03EBA)

A 8-bit segment output latch (LCDATAn) is assigned for each segment. Each bit is read in synchronization with the COMn timing and is output from the SEGn. LCDATAn can be read or written like RAM, and the values of them are not valid at reset.
Figure:17.2.1 shows the relation of segment output latch and segment/common pins. these differ in each product.

Register	Address	COM7 ↓ bit7	COM6 ↓ bit6	COM5 ↓ bit5	COM4 ↓ bit4	COM3 ↓ bit3	COM2 ↓ bit2	COM1 ↓ bit1	COM0 ↓ bit0		MN101L R05D	MN101L R04D	MN101L R03D
LCDATA0	0x3E90									→	SEG0	SEG0	
LCDATA1	0x3E91									→	SEG1	SEG1	
LCDATA2	0x3E92									→	SEG2	SEG2	
LCDATA3	0x3E93									→	SEG3	SEG3	
LCDATA4	0x3E94									→	SEG4	SEG4	SEG0
LCDATA5	0x3E95									→	SEG5	SEG5	SEG1
LCDATA6	0x3E96									→	SEG6	SEG6	SEG2
LCDATA7	0x3E97									→	SEG7	SEG7	SEG3
LCDATA8	0x3E98									→	SEG8	SEG8	SEG4
LCDATA9	0x3E99									→	SEG9	SEG9	SEG5
LCDATA10	0x3E9A									→	SEG10	SEG10	SEG6
LCDATA11	0x3E9B									→	SEG11	SEG11	
LCDATA12	0x3E9C									→	SEG12	SEG12	
LCDATA13	0x3E9D									→	SEG13	SEG13	
LCDATA14	0x3E9E									→	SEG14	SEG14	
LCDATA15	0x3E9F									→	SEG15	SEG15	SEG7
LCDATA16	0x3EA0									→	SEG16	SEG16	SEG8
LCDATA17	0x3EA1									→	SEG17	SEG17	SEG9
LCDATA18	0x3EA2									→	SEG18	SEG18	SEG10
LCDATA19	0x3EA3									→	SEG19	SEG19	SEG11
LCDATA20	0x3EA4									→	SEG20	SEG20	SEG12
LCDATA21	0x3EA5									→	SEG21	SEG21	SEG13
LCDATA22	0x3EA6									→	SEG22	SEG22	SEG14
LCDATA23	0x3EA7									→	SEG23	SEG23	SEG15
LCDATA24	0x3EA8									→	SEG24	SEG24	SEG16
LCDATA25	0x3EA9									→	SEG25	SEG25	SEG17
LCDATA26	0x3EAA									→	SEG26	SEG26	SEG18
LCDATA27	0x3EAB									→	SEG27	SEG27	SEG19
LCDATA28	0x3EAC									→	SEG28	SEG28	SEG20
LCDATA29	0x3EAD									→	SEG29	SEG29	
LCDATA30	0x3EAE									→	SEG30	SEG30	
LCDATA31	0x3EAF									→	SEG31		
LCDATA32	0x3EB0									→	SEG32		
LCDATA33	0x3EB1									→	SEG33		
LCDATA34	0x3EB2									→	SEG34		
LCDATA35	0x3EB3									→	SEG35		
LCDATA36	0x3EB4									→	SEG36		
LCDATA37	0x3EB5									→	SEG37		
LCDATA38	0x3EB6									→	SEG38		
LCDATA39	0x3EB7									→	SEG39		
LCDATA40	0x3EB8									→	SEG40		
LCDATA41	0x3EB9									→	SEG41		
LCDATA42	0x3EBA									→	SEG42		

Figure:17.2.1 Correspondence of segment output latch and segment / common pins

17.3 Operation

17.3.1 LCDDRV Operation

LCDDRV displays data with SEGn and COMn in static, 1/2-duty with 1/2 bias or 1/3 to 1/8 duty with 1/3 bias.

When LCDDRV is turned off, the voltage of V_{LC1} is output from COMn and SEGn.

At reset, all the common and segment pins are in high-impedance.

LCDDRV can’t be used when the LSI is in STOP mode.
Before transiting to STOP mode, the following procedures must be executed.

(1) Set the LCDMD2.LCUPEN to "1" and deactivate LCDDRV.
(2) When BSTVOL is activated, set LCDMD0.LCUPEN to "0".
(After deactivating BSTVOL, the voltage level of VLC1 is V_{DD30}.)
(3) When REFVOL is activated, set LCDMD1.LCVREN to "0".

After LSI reset, VLC1 is in high-impedance until the LDCDMD0.LCUPEN is set to "1".
When BSTVOL is used t output voltage from VLC1 to drive LCD display, LCDMD0.LCUPEN should be set to"1" after releasing LSI reset. (Recommended.)

17.3.2 Voltage Booster Circuit (BSTVOL)

This LSI has a built-in booster circuit (BSTVOL) for LCD drive which generates a voltage of 2 or 3 times the LCD reference voltage.

■ 2 or 3 Times Boosting

When BSTVOL generates 2 or 3 times, input the LCD reference voltage (V_{LC3}) from VLC3 pin.
(When REFVOL is used, the above voltage input is not needed.)

Three times the reference voltage (V_{LC3}) is output from VLC1 pin, and two times the reference voltage (V_{LC3}) is output from the VLC2 pin.
Insert a capacitor at VLC1-VSS, VLC2-VSS and C1-C2 pins.

■ 2 Times Boosting

When BSTVOL generates 2 times, input the LCD reference voltage ($V_{LC2} = V_{LC3}$) from the short-circuit pin of VLC2 and VLC3 pins.
2 times the reference voltage (V_{LC2} (V_{LC3})) is output from VLC1 pin.
Insert a capacitor at VLC1-VSS and C1-C2 pins.

In 2 or 3 times boosting, the condition of "$1/3 \times V_{DD30} \leq V_{LC3} \leq 1.2$ V" must be ensured.
In 2 times boosting, the condition of "$1/2 \times V_{DD30} \leq V_{LC2}$ (= V_{LC3}) ≤ 1.8 V" must be ensured.

17.3.3 Reference Voltage Circuit (REFVOL)

This LSI has a built-in reference voltage circuit (REFVOL), which can be used with BSTVOL to generate LCD drive voltage. The output voltage of REFVOL is independent of VDD30, and is generated from 0.9 V to 1.8 V. REFVOL outputs the reference voltage from VLC3, and BSTVOL outputs the boost voltage from VLC1/VLC2.

When using the BSTVOL and the REFVOL, connect a capacitor of 0.22 μF to VLC1, VLC2, VLC3, C1 and C2. For more details, refer to [17.3.4 LCD Drive Voltage Selection].

17.3.4 LCD Drive Voltage Selection

LCD drive voltage can be generated with one of the three method described in Table:17.3.1.

Table:17.3.1 LCD Drive Voltage Supply Method

Method of generating LCD drive voltage		Description
1	Generate the drive voltage outside the LSI	Supply the voltage generated outside of the LSI to VLC1, VLC2 and VLC3.
2	Generate the drive voltage with BSTVOL (The reference voltage is supplied from outside of the LSI.)	<2 or 3 times boosting> Supply the reference voltage (V_{LC3}) to VLC3. 2 times higher voltage of V_{LC3} is output from VLC2. 3 times higher voltage of V_{LC3} is output from VLC1.
		<1/2 or 3/2 times boosting (1/3 bias)> Supply the reference voltage (V_{LC2}) to VLC2. 1/2 times lower voltage of V_{LC2} is output from VLC3. 3/2 times higher voltage of V_{LC2} is output from VLC1.
		<2 times boosting (1/2 bias)> Supply the reference voltage (V_{LC2}) to VLC2 and VLC3. 2 times higher voltage of V_{LC2} is output from VLC1.
3	Generate the drive voltage with BSTVOL (The reference voltage is generated with REFVOL.)	No need to supply voltage from outside of the LSI.

The supply voltage to VLC1 (V_{LC1}) must be kept between V_{DD30} and 3.6 V. ($V_{DD30} \leq V_{LC1} \leq 3.6$ V).

<1> In the case of generating the drive voltage outside the LSI

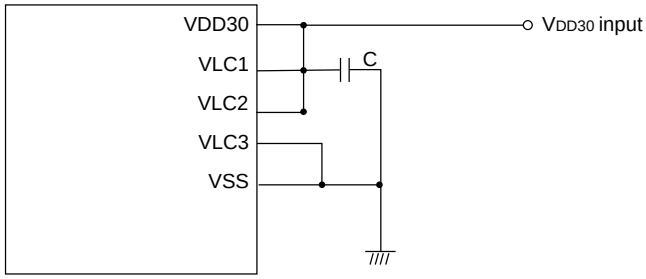
Supply each voltage described in Table:17.3.2 to VLC1, VLC2 and VLC3.
Figure:17.3.1 shows the connection with the external resistors, and each capacitor should be 0.1 μF.

Table:17.3.2 Voltage level of VLC1/VLC2/VLC3

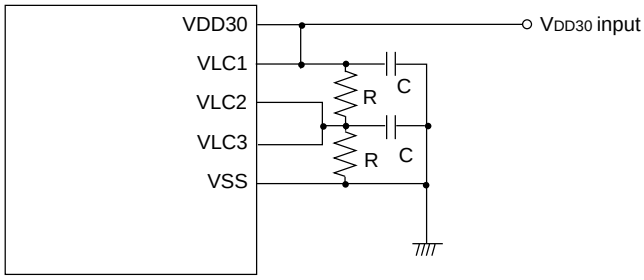
Pin Name	Voltage Level	Static	1/2-bias	1/3-bias
VLC1	V_{LC1}	$V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$	$V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$	$V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$
VLC2	V_{LC2}		$1/2V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$	$2/3V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$
VLC3	V_{LC3}	V_{SS}		$1/3V_{LCD} + V_{SS}$

V_{LCD}: LCD drive voltage, the maximum voltage supplied to LCD panel.

(a)Static($V_{DD30} = V_{LCD}$)



(b)1/2duty,1/2bias($V_{DD30} = V_{LCD}$)



(c)1/3duty to 1/8duty 1/3bias($V_{DD30} = V_{LCD}$)

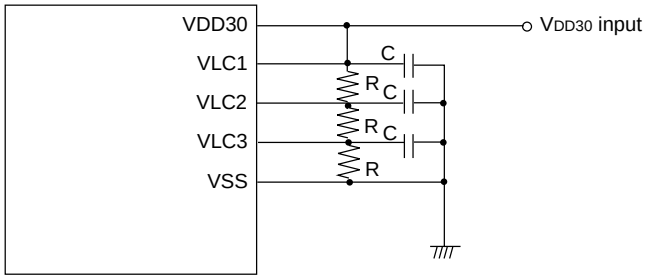


Figure:17.3.1 Connection Examples of LCD Power Supply
(when using external voltage dividing resistor)

In Figure:17.3.1, power is consumed at resistors all the time.
Figure:17.3.2 is the method to stop the above power consumption.

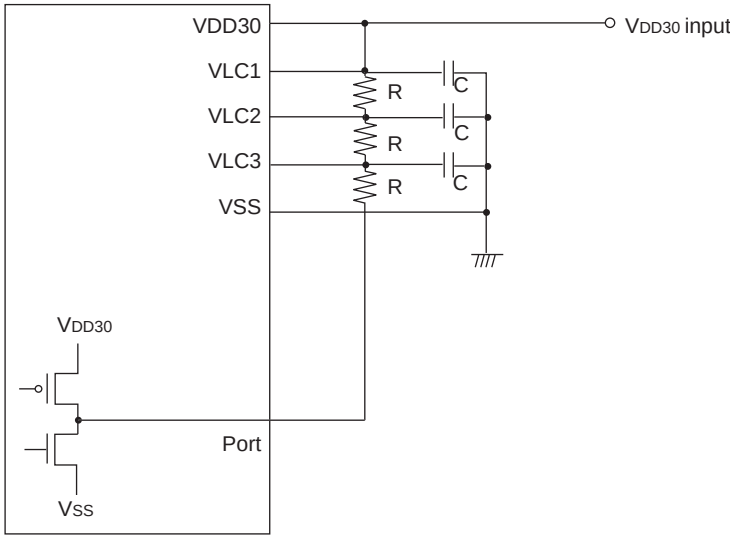


Figure:17.3.2 Connection example for LCD power supply

<2> In the case of generating the drive voltage with BSTVOL
(The reference voltage is supplied from outside of the LSI.)

When BSTVOL is used with the input reference voltage from outside of the LSI, the LCD drive voltage described in Figure:17.3.3 is generated. Connect the capacitor of 0.22 μF at VLC1-VSS, VLC2-VSS and VLC3-VSS.

Table:17.3.3 Voltage Level of VLC1/VLC2/VLC3 when BSTVOL is used

Pin Name	Voltage Level	2 times boost	2, 3 times boost
		Static, 1/2-bias	1/3-bias
VLC1	V_{LC1}	$2 \times V_{LC2}$ is output.	$3 \times V_{LC3}$ is output.
VLC2	V_{LC2}	Supply the reference voltage ($V_{LC2} = V_{LC3}$).	$2 \times V_{LC3}$ is output.
VLC3	V_{LC3}		Supply the reference voltage.

When the brightness of LCD panel is not enough, increase the frequency of LCUPCK with the LCDMD0.LCUPCKDIV2-0 and LCDMD0.LCUPCKS2-0 or generate LCD drive voltage outside the LSI. (Refer to <1> In the case of generating the drive voltage outside the LSI)

<3> In the case of generating the drive voltage with BSTVOL
(The reference voltage is generated with REFVOL.)

REFVOL output the reference voltage between 0.9 V and 1.8 V, and BSTVOL generate 2, 3 times higher voltage of the reference voltage.

Table:17.3.4. shows the output voltage from VLC1/VLC2/VLC3. Connect the capacitor of 0.22 μF at VLC1-VSS, VLC2-VSS and VLC3-VSS.

Table:17.3.4 Voltage level of VLC1/VLC2/VLC3 when BSTVOL/REFVOL are used.

Pin Name	Voltage Level	2, 3 times boost
		1/3-bias
VLC1	V_{LC1}	3 × V_{LC3} is output.
VLC2	V_{LC2}	2 × V_{LC3} is output.
VLC3	V_{LC3}	The reference voltage (0.9 V to 1.8 V) is output.

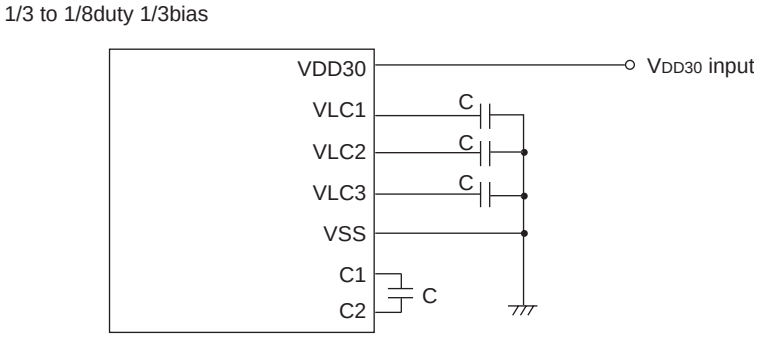


Figure:17.3.3 Connection example of LCD power supply (when BSTVOL/REFVOL are used)

When the brightness of LCD panel is not enough, increase the frequency of LCUPCK with the LCDMD0.LCUPCKDIV2-0 and LCDMD0.LCUPCKS2-0 or generate LCD drive voltage outside the LSI. (Refer to <1> In the case of generating the drive voltage outside the LSI)

17.3.5 LCD Frame Frequency Setup

■ LCD Frame Frequency Setup

The frequency of LCDCLK is determined with the LCDMD3.LCCKS2-0 and LCDMD3.LCCK3-0.
LCD frame frequency is determined with the frequency of the LCDCLK and the LCDMD2.LCDY2-0.
The following table shows the relation between the typical input frequency, SCLK (32 kHz) and LCD clocks.

Table:17.3.5 Input Frequency and LCD Clock (Static)

Clock source	Clock		Frame frequency (Hz)			
LCCKS2-0	LCCK3-0	Frequency (Hz)	Static	1/2 duty	1/4 duty	1/8 duty
000 (SCLK selected)	0000	4096	4096	2048	1024	512
	0001	2048	2048	1024	512	256
	0010	1024	1024	512	256	128
	0011	512	512	256	128	64
	0100	256	256	128	64	32
	0101	128	128	64	32	16
	0110	64	64	32	16	8
	0111	32	32	16	8	4
	1000	16	16	8	4	2
	1001	8	8	4	2	1

17.3.6 Setup Examples of REFVOL and BSTVOL

The following example shows how to display "23" on a 8-segment type LCD panel by using SEG0-SEG3 and COM0-COM3, with the voltage generated with REFVOL and BSTVOL.
The display mode with 1/4 duty output and 1/3 bias is selected.

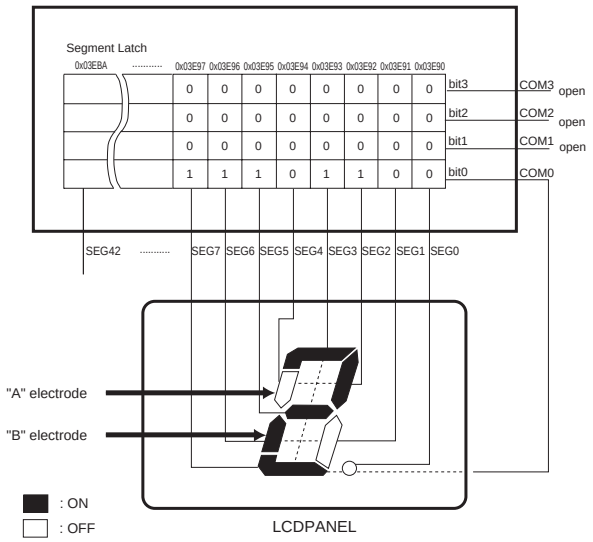
Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Select the boost mode of BSTVOL LCDMD4 (0x03ECE) bp0: LCUPMD = 0	(1) Select the three times boost mode.
(2) Activate BSTVOL and REFVOL LCDMD1 (0x03E81) bp7: LCVREN = 1 LCDMD0 (0x03E80) bp7: LCUPEN = 1	(2) Activate BSTVOL and REFVOL.
(3) SEG & COM pins setting LCCTR0 (0x03E86) bp7-4: SEGSL3-0 = 1111 bp3-0: COMSL3-0 = 1111 LCDSEL (0x03E8E) bp3-0: COMSL7-4 = 0000	(3) Select SEG0-3 and COM0-3 pins.
(4) Select a LCDCLK LCDMD3 (0x3E83) bp6-3: LCCK3-0 = 0111 bp2-0: LCCKS2-0 = 101	(4) Select "HCLK/2^{18}" as a display clock.
(5) Select a display duty. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp2-0: LCDTY2-0 = 011	(5) Select "1/4" as a display duty.
(6) Set the display data. LCDATA0 (0x03E90) = 0x0E LCDATA1 (0x03E91) = 0x05 LCDATA2 (0x03E92) = 0x0C LCDATA3 (0x03E93) = 0x07	(6) Set the display data, "23" on the segment output latch.
(7) Activate the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 1	(7) Start the LCD.

17.4 LCD Display Examples

This section describes how to connect the segment and common signals to LCD panel, and shows the LCD display and waveforms in static, 1/2 duty, 1/3 duty and 1/4 duty by using MN101LR05D.

17.4.1 LCD Display Example (static)

■ Static



		LCD ON		LCD OFF
		COM = S SEG = S	COM = S SEG = N	
LCD clock				Undefined
Data		"1"	"0"	Undefined
COM	V_{LC1}			
	V_{SS}			
SEG	V_{LC1}			
	V_{SS}			
COM-SEG	V_{LCD}			
	0			
	$-V_{LCD}$			
		ON	OFF	OFF

S: selected voltage N: non-selected voltage V_{LCD}: LCD driving voltage

COM (COM0) always outputs the selected voltage in static.

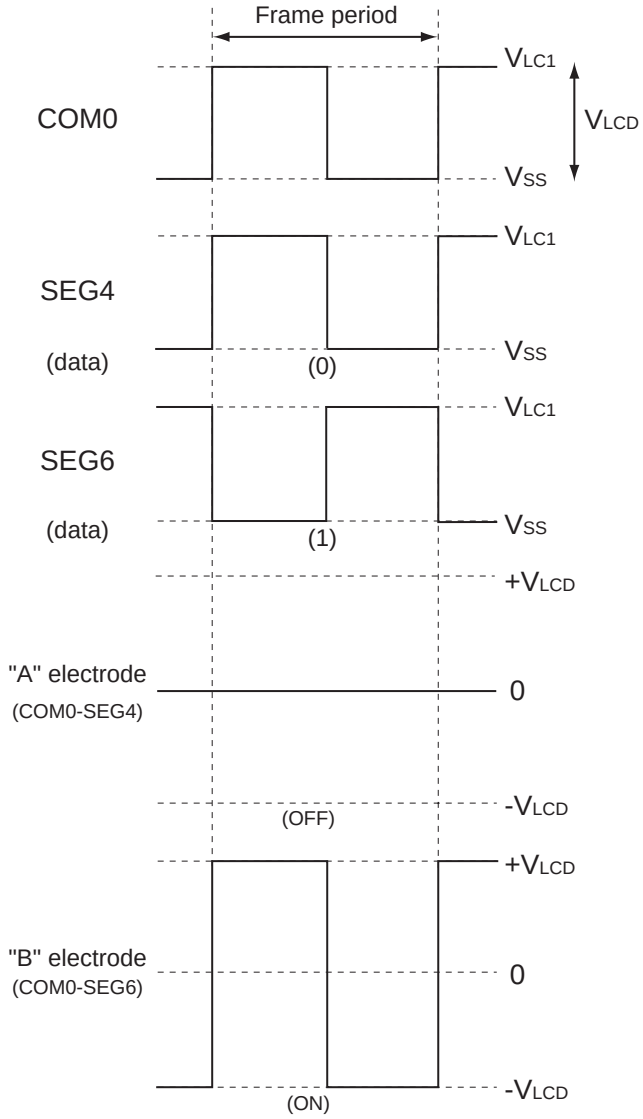


Figure:17.4.1 LCD display example in static

17.4.2 LCD Operation Setup Example (static)

The following example is to display "2" on a 8-segment type LCD panel (one digit display) through segment pins, SEG0 to SEG7 and a common pin, COM0 in static, supplied from external voltage source.

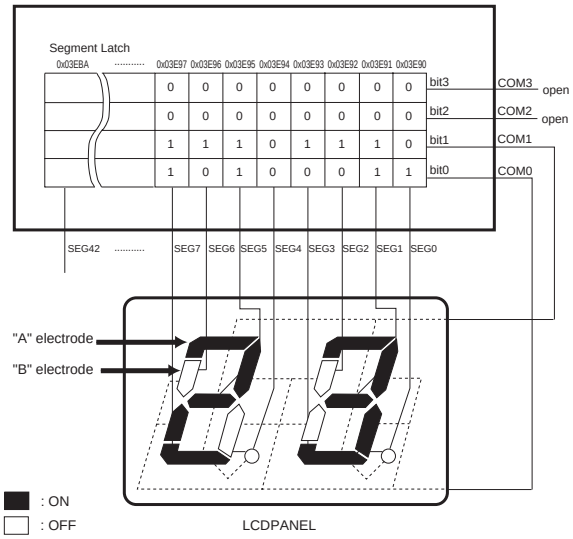
Other conditions are described as follows;

HCLK: 4 MHz, LCD display clock: HCLK/2^{15} (122 Hz), LCD frame frequency: 122 Hz

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 0	(1) Stop the LCD.
(2) Set a display duty. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp2-0: LCDDTY2-0 = 000	(2) Set the operation mode to static driving.
(3) Set a display clock. LCDMD3 (0x03E83) bp6-3: LCCK3-0 = 0100 bp2-0: LCCKS2-0 = 101	(3) Select "HCLK/2^{15}" as a display clock.
(4) Set Segment and common output pins. LCCTR0 (0x03E86) bp7-4: SEGSL3-0 = 1111 bp0: COMSL0 = 1 LCCTR1 (0x03E87) bp3-0: SEGSL7-4 = 1111 LCDSEL (0x03E8E) bp3-0: COMSL7-4 = 0000	(4) Select SEG0-7 and COM0 pins.
(5) Set the display data. LCDATA0 (0x03E90) = 0x00 LCDATA1 (0x03E91) = 0x00 LCDATA2 (0x03E92) = 0x01 LCDATA3 (0x03E93) = 0x01 LCDATA4 (0x03E94) = 0x00 LCDATA5 (0x03E95) = 0x01 LCDATA6 (0x03E96) = 0x01 LCDATA7 (0x03E97) = 0x01	(5) Set the display data "2" on the segment output latch.
(6) Activate the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 1	(6) Start the LCD.

17.4.3 LCD Display Example (1/2 duty)

■ 1/2 duty



	LCD ON				LCD OFF
	COM=S SEG=S	COM=N SEG=S	COM=S SEG=N	COM=N SEG=N	
LCD clock					Undefined
Data	"1"		"0"		Undefined
COM	V_{LC1} / V_{LC2} = V_{LC3} / V_{SS}				
SEG	V_{LC1} / V_{LC2} = V_{LC3} / V_{SS}				
COM-SEG	V_{LCD} / $1/2V_{LCD}$ / 0 / $-1/2V_{LCD}$ / $-V_{LCD}$				
	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

S: selected voltage N: non-selected voltage V_{LCD}: LCD driving voltage

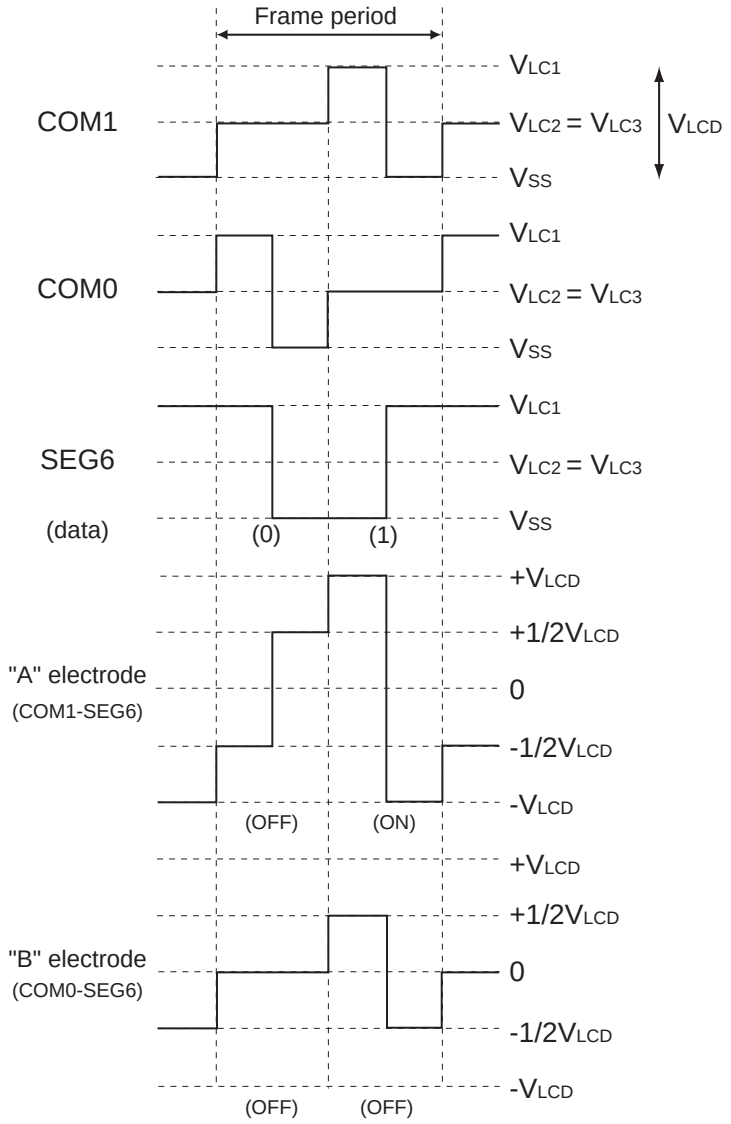


Figure:17.4.2 LCD display example in 1/2 duty

17.4.4 LCD Operation Setup (1/2 duty)

The following example is to display "23" on a 8-segment type LCD panel (two-digit display) through segment pins, SEG0 to SEG7 and common pins, COM0 to COM1 with 1/2 duty and 1/2 bias, supplied from external voltage divider.

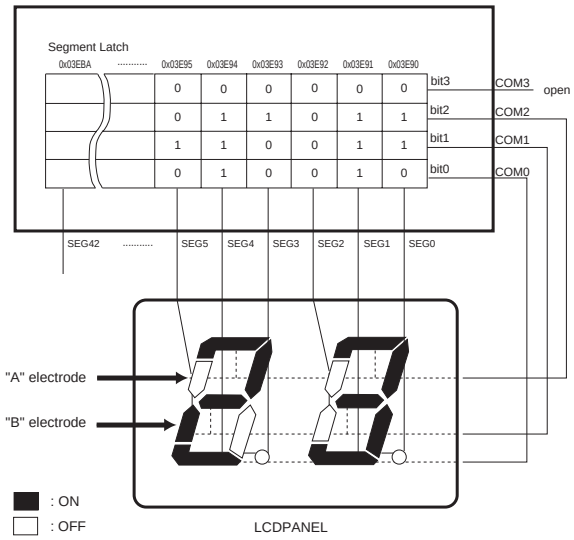
The specific details are as follows;

HCLK: 4 MHz, LCD display clock: HCLK/2^{15} (122 Hz), LCD frame frequency: 61 Hz

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 0	(1) Stop the LCD.
(2) Set a display duty. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp2-0: LCDDTY2-0 = 001	(2) Set the operation mode to 1/2 duty driving.
(3) Set a display clock. LCDMD3 (0x03E83) bp6-3: LCCK3-0 = 0100 bp2-0: LCCKS2-0 = 101	(3) Select "HCLK/2^{15}" as a display clock.
(4) Set Segment and common output pins. LCCTR0 (0x03E86) bp7-4: SEGSL3-0 = 1111 bp1-0: COMSL1-0 = 11 LCCTR1 (0x03E87) bp3-0: SEGSL7-4 = 1111 LCDSEL (0x03E8E) bp3-0: COMSL7-4 = 0000	(4) Select SEG0-7 and COM0-1 pins.
(5) Set the display data. LCDATA0 (0x03E90) = 0x01 LCDATA1 (0x03E91) = 0x03 LCDATA2 (0x03E92) = 0x02 LCDATA3 (0x03E93) = 0x02 LCDATA4 (0x03E94) = 0x00 LCDATA5 (0x03E95) = 0x03 LCDATA6 (0x03E96) = 0x02 LCDATA7 (0x03E97) = 0x03	(5) Set the display data "23" on the segment output latch.
(6) Activate the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 1	(6) Start the LCD operation.

17.4.5 LCD Display Example (1/3 duty)

■ 1/3 duty



	LCD ON				LCD OFF
	COM = S SEG = S	COM = N SEG = S	COM = S SEG = N	COM = N SEG = N	
LCD clock					Undefined
Data	"1"		"0"		Undefined
COM	V_{LC1} V_{LC2} V_{LC3} V_{SS}				
SEG	V_{LC1} V_{LC2} V_{LC3} V_{SS}				
COM-SEG	V_{LCD} $1/3V_{LCD}$ 0 $-1/3V_{LCD}$ $-V_{LCD}$				
	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

S: selected voltage N: non-selected voltage V_{LCD}: LCD driving voltage

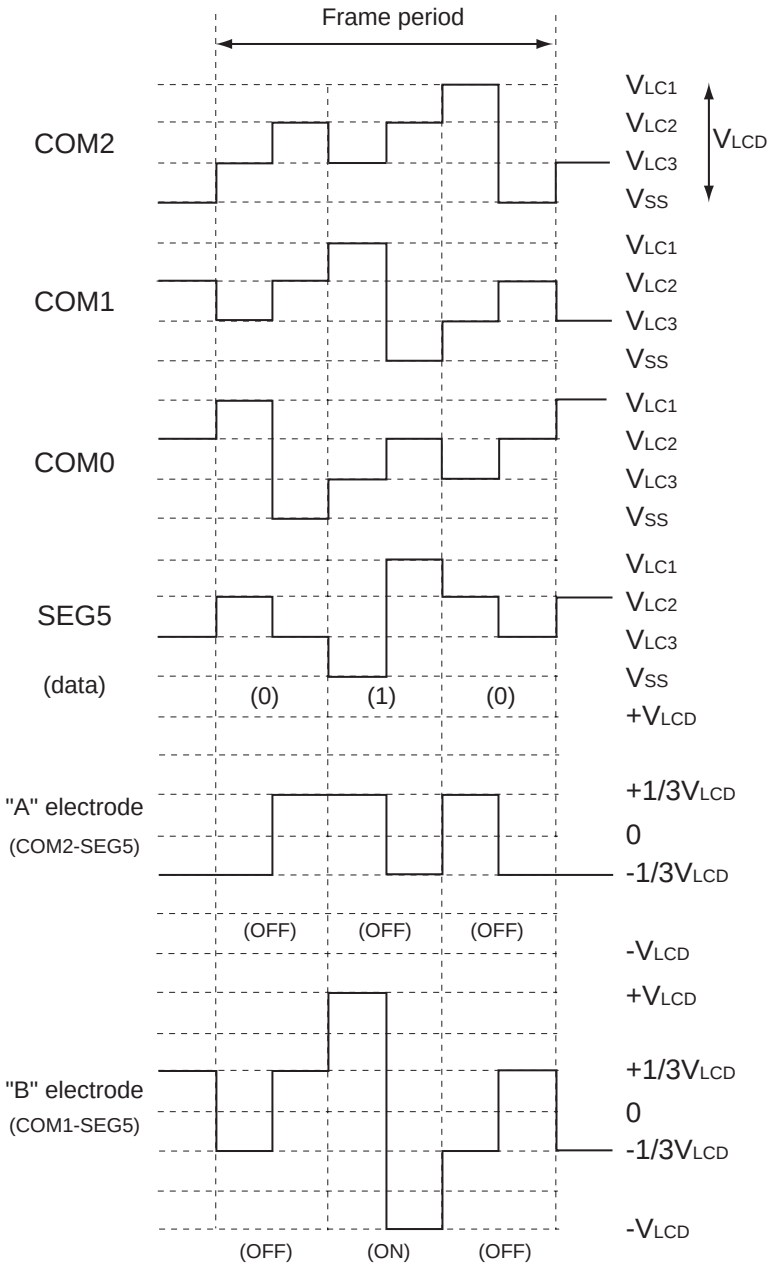


Figure:17.4.3 LCD display example in 1/3 duty

17.4.6 LCD Operation Setup (1/3 duty)

The following example is to display "23" on a 8-segment type LCD panel (two-digit display) through segment pins, SEG0 to SEG5 and common pins, COM0 to COM2 with 1/3 duty and 1/3 bias, supplied from external voltage divider.

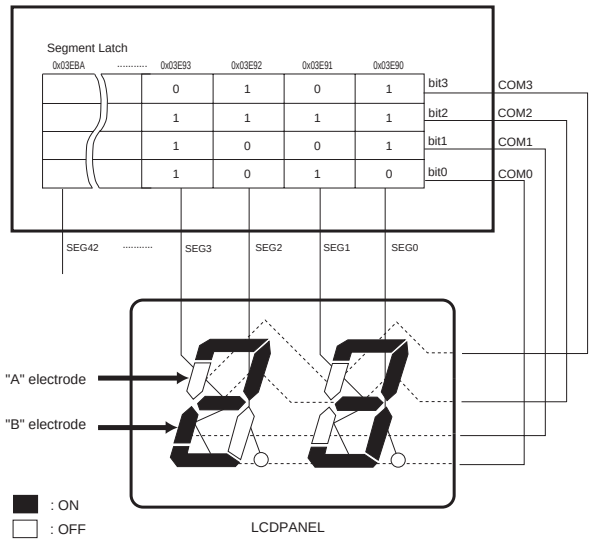
The specific settings are as follows;

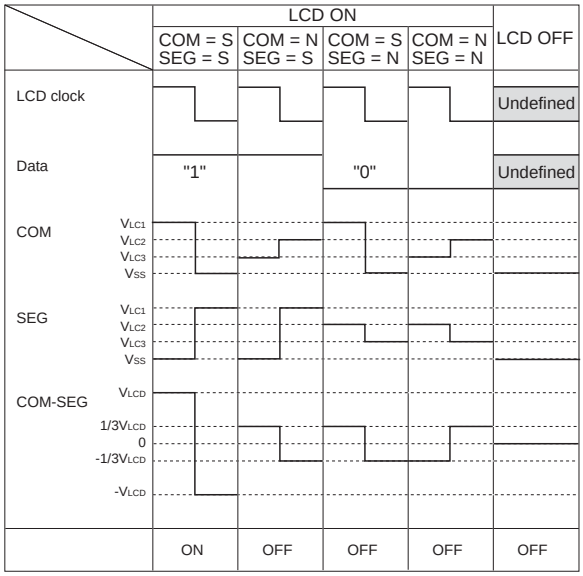
HCLK: 4 MHz, LCD display clock: HCLK/2^{15} (122 Hz), Frame frequency: 41 Hz

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 0	(1) Stop the LCD.
(2) Set a display duty. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp2-0: LCDDTY2-0 = 010	(2) Set the operation mode to 1/3 duty driving.
(3) Set an LCD clock. LCDMD3 (0x03E83) bp6-3: LCCK3-0 = 0100 bp2-0: LCCKS2-0 = 101	(3) Select "HCLK/2^{15}" as an LCD clock source.
(4) Set Segment and common output pins. LCCTR0 (0x03E86) bp7-4: SEGSL3-0 = 1111 bp2-0: COMSL2-0 = 111 LCCTR1 (0x03E87) bp3-0: SEGSL7-4 = 1111 LCDSEL (0x03E8E) bp3-0: COMSL7-4 = 0000	(4) Select SEG0-5 and COM0-2 pins.
(5) Set LCD panel display data. LCDATA0 (0x03E90) = 0x06 LCDATA1 (0x03E91) = 0x07 LCDATA2 (0x03E92) = 0x00 LCDATA3 (0x03E93) = 0x04 LCDATA4 (0x03E94) = 0x07 LCDATA5 (0x03E95) = 0x02	(5) Set the display data "23" on the segment output latch.
(6) Activate the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 1	(6) Start the LCD.

17.4.7 LCD Display Example (1/4 duty)

■ 1/4 duty





S: selected voltage N: non-selected voltage V_{LCD}: LCD driving voltage

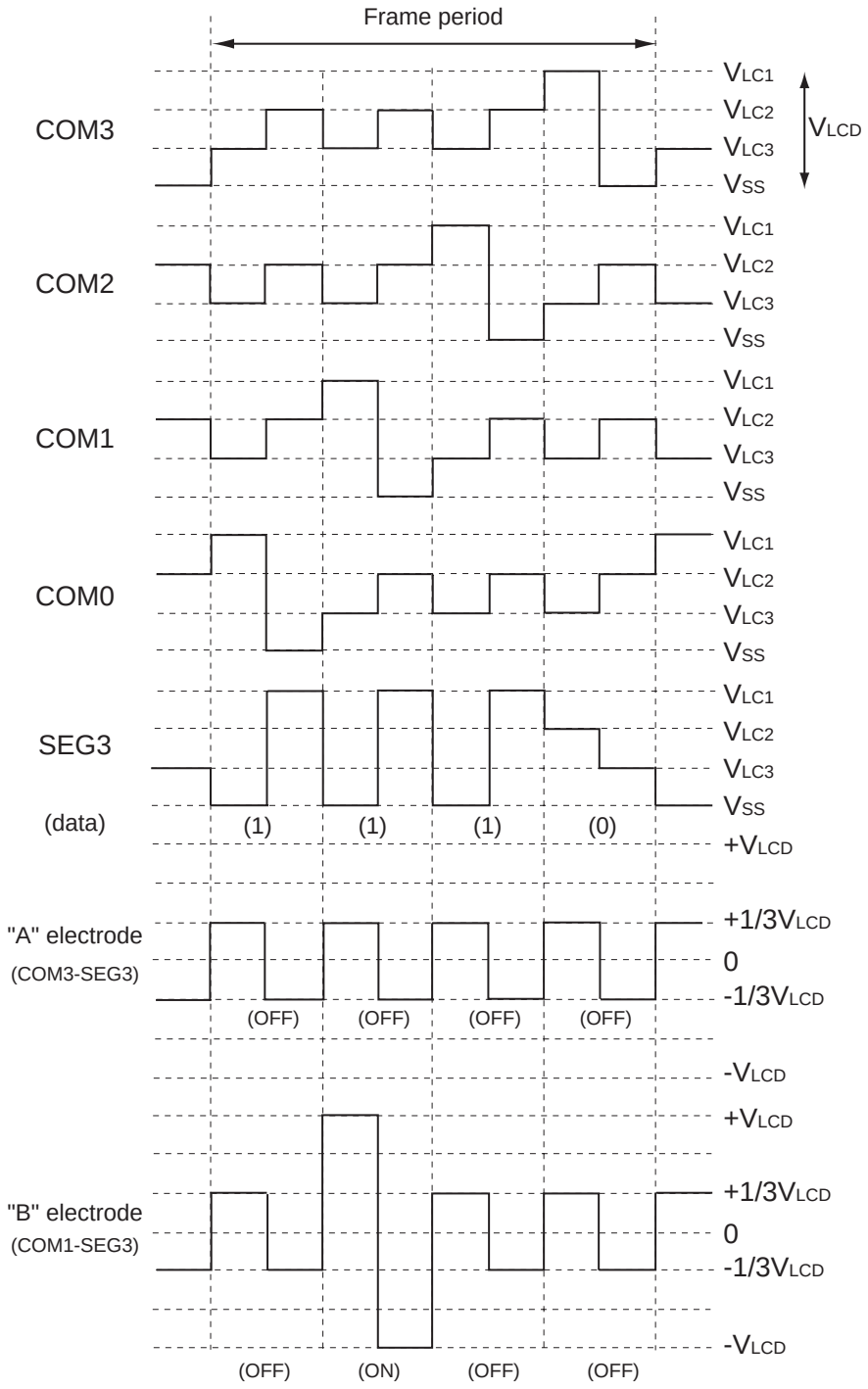


Figure:17.4.4 LCD display example in 1/4 duty

17.4.8 LCD Operation Setup (1/4 duty)

■ LCD Operation Setup Example (1/4 duty)

The following example is to display "23" on a 8-segment type LCD panel (two digits) through segment pins, SEG0 to SEG3 and common pins, COM0 to COM3 with 1/4 duty and 1/3 bias, supplied from external voltage divider.

Other conditions are described as follows;

HCLK: 4 MHz, LCD display clock: HCLK/2^{15} (122 Hz), LCD frame frequency: 31 Hz

Setup Procedure	Description
(1) Stop the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 0	(1) Stop the LCD.
(2) Set a display duty. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp2-0: LCDDTY2-0 = 011	(2) Set the operation mode to 1/4 duty driving.
(3) Set a display clock. LCDMD3 (0x03E83) bp6-3: LCCK3-0 = 0100 bp2-0: LCCKS2-0 = 101	(3) Select "HCLK/2^{15}" as a display clock.
(4) Set Segment and common output pins. LCCTR0 (0x03E86) bp7-4: SEGSL3-0 = 1111 bp3-0: COMSL3-0 = 1111 LCCTR1 (0x03E87) bp3-0: SEGSL7-4 = 1111 LCDSEL (0x03E8E) bp3-0: COMSL7-4 = 0000	(4) Select SEG0-3 and COM0-3 pins.
(5) Set the display data. LCDATA0 (0x03E90) = 0x0E LCDATA1 (0x03E91) = 0x05 LCDATA2 (0x03E92) = 0x0C LCDATA3 (0x03E93) =0x07	(5) Set the display data "23" on the segment output latch.
(6) Activate the LCD. LCDMD2 (0x03E82) bp7: LCEN = 1	(6) Start the LCD.

Chapter 18 ReRAM

18

18.1 Overview of ReRAM

Table:18.1.1 shows the outline of ReRAM specifications.

Table:18.1.1 Outline of ReRAM Specifications

Function	Description
Memory size	64 KB
Program endurance	Program area (62 KB): 1000 times (Min.)
	Data area (2 KB): 100,000 times (Min.)
Programming Voltage	V_{DD30}: 1.8 V to 3.6 V
Reading Voltage	V_{DD30}: 1.1 V to 3.6 V
Data retention duration	10 years
ReRAM programming method	Programmer writing
	Self-programming
Programming data unit	1 Byte (Max. 64 Bytes at once.)
Function of data protection	Protective function
	Security function

18.1.1 ReRAM Rewriting Method

The data of ReRAM can be programmed with the following method.

- Programmer writing

ReRAM is programmed with an external unit such as a debugger (PanaX-EX) or a serial programmer.

- Self-programming

ReRAM is programmed with the software embedded in the program area.

18.1.2 ReRAM Area

Table:18.1.2 shows program, data and reserved areas in ReRAM.

Table:18.1.2 Application of ReRAM area

Area	Application	Access cycle	Rewriting
0x04000 to 0x040FF 0x04900 to 0x13FFF	Program area - Store the user program	1 cycle	Available
0x04100 to 0x048FF	Data area - Store the data (User program can be stored in this area)	2 cycles	Available
0x6F000 to 0x6FBFF	Reserved area - Software library for programming ReRAM is stored.	1 cycle	Not Available

18.1.3 Data Protection Function

The following functions are available to protect the data of ReRAM.

■ Protective Function

Protective Function prevents unintentional programming.
The protect area is specified with "Start Address" and "Data Size", and up to three area can be protected.

Once Protective Function is activated, the data in the protection area can not be overwritten. (Protective Function can not be deactivated by software.)

■ Security Function

Security Function is prevents all areas of the ReRAM reading or programming. This function blocks interpolation and leak of the data in ReRAM. Security Function is enabled or disabled with a key code (128-bit).

The key code cannot be changed once it is set.

Keep the key code in a safe place.
Without the key code, ReRAM programming and rewriting cannot be performed.

18.2 Self-programming Rewriting Method

Self-programming allows the ReRAM data programming by setting the FBEWER to "0x4B" and using software libraries in the ReRAM reserved area.

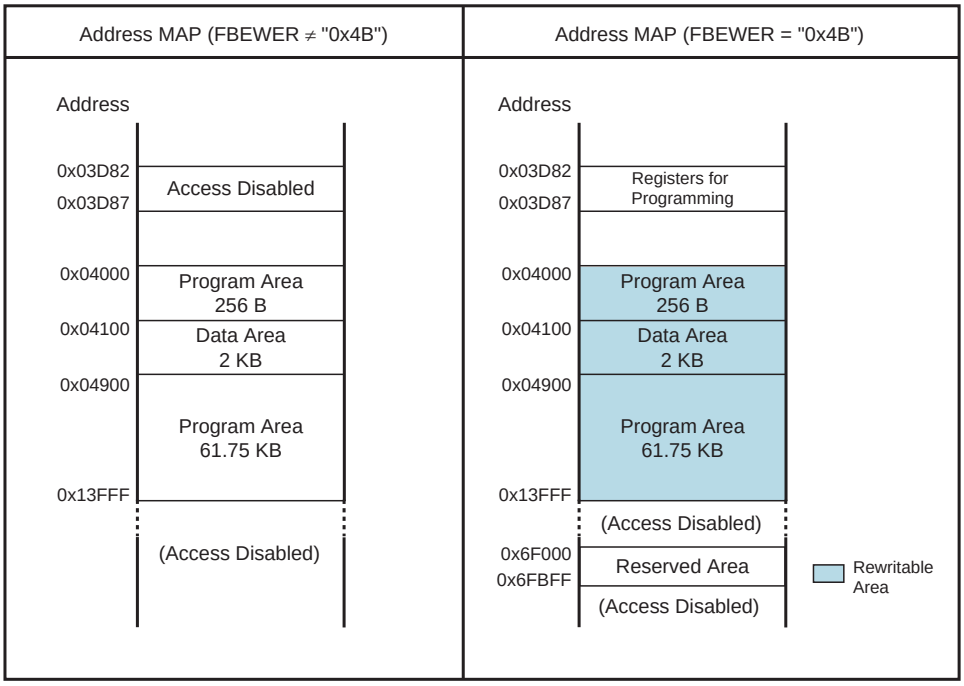
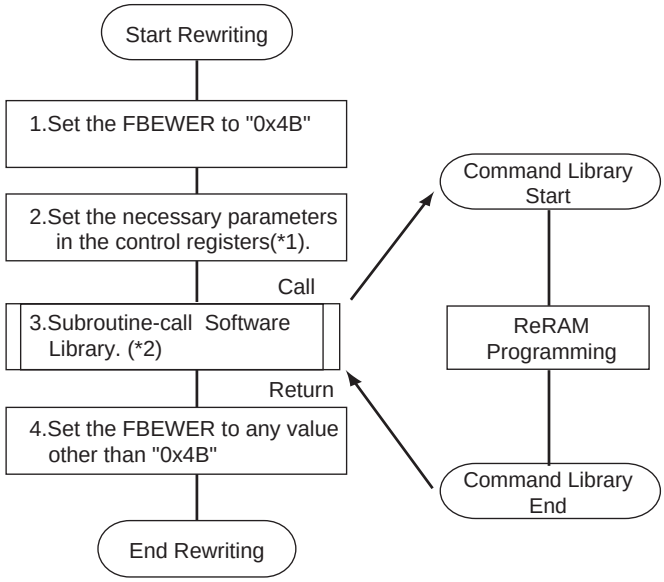


Figure:18.2.1 Memory Map in Self-programming Rewriting Method

When Self-Programming can not be performed because of program troubles, which may happen in an early phase of development, program the data of ReRAM with Programmer writing method.

18.2.1 Procedures for Rewriting

Figure:18.2.2 shows the ReRAM programming flow.



*1 Rerer to Table 18.3.1.
*2 The reteruned value of the command library is stored in D0.

Figure:18.2.2 ReRAM programming flow

To access a command library, FBEWER needs to be set to "0x4B".
If not, NMI as execution of the undefined instruction is generated.

When programming ReRAM, the voltage of VDD18 must be set to 1.8 V with the PWCTR0.

18.2.2 Interrupts during Programming

When an interrupt occurs during the execution of a command library, the processing of the command library is suspended and the interrupt process is executed. After the interrupt process is finished, the command library is resumed.

18.3 ReRAM Control Registers

Table:18.3.1 shows the ReRAM control registers.

Table:18.3.1 ReRAM Control Registers

Register symbol	Address	Access	Register name and function
FBEWER	0x03D80	R/W	Rewriting enable register 0x4B: Enable programming Others: Disable programming
WADDR_L WADDR_M WADDR_H	0x03D82 0x03D83 0x03D84	R/W	Rewrite address register Specify the address to be rewritten
WBC	0x03D85	R/W	Rewrite byte count register Specify the number -1 of rewriting data (can be set 0 to 63)
P_WDATA_L P_WDATA_M	0x03D86 0x03D87	R/W	Rewrite data pointer register Specify the start address of RAM area in which stores rewriting data

18.4 Command Library

Table:18.4.1 shows command libraries for rewriting of the ReRAM.

Table:18.4.1 Command Libraries

Library name	Address	Function
Write_Code_Lib	0x6F205	Programming Data in Program Area - Specified byte number (2-64 bytes) is programmed.
Write_Data_Lib	0x6F20A	Programming Data in Data Area - Specified byte number (2-64 bytes) is programmed.
Byte_Write_Lib	0x6F220	Programming Byte Data in Data Area - Specified one byte is programmed.
Protect_Set_Lib	0x6F210	Protective Function Setting - Activate Protective Function in the specified address area.
Security_Key_Set_Lib	0x6F215	Key Code Setting - Set key code (128 bits), and activate Security Function.
Security_Key_Check_Lib	0x6F21A	Key Code Authentication - Authenticate the key code (128 bits), and deactivate Security Function temporarily.
Byte_Suspend_Lib	0x6F225	Programming Byte Data in Data Area - The data in specified address is programmed. When programming is not complete in a given time, the programming is suspended.
Word_Suspend_Lib	0x6F22A	Programming Word (2 Byte) Data in Data Area - The data in specified address is programmed. When programing is not complete in a given time, the programming is suspended.

When a command library is subroutine-called in an interrupt process during execution of another command library, double activation error occurs.

Chapter 19 On-Board Debugger

19

19.1 Overview

The LSI has an on-board chip debugger (OCD) for program development and data writing to ReRAM.
OCD is used with the external debug unit, PanaX-EX.

It is unnecessary to implement the monitor program in user program area.
Refer to the following URL for the details of the on-board debugging.

http://www.semicon.panasonic.co.jp/e-micom/onboard/panax_ex.html

When LSI is connected to PanaX-EX, VDD18 is always set to 1.8V even when the 1.1V or 1.3V is set by software.

19.2 List of on-board debugging functions

Table:19.2.1 List of on-board debugging functions

On-board Debugging Functions			Descriptions	Support or Not (number of support channels)
Execution		Single step execution	Step execution as a source line or a unit of assembler	Supported
		Functional step execution	Step execution which a subroutine is defined as 1 step	Supported
		Program execution	Basic execution	Supported
		Microcomputer reset	Reset for Microcomputer	Supported
Data display (change)		Dump	Dump display of memory	Supported
		Edit	Edit memory to specified value	Supported
		Watch	Display memory in a specified format when the program is running User program has possible to abort during access, so the real-time performance slows down little	Supported
		Inspect	Display according to a data structure of specified variable	Supported
Display/Change register			Display and change the specified register	Supported
RAM monitor function			Display memory when the program is running User program has possible to abort during access, so the real-time performance slows down little	Supported
Back trace function			Execute the back trace of stack frames and display the progress of function call	Supported
Event	Factor	Effective address	Define address and range	Supported (1 channel)
		Data access	Define access type (R/W), data size(1/2 bytes), data, data mask, range and NOT	
Break	Forced	Forced break	Stop execution forcibly by pressing the escape key or by clicking stop icon of GUI	Supported
	Software	Software break	Replacement specified address instruction with break instruction	Supported
		Instruction break	Software break to ROM area	Supported (2 channels)
	Hardware	Execution address break	Define address and range	Supported
		Data access break	Define access type (R/W), data size(1/2 bytes), data, data mask, range and NOT	Supported
	Malfunction detection Support	Unimplemented instruction break	Break by execution of unimplemented instruction	Supported
Profile function		Function use frequency measurement	Measure the frequency of subroutine (function) execution	Supported
non-intrusive functions			Break setting, memory reference and changing, trace setting and display during program is executing. The real-time performance slows down little by RAM monitor or Watch	Supported
On-board programming			On-board programming to embedded non-volatile memory by using the function of On-board debug	Supported

Refer to DebugFactory Builder for MN101 help for details of debugging functions

Chapter 20 Appendix

20

20.1 Symbol Definitions

Following is the list of symbols used in the instruction specifications.
Nibble is a unit for expressing size, and a nibble is equivalent to half-byte (4 bits).

Reg, Reg1, Reg2	:	register (used for general meaning)
Dn, Dm	:	Data register (8 bits)
DWn, DWm, DWk	:	Data register (16 bits)
DWn-l	:	Lower 8 bits of 16-bit data register
DWn-h	:	Higher 8 bits of 16-bit data register
An, Am	:	Address register (16 bits)
PSW	:	Processor Status Word (8 bits)
PC	:	Program Counter (21 bits)
SP	:	Stack Pointer (16 bits)
HA	:	Handy Address (16 bits)
HA-l	:	Lower 8 bits of Handy Address
HA-h	:	Higher 8 bits of Handy Address
abs	:	Absolute address (used for general meaning)
abs8	:	Absolute address (8 bits)
abs12	:	Absolute address (12 bits)
abs16	:	Absolute address (16 bits)
abs18	:	Absolute address (18 bits)
abs20	:	Absolute address (20 bits)
( )	:	Memory space specified by the contents of the parentheses.
imm	:	immediate value (used for general meaning)
imm3	:	Immediate value (3 bits)
imm4	:	Immediate value (4 bits)
imm8	:	Immediate value (8 bits)
imm16	:	Immediate value (16 bits)
tbl4	:	Table address (4 bits)
d4	:	Displacement (4 bits)
d7	:	Displacement (7 bits)
d8	:	Displacement (8 bits)

d11	:	Displacement (11 bits)
d12	:	Displacement (12 bits)
d16	:	Displacement (16 bits)
bp	:	Bit position (bit0 to 7)
bpdata	:	8-bit data whose bp bit contains ‘1’
		when bp is 0: b’00000001’
		when bp is 1: b’00000010’
		: :
		when bp is 7: b’10000000’
.bpn	:	Bit position (bit0 to 19)
.lsb	:	Bit position (LSB)
.msb	:	Bit position (MSB)
io8	:	Displacement within the special function register area (0 to 255)
IOTOP	:	x’03F00’
+	:	Addition
-	:	Subtraction
*	:	Multiplication
/	:	Division
&	:	Logical AND
|	:	Logical OR
^	:	Logical exclusive OR
~	:	Bit inversion
<< n	:	n-bit shift left
>> n	:	n-bit shift right
VF	:	Overflow flag
NF	:	Negative flag
CF	:	Carry flag
ZF	:	Zero flag
temp	:	Temporary register
→	:	Move
···	:	Remainder
...	:	Reflection of the operation result
label	:	Address
Mem	:	Memory (used for general meaning)
mem8(xxx)	:	8-bit data in the memory specified by xxx

mem16(xxx)	:	16-bit data in the memory specified by xxx
sign(xxx)	:	Sign-extended data of xxx
zero(xxx)	:	Zero-extended data of xxx
d4(label)	:	4-bit displacement between PC and label (-16 to +15 nibbles)
d7(label)	:	7-bit displacement between PC and label (-128 to +127 nibbles)
d11(label)	:	11-bit displacement between PC and label (-1024 to +1023 nibbles)
d12(label)	:	12-bit displacement between PC and label (-2048 to +2047 nibbles)
d16(label)	:	16-bit displacement between PC and label (-65536 to +65535 nibbles)
RPC	:	Repeat counter
H	:	Half-byte bit
i	:	Instruction fetch wait cycle
d	:	Data load / store wait cycle
max(a, b)	:	Execution cycle (the maximum value in listed number (a, b) is effective.)

List of symbols used in flag changes

"flag" is a general term of lower 4-bit (VF, NF, CF, ZF) of PSW.

- ● : flag changes
- — : no flag changes
- 0 : flag is always "0"
- 1 : flag is always "1"

Execution cycle

Execution cycle may change depending on the status of the pipeline and the memory space to access.

Execution cycle described in this chapter is based on the following conditions;

The execution cycle considers the instruction fetch wait cycle and the data load /store wait cycle. the instruction fetch wait cycle and the data load /store wait cycle depend on the resources to access. Refer to [LSI manual] for details.

And, it may increase by the pipeline stall (instruction supply shortfall, register conflict, etc.). Refer to [MN101L Series Instruction Manual] for details.

EX.1 BSET (abs8)bp Cycle: 2+2d

If the data access cycle is 1 (d = 0), then the execution cycle becomes 2 + 2 * 0 = 2 cycles.

If the data access cycle is 3 (d = 2), then the execution cycle becomes 2 + 2 * 2 = 6 cycles.

EX.2 JSR label Cycle: max(2+i, 4+2d)

If the instruction fetch cycle is 2 (i = 1) and the data access cycle is 1 (d = 0), then the execution cycle becomes (2 + 1, 4 + 2 * 0) = 4 cycles.

20.2 Instruction set

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Execution Cycle	REP	Machine Code Ext.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
Data Transfer Instructions																						
MOV	MOV Dn, Dm	Dn → Dm	-	-	-	-	2	1			1010	DnDm										
	MOV imm8, Dm	imm8 → Dm	-	-	-	-	4	1			1010	DmDm	<#8.	...>								
	MOV Dn, PSW	Dn → PSW	●	●	●	●	3	2		0010	1001	01Dn										
	MOV PSW, Dm	PSW → Dm	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	0001	01Dm										
	MOV (An), Dm	mem8(An) → Dm	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			0100	1ADm										
	MOV (d8,An), Dm	mem8(d8+An) → Dm	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			0110	1ADm	<d8.	...>								*1
	MOV (d16,An), Dm	mem8(d16+An) → Dm	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	0110	1ADm	<d16	....	....	...>						
	MOV (d4,SP), Dm	mem8(d4+SP) → Dm	-	-	-	-	3	1+d			0110	01Dm	<d4>									*2
	MOV (d8,SP), Dm	mem8(d8+SP) → Dm	-	-	-	-	5	1+d		0010	0110	01Dm	<d8.	...>								*3
	MOV (d16,SP), Dm	mem8(d16+SP) → Dm	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	0110	00Dm	<d16	....	....	...>						
	MOV (io8), Dm	mem8(IOTOP+io8) → Dm	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			0110	00Dm	<io8	...>								
	MOV (abs8), Dm	mem8(abs8) → Dm	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			0100	01Dm	<abs	8..>								
	MOV (abs12), Dm	mem8(abs12) → Dm	-	-	-	-	5	1+d			0100	00Dm	<abs	12..	...>							
	MOV (abs16), Dm	mem8(abs16) → Dm	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1100	00Dm	<abs	16..	....	...>						
	MOV Dn, (Am)	Dn → mem8(Am)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			0101	1aDn										
	MOV Dn, (d8,Am)	Dn → mem8(d8+Am)	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			0111	1aDn	<d8.	...>								*1
	MOV Dn, (d16,Am)	Dn → mem8(d16+Am)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	0111	1aDn	<d16	....	....	...>						
	MOV Dn, (d4,SP)	Dn → mem8(d4+SP)	-	-	-	-	3	1+d			0111	01Dn	<d4>									*2
	MOV Dn, (d8,SP)	Dn → mem8(d8+SP)	-	-	-	-	5	1+d		0010	0111	01Dn	<d8.	...>								*3
	MOV Dn, (d16,SP)	Dn → mem8(d16+SP)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	0111	00Dn	<d16	....	....	...>						
	MOV Dn, (io8)	Dn → mem8(IOTOP+io8)	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			0111	00Dn	<io8	...>								
	MOV Dn, (abs8)	Dn → mem8(abs8)	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			0101	01Dn	<abs	8..>								
	MOV Dn, (abs12)	Dn → mem8(abs12)	-	-	-	-	5	1+d			0101	00Dn	<abs	12..	...>							
	MOV Dn, (abs16)	Dn → mem8(abs16)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1101	00Dn	<abs	16..	....	...>						
	MOV imm8, (io8)	imm8 → mem8(IOTOP+io8)	-	-	-	-	6	2+d			0000	0010	<io8	...>	<#8.	...>						
	MOV imm8, (abs8)	imm8 → mem8(abs8)	-	-	-	-	6	2+d			0001	0100	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>						
	MOV imm8, (abs12)	imm8 → mem8(abs12)	-	-	-	-	7	2+d			0001	0101	<abs	12..	...>	<#8.	...>					
	MOV imm8, (abs16)	imm8 → mem8(abs16)	-	-	-	-	9	2+d		0011	1101	1001	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>				
	MOV Dn, (HA)	Dn → mem8(HA)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1101	00Dn										
MOVW	MOVW (An), DWm	mem16(An) → DWm	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1110	00Ad										*4 *7
	MOVW (An), Am	mem16(An) → Am	-	-	-	-	3	1+d		0010	1110	10Aa										*4 *7
	MOVW (d4,SP), DWm	mem16(d4+SP) → DWm	-	-	-	-	3	1+d			1110	011d	<d4>									*2 *7
	MOVW (d4,SP), Am	mem16(d4+SP) → Am	-	-	-	-	3	1+d			1110	010a	<d4>									*2 *7
	MOVW (d8,SP), DWm	mem16(d8+SP) → DWm	-	-	-	-	5	1+d		0010	1110	011d	<d8.	...>								*3 *7
	MOVW (d8,SP), Am	mem16(d8+SP) → Am	-	-	-	-	5	1+d		0010	1110	010a	<d8.	...>								*3 *7
	MOVW (d16,SP), DWm	mem16(d16+SP) → DWm	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1110	001d	<d16	....	....	...>						*7
	MOVW (d16,SP), Am	mem16(d16+SP) → Am	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1110	000a	<d16	....	....	...>						*7
	MOVW (abs8), DWm	mem16(abs8) → DWm	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			1100	011d	<abs	8..>								*7
	MOVW (abs8), Am	mem16(abs8) → Am	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			1100	010a	<abs	8..>								*7
	MOVW (abs16), DWm	mem16(abs16) → DWm	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1100	011d	<abs	16..	....	...>						*7
	MOVW (abs16), Am	mem16(abs16) → Am	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1100	010a	<abs	16..	....	...>						*7
	MOVW DWn, (Am)	DWn → mem16(Am)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1111	00ad										*7
	MOVW An, (Am)	An → mem16(Am)	-	-	-	-	3	1+d		0010	1111	10aA										*4 *7
	MOVW DWn, (d4,SP)	DWn → mem16(d4+SP)	-	-	-	-	3	1+d			1111	011D	<d4>									*2 *7
	MOVW An, (d4,SP)	An → mem16(d4+SP)	-	-	-	-	3	1+d			1111	010A	<d4>									*2 *7
	MOVW DWn, (d8,SP)	DWn → mem16(d8+SP)	-	-	-	-	5	1+d		0010	1111	011D	<d8.	...>								*3 *7
	MOVW An, (d8,SP)	An → mem16(d8+SP)	-	-	-	-	5	1+d		0010	1111	010A	<d8.	...>								*3 *7
	MOVW DWn, (d16,SP)	DWn → mem16(d16+SP)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1111	001D	<d16	....	....	...>						*7
	MOVW An, (d16,SP)	An → mem16(d16+SP)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1111	000A	<d16	....	....	...>						*7
	MOVW DWn, (abs8)	DWn → mem16(abs8)	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			1101	011D	<abs	8..>								*7
	MOVW An, (abs8)	An → mem16(abs8)	-	-	-	-	4	1+d			1101	010A	<abs	8..>								*7
	MOVW DWn, (abs16)	DWn → mem16(abs16)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1101	011D	<abs	16..	....	...>						*7
	MOVW An, (abs16)	An → mem16(abs16)	-	-	-	-	7	1+d		0010	1101	010A	<abs	16..	....	...>						*7
	MOVW DWn, (HA)	DWn → mem16(HA)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1001	010D										*7
	MOVW An, (HA)	An → mem16(HA)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1001	011A										*7
	MOVW imm8, DWm	sign(imm8) → DWm	-	-	-	-	4	1			0000	110d	<#8.	...>								*5
	MOVW imm8, Am	zero(imm8) → Am	-	-	-	-	4	1			0000	111a	<#8.	...>								*6
	MOVW imm16, DWm	imm16 → DWm	-	-	-	-	6	1			1100	111d	<#16	....	....	...>						

*1 d8 sign-extention
*2 d4 zero-extention
*3 d8 zero-extention
*4 A = An, a = Am
*5 #8 sign-extention
*6 #8 zero-extention
*7 When the access address is odd number, the execution cycle is added "(1 + d)" .

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag				Code	Execution	REP	Machine Code												Notes
			VF	NF	CF	ZF	Size	Cycle		Ext.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
	MOVW imm16, Am	imm16 → Am	-	-	-	-	6	1			1101	111a	<#16	....	....	...>						
	MOVW SP, Am	SP → Am	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	0000	100a										
	MOVW An, SP	An → SP	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	0000	101A										
	MOVW DWn, DWm	DWn → DWm	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	1000	00Dd										*1
	MOVW DWn, Am	DWn → Am	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	0100	11Da										
	MOVW An, DWm	An → DWm	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	1100	11Ad										
	MOVW An, Am	An → Am	-	-	-	-	3	1			0000	00Aa										*2
PUSH	PUSH Dn	SP - 1 → SP, Dn → mem8(SP)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1111	10Dn										
	PUSH An	SP - 2 → SP, An → mem16(SP)	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			0001	011A										*10
POP	POP Dn	mem8(SP) → Dn, SP + 1 → SP	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			1110	10Dn										
	POP An	mem16(SP) → Dn, SP + 2 → SP	-	-	-	-	2	1+d			0000	011A										*10
EXT	EXT Dn, DWm	sign(Dn) → DWm	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	1001	000d										*3
Arithmetic Instructions																						
ADD	ADD Dn, Dm	Dm + Dn → Dm	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0011	0011	DnDm										
	ADD imm4, Dm	Dm + sign(imm4) → Dm	●	●	●	●	3	1			1000	00Dm	<#4>									*6
	ADD imm8, Dm	Dm + imm8 → Dm	●	●	●	●	4	1			0000	10Dm	<#8.	...>								
ADDC	ADDC Dn, Dm	Dm + Dn + CF → Dm	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0011	1011	DnDm										
ADDW	ADDW DWn, DWm	DWm + DWn → DWm	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	0101	00Dd										*1
	ADDW DWn, Am	Am + DWn → Am	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	0101	10Da										
	ADDW imm4, Am	Am + sign(imm4) → Am	●	●	●	●	3	1			1110	110a	<#4>									*6
	ADDW imm8, Am	Am + sign(imm8) → Am	●	●	●	●	5	1		0010	1110	110a	<#8.	...>								*7
	ADDW imm16, Am	Am + imm16 → Am	●	●	●	●	7	1		0010	0101	011a	<#16	....	....	...>						
	ADDW imm4, SP	SP + sign(imm4) → SP	-	-	-	-	3	1			1111	1101	<#4>									*6
	ADDW imm8, SP	SP + sign(imm8) → SP	-	-	-	-	4	1			1111	1100	<#8.	...>								*7
	ADDW imm16, SP	SP + imm16 → SP	-	-	-	-	7	1		0010	1111	1100	<#16	....	....	...>						
	ADDW imm16, DWm	DWm + imm16 → DWm	●	●	●	●	7	1		0010	0101	010d	<#16	....	....	...>						
ADDUW	ADDUW Dn, Am	Am + zero(Dn) → Am	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	1000	1aDn										*8
ADDSW	ADDSW Dn, Am	Am + sign(Dn) → Am	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	1001	1aDn										
SUB	SUB Dn, Dm (Dn ≠ Dm)	Dm - Dn → Dm	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	1010	DnDm										
	SUB Dn, Dn	Dn - Dn → Dn	0	0	0	1	2	1			1000	01Dn										
	SUB imm8, Dm	Dm - imm8 → Dm	●	●	●	●	5	1		0010	1010	DmDm	<#8.	...>								
SUBC	SUBC Dn, Dm	Dm - Dn - CF → Dm	●	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	1011	DnDm										
SUBW	SUBW DWn, DWm	DWm - DWn → DWm	●	●	●	●	3	1		0010	0100	00Dd										*1
	SUBW DWn, Am	Am - DWn → Am	●	●	●	●	3	1		0010	0100	10Da										
	SUBW imm16, DWm	DWm - imm16 → DWm	●	●	●	●	7	1		0010	0100	010d	<#16	....	....	...>						
	SUBW imm16, Am	Am - imm16 → Am	●	●	●	●	7	1		0010	0100	011a	<#16	....	....	...>						
MULU	MULU Dn, Dm	Dm * Dn → DWk	0	●	●	●	3	4		0010	1111	111D										*4
DIVU	DIVU Dn, DWm	DWm / Dn → DWm-l ··· DWm-h	●	●	●	●	3	9		0010	1110	111d										*5
CMP	CMP Dn, Dm	Dm - Dn ... PSW	●	●	●	●	3	1		0011	0010	DnDm										
	CMP imm8, Dm	Dm - imm8 ... PSW	●	●	●	●	4	1			1100	00Dm	<#8.	...>								
	CMP imm8, (abs8)	mem8(abs8) - imm8 ... PSW	●	●	●	●	6	3+d			0000	0100	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>						
	CMP imm8, (abs12)	mem8(abs12) - imm8 ... PSW	●	●	●	●	7	3+d			0000	0101	<abs	12..	...>	<#8.	...>					
	CMP imm8, (abs16)	mem8(abs16) - imm8 ... PSW	●	●	●	●	9	3+d		0011	1101	1000	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>				
CMPW	CMPW DWn, DWm	DWm - DWn ... PSW	●	●	●	●	3	1		0010	1000	01Dd										*1
	CMPW DWn, Am	Am - DWn ... PSW	●	●	●	●	3	1		0010	0101	11Da										
	CMPW An, Am	Am - An ... PSW	●	●	●	●	3	1		0010	0000	01Aa										*2
	CMPW imm16, DWm	DWm - imm16 ... PSW	●	●	●	●	6	1			1100	110d	<#16	....	....	...>						
	CMPW imm16, Am	Am - imm16 ... PSW	●	●	●	●	6	1			1101	110a	<#16	....	....	...>						
Bitwise Logical Instructions																						
AND	AND Dn, Dm	Dm & Dn → Dm	0	●	0	●	3	1		0011	0111	DnDm										
	AND imm8, Dm	Dm & imm8 → Dm	0	●	0	●	4	1			0001	11Dm	<#8.	...>								
	AND imm8, PSW	PSW & imm8 → PSW	●	●	●	●	5	2		0010	1001	0010	<#8.	...>								
OR	OR Dn, Dm	Dm | Dn → Dm	0	●	0	●	3	1		0011	0110	DnDm										
	OR imm8, Dm	Dm | imm8 → Dm	0	●	0	●	4	1			0001	10Dm	<#8.	...>								
	OR imm8, PSW	PSW | imm8 → PSW	●	●	●	●	5	2		0010	1001	0011	<#8.	...>								
XOR	XOR Dn, Dm	Dm ^ Dn → Dm	0	●	0	●	3	1		0011	1010	DnDm										*9
	XOR imm8, Dm	Dm ^ imm8 → Dm	0	●	0	●	5	1		0011	1010	DmDm	<#8.	...>								

*1 D = DWn, d = DWm
*2 A = An, a = Am
*3 d = DWm
*4 D = DWk
*5 D = DWm
*6 #4 sign-extention
*7 #8 sign-extention
*8 Dn zero-extention
*9 m ≠ n
*10 When the access address is odd number, the execution cycle is added "(1 + d)"

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	NF	CF	ZF	Code Size	Execution Cycle	REP	Machine Code Ext.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
NOT	NOT Dn	~Dn → Dm	0	●	0	●	3	1		0010	0010	10Dn										
ASR	ASR Dn	Dn.msb → temp, Dn.lsb → CF Dn >> 1 → Dn, temp → Dn.msb	0	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	0011	10Dn										
LSR	LSR Dn	Dn.lsb → CF, Dn >> 1 → Dn 0 → Dn.msb	0	0	●	●	3	1	○	0010	0011	11Dn										
ROR	ROR Dn	Dn.lsb → temp, Dn >> 1 → Dn CF → Dn.msb, temp → CF	0	●	●	●	3	1	○	0010	0010	11Dn										
Bit manipulation Instructions																						
BSET	BSET (io8)bp	mem8(IOTOP+io8) & bpdata...PSW 1 → mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp	0	●	0	●	5	2+2d		0011	1000	0bp.	<io8	...>								
	BSET (abs8)bp	mem8(abs8) & bpdata...PSW 1 → mem8(abs8)bp	0	●	0	●	4	2+2d			1011	0bp.	<abs	8..>								
	BSET (abs16)bp	mem8(abs16) & bpdata...PSW 1 → mem8(abs16)bp	0	●	0	●	7	2+2d		0011	1100	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>						
BCLR	BCLR (io8)bp	mem8(IOTOP+io8) & bpdata...PSW 0 → mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp	0	●	0	●	5	2+2d		0011	1000	1bp.	<io8	...>								
	BCLR (abs8)bp	mem8(abs8) & bpdata...PSW 0 → mem8(abs8)bp	0	●	0	●	4	2+2d			1011	1bp.	<abs	8..>								
	BCLR (abs16)bp	mem8(abs16) & bpdata...PSW 0 → mem8(abs16)bp	0	●	0	●	7	2+2d		0011	1100	1bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>						
BTST	BTST imm8, Dm	Dm & imm8...PSW	0	●	0	●	5	1		0010	0000	11Dm	<#8.	...>								
	BTST (abs8)bp	mem8(abs16) & bpdata...PSW	0	●	0	●	7	2+d		0011	1101	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>						
Branch Instructions																						
Bcc	BEQ label	if(ZF=1), PC+3+d4(label)+H → PC if(ZF=0), PC+3 → PC	-	-	-	-	3	1/3+i			1001	000H	<d4>									*1 *4
	BEQ label	if(ZF=1), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if(ZF=0), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1010	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BEQ label	if(ZF=1), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if(ZF=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1010	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BNE label	if(ZF=0), PC+3+d4(label)+H → PC if(ZF=1), PC+3 → PC	-	-	-	-	3	1/3+i			1001	001H	<d4>									*1 *4
	BNE label	if(ZF=0), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if(ZF=1), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1011	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BNE label	if(ZF=0), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if(ZF=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1011	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BGE label	if((VF^NF)=0), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF)=1), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1000	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BGE label	if((VF^NF)=0), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF)=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1000	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BCC label	if(CF=0), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if(CF=1), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1100	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BCC label	if(CF=0), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if(CF=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1100	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BCS label	if(CF=1), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if(CF=0), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1101	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BCS label	if(CF=1), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if(CF=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1101	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BLT label	if((VF^NF)=1), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF)=0), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1110	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BLT label	if((VF^NF)=1), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF)=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1110	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BLE label	if((VF^NF) | ZF=1), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF) | ZF=0), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	4	1/3+i			1000	1111	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BLE label	if((VF^NF) | ZF=1), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF) | ZF=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i			1001	1111	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BGT label	if((VF^NF) | ZF=0), PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF) | ZF=1), PC+4 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0001	<d7.	...H								*2 *4
	BGT label	if((VF^NF) | ZF=0), PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC if((VF^NF) | ZF=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0001	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4

*1 d4 sign-extention
*2 d7 sign-extention
*3 d11 sign-extention
*4 not taken / taken

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag				Code	Execution	REP	Machine Code											Notes
			VF	NF	CF	ZF	Size	Cycle		Ext.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
Bcc	BHI label	if(CF | ZF=0), PC+5+d7(label)+H → PC if(CF | ZF=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0010	<d7.	...H							*2 *4
	BHI label	if(CF | ZF=0), PC+6+d11(label)+H → PC if(CF | ZF=1), PC+6 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0010	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BLS label	if(CF | ZF=1), PC+5+d7(label)+H → PC if(CF | ZF=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0011	<d7.	...H							*2 *4
	BLS label	if(CF | ZF=1), PC+6+d11(label)+H → PC if(CF | ZF=0), PC+6 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0011	<d11	....	...H							*3 *4
	BNC label	if(NF=0), PC+5+d7(label)+H → PC if(NF=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0100	<d7.	...H							*2 *4
	BNC label	if(NF=0), PC+6+d11(label)+H → PC if(NF=1), PC+6 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0100	<d11	....	...H						*3 *4
	BNS label	if(NF=1), PC+5+d7(label)+H → PC if(NF=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0101	<d7.	...H							*2 *4
	BNS label	if(NF=1), PC+6+d11(label)+H → PC if(NF=0), PC+6 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0101	<d11	....	...H						*3 *4
	BVC label	if(VF=0), PC+5+d7(label)+H → PC if(VF=1), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0110	<d7.	...H							*2 *4
	BVC label	if(VF=0), PC+6+d11(label)+H → PC if(VF=1), PC+6 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0110	<d11	....	...H						*3 *4
	BVS label	if(VF=1), PC+5+d7(label)+H → PC if(VF=0), PC+5 → PC	-	-	-	-	5	1/3+i		0010	0010	0111	<d7.	...H							*2 *4
	BVS label	if(VF=1), PC+6+d11(label)+H → PC if(VF=0), PC+6 → PC	-	-	-	-	6	1/3+i		0010	0011	0111	<d11	....	...H						*3 *4
	BRA label	PC+3+d4(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	3	3+i			1110	111H	<d4>								*1
	BRA label	PC+4+d7(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	4	3+i			1000	1001	<d7.	...H							*2
	BRA label	PC+5+d11(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	5	3+i			1001	1001	<d11	....	...H						*3
CBEQ	CBEQ imm8, Dm, label	if(Dm=imm8), PC+6+d7(label)+H → PC if(Dm≠imm8), PC+6 → PC	●	●	●	●	6	2/4+i			1100	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H					*2 *4
	CBEQ imm8, Dm, label	if(Dm=imm8), PC+8+d11(label)+H → PC if(Dm≠imm8), PC+8 → PC	●	●	●	●	8	2/4+i		0010	1100	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H				*3 *4
	CBEQ imm8, (abs8), label	if(mem8(abs8)=imm8), PC+9+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8), PC+9 → PC	●	●	●	●	9	4+d/6+d+i		0010	1101	1100	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H			*2 *4
	CBEQ imm8, (abs8), lable	if(mem8(abs8)=imm8), PC+10+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8), PC+10 → PC	●	●	●	●	10	4+d/6+d+i		0010	1101	1101	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H		*3 *4
	CBEQ imm8, (abs16), label	if(mem8(abs16)=imm8), PC+11+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8), PC+11 → PC	●	●	●	●	11	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1101	1100	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H	*2 *4
	CBEQ imm8, (abs16), lable	if(mem8(abs16)=imm8), PC+12+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8), PC+12 → PC	●	●	●	●	12	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1101	1101	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H	*3 *4
CBNE	CBNE imm8, Dm, label	if(Dm≠imm8), PC+6+d7(label)+H → PC if(Dm=imm8), PC+6 → PC	●	●	●	●	6	2/4+i			1101	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H					*2 *4
	CBNE imm8, Dm, label	if(Dm≠imm8), PC+8+d11(label)+H → PC if(Dm=imm8), PC+8 → PC	●	●	●	●	8	2/4+i		0010	1101	10Dm	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H				*3 *4
	CBNE imm8, (abs8), label	if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8), PC+9+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)=imm8), PC+9 → PC	●	●	●	●	9	4+d/6+d+i		0010	1101	1110	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H			*2 *4
	CBNE imm8, (abs8), label	if(mem8(abs8)≠imm8), PC+10+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)=imm8), PC+10 → PC	●	●	●	●	10	4+d/6+d+i		0010	1101	1111	<abs	8..>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H		*3 *4
	CBNE imm8, (abs16), label	if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8), PC+11+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)=imm8), PC+11 → PC	●	●	●	●	11	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1101	1110	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d7.	...H	*2 *4
	CBNE imm8, (abs16), label	if(mem8(abs16)≠imm8), PC+12+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)=imm8), PC+12 → PC	●	●	●	●	12	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1101	1111	<abs	16..	....	...>	<#8.	...>	<d11	....	...H	*3 *4
TBZ	TBZ (abs8)bp, label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=0), PC+7+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=1), PC+7 → PC	0	●	0	●	7	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0000	0bp.	<abs	8..>	<d7.	...H					*2 *4
	TBZ (abs8)bp, label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=0), PC+8+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=1), PC+8 → PC	0	●	0	●	8	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0000	1bp.	<abs	8..>	<d11	....	...H				*3 *4
	TBZ (io8)bp, label	if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=0), PC+7+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=1), PC+7 → PC	0	●	0	●	7	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0100	0bp.	<io8	...>	<d7.	...H					*2 *4
	TBZ (io8)bp, label	if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=0), PC+8+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=1), PC+8 → PC	0	●	0	●	8	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0100	1bp.	<io8	...>	<d11	....	...H				*3 *4

*1 d4 sign-extention
*2 d7 sign-extention
*3 d11 sign-extention
*4 not taken / taken

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag VF	Flag NF	Flag CF	Flag ZF	Code Size	Execution Cycle	REP	Machine Code EXT.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Notes
TBZ	TBZ (abs16)bp, label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=0), PC+9+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=1), PC+9 → PC	0	●	0	●	9	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1110	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	....>	<d7.	...H				*1 *3
	TBZ (abs16)bp, label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=0), PC+10+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=1), PC+10 → PC	0	●	0	●	10	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1110	1bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d11	....	...H			*2 *3
TBNZ	TBNZ (abs8)bp, label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=1), PC+7+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=0), PC+7 → PC	0	●	0	●	7	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0001	0bp.	<abs	8..>	<d7.	..H						*1 *3
	TBNZ (abs8)bp, label	if(mem8(abs8)bp=1), PC+8+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs8)bp=0), PC+8 → PC	0	●	0	●	8	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0001	1bp.	<abs	8..>	<d11	....	...H					*2 *3
	TBNZ (io8)bp, label	if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=1), PC+7+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=0), PC+7 → PC	0	●	0	●	7	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0101	0bp.	<io8	...>	<d7.	...H						*1 *3
	TBNZ (io8)bp, label	if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=1), PC+8+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(IOTOP+io8)bp=0), PC+8 → PC	0	●	0	●	8	4+d/6+d+i		0011	0101	1bp.	<io8	...>	<d11	....	...H					*2 *3
	TBNZ (abs16)bp, label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=1), PC+9+d7(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=0), PC+9 → PC	0	●	0	●	9	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1111	0bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d7.	...H				*1 *3
	TBNZ (abs16)bp, label	if(mem8(abs16)bp=1), PC+10+d11(label)+H → PC if(mem8(abs16)bp=0), PC+10 → PC	0	●	0	●	10	4+d/6+d+i		0011	1111	1bp.	<abs	16..	....	...>	<d11	....	...H			*2 *3
JMP	JMP (An)	0 → PC.19 ~ 16, An → PC.15 ~ 0, 0 → PC.H	-	-	-	-	3	3+i		0010	0001	00A0										
	JMP label	abs18(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	7	3+i		0011	1001	0aaH	<abs	18.b	p15~	0..>						*6
	JMP label	abs20(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	9	4+i		0011	1101	1010	000B	bbbH	<abs	20.b	p15~	0..>				*7 *8
JSR	JSR (An)	SP-3 → SP, (PC+3).bp7~0 → mem8(SP), (PC+3).bp15~8 → mem8(SP+1), (PC+3).H → mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0 → mem8(SP+2).bp6~4, (PC+3).bp19~16 → mem8(SP+2).bp3~0, 0 → PC.bp19~16, An → PC.bp15~0, 0 → PC.H	-	-	-	-	3	max(2+i,4+2d)		0010	0001	00A1										
	JSR label	SP-3 → SP, (PC+5).bp7~0 → mem8(SP), (PC+5).bp15~8 → mem8(SP+1), (PC+5).H → mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0 → mem8(SP+2).bp6~4, (PC+5).bp19~16 → mem8(SP+2).bp3~0, PC+5+d12(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	5	max(2+i,4+2d)			0001	000H	<d12	....	...>							*4
	JSR label	SP-3 → SP, (PC+6).bp7~0 → mem8(SP), (PC+6).bp15~8 → mem8(SP+1), (PC+6).H → mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0 → mem8(SP+2).bp6~4, (PC+6).bp19~16 → mem8(SP+2).bp3~0, PC+6+d16(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	6	max(2+i,4+2d)			0001	001H	<d16	....	....	...>						*5
	JSR label	SP-3 → SP, (PC+7).bp7~0 → mem8(SP), (PC+7).bp15~8 → mem8(SP+1), (PC+7).H → mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0 → mem8(SP+2).bp6~4, (PC+7).bp19~16 → mem8(SP+2).bp3~0, abs18(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	7	max(2+i,4+2d)		0011	1001	1aaH	<abs	18.b	p15~	0..>						*6
	JSR label	SP-3 → SP, (PC+9).bp7~0 → mem8(SP), (PC+9).bp15~8 → mem8(SP+1), (PC+9).H → mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0 → mem8(SP+2).bp6~4, (PC+9).bp19~16 → mem8(SP+2).bp3~0, abs20(label)+H → PC	-	-	-	-	9	max(3+i,5+2d)		0011	1101	1011	000B	bbbH	<abs	20.b	p15~	0..>				*7 *8

*1 d7 sign-extention
*2 d11 sign-extention
*3 not branch / branch
*4 d12 sign-extention
*5 d16 sign-extention
*6 aa=abs18.17~16
*7 B=abs20.19
*8 bbb=abs20.18~16

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION SET

Group	Mnemonic	Operation	Flag				Code	Execution	REP	Machine Code											Notes
			VF	NF	CF	ZF	Size	Cycle		Ext.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	
JSR	JSRV (tbl4)	SP-3 → SP, (PC+3).bp7~0 → mem8(SP), (PC+3).bp15~8 → mem8(SP+1), (PC+3).H → mem8(SP+2).bp7, 0 → mem8(SP+2).bp6~4, (PC+3).bp19~16 → mem8(SP+2).bp3~0, mem8(x'04080'+tbl4<<2) → PC.bp7~0, mem8(x'04080'+tbl4<<2+1) → PC.bp15~8, mem8(x'04080'+tbl4<<2+2).bp7 → PC.H, mem8(x'04080'+tbl4<<2+2).bp3~0 → PC.bp19~16	-	-	-	-	3	max(6+d+3i, 6+2d+2i)			1111	1110	<t4>								
RTS	RTS	mem8(SP) → (PC).bp7~0, mem8(SP+1) → (PC).bp15~8, mem8(SP+2).bp7 → (PC).H, mem8(SP+2).bp3~0 → (PC).bp19~16, SP+3 → SP	-	-	-	-	2	max(4+2d+i, 6+2d)			0000	0001									
RTI	RTI	mem8(SP) → PSW, mem8(SP+1) → (PC).bp7~0, mem8(SP+2) → (PC).bp15~8, mem8(SP+3).bp7 → (PC).H, mem8(SP+3).bp3~0 → (PC).bp19~16, mem8(SP+4) → HA-l, mem8(SP+5) → HA-h, SP+6 → SP	●	●	●	●	2	max(5+3d+i, 6+3d)			0000	0011									*1
NOP Instruction																					
NOP	NOP	PC+2 → PC	-	-	-	-	2	1	○		0000	0000									
Control Instructions																					
REP	REP imm3	imm3-1 → RPC	-	-	-	-	3	1		0010	0001	1rep									*2
BE	BE	PSW & x'3F' → PSW	-	-	-	-	3	2		0010	0010	0000									
BD	BD	PSW | x'C0' → PSW	-	-	-	-	3	2		0010	0011	0000									

*1 When the value of SP is odd number, the execution cycle is added "(1+d)".
*2 imm3 = 1 : repeat count = 0 (rep : imm3 - 1)

Other than the instruction of MN101L Series, the assembler of this Series has the following instructions as macro instructions.
The assembler will interpret the macro instructions below as the assembler instructions.

---

macro instructions		replaced instructions		remarks
INC	Dn	ADD	1, Dm	
DEC	Dn	ADD	-1, Dm	
INC	An	ADDW	1, Am	
DEC	An	ADDW	-1, Am	
INC2	An	ADDW	2, Am	
DEC2	An	ADDW	-2, Am	
CLR	Dn	SUB	Dn, Dm	n = m
ASL	Dn	ADD	Dn, Dm	n = m
LSL	Dn	ADD	Dn, Dm	n = m
ROL	Dn	ADDC	Dn, Dm	n = m
NEG	Dn	NOT ADD	Dn 1, Dm	
NOPL		MOVW	DWn, DWm	n = m
MOV	(SP), Dm	MOV	(0, SP), Dm	
MOV	Dn, (SP)	MOV	Dn, (0, SP)	
MOVW	(SP), DWm	MOVW	(0, SP), DWm	
MOVW	DWn, (SP)	MOVW	DWn, (0, SP)	
MOVW	(SP), Am	MOVW	(0, SP), Am	
MOVW	An, (SP)	MOVW	An, (0, SP)	

20.3 Instruction map

MN101L SERIES INSTRUCTION MAP

1st nibble / 2nd nibble

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NOP	RTS	MOV #8,(io8)	RTI	CMP #8,(abs8) / (abs12)		POP An		ADD #8,Dm				MOVW #8,DWm		MOVW #8,Am	
1	JSR d12(label)		JSR d16(label)		MOV #8,(abs8) / (abs12)		PUSH An		OR #8,Dm				AND #8,Dm			
2	When the extension code is b'0010'															
3	When the extension code is b'0011'															
4	MOV (abs12),Dm				MOV (abs8),Dm				MOV (An),Dm							
5	MOV Dn,(abs12)				MOV Dn,(abs8)				MOV Dn,(Am)							
6	MOV (io8),Dm				MOV (d4,SP),Dm				MOV (d8,An),Dm							
7	MOV Dn,(io8)				MOV Dn,(d4,SP)				MOV Dn,(d8,Am)							
8	ADD #4,Dm				SUB Dn,Dn				BGE d7	BRA d7	BEQ d7	BNE d7	BCC d7	BCS d7	BLT d7	BLE d7
9	BEQ d4		BNE d4		MOVW DWn,(HA)		MOVW An,(HA)		BGE d11	BRA d11	BEQ d11	BNE d11	BCC d11	BCS d11	BLT d11	BLE d11
A	MOV Dn,Dm / MOV #8,Dm															
B	BSET (abs8)bp								BCLR (abs8)bp							
C	CMP #8,Dm				MOVW (abs8),Am		MOVW (abs8),Dwm		CBEQ #8,Dm,d7				CMPW #16,DWm		MOVW #16,DWm	
D	MOV Dn,(HA)				MOVW An,(abs8)		MOVW DWn,(abs8)		CBNE #8,Dm,d7				CMPW #16,Am		MOVW #16,Am	
E	MOVW (An),DWm				MOVW (d4,SP),Am		MOVW (d4,SP),DWm		POP Dn				ADDW #4,Am		BRA d4	
F	MOVW DWn,(Am)				MOVW An,(d4,SP)		MOVW DWn,(d4,SP)		PUSH Dn				ADDW #8,SP	ADDW #4,SP	JSRV (tbl4)	

Extension code : b'0010'

2nd nibble / 3rd nibble

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	MOVW An,Am				CMPW An,Am				MOVW SP,Am		MOVW An,SP		BTST #8,Dm			
1	JMP (A0)	JSR (A0)	JMP (A1)	JSR (A1)	MOV PSW,Dm				REP #3							
2	BE	BGT d7	BHI d7	BLS d7	BNC d7	BNS d7	BVC d7	BVS d7	NOT Dn				ROR Dn			
3	BD	BGT d11	BHI d11	BLS d11	BNC d11	BNS d11	BVC d11	BVS d11	ASR Dn				LSR Dn			
4	SUBW DWn,DWm				SUBW #16,DWm		SUBW #16,Am		SUBW DWn,Am				MOVW DWn,Am			
5	ADDW DWn,DWm				ADDW #16,DWm		ADDW #16,Am		ADDW DWn,Am				CMPW DWn,Am			
6	MOV (d16,SP),Dm				MOV (d8,SP),Dm				MOV (d16,An),Dm							
7	MOV Dn,(d16,SP)				MOV Dn,(d8,SP)				MOV Dn,(d16,Am)							
8	MOVW DWn,DWm (NOPL @n=m)				CMPW DWn,DWm				ADDUW Dn,Am							
9	EXT Dn,DWm		AND #8,PSW	OR #8,PSW	MOV Dn,PSW				ADDSW Dn,Am							
A	SUB Dn,Dm / SUB #8,Dm															
B	SUBC Dn,Dm															
C	MOV (abs16),Dm				MOVW (abs16),Am		MOVW (abs16),DWm		CBEQ #8,Dm,d11				MOVW An,DWm			
D	MOV Dn,(abs16)				MOVW An,(abs16)		MOVW DWn,(abs16)		CBNE #8,Dm,d11				CBEQ #8,(abs8),d7 / d11		CBNE #8,(abs8),d7 / d11	
E	MOVW (d16,SP),Am		MOVW (d16,SP),DWm		MOVW (d8,SP),Am		MOVW (d8,SP),DWm		MOVW (An),Am				ADDW #8,Am		DIVU	
F	MOVW An,(d16,SP)		MOVW DWn,(d16,SP)		MOVW An,(d8,SP)		MOVW DWn,(d8,SP)		MOVW An,(Am)				ADDW #16,SP		MULU	

Extension code : b'0011'

2nd nibble / 3rd nibble

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	TBZ (abs8)bp,d7								TBZ (abs8)bp,d11							
1	TBNZ (abs8)bp,d7								TBNZ (abs8)bp,d11							
2	CMP Dn,Dm															
3	ADD Dn,Dm															
4	TBZ (io8)bp,d7								TBZ (io8)bp,d11							
5	TBNZ (io8)bp,d7								TBNZ (io8)bp,d11							
6	OR Dn,Dm															
7	AND Dn,Dm															
8	BSET (io8)bp								BCLR (io8)bp							
9	JMP abs18(label)								JSR abs18(label)							
A	XOR Dn,Dm / XOR #8,Dm															
B	ADDC Dn,Dm															
C	BSET (abs16)bp								BCLR (abs16)bp							
D	BTST (abs16)bp								CMP #8,(abs16)	MOV #8,(abs16)	JMP abs20(label)	JSR abs20(label)	CBEQ #8,(abs16), d7 / d11		CBNE #8,(abs16), d7 / d11	
E	TBZ (abs16)bp,d7								TBZ (abs16)bp,d11							
F	TBNZ (abs16)bp,d7								TBNZ (abs16)bp,d11							

Record of Changes

Details of revision from Ver.1.4 to Ver.1.5 in MN101LR05D/04D/03D/02D LSI User's Manual is shown below.

According to the details of revision, "Definition" of the table below is classified into seven groups.

Revision concerning descriptions in LSI User's Manual:
Writing error correction / Description change / Description addition / Description deletion
Revision concerning LSI specifications:
Specification change / Specification addition / Specification deletion

Modification (Ver.1.5)			Definition	Details of Revision	
Page	Title	Line		Ver.1.4	Ver.1.5
I-37	■ Recommended...	XI XO	Description addition	-	Unconnect the pins.
II-31	Note 2	-	Description change	When recovering from SLOW/HALT2/ STOP0 mode, ...	Set the stabilization wait cycle of internal oscillation to match...
III-12	■ Multiple maskable...	2 to 5	Description change	When MEMCTR.MIESET is "1" and an interrupt is processed,...	When MEMCTR.MIESET is "0" and an interrupt is accepted,...
III-19	Figure:3.1.9	-	Description change	mov (PERInDT) Dn mov Dn, (PERInDT) Save the value of PERInDT in Dn...	mov (PERInDT) Dn mov Dn, (PERInDT) Load the value of PERInDT to Dn...
			Description addition	-	mov (PERInEN), Dm and Dm, Dn Extract the request bit that...
IV-13	4.2	3 to 4	Description addition	-	Figure:4.2.1 shows the transition between each operation mode...
	Figure:4.2.1	-	Writing error correction	NORMAL mode SCLK: oscillation HALT0 mode SCLK: oscillation	NORMAL mode SCLK: oscillation/stop HALT0 mode SCLK: oscillation/stop
			Description addition	-	*2 *3
	Note	-	Description addition	-	Do not perform the transition that is not listed in Figure:4.2.1.
IV-16	Figure:4.2.5	-	Description addition	Internal high-speed oscillation stabilization wait time	Internal high-speed oscillation stabilization wait time (15 μs)
IV-18	Figure:4.2.8	-	Description addition	Internal low-speed oscillation stabilization wait time (80 μs)	Internal low-speed oscillation stabilization wait time (100 μs)
IV-29	■ Voltage Transition... Program	Setting example	Description change	-	Merged with IV-30 in Ver1.4
IV-30	■ Voltage Transition... Mode Transition	Setting example	Description change	-	Merged with IV-30 in Ver1.4
IV-31	4.4	-	Description addition	-	4.4 Mode/Voltage/Clock Transition...
XI-7	11.2.3	4	Description addition	= Frequency adjustment rate × 0x200000 (in hexadecimal)	= Frequency adjustment rate × 0x200000 (in hexadecimal) (At Adjustment period = 128 [sec])
XVI-13	Hint	-	Description addition	-	During the A/D conversion, if the output level of LSI is changed...
XVI-14 (Ver1.4)	Note	-	Description deletion	Be sure to conduct the following procedures to ensure...	-
	Figure:16.3.5	-	Description deletion	Figure:16.3.5 Recommended Circuit	-
XVI-14	■ Sample Hold Time	-	Description addition	-	■ Sample Hold Time... Figure:16.3.5 Circuit Example
	■ External Capacitor	-	Description addition	-	■ External Capacitor... Figure:16.3.6 Circuit Example with External Capacitor

Details of revision from Ver.1.3 to Ver.1.4 in MN101LR05D/04D/03D/02D LSI User's Manual is shown below.

According to the details of revision, "Definition" of the table below is classified into seven groups.

Revision concerning descriptions in LSI User's Manual:
Writing error correction / Description change / Description addition / Description deletion
Revision concerning LSI specifications:
Specification change / Specification addition / Specification deletion

Modification (Ver.1.4)			Definition	Details of Revision	
Page	Title	Line		Ver.1.3	Ver.1.4
I-25	C. DC Characteristics	C10	Specification addition	-	Supply current in HALT I_{DD10} MIN: - TYP: 0.2 μA MAX: 0.4 μA
		C11 to C14	Description change	C10 I_{DD10} to C13 I_{DD13}	C11 I_{DD11} to C14 I_{DD14}
IV-12	Figure:4.1.2	-	Writing error correction	//Set the Clock mode Control Register CLKMD.bit6-4 = 100	//Set the Clock mode Control Register CLKMD.bit6-4 = 010
IV-30	■ Setting Example of ...	-	Writing error correction	CPU outage in voltage transition: 16/ f_{SCLK} (f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz, 488 μs)	CPU outage in voltage transition: 32/ f_{SCLK} (f_{SCLK} = 32.768 kHz, 977 μs)
VII-56	Table:7.11.5	-	Writing error correction	Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 1 → COM4 Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 0 → SEG0 Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 0 → TM5IO(output) Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 0 → TM5IO(input) Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 0 → P73	Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 1 → COM4 Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 1 0 → SEG0 Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 0 - → TM5IO(output) Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 0 - → TM5IO(input) Setup: LCCTR0 SEGSL0 = 0 - → P73

Details of revision from Ver.1.2 to Ver.1.3 in MN101LR05D/04D/03D/02D LSI User's Manual is shown below.

According to the details of revision, "Definition" of the table below is classified into seven groups.

Revision concerning descriptions in LSI User's Manual:
Writing error correction / Description change / Description addition / Description deletion
Revision concerning LSI specifications:
Specification change / Specification addition / Specification deletion

Modification (Ver.1.3)			Definition	Details of Revision	
Page	Title	Line		Ver.1.2	Ver.1.3
I-10	Table:1.2.4	-	Writing error correction	Port: P46 Serial Interface: SBCS2A	Port: P46 Serial Interface: SBO1B/TXD1B
I-22	B. Operating Condition	B15	Specification change	Temperature/Voltage dependence E_{F5} MIN: -5.0 TYP: -- MAX: 5.0	Temperature/Voltage dependence E_{F5} MIN: -10.0 TYP: -- MAX: 10.0
		B17	Specification change	Temperature/Voltage dependence E_{F6} MIN: -15.0 TYP: -- MAX: 15.0	Temperature/Voltage dependence E_{F6} MIN: -20.0 TYP: -- MAX: 20.0
I-24	C. DC Characteristics	C2	Specification change	Operating supply current I_{DD2} MAX: 4.3 mA	Operating supply current I_{DD2} MAX: 3.0 mA
		C3	Specification change	Operating supply current I_{DD3} MAX: 3.4 mA	Operating supply current I_{DD3} MAX: 2.5 mA
		C4	Specification change	Operating supply current I_{DD4} MAX: 1.9 mA	Operating supply current I_{DD4} MAX: 1.5 mA
		C6	Specification change	Operating supply current I_{DD6} MAX: 0.45 mA	Operating supply current I_{DD6} MAX: 0.36 mA
I-25		C9	Specification change	Supply current in HALT I_{DD9} MAX: 0.48 mA	Supply current in HALT I_{DD9} MAX: 0.33 mA
		C12	Specification change	Supply current in STOP I_{DD12} MAX: 0.12 μA	Supply current in STOP I_{DD12} MAX: 0.24 μA
I-37	■ Recommended Condition of Each Pin	DMOD	Description change	...the value of which is typically between 100 Ω and 1000 Ω.	...the value of which is typically between 1.5 kΩ and 100 kΩ. (Recommendation: between 10 kΩ and 100 kΩ)
II-7	2.1.7	-	Description change	II-10 and 11 in 2.2 Memory Space	Merged II-10 and 11 in ever 1.2 into 2.1.7 Address Space.
II-11	2.1.9	-	Description change	2.2.1 Bank Function	2.1.9 Bank Function
II-13	2.1.10	-	Description change	2.2.2 Special Function Register	2.1.10 Special Function Register
	Table:2.1.5	-	Specification change	0x03D8C: Reserved in Table: 2.2.2	0x03D8C: CLKMD
II-31	Note 2	-	Writing error correction	When recovering from Deep STANDBY mode, ...	When recovering from SLOW/HALT2/STOP0 mode, ...
IV-2	Table:4.1.1	-	Description change	1. Internal high-speed oscillation... ... 4. External low-speed oscillation...	Table:4.1.1 Clock Oscillation Circuit
	Figure:4.1.1	-	Description change	-	Added operation enable control circuit.
IV-4	CPUM	CLKSEL	Writing error correction	Select clock control 0: Low-speed clock (SCLK) 0: High-speed clock (HCLK)	Select clock control 0: Low-speed clock (SCLK) 1: High-speed clock (HCLK)
IV-4	Note 2	-	Description addition	-	Set the PSW.MIE to "0" before changing the data of CPU or CKCTR...
	Note 3	-	Description addition	-	The instruction for changing the data of CPUM or CKCTR must not be executed in the internal RAM.

Modification (Ver.1.3)			Definition	Details of Revision	
Page	Title	Line		Ver.1.2	Ver.1.3
IV-6	Note 1	-	Description addition	-	Set the PSW.MIE to "0" before changing the data of CPU or CKCTR...
	Note 2	-	Description addition	-	The instruction for changing the data of CPUM or CKCTR must not be executed in the internal RAM.
IV-12	4.1.2	-	Specification addition	-	4.1.2 Change of the External Low-speed Oscillation Capability
IV-13	-	-	Description deletion	4.2.1 Overview ■ NORMAL Mode ... ■ IDLE Mode	-
IV-14	Figure:4.2.2	-	Description addition	-	(*) When SCLKCNT.SOSCCNT = 1, SOSCCLK starts. ...
IV-16	Figure:4.2.6	-	Description change	(Set the CPUM as described in Table: 4.2.1)	(Set the CPUM as described in Table: 4.1.3)
IV-17	Figure:4.2.7	-	Description change	Figure: 4.2.7 Transition Flow from RC Mode to OSC Mode	Figure: 4.2.7 Clock Change Flow from SRCCLK to SOSCCLK
	Figure:4.2.8	-	Description change	Figure: 4.2.8 Transition Flow from OSC Mode to RC Mode	Figure: 4.2.8 Clock Change Flow from SOSCCLK to SRCCLK
IV-18	Figure:4.2.9	-	Writing error correction	HALT/STOP mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/4: stop counting HALT2/STOP: clear counting NORMAL/SLOW mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/4: restart counting HALT2/STOP: start counting	HALT/STOP mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/2/3: continue counting STOP: stop counting NORMAL/SLOW mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/2/3: continue counting STOP: restart counting
IV-19	Figure:4.2.10	-	Writing error correction	Figure: 4.2.10 Transition Flow Diagram from CPU Operating Mode to HALT0/ HALT1 Mode	Figure: 4.2.10 Transition from CPU Operating Mode to HALT0/HALT1/ HALT2 Mode
IV-20	Figure:4.2.11	-	Description change	HALTMOD = 1 HALT = 1	Set the CPUM as described in Table 4.1.3
	-	-	Description deletion	<Note 1> If it can't be guaranteed that ... <Note 2> Insert 3 NOP instructions right after ...	-
	Note	-	Description change	If priority level of the interrupt to be used is not equal to or higher than the mask level ...	If the value of xICR.LV1-0 for an interrupt to be used as a return factor is equal or larger ...
IV-21	Figure:4.2.12	-	Description change	STOP = 1	Set the CPUM as described in Table 4.1.3
	-	-	Description deletion	<Note 1> If it can't be guaranteed that ... <Note 2> Insert 3 NOP instructions right after ...	-
	Note	-	Description change	If priority level of the interrupt to be used is not equal to or higher than the mask level ...	If the value of xICR.LV1-0 for an interrupt to be used as a return factor is equal or larger ...
IV-23	Figure:4.2.14	-	Writing error correction	← When returning from STOP mode, wait for oscillation to stabilize NORMAL/SLOW mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/2/3: continue counting HALT2/STOP: restart counting	← When the transition corresponds to (*1) in Figure: 4.2.1, the oscillation stabilization wait time is inserted. NORMAL/SLOW mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/2/3: continue counting STOP: restart counting
IV-23	Note 3	-	Description addition	-	The instruction for the transition to STANDBY mode must not be executed in the internal RAM.

Modification (Ver.1.3)			Definition	Details of Revision	
Page	Title	Line		Ver.1.2	Ver.1.3
IV-24	Figure:4.2.15	-	Writing error correction	← When returning from STOP mode, wait for oscillation to stabilize NORMAL/SLOW mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/2/3: continue counting HALT2/STOP: restart counting	← When the transition corresponds to (*1) in Figure: 4.2.1, the oscillation stabilization wait time is inserted. NORMAL/SLOW mode ← Watchdog timer HALT0/1/2/3: continue counting STOP: restart counting
IV-24	Note 3	-	Description addition	-	The instruction for the transition to STANDBY mode must not be executed in the internal RAM.
IV-25	Table:4.3.1	-	Writing error correction	*2 16 kHz ≤ f_{SYSCLK} (or f_{SCLK}) ≤ 40 kHz	*2 16 kHz ≤ f_{SYSCLK} ≤ 40 kHz, 32 kHz ≤ f_{SCLK} ≤ 40 kHz
IV-26	Note 4	-	Description addition	-	The voltage of VDD18 can be changed to match the following conditions...
IV-26	Note 4	-	Description addition	-	The voltage of VDD18 can be changed to match the following conditions...
IV-27	PWCTR1	PWUPTM2-0	Writing error correction	000: 8/f_{SCLK} (256 μs at f_{SCLK} ...) ... 111: 512/f_{SCLK} (16384 μs at f_{SCLK} ...)	000: 8/f_{SCLK} (244 μs at f_{SCLK} ...) ... 111: 512/f_{SCLK} (15625 μs at f_{SCLK} ...)
IV-27	Note 2	-	Description addition	-	* Only the clock supplied to CPU is halted...
VII-40 VII-43 VII-46 VII-49 VII-52 VII-55	Table:7.6.1 Table:7.7.1 Table:7.8.1 Table:7.9.1 Table:7.10.1 Table:7.11.1	remark *	Writing error correction	* The assignment and selection of... [17.2.3 LCD Port Control Registers]	* The assignment and selection of... [17.2.2 LCD Port Control Registers]
XVII-2	Table:17.1.1	LCD Voltage Booster Circuit	Specification deletion	Boosts reference voltage input by 2, 3 times or 1/2, 3/2 time.	Boosts reference voltage input by 2, 3 times.
XVII-18	17.3.2 Voltage Booster Circuit (BSTVOL)	1	Specification deletion	...LCD drive which generates a voltage of 2, 3, 3/2, or 1/2 times the LCD reference voltage.	...LCD drive which generates a voltage of 2 or 3 times the LCD reference voltage.
		■ 3/2 or 1/2 Times Boosting	Specification deletion	■ 3/2 or 1/2 Times Boosting When BSTVOL generates 3/2 or 1/2 times, ...	-
	Note	-	Specification deletion	In 3/2 or 1/2 times boosting, the condition...	-
XVII-22	Table:17.3.3	-	Specification deletion	3/2, 1/2 times boost...	-

Inquiries

If you have questions regarding technical information on this manual, please visit the following URL.

Panasonic Corporation

URL: http://www.semicon.panasonic.co.jp/en

- Microcomputer Home Page
  http://www.semicon.panasonic.co.jp/e-micom

MN101LR05D/04D/03D/02D
LSI User's Manual

October 7, 2013 1st Edition 5th Printing

Issued by

Panasonic Corporation

Semiconductor Business Division
Automotive & Industrial Systems Company
Panasonic Corporation

1 Kotari-yakemachi, Nagaokakyo City, Kyoto
617-8520, Japan
Tel : 81-75-951-8151

http://www.semicon.panasonic.co.jp/en

010413
Printed in Japan